

# Compendium of Astrology

Rose Lineman and Jan Popelka

Para Research  
Distributed by Schiffer Publishing, Ltd.  
West Chester, Pennsylvania 19380

# *Acknowledgments*

Thank you to Dr. Sonja M. Wilt for encouragement and deeply appreciated editorial assistance, to Suzie Boehm for her contribution as typist, and to Karen Ledney and Margaret Byron, proofreaders. Special thanks to our co-directors at Wright Institute of Astrological Studies, Lynn Mulkerin, the lovely Libran, and Dorothy Snodgrass, the poetic Piscean, who made invaluable suggestions and gently nudged us when our spirits flagged. To the many correspondence and in-class students who posed the questions we have tried to answer in this book, our heartfelt gratitude. We are most grateful to our loving, patient, often-neglected husbands, without whose support and understanding we could not have completed this book.

The authors

# Contents

List of Figures . . . . .	9
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	13
THEORY	
Chapter 1 Fundamentals of Astrology . . . . .	17
Chapter 2 The Signs of the Zodiac . . . . .	21
Chapter 3 Planets in Our Solar System . . . . .	41
Chapter 4 Planets and Moon's Nodes in the Signs . . . . .	53
Chapter 5 The Houses of the Horoscope . . . . .	71
Chapter 6 The Influence of the Signs in the Houses . . . . .	79
Chapter 7 Planets and Moon's Nodes in the Houses . . . . .	91
Chapter 8 Planetary Dispositors . . . . .	105
Chapter 9 The Shaping of the Horoscope . . . . .	109
Chapter 10 The Lunation Cycle and Eclipses . . . . .	113
CALCULATIONS	
Chapter 11 The Tools of Astrology . . . . .	119
Chapter 12 Calculation of House Cusps . . . . .	127
Chapter 13 Charting the Planets and Moon's Nodes . . . . .	147
Chapter 14 Aspects Defined . . . . .	155
DELINEATION	
Chapter 15 Methodology . . . . .	165
Chapter 16 Sun Aspects . . . . .	171
Chapter 17 Moon Aspects . . . . .	181
Chapter 18 Mercury Aspects . . . . .	191
Chapter 19 Venus Aspects . . . . .	199
Chapter 20 Mars Aspects . . . . .	209
Chapter 21 Jupiter Aspects . . . . .	217
Chapter 22 Saturn Aspects . . . . .	225
Chapter 23 Uranus Aspects . . . . .	231
Chapter 24 Neptune Aspects . . . . .	237
Chapter 25 Pluto Aspects . . . . .	241
Chapter 26 Aspects of the Moon's Nodes and Part of Fortune . . . . .	245
Chapter 27 Astrological Guidance in Planning for the Future . . . . .	247
Chapter 28 Astrological Development: Microcosm and Macrocosm . . . . .	255
APPENDIXES	
Appendix A Planetary Nodes and Solstice Points . . . . .	265
Appendix B Fixed Stars . . . . .	269
Appendix C Arabian Parts . . . . .	271
GLOSSARY . . . . .	275
BIBLIOGRAPHY	
INDEX	

# List of Figures

Figure 1. The Zodiac Belt . . . . .	18
Figure 2. Houses and Signs in Natural Order with Planetary Rulers . . . . .	19
Figure 3. The Triplicities . . . . .	21-22
Figure 4. The Quadruplicities . . . . .	23
Figure 5. Planetary Orbits . . . . .	42
Figure 6. The Quadrants of the Horoscope . . . . .	73
Figure 7. The Hylegiacal Places in the Horoscope . . . . .	74
Figure 8. The Sun As Final Dispositor . . . . .	103
Figure 9. Circle of Dispositors . . . . .	105
Figure 10. The Lunar Cycle . . . . .	113
Figure 11. Geographic Longitude and Latitude . . . . .	120
Figure 12. World Standard Time Zones . . . . .	121
Figure 13. Excerpt from Dalton's Table of Houses . . . . .	123
Figure 14. Placidian House Cusps . . . . .	124
Figure 15. The Houses in an Equal House Horoscope . . . . .	124
Figure 16. Sample from <i>The Concise Planetary Ephemeris</i> . . . . .	125
Figure 17. Log Table . . . . .	138
Figure 18. Susan's Horoscope . . . . .	151
Figure 19. Aspectarian . . . . .	157

# INTRODUCTION

Astrology has its roots in antiquity back as far as the memory of recorded history. It comprises one of humankind's first and oldest scientific studies, perhaps *the* first and oldest. As such, astrology was the domain of priests and scholars in ancient times.

As modern scientific thought developed, science accepted that part of astrology which dealt with celestial phenomena and planetary motion and called it astronomy; the human element was discarded as bunk and along with the title, astrology, was swept into the dustbins of superstition.

But astrology is a proud name given to a study based on principles that could not be destroyed and would not be forgotten. A new era is awakening for astrology, an era guided by a scientific approach and geared to objective examination and research.

Astrology's birth pangs are part of the distant past; growing pains continue in the present; astrology's rightful place in the scheme of human development is in the near future. You, too, can be part of that future, an important factor in what lies ahead for astrology. The age of Aquarius, the age of astrology, is fast approaching. The time to begin is at hand.

Modern astrology, with its rich heritage steeped in symbolism and tradition, is not a stagnant art. As awareness of the universe has increased, so has astrological knowledge. The discoveries of Uranus (1781), Neptune (1846) and Pluto (1930) have enabled astrologers to account, at least in part, for conditions that previously did not fit into the astrological scheme. The astrological significance of Chiron, a planetoid discovered in 1977, is currently under study. Recent space research has shown that Pluto is not as large as was formerly believed. The planet's orbital eccentricities raise the scientific possibility that another planet travels in the outer reaches of our solar system, a theory long held by many astrologers. New discoveries that will enrich astrology most certainly lie ahead.

Modern astrology has not abandoned traditional theory; it has updated outmoded concepts and refined application of astrological principles to meet modern needs. Astrology has emerged from the cocoon of fatalism so prevalent in bygone eras. Today, it provides the means by which one can gain insight into human behavior, attain self-understanding and achieve full self-development.

To students and teachers of astrology, this book offers more than the basic information needed to erect a

horoscope and sketchy interpretations on which to draw astrological conclusions. It is a comprehensive text designed to lead the student toward an understanding of astrological principles, calculations and delineation and to pique the student's interest in further astrological study and research. Many obscure astrological factors missing from other texts are discussed.

Part I, THEORY, offers the reader a thorough grounding in the principles and theory on which horoscope analysis is based. It explores less familiar topics such as the Vertex, East Point and asteroids; it covers finer points of theory including sub-rulerships, abstract points and the Prenatal Eclipse as well as the meanings of signs, planets and houses and the interrelationships that exist among the various astrological elements.

Part II, CALCULATIONS, introduces several house systems. Alternate methods of chart calculation complete with easy-to-follow examples are presented so that the student can choose the method best suited to his or her talents. Both the log method and regular method of computation, which can be easily adapted to hand calculator use, are presented. Commonly used mathematical approximations are shown, along with precise calculations to alert the reader to the difference between an approximate chart and an accurate horoscope. In addition to calculation and tabulation of aspects and aspect patterns, the basic significance of applying, separating, approaching and departing aspects is discussed in the final chapter of Part II.

Part III, DELINEATION, shows the student how to assemble and synthesize the numerous astrological factors contained in a horoscope. Interpretational examples clarify delineation techniques. Interpretations are given for all major aspects (parallel and contraparallel included) formed by planets, angles, the Moon's Nodes and Part of Fortune. The general influence of minor aspects is discussed. Special techniques that are helpful in understanding relationships and revealing future trends that supplement the natal horoscope are introduced. Combined, Parts I, II and III form a complete guidebook for horoscope construction and analysis.

Astrology is reaching into every area of life. Hopefully, this book will enable you to become better informed as to what astrology is really all about and will whet your appetite for more knowledge about this fascinating subject through which you can enrich the lives of yourself and others

THEORY

# I *Fundamentals of Astrology*

Simply stated, astrology deals with the relationship between humankind and celestial phenomena. It is concerned with correlating planetary movements with the human condition and events on Earth. Various specialized branches of astrology are directed toward the study of human relationships, politics, current events, weather and the answers to specific questions of immediate interest. This book is devoted primarily to the branch called natal astrology, the study of one's personality and the conditions of one's life in all its facets according to the principles of astrology.

A natal horoscope is a map of the heavens that charts the positions of the Sun, Moon and the eight planets (Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto) as they appeared at the birthplace of a particular individual at the exact time of his or her birth. From this horoscope, sometimes called a birth map or nativity, deductions are made according to astrological logic. These deductions describe one's personal characteristics, behavior patterns, emotional responses, inborn drives, natural abilities, potential for achievement and capacity for growth and development as seen from the astrological point of view. Circumstances that arise in various areas of life are revealed in the horoscope.

The apparent path of the Sun during the course of a year as viewed from Earth forms the basis for astrological measurements necessary to charting a horoscope. (A horoscope that shows the Earth at the center of the map and the positions of planets as observed from the birthplace is called a geocentric or Earth-centered map. Maps that chart the planets as observed from the Sun are heliocentric or Sun-centered

maps.) To earthlings, the Sun appears to travel around Earth; in reality, Earth orbits the Sun, as do all planets in our solar system. The Tropical (movable) Zodiac follows the apparent path of the Sun. This path is called the ecliptic. The plane of the ecliptic is actually the plane in which Earth orbits the Sun. The planes of all planetary orbits except that of Pluto lie within  $7^\circ$  (seven degrees) of the plane of the ecliptic; Pluto's orbit varies about  $17^\circ$  from the ecliptic.

The path of the ecliptic as it encircles the Earth forms an elliptical (oval) pattern that approximates a circle, which contains  $360^\circ$ . That part of space surrounding Earth, which includes the ecliptic and the orbits of the planets, forms the Zodiac Belt, a circular band approximately  $18^\circ$  thick that extends about  $9^\circ$  on either side of the ecliptic. This circular belt is divided into twelve equal sections of  $30^\circ$  each, designated signs of the zodiac. Signs of the zodiac describe parts of the heavens much like lines of longitude describe parts of Earth. The zodiacal position of a planet is called its zodiacal longitude.

A circle such as the Zodiac Belt has no beginning or end, but for astrological purposes that point on the ecliptic where the Sun appears to cross over the equator as it travels from south to north each year is defined as  $0^\circ$  Aries. At that time, the time of the vernal equinox, the Sun appears to be directly above Earth's equator. The vernal equinox heralds the beginning of spring and the Sun's entry into the sign of Aries. The Sun's position on the ecliptic at the first moment of spring marks the starting point of the zodiac. Aries is the first sign of the zodiac; the other eleven signs follow in order: Taurus, Gemini, Cancer,



Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces (see Figure 1). This zodiacal sequence makes it possible to identify consistently certain parts of the heavens. Because of the particular spatial relationship between each sign and Earth, each sign's influence on Earth is uniquely significant. The way planetary energy manifests on Earth depends upon characteristics peculiar to the sign a planet occupies. Signs do not alter the nature of planets; they color the mode of planetary action.

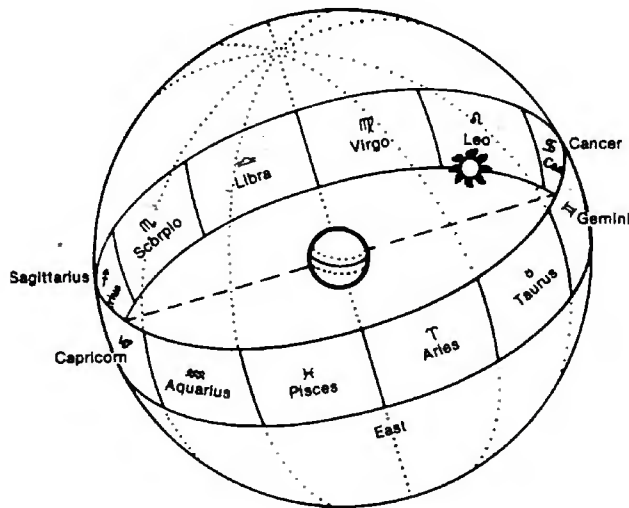


Figure 1. The Zodiac Belt

The signs of the Tropical Zodiac are not to be confused with constellations of the same name. At one time, over two thousand years ago, constellations and like signs coincided in space. However, at the spring and fall equinoxes the Sun appears to cross the equator slightly westward of the points it crossed the year before. Because of this gradual westward movement of the equinoctial points along the ecliptic, called Precession of the Equinoxes, the position of the Tropical Zodiac shifts slightly each year. In 1980 the constellations lagged about 24° behind signs of the same name. The constellation Pisces appeared in the background over the eastern horizon when the sign Aries rose over the horizon. The sidereal zodiac describes positions of constellations. The point 6° Pisces on the sidereal zodiac corresponds roughly to 0° Aries on the Tropical Zodiac. The word zodiac in this book refers to the Tropical Zodiac unless otherwise stated.

The first coordinate for identifying a planet's position in space is zodiacal longitude. A second coordinate, declination, measures the distance in degrees a planet lies north or south of the celestial equator (the projection of Earth's equator into space). Zodiacal longitude and declination are the only measurements needed to pinpoint the location of a planet in our solar system. (Celestial latitude defines a planet's position north or south of the ecliptic. This text follows the more common practice of using declination instead.)

Once a planet's zodiacal position is established, the planet is placed in the corresponding degree in the horoscope. The sign and degree of the zodiac that rises over the eastern horizon at the time of birth is the "starting point" or Ascendant of the horoscope. The Ascendant is marked in the eastern section of the horoscope; the remaining degrees of the zodiac continue counterclockwise around the horoscope in order until the circle is closed and the entire zodiac is contained within. The declination of a planet is not entered in the face of a horoscope; it is listed separately.

Beginning with the Ascendant, the horoscope is sectioned into twelve parts called houses, each numbered consecutively from one to twelve in the same order as the signs, counterclockwise. The point of the zodiac at which a house begins is the house cusp. A house ends where the next begins. Cusp lines which separate the houses resemble the spokes of a wheel (see Figure 2). After the houses are marked in a horoscope, the planets are entered in the houses according to sign and degree.

The planets, signs and houses have specific functions in a horoscope, functions that are interrelated. Each house represents a particular area of life; the planets activate the affairs of the houses and energize the drives of the individual; the signs influence the expression of planetary drives and house affairs.

The houses are divisions of a horoscope. The signs are divisions of the zodiac. Note that the directional points east, west, north and south in an astrological map are the reverse of those designated on a geographic map (see Figure 2).

Certain of the planets, signs and houses are closely allied by virtue of natural rulership. Each house is associated with a particular sign called its natural sign; each sign is ruled by a particular planet(s) called its natural planetary ruler; each house is ruled (governed) naturally by the planet(s) that rules its natural sign.

For example, Aries, the first sign of the zodiac, is the natural sign of the first house; both Aries and the first house are ruled naturally by the planet Mars (see Figure 2). To say that a planet naturally rules a particular house and sign means that the three elements (planet, sign and house) have a natural affinity for each other and share common attributes. For example, among characteristics shared by the first house, Aries, and Mars are initiatory qualities. The first house represents beginnings; Aries expresses initiative; Mars, the energy planet, is associated with igniting action.

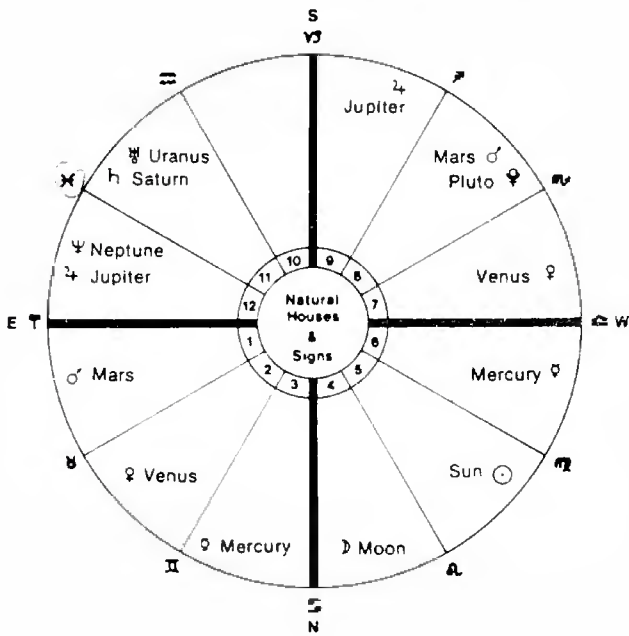


Figure 2. Houses and Signs in Natural Order with Planetary Rulers

In a horoscope, a planet is said to rule the house whose cusp bears the sign naturally ruled by that planet. If Aries is placed on the cusp of the fifth house in a particular horoscope, Mars, as natural planetary ruler of Aries, rules the fifth house of that horoscope. Regardless of horoscope placement, signs and planets retain their natural rulerships. The affairs of a house are energized by the planets occupying and ruling that house; the activities of a house are expressed in accordance with the sign on the cusp.

Aspects, the angular relationships between planets, influence the quality and dispersion of planetary energies. To be in aspect, two planets must be placed a specified number of degrees apart in the zodiac. The

energy of a planet is channeled into houses occupied and ruled by other planets if it is in aspect with those planets. Planetary action directed by aspect is modified according to the nature of the aspect and the planets involved. Aspects bring into sharper focus the information provided by the distribution of the signs and planets throughout the houses of the horoscope.

The astrologer studies the signs, planets, houses, aspects and interrelationships that exist among the various elements of a horoscope. Each factor is assessed in light of all other relevant factors and interpreted accordingly. The effectiveness of astrology depends not only upon the astrologer's knowledge, but also upon the astrologer's ability to communicate with a client. The rich symbolism of astrology must be interpreted in language that is meaningful to the client, leaving no room for doubt or misunderstanding. Many common astrological terms have no meaning in everyday conversation; technical terms are obscure and often misleading to those who are not well versed in astrology.

Archaic terms that sprang from traditional astrological literature and are still in use today do not carry the same connotation as in the past. Words such as "affliction" and "malefic" as currently used in astrology do not have dire meanings. An afflicted planet does not indicate calamity; it is one that forms disharmonious aspects with other planets so that planetary energies do not combine compatibly. Afflictions tend to motivate negative expression of planetary energies; positive expression depends upon the effort and direction supplied by the individual. A planet described as malefic is not "evil"; planets do not have the powers of good or evil. Afflictions to malefic planets are, perhaps, more difficult to handle in terms of directing energies productively, but whether energies are helpful or not rests ultimately with the individual who utilizes them.

Modern astrology is not fatalistic; it cannot be equated with "fortune telling." It demands a psychological approach, for it deals with the individual's potentials as defined by motivation and need.

If the astrologer is to awaken self-understanding in the client and acquaint her or him with the potentials for growth and self-realization that are described in the horoscope, the astrologer must be able to communicate on a level that is consistent with the client's needs. Some people identify with material or physical concepts while others relate on an intellectual, inspirational or emotional level. A client can be

alienated by an astrologer who is insensitive to his or her needs and who fails to approach the client on a level to which that client responds. Some people expect readings couched in esoteric language and sprinkled with astrological philosophy, but few can apply such readings to their own lives. A person who does not understand the message of the horoscope cannot benefit from that knowledge. Through study of a person's horoscope, much can be learned that enables the astrologer to reach that particular individual. The appropriate approach can create awareness within a client and understanding of potentials on which that person can draw, potentials that may have been unrecognized, and if developed and utilized, can enrich the client's life. Once a person recognizes weaknesses and strengths and understands natural motivations and drives (the inner urges which prompt action), that person is better able to control and direct innate drives and thereby develop more fully the potentials described in the horoscope. A person may experience anger and frustration because energy is wasted in fruitless endeavors; that same person can derive satisfaction and fulfillment by directing energy toward productive activities as indicated in the horoscope.

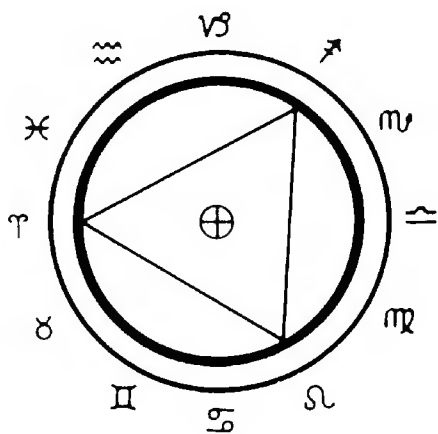
# 2 The Signs of the Zodiac

Each of the twelve signs that make up the zodiac appears in a horoscope in natural sequence as shown in Figures 1 and 2. No matter where Aries is placed in a horoscope, the next sign is Taurus, followed by Gemini, then Cancer and so on to Pisces, which directly precedes Aries. The signs act as twelve distinct mediums through which planetary energies and house affairs are expressed. For example, a person whose horoscope has Leo on the cusp of the second house, which rules personal finances, handles money in a manner characteristic of Leo; financial interests differ from those of one whose horoscope has Virgo, Libra or any sign other than Leo on the second house cusp. If Mercury, which energizes the mind, is in Capricorn, Capricornian qualities influence thought, communication and other mental

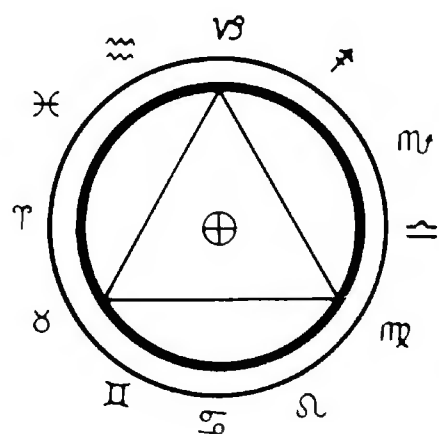
functions. Signs do not change the natures of planets or the meanings of houses. The influence of a sign on a planet or house is similar to the affect of a colored lens on light. Dispersion of light varies with the color of the lens, but colored lenses do not change the form (nature) of light energy, radiation.

## Sign Classifications

Although each sign has its own unique characteristics, it shares some attributes with other signs. Signs are classified in several groups according to their similarities. The signs in a particular group do not share all characteristics; they may also appear with different signs under another classification. A group

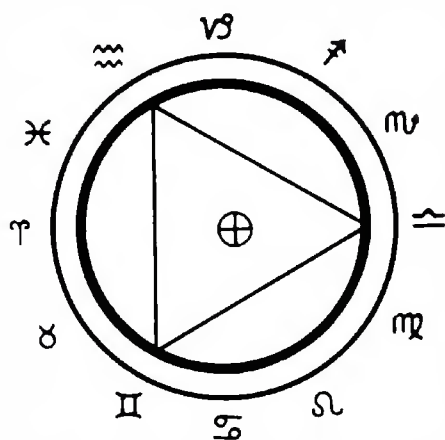


Triangle of fire signs:  
Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius.

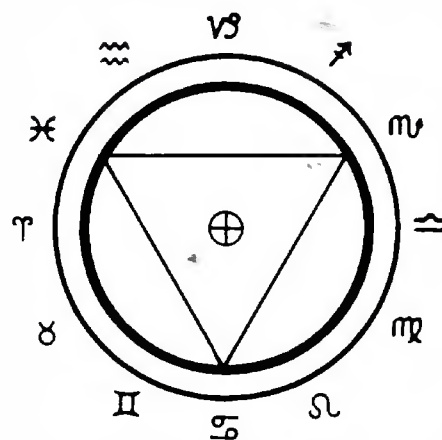


Triangle of earth signs:  
Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorn.

Figure 3. The Triplicities



Triangle of air signs:  
Gemini, Libra and Aquarius.



Triangle of water signs:  
Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces.

Figure 3. (continued) The Triplicities

of signs does not necessarily constitute a harmonious arrangement. In some instances signs within a classification exhibit conflicting qualities, but each category emphasizes common factors inherent in the signs listed therein.

#### Triplicities (Elements)

One major classification is called triplicities or elements. There are four triplicities: fire, earth, air and water. Each triplicity contains three signs; each sign is separated from the other two belonging to the same triplicity by 120° zodiacal longitude (see Figure 3).

Signs that belong to the same triplicity are compatible. That is, the mode of expression of any one sign in a given triplicity harmonizes with the mode of expression of the other two members even though sign characteristics differ in some respects. Characteristics common to each triplicity are summarized below.

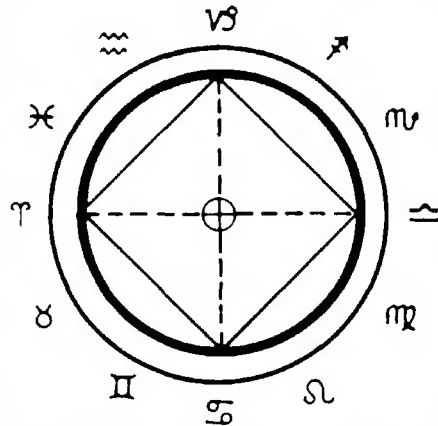
An individual whose horoscope contains a predominating number of planets in a particular triplicity exhibits traits associated with that triplicity. For example, the fiery individual probably has many planets in fire signs; heavily populated earth signs are indicative of the "solid citizen"; an abundance of air signs signifies the intellectual; water signs, the sensitive.

GROUP	SIGNS	MOTIVATION	COMMON CHARACTERISTICS
Fire	Aries Leo Sagittarius	Inspirational (Spirited)	Ardor, courage, creativity, enthusiasm, rashness, spontaneity, zeal.
Earth	Taurus Virgo Capricorn	Physical	Caution, conservatism dependability, possessiveness, practicality, reliability.
Air	Gemini Libra Aquarius	Mental	Alertness, curiosity, expression of ideas, intellectuality, perception, logic.
Water	Cancer Scorpio Pisces	Emotional	Psychism, receptivity, responsiveness, sensitivity, subjectivity.

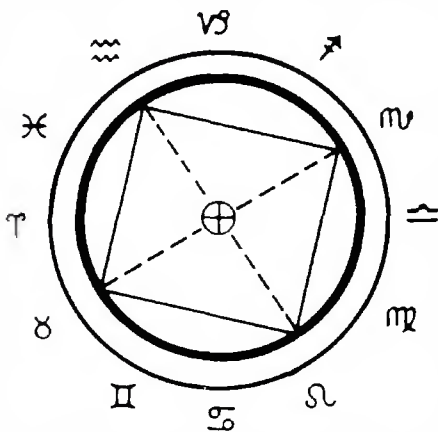
**Quadruplicities (Modes, Qualities)**

A second major classification consists of the three quadruplicities: cardinal (movable), fixed and mutable (common). Quadruplicities are also referred to as modes and qualities. Signs which lie 90° apart or

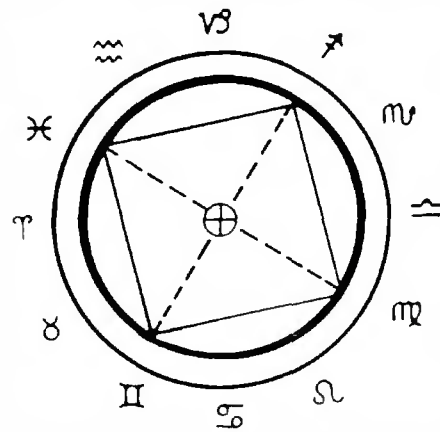
alike frequently rub each other the wrong way, signs of the same quadruplicity are uneasy with each other. Those in polarity complement each other although tension exists between them. Each sign of a polar



Square of cardinal signs: Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn.



Square of fixed signs: Taurus, Leo, Scorpio and Aquarius.



Square of mutable signs: Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces.

Figure 4. The Quadruplicities

opposite each other in the zodiac belong to the same quadruplicity (see Figure 4). Signs opposite each other are said to be in polarity. These signs are connected by dotted lines in Figure 4.

Signs belonging to the same quadruplicity do not function smoothly together despite likenesses, or perhaps because of them. Just as people who are much

combination possesses some qualities the other lacks, qualities that are supplementary. For example, in the Aries/Libra polar combination, Aries expression is pointed; Libra supplies tact. In the following summary of quadruplicities, note that one sign from each triplicity appears in each quadruplicity.

GROUP	SIGNS	COMMON CHARACTERISTICS
Cardinal (Movable)	Aries Cancer Libra Capricorn	Action, drive initiative, motivation.
Fixed	Taurus Leo Scorpio Aquarius	Determination, persistence, stability, self-reliance.
Mutable (Common)	Gemini Virgo Sagittarius Pisces	Adaptability, changeability, flexibility, versatility.

The predominating quadruplicity in a horoscope describes in part that person's attitudes and approach to circumstances. Cardinal people act promptly; fixed people resist change; mutable people adapt easily to changing conditions.

#### Positive and Negative Signs

All fire and air signs are classified as positive (masculine); earth and water signs are classed as negative (feminine). Positive signs indicate dynamic, outgoing expression; negative signs denote receptivity and passive expression.

#### Articulate and Human Signs

Gemini, Virgo, Libra, Sagittarius and Aquarius are called articulate signs. These signs are also classed as human by some authorities. Others who do not combine the two classifications omit Libra and the last 15° of Sagittarius from the human category but include them in the articulate group. Articulate and human signs are associated with human qualities such as speech and sparse body hair. With the exception of Libra and Sagittarius, these signs are symbolically represented by human figures. The scales is the pictorial symbol for Libra; the centaur-archer is the symbol for Sagittarius.

#### Inarticulate Signs (Quadrupedian, Bestial)

The inarticulate signs are Aries, Taurus, Leo and Capricorn. These signs are also called quadrupedian and bestial signs. They are symbolized by four-footed animals that have voices but lack power of speech.

Capricorn is pictured either as the goat-fish (two-footed) or a mountain goat. The last 15° of Sagittarius is classed as quadrupedian or bestial by authorities who do not classify it as human, but it is not included in the inarticulate category.

#### Mute Signs

The water signs, Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces, are termed mute signs. They are characterized by the crab, the scorpion and the fish respectively, all voiceless creatures. These signs are often associated with an inability to communicate freely.

#### Fruitful Signs

This classification describes another attribute of the water signs, Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces. These signs are associated with fertility.

#### Barren Signs

Gemini, Leo and Virgo are considered barren signs and are associated with infertility.

#### Double Signs

The double signs, Gemini, Sagittarius and Pisces, also called double-bodied or bicorporeal signs, are characterized by dual qualities. Double signs imply dualism in the area of activity described by their position in a horoscope.

#### Equinoctial Signs

The Sun's ingress (entry) into the equinoctial signs, Aries and Libra, ushers in two seasons of the year. In the northern hemisphere, spring commences at the time of the vernal equinox when the Sun enters 0° Aries. The Sun's entrance into 0° Libra coincides with the autumnal equinox and the beginning of autumn. These signs are associated with beginnings and announcements.

#### Solstice Signs (Tropical Signs)

Cancer and Capricorn are solstice signs. The Sun's entrance into 0° Cancer marks the summer solstice and the official start of summer in the northern hemisphere. As the Sun enters 0° Capricorn, the winter solstice begins the winter season. These signs are also called tropical signs because they occupy the parts of the ecliptic where the Sun reaches its farthest point north (the Tropic of Cancer) and south (Tropic of Capricorn).

each year. These signs are associated with beginnings and turning points.

### **Ingress Signs**

The equinoctial and solstice signs, Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn, all cardinal signs, are classed together as ingress signs. As a group, these signs represent beginnings.

### **Spring Signs**

Aries, Taurus and Gemini, the spring signs, are the signs that the Sun traverses during the spring each year in the northern hemisphere. These signs are associated with the planting of seed and the budding stage of new growth.

### **Summer Signs**

Cancer, Leo and Virgo are the summer signs in the northern hemisphere. The Sun transits these signs during the summer months. These signs are indicative of growth and development.

### **Autumn Signs**

Libra, Scorpio and Sagittarius are the autumn signs in the northern hemisphere. The Sun crosses these signs in autumn. The maturing phase of growth and the harvest are associated with these signs.

### **Winter Signs**

Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces, the signs through which the Sun travels during winter in the northern hemisphere, are the winter signs. They are associated with the dormant period of growth. Note that the seasons and the growth cycle are reversed in the southern hemisphere.

### **Signs of Long Ascension**

Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio and Sagittarius, the summer and autumn signs, are signs of long ascension in the northern hemisphere. Since there are twelve signs and twenty-four hours in a day, it would seem logical that a different sign would rise over the eastern horizon every two hours. This is true only at the equator. These slow-rising signs take more than two hours to pass over the eastern horizon and represent the longer phase of an uneven cycle.

### **Signs of Short Ascension**

Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces, the spring and winter signs, are signs of short ascension in the northern hemisphere. These fast-rising signs take less than two hours to rise over the eastern horizon and represent the shorter phase of an uneven cycle. Signs of long and short ascension are reversed in the southern hemisphere.

### **Northern Signs (Nocturnal Signs)**

Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo and Virgo are called northern signs because they occupy the northern half (lower section) of a chart with Aries on the cusp of the first house. (A natural chart is shown in Chapter 1, Figure 2.) They are also called nocturnal or night signs because their natural positions are in the section of the chart that is below the horizon. In Figure 2, the Aries/Libra axis represents the horizon. Northern signs express personal needs and self-interests.

### **Southern Signs (Day Signs)**

The southern signs, also called day signs, are Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces. In a natural chart these signs are placed in the southern (upper) half, which represents that part of the sky above the horizon. Southern signs are associated with objective needs and external interests.

Although each group of signs is based on common properties of its members, the diversity of signs is apparent from the number of different categories to which each sign belongs. The various groups of which each sign is a part are as follows:

**Aries:** Fire, cardinal, positive, inarticulate, quadruped, bestial, equinoctial, ingress, spring, short ascension, northern and nocturnal.

**Taurus:** Earth, fixed, negative, inarticulate, quadruped, bestial, spring, short ascension, northern and nocturnal.

**Gemini:** Air, mutable, positive, articulate, human, barren, double, spring, short ascension, northern and nocturnal.

**Cancer:** Water, cardinal, negative, mute, fruitful, solstitial, tropical, ingress, summer, long ascension, northern and nocturnal.



**Leo:** Fire, fixed, positive, inarticulate, quadruped, bestial, barren, summer, long ascension, northern and nocturnal.

**Virgo:** Earth, mutable, negative, articulate, human, barren, summer, long ascension, northern and nocturnal.

**Libra:** Air, cardinal, positive, articulate, (sometimes classed as human), equinoctial, ingress, autumn, long ascension, southern and day.

**Scorpio:** Water, fixed, negative, mute, fruitful, autumn, long ascension, southern and day.

**Sagittarius:** Fire, mutable, positive, articulate, human (or the first 15° human and the latter 15° as quadruped and bestial), double, autumn, long ascension, southern and day.

**Capricorn:** Earth, cardinal, negative, inarticulate, quadruped, bestial, solstitial, tropical, ingress, winter, short ascension, southern and day.

**Aquarius:** Air, fixed, positive, articulate, human, winter, short ascension, southern and day.

**Pisces:** Water, mutable, negative, mute, fruitful, double, winter, short ascension, southern and day.


Signs of the same group do not express like qualities in an identical manner. For example, cardinal signs Aries and Cancer both express initiative, a cardinal quality. However, Arian initiative is spontaneous (fire) and dynamic (positive). Cancerian initiative reflects sensitivity (water) and receptivity (negative).

Characteristics common to the triplicity, quadruplicity and positive or negative classifications of a sign are among more prominent sign qualities. These categories are noted in the sections of this chapter that describe individual sign attributes.


## *Astrological Symbols*

Each sign has as its symbol a written glyph. Each glyph is composed of variations of the following astrological symbols:

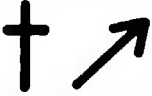
### The Circle

 The circle, called the Circle of Spirit or Ring of Eternity, signifies spirit or life force. It is associated with the Sun, which represents the source of life. The circle may be partially open.


### The Half-Circle

 The half-circle or crescent signifies the soul. Called the Cradle of the Soul or the Crescent of Consciousness, it is associated with the Moon, which reflects the light of the Sun.

### The Cross

 The cross signifies the physical or material world and is associated with the Earth. It may be written as a junction of two lines or as a line with an arrowhead. It is referred to as the Cross of Matter or the Cross of Substance.

### The Line

 A straight line without another line intersecting or joining it signifies the power of the Sun. It is called the Scepter of the Sun or the Scepter of Authority.

Sign glyphs are pictured and described in the part of this chapter devoted to individual signs. The glyphs are more than a convenient shorthand. Each symbolizes the meaning of the sign it represents. Some glyphs picture parts of the body ruled by corresponding signs, although it may take some imagination to discern this. With each glyph an historical symbol that portrays sign characteristics is shown.

## *Characteristics of the Signs*

The extent or sphere of a sign's influence on an individual cannot be ascertained until the horoscope is drawn up, showing the relation of signs to planets and houses. Bear in mind that if a sign is a personal factor in a horoscope its astrological qualities will be prominent in that person's nature. For example, the sign occupied by the Sun, which represents the ego and creative self-expression, and the one placed on the Ascendant (the rising sign), which governs appearance and attitudes, describe personal characteristics. Signs associated with houses that concern outside interests such as finances or work are not interpreted in the same manner as those which influence the personality. Nevertheless, the essential qualities of a sign remain the same whether expressed in one's character or applied to less personal areas of activity.

Basic astrological theory provides the foundation for horoscope delineation (interpretation), but meanings cannot be taken directly from a textbook word for word; such meanings are isolated. Textbook descriptions must be interpreted as they apply to a particular horoscope in relation to all other astrological factors present.

## Aries ✦



The historical symbol for Aries, the ram, leader of its flock, depicts qualities of leadership. The glyph resembles a ram's horns. It consists of two half-circles (Crescents of Consciousness that symbolize the soul) that join at a straight line

(Scepter of the Sun, which represents the power of the Sun). It describes the polarity in nature (male and female, positive and negative) united in the power of life force. The inverted crescents signify the release of power, which inspires new activities and the beginning of life. Aries rules the head and face and the glyph is emblematic of the brow or forehead. These parts of the body are most apt to be injured if Aries is a personal sign in the horoscope.

Aries, ruled by the planet Mars, is the natural sign of the first house. It signifies beginnings and new enterprises; hence, Aries is indicative of the pioneer spirit.

A cardinal-fire-positive sign, Aries represents dynamic action, initiative, self-motivation, enthusiastic drive, aggressive effort and impulsiveness.

People born when the Sun is in Aries (March 21–April 19) are highly competitive, outgoing, resourceful, confident and decisive. They step into the thick of things boldly, sure of themselves, fearless of adverse consequences, unafraid of failure.

Arians are real go-getters. Aries women are especially well-equipped for the career world. They are aggressive, sure in the knowledge that they can do anything a man or another woman can do and more. There is no place for male chauvinism in the life of an Aries woman.

Quick-thinking and impetuous, headstrong and audacious, Arians often act without giving adequate consideration to the ultimate results of their actions. Aries men, cocky and brash, may project a "macho"

image. They perform daring deeds, but many take reckless and foolhardy chances to prove themselves.

Impatient, Arians are not content to work for years toward singular goals. Once they lose enthusiasm for an idea or project, as they quite frequently do, they are quick to turn to something new. Arians need to develop the habit of thinking things through before acting hastily. In order to realize fulfillment and success, they must learn to direct their boundless energies toward productive and attainable objectives.

Arians require the reinforcement of immediate feedback and tangible rewards if they are to stick with their endeavors. What Arians lack in persistence, they make up for in ambition and the will to succeed. They are natural-born achievers who, because of their dauntless courage and drive to be first, are leaders in their peer groups.

Conscious of the importance of appearance, Arians dress well and act in a self-assured manner. They talk about their successes but usually neglect to mention their failures. Arians believe that projecting a successful image ensures success. The Aries person projects a confidence that tells the world, "I am ready for anything," and, more importantly, the Arian is.

Outspoken, Arians are seldom tactful, often argumentative. An Arian's temper surfaces quickly but just as quickly evaporates. They are warm human beings, spontaneous in friendship and ardent in love.

Arians are energetic people who gravitate toward active jobs and hobbies. Both Aries men and women are able executives, capable of making decisions and acting on their own volition. They excel in jobs that require individual skills.

Most Arians enjoy outdoor sports such as hunting, tennis and golf. The more daring are often enthusiasts of auto racing and rougher sports such as football, wrestling or boxing. Needlework or carving may appeal to the Arian as an indoor hobby.

Particular physical characteristics are associated with each sign. Those attributed to Aries include a ruddy complexion, a triangular or heart-shaped face, a widow's peak, arched eyebrows, a pointed chin and perhaps a scar or mole on the head or face. Profuse hair, a characteristic of all quadrupedian signs, is common to Arians, but the hair thins early as is the tendency with fire signs. Thinning of the hair is most noticeable at the crown of the head where balding is likely to first appear. Regardless of the shade, a tinge of red usually colors the hair.

Each sign influences various occupations according to its areas of natural rulership. Aries is connected with manufacturing, metallurgy, the military and police work. Aries' rulership of the head, fire and sharp instruments or tools connects the sign with related occupations. Barber, hairdresser, dentist, dental technician, firefighter, miner, musician, surgeon, operating room assistant and welder are occupations influenced by Aries. Because of the diverse activities involved, most occupations are associated with more than one sign or planet.

Each sign vibrates to a particular musical tone and harmonizes with certain colors. A weekday, gemstone(s), metal and number are also associated with each sign. For Aries, these are as follows:

Colors: Scarlet, bright reds  
 Day: Tuesday  
 Gemstones: Diamond, garnet  
 Metal: Iron (steel)  
 Musical Tone: G  
 Number: 9

## Taurus

Taurus, ruled by the planet Venus, is the natural sign of the second house. The bull, historical symbol for Taurus, represents the bull-headedness characteristic of this sign. The glyph is composed of a circle (Circle of Spirit, life force) capped by a crescent. The Taurus crescent turns upward to retain, conserve and preserve the life force. The horns of a bull are not hard to picture in the glyph; it is more difficult to imagine the lower jaw, chin and neck (throat)—parts of the body ruled by Taurus.

Taurus, a fixed-earth-negative sign, characterizes purposeful action, steady drive, determined effort, endurance, reliability, conservatism and fixed attitudes. Persons born under a Taurus Sun (April 20–May 20) work long and hard to achieve their objectives. Industrious and persevering, they are not easily discouraged by difficulties; they endure as much hardship as is necessary to pursue their goals. Taureans do not jump into things without a great deal of forethought. Once they choose a course, they stick with it unless unalterable circumstances dictate otherwise.

Taureans go about their business quietly. Uncomplaining, they shoulder responsibility with fortitude, wear down obstacles by refusing to yield or turn back, and proceed with relentless determination along their chosen paths.

Set in their ways, Taureans resent anyone who interferes or attempts to force them to alter their habits. They try to establish a pattern to their lives. Taureans do not readily adapt to fluctuating trends or inconsistent situations and find it difficult to restructure their plans and actions around changing circumstances. They need to develop a greater degree of flexibility. The singularity of purpose and practical utilization of resources (skills and material assets) that are basic to their natures compensate largely for the Taurean lack of enterprise and versatility. Because of determination and persistence, many Taureans succeed where others fail. Taureans are patient; they can wait a long time, years if need be, to act on their plans. When they do, little can stop them.

Taureans make every effort to obtain creature comforts and material security. They are as devoted to their friends and loved ones as they are to the material goals to which they aspire. Although they may be possessive, jealous and stubborn, they are steadfast, sincere and warmhearted as well. Usually gentle and good-natured, it takes a lot to provoke them, but when their anger is aroused they are formidable and unrelenting.

Taureans possess an instinctive sense of color and beauty which is reflected in their taste in art, their clothing and their flair for home decor.

Taureans are usually practical money managers and have an inborn sense of value. A Taurean will buy one genuine article of real worth instead of two or three cheap imitations at the same price. From the possessions they acquire and the money they accumulate, Taureans derive emotional security and inner satisfaction.

Taureans are not essentially initiators or idea people; they are the ones who follow through and get things done. They are creative but not especially innovative. Taureans prefer jobs along established, reliable lines over those which are insecure or risky.

Taureans like to do things with their hands, and crocheting, flower arranging, gardening, painting, or sculpting are spare-time interests a Taurean might enjoy. A love of music might prompt membership in

a choir or musical group. Taureans possess vibrant voices; many are endowed with musical ability.

A distinctly Taurean individual has a squarish face, a broad forehead, a forelock or cowlick at the hairline, fleshy cheeks, flaring nostrils, full lips and a strong sturdy neck.

The sign is linked to occupations involving art, beauty, comfort, the voice and money. Some examples are art dealer, beautician or hair stylist, candy store operator, cashier, commercial artist, hotel receptionist or maid, innkeeper, loan officer, payroll clerk, bank teller and if talent is present, vocalist.

Colors: Cream, pale yellow, coral tints

Day: Friday

Gemstone: Emerald

Metal: Copper

Musical Tone: A

Number: 6

## Gemini

### II

The duality of Gemini is reflected in its historical symbol, the twins, and in its glyph. The glyph pictures two Crosses of Matter, which are symbolic of the pairs found in nature. Gemini rules the hands, arms, and lungs and has

general rulership over the nervous system, which is composed of two major parts, the central and the peripheral.

The natural sign of the third house, it is ruled by the planet Mercury.

The mutable-air-positive sign, Gemini, typifies diversified action, intellectual drive, diffuse effort, dexterity, fluency and attitudes that are both flexible and skeptical. A Gemini Sun (May 21–June 21) gives a person a lifelong thirst for knowledge without the persistence to concentrate on one particular field or topic for a long period of time.

Geminis learn easily, remember what they learn and are ever curious to know more. They accept little at face value or on the basis of popular opinion. Geminis must find out and prove for themselves, for only in fact and logic is their skepticism satisfied.

Geminis' interests are broad, but most need to develop continuity of thought and action. Usually they

have too many overlapping interests or conflicting objectives, which siphon energy away from main concerns. However, Geminis are able to handle two or more separate concepts at the same time. They can mull over several ideas and work on various endeavors concurrently. They may splinter their energies and talents, but Geminis have the capacity to unite the "splinters" into a cohesive effort toward an overall goal, and this they must do if they are to reach their full potentials.

Restless in body and mind, most Geminis have nervous dispositions. If routine becomes monotonous, a Gemini is apt to grow fidgety; pencil twirling, toe tapping, finger drumming or excessive chattering are attempts at alleviating boredom.

Geminis are non-conformists who resist cumbersome regulations that constrain their individuality. They do not function at best in a highly disciplined or regimented atmosphere.

The Gemini personality gives the impression of being perpetually lighthearted and carefree. These people are good company, witty, charming and entertaining. However, they can be overly clever and adroit: smooth talkers who are a bit too glib.

Intellectual and conversational skills are two of Gemini's strongest assets. A variety of interests, the aptitude to learn and retain knowledge, the capacity to reason and express ideas, and the ability to think and act quickly enable Geminis to cope with almost any circumstances that arise. Their success lies in part in a versatile approach to life and the ease with which they are able to adapt to ever-changing situations. If they cannot adjust (and Geminis are wise enough to know when they cannot), they deftly sidestep obstacles that impede progress. For Gemini, there is always another, perhaps more interesting, course ahead.

The Gemini temperament is best suited to an occupation that offers intellectual stimulation and permits diversified activity, though not necessarily of a physically strenuous nature.

Fencing, jogging, reading, traveling, writing or just visiting and chatting with friends appeal to most Geminis during free hours.

Typically, a Gemini has an ever-youthful appearance which is emphasized by refined, clear-cut features, alert, twinkling eyes, a slightly turned up nose, quick movements, an agile step and a slender build. As with all human signs, body and facial hair

is sparse. Geminis have excellent motor coordination. Many Geminis are ambidextrous.

Occupations which involve use of the hands and those relating to communication or transportation are associated with the sign Gemini. Bus or truck driver, computer operator, manicurist, news commentator, secretary or stenographer, telephone operator, travel agent and typist are typical examples of occupations influenced by Gemini.

Colors: Azure, light blues, quiet hues

Day: Wednesday

Gemstones: Aquamarine, crystal

Metal: Quicksilver

Musical Tone: E

Number: 5

## Cancer



The crab, historical symbol for Cancer, is descriptive of the protective and defensive qualities inherent in this sign. The glyph is composed of two circles, each joined to a crescent. One is inverted and the other turned upward,

indicating that what is given is not lost but retained to nurture the spirit or vital life force. The glyph depicts the human breasts, which Cancer rules along with the stomach and digestive system. Cancer, the natural sign of the fourth house, is ruled by the Moon.

A cardinal-water-negative sign, Cancer represents strong emotional drive, great sensitivity, the nurturing instinct, the principle of motherhood, conscientious action, tenacious effort, impressionability and fluid or changeable attitudes. Persons born when the Sun is in Cancer (June 22–July 22) are imaginative, responsive, sympathetic, gentle and kind—except when they are hurt; then the Cancer “claw” goes into action. When angry, Cancerians are sharp-spoken, momentarily vindictive, soon forgiving but seldom forgetting.

Cancerians are somewhat retiring and unassuming, though many develop a sophisticated mask to hide inner insecurity and protect emotional vulnerability. Sensitive, they are deeply hurt by ridicule and derogatory remarks.

Cancer people are difficult to understand because their reactions depend upon their moods. When they feel happy and cheerful, they are congenial. When disappointed or depressed, they become irritable, or they withdraw into an impenetrable shell. Cancerians remain aloof from that which hurts them; they won't willingly give anyone or anything a second chance to hurt them further.

Cancerians do not readily reveal themselves, partly because they fear disapproval and partly because they are secretive by nature, a characteristic of all water signs.

Cancerians face a need to overcome lack of confidence and a tendency toward self-centeredness; they can do so by tapping the deep well of emotional energy that is theirs and directing it outwardly in the form of creative and useful endeavor.

Cancerians seek material as well as emotional security. They need a few dollars to fall back on in case of financial emergency just as they need someone who cares to depend on in an emotional crisis, so they save part of their earnings for the proverbial rainy day and work hard to preserve their homes and families.

Noncombative by nature, Cancerians do not like to argue and fight but will do so to protect their interests and the interests of loved ones. Most are more inclined to resist passively than to force a confrontation. They are persistent, though, and can wear down the stiffest opposition in time.

Cancerians are warm and affectionate. Many are self-sacrificing in love. They can become overly possessive, smothering those near and dear in their desire to nurture and protect. Loyal and sentimental, they remember the kindnesses others bestow upon them. Still, Cancerians are changeable and their friends and interests shift from time to time.

Natural-born hosts and hostesses, Cancerians have a knack for making others feel at ease, strangers and acquaintances alike. They respond intuitively to the needs of people whom they encounter. Many serve well in public capacities because most people feel comfortable in their presence and instinctively trust them; without effort, they gain the confidence of others.

From their jobs, Cancerians need both the reassurance of approval and a paycheck that equals their efforts. They are happiest when taking care of things or people, for both men and women of this sign exhibit strong protective urges. They are well suited to positions in which public trust is important.

Cancerians are avid collectors who derive much enjoyment from historical memorabilia, fine glassware or china, and antiques. Not-too-strenuous water sports such as fishing, light swimming or boating are natural spare time outlets for them. Photography is also a favorite activity.

Cancer persons have expressive features, a naive countenance, a round face, roundish, widespread eyes that have a moist appearance and a full figure. They generally walk with a distinctive rolling gait.

Occupations that are associated with liquids, the home, the family and household services are ruled by this sign. Cancer-related occupations include apartment-house manager, hotel keeper, baker, caterer, cook or chef, door-to-door salesperson, dairy farmer, obstetrician, midwife, oceanographer, plumber, waiter or waitress. Businesses that are operated from the home are ruled by Cancer. This sign also has some influence in politics.

Colors: Green, blue-green

Day: Monday

Gemstone: Pearl

Metal: Silver

Musical Tone: *F*

Number: 2

## Leo



Leo, whose natural house is the fifth, is ruled by the Sun. The sign is associated with royalty. Fittingly, its historical symbol is the lion, king of the jungle. The curved lines of the glyph smoothly link life force (spirit) with the soul.

Leo rules the back, spinal cord and heart, which the glyph resembles.

Authoritative action, power-seeking drive, noble effort, love of life, vitality, creativity and the principle of fatherhood are embodied in this fixed-fire-positive sign. Those persons whose natal Sun is placed in Leo (July 23–August 22) are warmhearted, outgoing, proud and courageous. They possess a deep-rooted desire to get to the top. Leos like to be in the mainstream of life. They tend to gravitate toward center stage where they can exercise their natural leadership abilities. If

circumstances frustrate their drives, Leos may develop less desirable qualities such as arrogance, conceit and pomposity.

Whatever Leos do, they do with dramatic flair. It is almost impossible for them not to attract attention.

Leos harbor much pride in themselves; they try to live up to a reputation of honesty, integrity, reliability and generosity. Because self-esteem is important to Leos, they seldom act in a manner that is demeaning or might give them cause for regret.

Leos stand firm in their ideas and beliefs. They can be opinionated, stubborn, bossy and egotistical despite the fact that they are basically broad-minded, just and kind. Many tend to get all wrapped up in their own self-importance, so they need to periodically evaluate their perspective.

As a rule, Leos are popular. They work hard, and play hard. Warm, gregarious and fun-loving, they are convivial social mixers. Aware of the value of friendship, they form many lasting associations.

Leos' flamboyant style and personal magnetism appeal to the opposite sex. In romance Leos are ardent, affectionate, sentimental and extravagant. Love is important to them; they need someone to adore, admire and flatter them, for in love, as in everything else, Leos must play the leading role. If they do not receive the affection and attention they need, their vanity and pride suffer as well as their hearts.

Leos have optimistic, cheerful, good-natured dispositions. At times they are hot-headed, but do not harbor resentment or thoughts of revenge. There is too much in life for Leos to do and enjoy for them to waste energy in self-defeating efforts.

Although Leo is a barren sign, it rules children. Leo parents are not noted for large families, but most are genuinely fond of youngsters. They demand obedience and respect from their offspring (no one questions the authority of a Leo mother or father); however, Leos are demonstrative parents who express their love in ways that children can understand.

The ability to take charge, to exert authority and to execute responsibility combined with a natural aptitude for the spotlight qualify the Leo individual for a leader's role. Proud and ambitious, they are ill at ease in subordinate positions. Women of this sign are as discontented in secondary posts as are the men. Whatever course Leos choose, they will probably be found at the helm eventually.

As hobbies Leos like amateur acting, golf and working with young people. They also enjoy the beach, gambling and parties.

An unmistakably regal bearing is the stamp of Leo. The women have the presence of a queen; the men project dignity and nobility. Leos have striking eyes, large and wide-spaced. Their thick hair resembles a lion's heavy mane until it begins to thin at the temples. The commanding Leo appearance is enhanced by every movement, reflecting the elegant grace of the jungle cat, proud and aristocratic.

The sign Leo rules or co-rules the stock market, the theater, sports, gambling houses and gold. Among occupations influenced by this sign are professional card dealer, gambling casino operator, goldsmith, golf or tennis pro, motion picture director, recreation or playground director, stadium manager, stock broker and theater owner.

Colors: Orange, gold tones

Day: Sunday

Gemstone: Tiger eye

Metal: Gold

Musical Tone: C

Number: 1

## Virgo



Virgo is symbolized by the virgin (purity of body) holding a hyacinth (purity of mind) in one hand and a stalk of grain in the other.

The grain represents the potential for fertility, but Virgo is a so-called barren sign. This sign is more apt

to produce a child of the mind than a child of the body, for it is ruled by the mental planet, Mercury. The concept of purity is further exemplified in the glyph, which depicts the female generative organs in chastity. Virgo rules the abdomen and intestines and exercises part rulership over the female reproductive system. A mutable-earth-negative sign, Virgo is the natural sign of the sixth house.

Methodical action, dedicated effort, exacting drive, a sensible attitude, a knack for detail and a discriminating mind are attributes of Virgo. Persons whose Sun is in Virgo (August 23–September 22) are

predominantly motivated by a sense of duty; they spare no effort to fulfill their obligations. Virgos abhor laziness, procrastination and tardiness in themselves as well as in others.

Although career-oriented, Virgos are more interested in doing an efficient job than in taking over as boss. Most do not resent the detailed work that others consider tedious. They are perceptive and logical. To a Virgo, facts should fall into an orderly sequence; if they do not, something is amiss. Unfortunately, Virgos can focus so much on trivia that they "can't see the forest for the trees." Virgo's strongest point is the ability to analyze data and reach reasonable and accurate conclusions though they need to learn to distinguish between the relevant and the extraneous.

Because they are basically insecure, Virgos are often indecisive. The drive toward perfection that most of them exhibit is a means of bolstering self-confidence. Meticulous in everything they do, Virgos can be real "nit-pickers" who expect their associates to be as fastidious and efficient as they are.

Most Virgos are worriers who fret over anything and everything.

Diet and hygiene are important to Virgos. Many are vegetarians; some make a fetish of cleanliness, bathing several times a day.

Virgos are modest, gentle, somewhat reticent individuals. They seldom fritter away precious time in pointless socializing and have little regard for purely hedonistic activities. Most are drawn to persons who are intellectually stimulating or who share similar job interests.

Thoughtful of friends in practical ways, Virgos are more apt to help needy acquaintances help themselves than to extend outright handouts.

Undemonstrative and inhibited, most Virgos appear indifferent to romance. A Virgo's standards in a mate are high, perhaps more idealistic than realistic, and many choose to remain single rather than lower their expectations.

Virgos are happiest in jobs that serve a useful purpose. To achieve fulfillment, they must feel that their work is of practical value to society.

Herb gardens, weaving, pets, volunteer service, walking and writing provide healthy spare time outlets for Virgos' nervous tension.

Most Virgos are meticulously groomed, though some may be so occupied with mental details that they

ignore physical appearances. Virgos have a serene countenance, soft, cool eyes and ivory-smooth skin.

Virgo is the sign of service, representative of the work ethic. It is connected with health, medicine, small animals and fields involving detailed work or analysis. Animal shelter employee, bookkeeper, chemist, civil servant, dietician, health officer, librarian, masseur, naturopath, nurse, dressmaker or tailor, statistical analyst and veterinarian are occupations ruled by Virgo.

Colors: Indigo, dark muted shades

Day: Wednesday

Gemstones: Agate, pink jasper

Metal: Quicksilver

Musical Tone: E

Numbers: 5

## Libra

The scales is the symbol for Libra, the sign of balance and justice. This theme is further pictured in the glyph, an inverted crescent above the double line of power, which symbolizes the soul of justice ruling the Scepter of Authority. The

glyph resembles the setting sun; appropriately, Libra is the natural sign of the seventh house, the cusp of which is the sunset portion of a horoscope. Venus is the planetary ruler of Libra, a cardinal-air-positive sign. The sign rules the kidneys.

Libra stands for cooperative action, approval-seeking drive, mentally motivated effort, harmony, teamwork and impartial attitudes. Persons with a Libra Sun (September 23–October 22) are mild-mannered and peace-loving. Librans try to resolve their problems by arbitration rather than by force. Violence is repugnant to Librans; they will fight, especially if principles of justice are at stake, but usually only as a last resort.

Librans like to argue in the sense of debate, not in the sense of quarreling. They are strategists who outsmart their opponents. Subtly persuasive, they are masters at the art of suggestion. If overt persuasion does not work, a Libran will plant the seed of an idea and nurture it so skillfully that opponents frequently fail to realize they are playing into Libra's hands.

The gentle, amiable, courteous manner of most Librans may fool others into thinking they are push-overs, but a Libran is not weak. Instead of brawn or physical intimidation Librans rely on intelligence and diplomacy to get their way.

An instinctive sense of fair play motivates Librans. They weigh all aspects of an issue before forming a final judgment. In so doing, they frequently appear to be vacillating; however, once Librans arrive at decisions they back them up fully, sure that their conclusions are unbiased and just.

Librans try hard to please others because the approval of their peers is necessary to their inner security. They need companionship. A Libran is happier and more productive as part of a team or partnership endeavor than when working alone.

Socially inclined, they instinctively know how to get along with their associates and acquaintances. Although they seldom display anger, when a Libran's temper does erupt, one can expect a stormy session while it lasts.

Librans possess a highly developed sense of aesthetic sensitivity. Everything about these people spells refinement and graciousness. A Libran's choice of friends, clothing and furnishings reflects an aversion for the ugly, the crude, the vulgar, the garish. They shy away from anything or anyone who offends their sense of delicacy and good taste.

Because Librans desire a companion with whom to share their life, they are susceptible to romance. The Libran is a romantic, tender, passionate lover who enjoys the intimacy of a candlelight dinner for two. Few Librans go through life without marrying at least once.

The lifestyle of most Librans mirrors a yearning for luxury and the finer things of life. They are not extravagant in the strictest sense of the word; few squander their money or buy indiscriminately. They do however, spend as much as they can afford and more on beautiful possessions and expensive social habits. Librans may have little money in the bank, but they derive great pleasure from what their money buys.

Librans prefer to work in congenial surroundings that are pleasing to the eye. Discordancies of any kind upset and distract them. Harmony and cooperation are important to a Libran's job performance.

Librans enjoy intellectual pastimes such as chess, word games, reading and puzzles. Cultural activities such as the ballet, concerts, the opera and art also appeal to them.



Libra is a sign of beauty and, as a general rule, Librans are unusually good-looking with expressive eyes, exquisite facial features, skin that has the beauty of alabaster and a well-proportioned figure.

Libra rules or co-rules art, beauty, social gatherings, balance and compromise. This sign is associated with such occupations as arbitrator or mediator, cosmetician, designer, diplomat, florist, interior decorator, jeweler, juggler, marital counselor, social or protocol coordinator and trial lawyer. Libra also has influence in those professions and businesses that involve partnership.

Colors: Dark crimson, dusky hues  
 Day: Friday  
 Gemstone: Opal  
 Metal: Copper  
 Musical Tone: A  
 Number: 6

## Scorpio

Historically, the symbol for Scorpio is the scorpion, whose venomous sting characterizes the biting sarcasm attributed to this sign. Some authorities also ascribe the eagle and/or the phoenix to Scorpio. The eagle expresses the potential

for greatness inherent in this sign; the phoenix represents the resurrectional or regenerative powers associated with Scorpio. The glyph represents female genitalia; it resembles the glyph for Virgo, but the last leg of the Scorpio glyph is open, indicating sexual activity. The Scorpio glyph is sometimes written with an arrowhead to better distinguish it from that of Virgo.

Scorpio rules the sex organs and rectum and has part rulership over the human reproductive system. Traditionally Mars was given rulership of this sign and more recently, Pluto. Scorpio is the natural sign of the eighth house. It is associated with regeneration, sexual expression, death, metamorphosis, transformation and life after death.

Intense action, passionate drive, resolute effort, endurance, unflinching courage, unswerving purpose and inscrutable attitudes are qualities basic to this fixed-water-negative sign. The innate power in Scorpio can be likened to that of a seething volcano, impossible to contain.

A typical Scorpio (October 23–November 21) is strong-willed, masterful, obdurate, stout-hearted. Scorpios fear nothing. They plow into anything that suits their purposes, overriding opposition and pushing aside obstacles much as a steam roller clears a path. The capacity to overcome almost insurmountable barriers is largely responsible for the success Scorpios achieve. Their weakness, if any exists, is in the tendency to drive themselves too hard. Scorpios do not admit to fatigue or illness until they reach the point of exhaustion where they can no longer continue on will power alone. The same characteristics that enable Scorpios to accomplish great deeds can lead to ruthlessness, violence and cruelty if energy is misdirected.

Scorpios are reserved and taciturn yet argumentative and capable of explosive rage. They never pretend to agree with anyone in the interests of peace or harmony and can be brusque and sarcastic. Most are able to get across in a few words more than other people can express in a paragraph or two. Often, only a piercing look is all that is needed for a Scorpio to make a point.

Despite the emotional depth and passion in their nature, Scorpios seldom reveal their inner feelings by facial expression or mannerism except in anger. A stony mask hides their secrets well.

Selective in their choice of companions and intensely loyal to the chosen few, Scorpios can be vindictive and vengeful toward anyone who hurts their friends or loved ones. There is no in-between for Scorpios. They approve or disapprove, agree or disagree, like or dislike, love or hate—they are never indifferent. Scorpios are passionate lovers who are inclined to be jealous and possessive.

These people possess a natural curiosity and suspicion that is not satisfied with pat answers and superficialities. They probe until they ferret out any concealed facts. Naturally shrewd, Scorpios are seldom fooled or victimized by swindlers and con-artists.

Most Scorpios have the physical strength to carry out strenuous tasks as well as the intelligence to handle intricate mental problems. They are industrious and thorough as employees, masterful and domineering as employers.

Many Scorpios are sports enthusiasts who prefer demolition derbies, football and hunting over less violent sports. Other sideline activities might include herpetology, secret societies and the occult.

Male or female, tall or short, fair or swarthy, there is an aura of smoldering power and passion about a Scorpio. The most striking feature is the unsmiling eyes, which stare with a penetrating, unwavering gaze that is unnerving. Heavy brows and a sharp nose complete the intense countenance.

The sign Scorpio has bearing on occupations that have a connection with death and related affairs, salvage, joint financial interests and various types of research and investigation. Bill collector, butcher, coroner, detective, espionage agent, insurance adjuster, junk dealer, military strategist, mortician, pharmacist, research scientist, tax or treasury agent and surgeon are examples of Scorpio-ruled occupations.

Colors: Brown, maroon

Day: Tuesday

Gemstones: Bloodstone, topaz

Metal: Plutonium (iron traditionally)

Musical Tone: G above high C (G traditionally)

Number: 0 (9 traditionally)

## Sagittarius



The centaur-archer, half horse-half man, symbolically describes dual qualities of Sagittarius. The glyph resembles an arrow but is said to depict the upper leg. This sign rules the hips, thighs, liver and hepatic system. Sagittarius,

the natural sign of the ninth house, is ruled by the planet Jupiter.

A mutable-fire-positive sign, Sagittarius is representative of zealous action, idealistic drive, eager effort, positive thought, adventurous spirit and a philosophical attitude. This sign is linked to religion, spiritual concepts, and moral and ethical standards.

A person with a Sagittarius Sun (November 22-December 21) is a high-minded individual who is honest and straightforward. Sagittarians seek the truth in the most profound sense, and speak the truth as they believe it to be. They see things in broad terms, leaving the specifics to somebody else.

Sagittarians greet the world with verve and confidence. They aim their arrows boldly toward the stars, confident of success. Frequently Sagittarians bring problems on themselves because they are in too

much of a hurry. They are overly optimistic, indifferent to details and prone to making impulsive decisions. Consequently, they trip over their own feet literally and figuratively.

Sagittarians take their setbacks philosophically. Failure does not hinder their chances for future success, for they are quick to pick up the pieces and launch a fresh start.

Sagittarians are goal-oriented; however, they are not so driven that they stoop to petty tactics in order to reach their objectives. Unwilling to compromise their ideals or principles to get ahead, they forge onward immune to the blandishments of greed and self-serving interests. Sagittarians are not looking for free rides; they refuse to be beholden to anyone for their success. They trust their own abilities to get them to the top.

The Sagittarian is a daring free spirit who will not be chained to a confining life style, to freedom-threatening relationships or to narrow ideas. These people want to come and go when they please, eat when they are hungry and say what they think without varnishing the truth.

Sagittarians are physically active and intellectually aware. They are explorers at heart who are interested in distant places and profound mental concepts. Whether physical or intellectual in nature, their exploits are motivated by the desire to learn.

Sagittarians are outgoing and friendly, though sometimes they come on too strongly as backslappers or practical jokers. Utterly candid, most Sagittarians are short on tact. They are impatient and quick-tempered. Even so, they are immensely popular; much of their exuberance rubs off on their friends and associates. They are respected for their sincerity and good will, liked for their generosity and sense of humor.

Most Sagittarians are flirtatious, but few are seriously interested in romance. They are naturally chary of involvements that might curtail their activities. A desire for freedom causes many Sagittarians to remain single or marry late in life.

Sagittarians are extremely versatile. They are averse to a rigid routine and a sedentary way of life. A job atmosphere that satisfies the restless Sagittarian temperament is as important to their success as the job itself.

Sagittarians enjoy active hobbies and those that are mentally stimulating. Archery, horseback riding,

hunting, writing, traveling and attending lectures keep Sagittarians busy when they are not working.

Physical characteristics attributed to the sign Sagittarius include an athletic appearance, a high forehead, which is more noticeable with age as the hairline recedes, a rather long face and prominent teeth. The walk is a hurried trot that is not especially graceful.

Occupations that deal with foreign affairs, long-range interests, religion, the law, universities and horses are linked to the sign Sagittarius. Advertising agent, archer, attorney, clergyman or evangelist, hunting guide, college teacher or university professor, horse trainer, import/export entrepreneur, jockey, judge or jurist, race track operator and theologian are primarily Sagittarian in nature.

Color: Purple

Day: Thursday

Gemstones: Turquoise, carbuncle

Metal: Tin

Musical Tone: *B*

Number: 3

## Capricorn



The historical symbol for Capricorn, the goat-fish (sea-goat), is alternately pictured as a mountain goat. The long face of the goat-fish expresses the serious, sober nature of Capricorn. The steady rise in the world, characteristic

of this sign, parallels the surefooted ascent of a mountain goat. The glyph resembles the knee, which Capricorn rules. This sign also maintains general rulership over the bones and skin. Capricorn is ruled by the planet, Saturn. The natural sign of the tenth house, it is a cardinal-earth-negative sign.

Organized action, status-seeking drive, calculated effort, materialism, acquisitive instincts, self-discipline, caution and conservative attitudes are typical characteristics of this sign. A Capricorn Sun (December 22–January 19) increases the desire to better oneself regardless of the conditions into which a person is born. Capricorns are workers who are conscientious and dedicated to their major objectives; most feel an inward need to accomplish worthwhile achievements that earn them recognition and secure positions in the community.

Capricorns waste little time on frivolities. They proceed to make their mark in life a step at a time. Although they encounter frequent roadblocks and obstacles, they suffer few real reversals, for they build a solid foundation along the way.

Without financial security and prestige in the eyes of their peers, Capricorns have little peace of mind. The drive for success may bring renown to Capricorns, and they are not averse to fame, but essentially most of them want assurances that what they have today they will have tomorrow, with interest to boot.

Capricorns are born with a mature outlook. They usually know what they want out of life at an early age. Because they possess the common sense to formulate workable plans as a means of achieving their goals and have the practical ability to implement their ideas, Capricorns succeed more often than not. However, the tendency to be overly cautious can bar them from reaching their full potential. Being extremely conservative, many Capricorns fail to set their sights high enough, or they refuse to break with tradition, preferring to remain on the firm ground of known territory rather than risk untried waters.

Capricorns are thrifty; they budget their money much as they budget their time and energy. A hefty bank account substitutes for the self-confidence they lack at birth.

There is an air of quiet dignity about most Capricorns. They are not the persons a stranger approaches on the beach or at a party—one instinctively knows that forward remarks or actions are unwelcome.

Prudent in their choice of friends, Capricorns lean toward persons who are as sensible and conservative as they are. They are somewhat strait-laced and would be uncomfortable in an unstructured or avant-garde lifestyle.

Capricorns are restrained in matters of the heart; they seldom get caught up in ill-considered love affairs. Most do not marry until they or their prospective mates are well-established in life. For this reason younger Capricorns tend to choose mature mates; older Capricorns frequently choose younger mates who represent the youth they had no time to enjoy.

Whether employed as laborers or performing in an executive capacity, they apply themselves diligently and deliberately, working to achieve ultimately a reasonable degree of security.

Capricorns prefer useful hobbies over frivolous social activities. They may show interest in ceramics,

leathercraft, pottery or watch-making. Most like classical music and history or historical novels.

Heavy eyelids that droop at the outer corners, thin lips and an olive complexion are attributed to Capricorn. However, a serious, perhaps austere countenance that bespeaks maturity is the true earmark of the sign.

Most occupations associated with the sign Capricorn involve either theoretical or physical structure. Architectural draftsman, building contractor, brick layer or mason, civil engineer, businessperson, crystallographer, government official, mathematician, miner or mining engineer, osteopath, politician and time keeper are representative of Capricorn-related occupations.

Color: Gray  
 Day: Saturday  
 Gemstones: Jet, onyx  
 Metal: Lead  
 Musical Tone: D  
 Number: 8

## Aquarius

Aquarius, the sign of compassion, is aptly symbolized by the water-bearer generously pouring the waters of humanitarianism. Curiously, the glyph looks very much like a graphic representation of electro-magnetic waves,

which come under the dominion of Uranus, one of the planetary rulers of this sign, although the glyph originated long before the phenomenon of electro-magnetic radiation was discovered. Uranus shares rulership of this sign with Saturn, the traditional ruler. Aquarius is the natural sign of the eleventh house and governs the ankles, shins and circulatory system.

A fixed-air-positive sign, Aquarius signifies progressive action, altruistic drive, community effort, inventive genius, unpredictability and unconventional attitudes.

Aquarians (January 20-February 18), never quite satisfied with the status quo, are the vanguards of social reform and community betterment programs. Humanity at large is their concern. Aquarians are far

ahead of the times in thought and action. A farsighted approach to the problems that beset humankind lends to the potential to affect great advances in the quality of life. Traditionalists frequently resist Aquarian-inspired changes but Aquarians do not give up easily. With determined effort, they often overthrow firmly entrenched conventions.

Aquarians are a paradox in human nature. They are stubborn, inconsistent, unselfish, conceited, tolerant, impatient, rebellious, peace-loving. Erratic attitudes and behavior make them difficult to understand.

Aquarians value their freedom and privacy, yet they are the "joiners" of the zodiac. The satisfaction they derive from the friendship and companionship provided by group activities is essential to their inner confidence and sense of well-being.

Aquarians have a large assortment of friends, male and female, from all walks of life. They choose their friends on the basis of common concerns and intellectual rapport, not status or background. Neither bigoted nor snobbish, Aquarians care little about the trappings of society. Instead they look for the redeeming values in a person and seldom make moral judgments about another person's character or lifestyle. Most Aquarians accept people as they are. Aquarian objectives for reform lie on a broader plane, devoted to furthering the general welfare.

Although their interest in people and the human condition is genuine, Aquarians do not get emotionally involved with the majority of their associates or the causes they promote. They view their relationships and activities from an impersonal, intellectual standpoint. Aquarians must maintain their individuality in all relationships, including marriage, if the relationship is to survive.

Aquarians are fascinated by that which is different. They tend to choose jobs that allow freedom of thought and originality of action.

In their spare time Aquarians like to experiment with novel ideas. Many devise useful gadgets. Some Aquarians like to tinker with motorcycles and sports cars; others create original designs for clothing and jewelry. Other Aquarian pastimes include citizen's band or ham radio, fraternal clubs or sororities and flying.

A classic profile distinguished by strangely fascinating, deep-set eyes is typically Aquarian. Although they are usually well-proportioned, incongruous movements and an uncoordinated walk give the impression they are not.

The sign has rulership over applied scientific technology and positive occultism in conjunction with its planetary ruler, Uranus. Related occupations include astrologer, automobile dealer, inventor, motorcycle repair, electrical engineer or electrician, nerve specialist, pilot, psychologist, radar or radio operator, television announcer and X-ray technician.

Colors: Electric blue, shimmering hues

Day: Saturday

Gemstone: Sapphire

Metal: Uranium (lead traditionally)

Musical Tone: E above high C (D traditionally)

Number: 4 (8 traditionally)

## Pisces

Two fish swimming in opposing directions while fastened together by the silver cord of life symbolize the dual aspects and confusion attributed to Pisces. The glyph supports the same theme. Pisces, the natural sign of the twelfth

house, is ruled jointly by Neptune and Jupiter (traditional ruler). This sign governs the feet and is associated with the lymphatic system.

A mutable-water-negative sign, Pisces epitomizes subdued action, lethargic drive, disorganized effort, compassion, martyrdom and vacillating attitudes. Persons whose Sun falls in Pisces at birth (February 19–March 20) are gentle, modest, elusive, thoughtful and sympathetic. Pisceans, sensitive to the needs and feelings of fellow human beings, are deeply moved by the tragedies that befall others.

Pisceans identify with their surroundings and associates; chameleon-like, many assume the opinions and moods of whomever they are with at a particular moment. They are not necessarily equivocating or intentionally insincere, but they are extremely impressionable and tend to drift with the situations in which they find themselves.

Pisceans respond with equal intensity to joy as to sadness. Therefore, their moods range from the heights of ecstasy to the depths of despair. Like all water signs, Pisceans attempt to protect their emotional sensitivity. They may feign indifference in order to shut out people

who are capable of inflicting emotional hurts; however, they brood inwardly over harsh treatment and slights, real or fancied. Many Pisceans fall into the trap of self-pity. Some have difficulty controlling and masking their feelings and may burst into tears when they feel sad or rejected.

Idealistic and trusting, Pisceans frequently blind themselves to the harsh realities of everyday living. They may have good intentions, but many are unable to deal effectively with practical responsibilities. Pisceans are not motivated by the lure of worldly success. They think in terms of “happy” rather than “dollars” and strive for inner harmony. If they manage to achieve this harmony without losing themselves in a world of escapism and illusion, they become more self-assured, better able to direct their efforts productively.

Pisceans possess a natural sense of rhythm. Under suitable circumstances, many are able to convert their dreams into lasting contributions to the arts in the form of music, poetry or the dance.

Pisceans are mild-tempered, compliant, yielding and tenderhearted. Easy targets for sob stories, they take their friends’ troubles to heart and suffer for others as they do for themselves. They seldom refuse a request for help and may sacrifice their own interests for the welfare of others.

Romantic love is essential to Pisceans; without it they feel lonely and unfulfilled. Because they need to know they are loved, appreciated and desirable, Pisceans seek attentive mates who can give them the constant reassurances they crave.

A compatible job environment is necessary to Pisceans’ productivity. They do not function well when they are ill at ease, unhappy or discontented. In a setting that inspires encouragement, Pisceans can accomplish wonders, for they are adaptable and multi-talented.

Sideline interests that appeal to Pisceans are mostly those associated with water, rhythm and the mystic such as scuba diving, fishing, dancing, poetry, spiritualism and Yoga.

Some Pisceans tend to be plump, but even so they appear delicate, almost fragile. They have liquid eyes which seem to mirror the depths of the soul. Pursled lips and a small chin make the lovely eyes more prominent. Most Pisceans have dainty hands and tiny feet. They move with the effortless grace of a dancer.

Occupations that are in some way related to the sea, fish, oil, beverages, places of confinement (hospitals,

prisons, etc.), the feet, rhythm and synthetics come under the dominion of the sign Pisces. Bartender or barmaid, chiropodist, dancer, deep-sea diver, fish distributor, hosiery model or salesperson, hospital receptionist, hydraulic engineer, jail matron, oil-well operator or gasoline station attendant, photographer, poet and prison warden are Pisces-ruled occupations.

Colors: Lavender, sea green  
 Day: Thursday  
 Gemstone: Amethyst  
 Metal: Neptunium (tin traditionally)  
 Musical Tone: A above high C (B traditionally)  
 Number: 7 (3 traditionally)

Llewellyn George (in *A to Z Horoscope Maker and Delineator*, 1974, p. 549, reprinted by permission of Llewellyn Publications, Box 43383, St. Paul, MN 55164) describes the individuality of the signs concisely and beautifully in this thoughtful poem:

#### ZODIACAL PERSONALITY AND KEY WORDS

Adventurous Aries says, "I am."  
 Thrifty Taurus says, "I have."  
 Diversified Gemini says, "I think."  
 Careful Cancer says, "I feel."  
 Lordly Leo says, "I will."  
 Vigilant Virgo says, "I analyze."  
 Loving Libra says, "I balance."  
 Strenuous Scorpio says, "I desire."  
 Sportive Sagittarius says, "I see."  
 Cautious Capricorn says, "I use."  
 Altruistic Aquarius says, "I know."  
 Poetic Pisces says, "I believe."

# 3 Planets in Our Solar System

## *Planetary Motion*

The planets travel at varying rates of speed as they follow their orbits around the Sun. Because a planetary orbit is elliptical, some points of the orbital path lie closer to the Sun than others. The nearer to the Sun a planet moves, the faster it travels along its orbit. The point of closest approach to the Sun is the perihelion of orbit; the farthest point is the aphelion. The Moon's journey through the zodiac depends upon its orbit of Earth. The point in the lunar orbit nearest the Earth is the *perigee*; the most distant point is the *apogee*.

Distant planets take longer to complete their orbits and, therefore, longer to traverse the zodiac. The planets move through the zodiac in order of fastest moving to slowest as follows: The Moon, Mercury, Venus, the Sun, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto.

The time it takes a planet to orbit the Sun is called the period of orbit; the time a planet spends completing one circuit of the zodiac is the zodiacal period. The average longitudinal distance (distance in arc) a planet moves each day is the mean daily motion. When a planet moves faster than the mean daily motion it is said to be in *swift motion*; when it moves more slowly than the mean, it is said to be *slow of course*.

Planetary motion is described as direct (D), retrograde (R) or stationary (S). Actually, all planetary motion is forward or direct. Relative motion is not. For example, when sitting in a parked car have you suddenly hit the brake because your car started to drift backward only to realize that *your* car had not moved? The car beside yours had pulled ahead.

You may experience a similar sensation when riding on a train. If parallel traffic moves faster than the train, you feel like you are moving in reverse, providing there are no landmarks or changing scenery to help you get your bearings. If the train is moving at the exact speed and in the same direction as traffic, you seem to be motionless or stationary. You are not passing the traffic nor is it pulling ahead of you. In other words, the relative motion between the train and the traffic is zero. Once one or the other speeds up, slows down or alters direction, there is a change in relative motion.

If a fast-moving car is assumed to be a stationary reference point, a more slowly moving train is traveling backward from the car's point of view. From the train's point of view, the car is moving ahead.

Planetary motion is much more complicated than that of either a car or a train. Celestial measurements depend upon the frame of reference of the observer and the angle of observation. For astrological measurements, Earth is the designated frame of reference; as observed from Earth, another planet may appear to be in retrograde motion (moving backward in the zodiac), stationary (motionless, stopped), or in direct motion (moving forward in the zodiac). The only time a planet is stationary is during the transition from direct motion to retrograde or vice versa. A planet is said to "make a station" at the degree of the zodiac where it apparently stops.

A planet has greater influence in the horoscope when it is stationary because its energy is concentrated

and focused at the degree of the zodiac it occupies. Retrograde motion does not alter a planet's energy principles, but the manifestation in the horoscope may be of a less overt nature than otherwise. Direct motion allows for an outward expression of planetary energy as dictated by sign position, house placement and aspects.

The Sun and those planets whose orbits lie between the Sun and the Asteroid Belt are designated inner planets. In addition to the Sun these are the Moon, Mercury, Venus and Mars. The inner planets are also called personal or "character building" planets. Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto orbit outside the Asteroid Belt and are termed outer, impersonal or "event" planets.

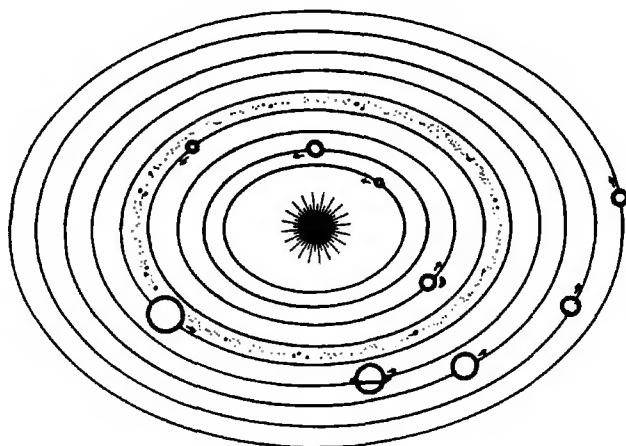


Figure 5. Planetary Orbits

The orbital paths in order from the Sun are: Mercury, Venus, Earth and Moon, Mars, the Asteroid Belt, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto. Due to orbital eccentricities, Pluto's orbit was inside that of Neptune's during 1978-1980. Such eccentricities support the belief that an undiscovered planet(s) may exist.

## Asteroids

In late 1977, astronomer Charles Kowal discovered a heavenly body that appears to have some of the physical characteristics of a planet but is within the size range of an asteroid, being only about four hundred miles in diameter; however, its orbit falls in the area of the outer planets, not in the Asteroid Belt. For the time being, this body has been dubbed a

planetoid and named Chiron. It will be interesting to see what astrological influence, if any, study of this tiny planet-like body will reveal in the future.

Study of four other asteroids, which were discovered in the early nineteenth century, has been stepped up since 1973. These asteroids are Ceres, Pallas (Pallas Athena), Juno and Vesta. There is no general agreement as to the astrological significance or rulerships attached to these asteroids.

Many consider the zodiacal position of an asteroid at birth to be a sensitive point in the horoscope that describes general conditions that emerge later in life when planets progress to or aspect its position. Evidence is as yet too scanty to provide an accurate evaluation. In 1980, the asteroids were not generally accepted as basic elements of natal astrology.

## Planet Classifications

Planets are classified benefic or malefic according to the ease with which planetary energy may be utilized constructively under difficult astrological circumstances. These terms are somewhat misleading; planetary energy is neither "good" (benefic) nor "bad" (malefic) per se. Like sign traits, planetary qualities can manifest in a positive (constructive) or negative (destructive) manner. However, improper use of the energies of benefics is potentially less damaging than misuse of the energies of malefics.

Jupiter is the Greater Benefic; Venus, the Lesser Benefic. The Sun, Moon and Mercury are moderately benefic. Saturn is the Greater Malefic; Mars, the Lesser Malefic. Uranus, Neptune and Pluto complete the list of malefics.

Planets are also classed as masculine or feminine. Mercury, which is androgynous (neutral), assumes the gender of the sign in which it is placed.

Planets are described as hot, warm, cold, dry, moist, electric, magnetic, fruitful and/or barren.

## Planetary Standing

The strength of a planet in a horoscope depends upon sign position, horoscope placement, aspects and motion.

Each planet rules one or two signs. A planet that occupies a sign it rules is *dignified*. A dignified planet is strengthened, and its energy is manifested in pure form. Aside from that of dignity, one other sign, called



the sign of *exaltation*, augments a planet's drive and allows a high quality of expression. A planet is *essentially dignified* when it falls in a sign of dignity or exaltation. Planets that occupy a sign of essential dignity command added strength in the horoscope.

When a planet occupies the sign opposite that of dignity, it is in the sign of *detriment*; when a planet is in the sign opposite that of exaltation, it is in *fall*. Planetary action is weakened when a planet is in its sign of detriment or fall; then it is considered to be *debilitated*.

*Mutual reception* strengthens planetary principles even if a planet is in a sign of debilitation. Mutual reception occurs when two planets are each placed in the other's sign of essential dignity. For example, if the Sun is in Cancer or Taurus, the Moon's signs of rulership and exaltation, respectively, at the same time the Moon is in Leo or Aries, the Sun's signs of essential dignity (the Sun rules Leo and is exalted in Aries), these two planets are in mutual reception. Planets in mutual reception support each other; they are deemed as effective as if each were placed in its own sign of essential dignity.

If a planet occupies a sign other than one of its essential dignity or debilitation, and it is not in mutual reception with another planet, it is said to be *peregrine*. A peregrine planet lacks standing; its dynamic expression may be inhibited or reduced depending upon other elements in the horoscope. Planetary strength cannot be determined on the basis of one criterion; planetary standing in the horoscope depends upon all relevant factors.

A specific degree of the zodiac, called the degree of exaltation, is assigned to each planet. A planet functions freely in the degree of exaltation. At the opposite point of the zodiac, the degree of fall, natural expression of planetary energy is constrained.

A planet is *accidentally dignified* and thereby strengthened when it is placed in its natural house in the horoscope or within five degrees of one of the four angles of the horoscope. The angles are: (1) the Ascendant and (2) its opposite point, the Descendant, (3) the Medium Coeli, commonly called the Midheaven and abbreviated MC, which is the highest point or culminating degree of the ecliptic, and (4) the point opposite the MC, the Imum Coeli, customarily shortened to IC. The MC and IC are mistakenly referred to as the zenith and nadir respectively; the zenith and nadir are the poles of the horizon not the

ecliptic. The closer to the MC a planet falls, the more powerful it is in the horoscope.

Planets that occupy the southern hemisphere of the horoscope (above the horizontal axis) are more influential than those in the northern hemisphere (lower half of the horoscope) except for the Moon whose natural position is in the night section below the horizontal axis. The Moon functions equally well above or below the horizon.

Planets that are placed in a house of natural rulership or in a house they rule in the horoscope are given greater emphasis regardless of the hemisphere in which they are located.

A planet's effectiveness in the horoscope depends in part upon the number and type of aspects it forms with other planets. Through aspects, the energies of two planets may unite and support mutual action; energies may combine to nullify or weaken the action of one or both planets involved; the action of one planet may obstruct and frustrate the action of another in aspect. Energies may oppose or they may blend harmoniously, depending upon the type and strength of the aspect and the nature of the planets involved.

A planet is said to be well aspected if it forms harmonious aspects with other planets; if it forms disharmonious aspects, it is said to be adversely aspected or afflicted. Planets that form a large number of harmonious aspects are more powerful than those which form few aspects or are afflicted. The energies of well-aspected planets flow smoothly and naturally. The energy of an afflicted planet is in some way distorted or weakened. A planet that forms no aspects has no channel through which to direct its energy; its influence in the horoscope is limited.

Planets moving in direct motion are emphasized over those in retrograde motion; stationary planets supercede both in terms of planetary standing, other factors being equal.

One of the most important planets in a horoscope is the planet that rules the sign on the Ascendant. This planet is the horoscope ruler (chart ruler). If this planet occupies a sign of detriment and/or forms few aspects, or is otherwise weakened, its importance is not lessened, although it lacks strength in the horoscope. A weak or afflicted horoscope ruler makes personal expression more difficult since this planet is overshadowed by other energies. This in itself is significant.

## Characteristics of the Planets

The glyphs for the planets are derived from the same astrological symbols as the glyphs for the signs (Chapter 2) with the addition of a dot known as the Point of Manifestation. When it is placed in the center of the Circle of Spirit the resulting glyph represents the Sun and signifies the emergence of the life force contained within the Circle of Spirit. Planetary glyphs are commonly referred to as symbols rather than glyphs.

### The Sun



The Sun crosses the zodiac once each year and spends about a month in each sign. The Sun's mean daily motion is 59' 8" (fifty-nine minutes and eight seconds). Its motion is always direct, never retrograde or stationary.

The Sun, referred to as a planet in astrological terminology, is also called a luminary or the Greater Light. It is masculine, hot, dry, electric and essentially barren, but it may be moderately fruitful if placed in a fruitful sign.

An intensely hot star that emits life-sustaining energy and heat, the Sun is essential to life on Earth. In a horoscope, it represents a person's vital life force, the ego, the individuality, the creative powers, the drive for self-expression. A person's urge to achieve is expressed through the Sun in accordance with the sign it occupies and is directed toward areas defined by the Sun's house placement. This most important planet acts as a channel in the horoscope for all planetary energies to the extent indicated by the aspects between the Sun and the other planets.

The Sun embodies the principle of fatherhood; it signifies a person's natural father and a woman's husband in the horoscope. It rules children in general and one's first offspring in particular.

The Sun symbolizes authority in the sense of sovereignty and power as opposed to bureaucracy. A well-placed Sun adds leadership ability; it reinforces a person's capacity to take charge of affairs and to retain command of the situations that arise. A person whose Sun falls in a debilitating sign or is out of harmony with other planets finds it difficult to express basic drives and utilize talents. Natural vitality may be weakened.

The Sun has dominion from age twenty-four to thirty-four, the years when most people begin their families and try to establish themselves in life.

Developmental stages of life are more fully discussed in Chapter 28.

The heart, back, spine, spinal cord and the right side of the body are ruled by the Sun. It shares rulership over the general glandular system with the planet Jupiter.

The Sun governs heads of state, gambling, gold metal, daylight; Sunday and the number one. It is associated with entertainment, speculation and all that is showy, ornate or ostentatious.

The fifth house is the natural house of the Sun. It rules the sign of Leo, which is the natural sign of the fifth house. The Sun is dignified in Leo, exalted in Aries, detrimented in Aquarius and in fall in Libra. The degree of exaltation for the Sun is 19° Aries; the degree of fall is 19° Libra.

### The Moon



The Moon, Earth's satellite and the swiftest moving "planet," completes one circuit of the zodiac in a little less than twenty-eight days. It averages two and one-half days in each sign at a time. The mean daily motion is 13° 10' (thirteen degrees and ten minutes) and is always direct. The Moon may be called a luminary or the Lesser Light. It is feminine, cold, moist, magnetic and fruitful.

Emotions are governed by the Moon. It indicates the way people react emotionally to the situations and people they encounter, and particularly how they relate to women. The Moon describes the mother-child relationship; in the horoscope it represents a person's mother and a man's wife. The Moon reflects the way people think of and feel toward their mothers but does not necessarily describe the mother's true nature.

The formative years from birth to age seven are ruled by the Moon. The planet is associated with one's inherited tendencies, early background and childhood development.

The Moon is linked to the subconscious; it has much to do with the memory, although it does not rule either the concrete or abstract mind.

The Moon is passive, changeable, more fluctuating than any other planet. It is the receiver of energy. The Moon takes on the character of the sign it is in and of the planets with which it is aspected in the horoscope.

The stomach, breasts, mammary glands, the womb, conception, the fluids of the body in general and the left side of the body are ruled by the Moon. It also governs

glandular processes and the natural body functions, especially the female functions. The Moon is responsible in part for bleeding because it has general rulership over the fluids of the body and rules the blood serum, although it does not specifically rule the blood.

An afflicted Moon can give rise to bleeding problems, digestive upsets, difficulty in establishing an easy rapport with the public and disharmonious relations with women. A well-aspected Moon gives one the capacity to create a comfortable atmosphere in almost any place or situation, for it represents an instinctive sensitivity to the needs and feelings of the public.

The Moon expresses the maternal instinct and the essence of motherhood. It rules the home, water (in conjunction with Neptune), the tides, silver, the night, Monday and the number two. It also rules that which is commonplace, ordinary, proletarian.

The fourth house is the natural house of the Moon. It is dignified in Cancer, exalted in Taurus, detrimented in Capricorn and in fall in Scorpio. The degree of exaltation is 3° Taurus; the degree of fall is 3° Scorpio.

## Mercury



With the exception of the Moon, Mercury is the fastest moving planet. It orbits the Sun in approximately eighty-eight days, but because of retrograde motion it takes about a year to traverse the zodiac. Mercury passes through a sign in less than three weeks when motion is direct; it spends eight to ten weeks in a sign when it is retrograde. The retrograde period averages three and one-half weeks; the stationary period lasts from a few hours up to three days as motion changes from direct to retrograde or from retrograde to direct. Mean daily motion is 1°23'. Because Mercury is always within 28° of the Sun's zodiacal position, it must occupy the same sign as the Sun, the preceding sign or the following sign.

Mercury is cold, magnetic and androgynous. It assumes the gender of the sign it occupies; it is dry when masculine and moist when feminine.

The mind, the mental processes and all forms of communication including travel, touch, use of the telephone, speaking and writing are ruled by Mercury.

Mercury takes on the character of the sign in which it is posited and reflects the nature of the planets with which it is configurated (aspected). Its placement in the horoscope has a great deal to do with an individual's innate intellectual and communicative skills. The sign Mercury relates to a person's thinking habits, reasoning

ability and the capacity to formulate ideas and to verbalize thoughts. The house in which Mercury is placed describes the things about which a person thinks and talks and where the individual gets ideas.

A well-placed Mercury confers dexterity, an agile, perceptive mind, the ability to form judgments based upon logic and sound reasoning, and the capacity to express knowledge and ideas fluently through speech or writing.

A lesser-placed Mercury gives the tendency to think in broad terms, to deal intellectually with generalities rather than particulars. Judgment is based on the general picture rather than specific facts. A debilitated Mercury indicates absent-mindedness, a tendency to daydream, and sometimes clumsiness.

When Mercury is retrograde in the natal horoscope, the individual is inclined to be introspective, subjective in thinking and hesitant about expressing ideas aloud. A stationary Mercury intensifies the intellectual and communicative expression as described by sign position, house placement and aspects.

The planet is associated with ages seven to fifteen, the learning years during which an individual acquires basic learning experiences and essential education.

Mercury rules the arms, hands, shoulders, lungs, solar plexus, abdomen, intestines, the thymus gland, the nervous system and the respiratory system. It also governs the intellect and physical (motor) coordination.

In the horoscope, Mercury denotes a person's close relatives other than parents, especially brothers and sisters.

Mercury has dominion over messages, letters, books, magazines, the signing of documents, neighbors and the immediate neighborhood, commuter travel, transportation facilities, paper, mercury (the metal), Wednesday and the number five.

Mercury is the natural ruler of two houses, the third and the sixth. This planet rules two signs, Gemini and Virgo, and is, of course, dignified in both. Mercury is exalted in Aquarius, detrimented in Sagittarius and Pisces and in fall in Leo. The degree of exaltation is 15° Aquarius; the degree of fall is 15° Leo.

## Venus



Venus orbits the Sun once every 225 days. It spends about three and one-half to four weeks in each sign when motion is direct; it averages four months in a sign when motion is retrograde part of the time. The retrograde period is approximately six weeks; the stationary

period is three to four days. Mean daily motion is  $1^{\circ} 12'$ . Venus never travels farther than  $48^{\circ}$  zodiacal longitude away from the Sun, thus it is always found within two signs of that of the Sun. Venus is feminine, warm, moist, magnetic and fruitful.

Affection, love, beauty, harmony, refinement, aesthetic taste, artistic instinct and sociability are expressed by Venus. This planet rules the principle of attraction and desirability. It describes the receptive sex drive and feminine sexual expression. It governs social behavior on a one-to-one basis and marriage (legal or common-law). Venus influences a person's drive for companionship, the capacity to attract compatible people, one's ability to forge close personal ties and to form business partnerships. In the horoscope this planet may represent a loved one or lover and female relatives.

Venus rules the years of youth, ages fifteen to twenty-four, the period when one's romantic and sexual feelings are stirred. The Venus years introduce that first flush of (wo)manhood when a person realizes his or her sexuality and the desire for companionship of the opposite sex is aroused.

Venus also partially describes an individual's material prospects, for this planet rules money and possessions. It directs, in part, one's earning capacity and spending habits.

Retrograde Venus inhibits the outward expression of social interaction. The individual is reticent in social behavior. Financial development may be slow initially, but it will eventually reach the full potential of growth as otherwise indicated by the horoscope. Stationary Venus focuses and strengthens social expression and financial drive according to horoscope placement by sign and house and the aspects between Venus and the other planets.

A dignified Venus lends charm, beauty, refined manners, good taste in clothing, popularity, artistic interest and perhaps artistic talent. A badly placed Venus fosters vanity, laziness, self-indulgence and extravagance; it generates discord in marriage, partnerships and personal relationships.

Venus rules the neck, throat, thyroid gland, kidneys, ovaries, veins and circulation of the venous blood. It has part rulership over the female sex organs. Ailments such as goiter, nephritis, and diabetes are attributed in part to an afflicted Venus.

Venus is associated with a natural sense of color coordination, a melodious voice, a becoming manner

and an attractive appearance. The planet rules dimples, sugar, candy, pastries, flowers, perfume, music, that which is beautiful and pleasing or gratifying, copper, Friday and the number six.

The second and seventh are the natural houses of Venus. Venus is dignified in Taurus and Libra, exalted in Pisces, detrimented in Aries and Scorpio and in fall in Virgo. The degree of exaltation is  $27^{\circ}$  Pisces; the degree of fall is  $27^{\circ}$  Virgo.

### Earth



As shown in Figure 5, Earth's orbit is farther from the Sun than the orbits of Venus and Mercury. Venus and Mercury are called inferior planets because their orbital paths lie closer to the Sun than does that of Earth, not because of their action or quality. The planets whose orbits lie outside Earth's path are termed superior planets, superior referring to the larger orbit. Earth is not entered into the horoscope since it is the observation point. Earth occupies the sign and degree of the zodiac directly opposite that of the Sun at any given time.

### Mars



Mars completes a solar orbit in 687 days. It takes twenty-five to twenty-six months for Mars to cross the zodiac. Mars spends about six and one-half to seven and one-half weeks in a sign when motion is direct and six to six and one-half months when it retrogrades. The retrograde period lasts for two to two and one-half months; the stationary period lasts for up to five days. Mean daily motion is  $31' 27''$ . Mars is masculine, hot, dry, electric and barren.

Mars represents an individual's dynamic expression and energy drive. This planet governs all basic physical drives including aggressive sexual drives. It rules the principle of basic desire, desire that motivates action on all physical levels. The action of Mars is initiatory, aggressive, passionate and inflammatory. Mars energy can be constructive or destructive. Properly channeled and directed it lends to stamina, productivity and achievement. Improperly channeled, this energy may be expressed as rage, violence or brutality.

Retrograde Mars compels people to work harder in order to utilize their energy productively; because the natural inclination is inward, they must redirect their energy toward gainful outward expression. When Mars

is stationary its energy is concentrated. Stationary Mars gives the individual a powerful driving force.

The harshness of Mars' force may be amplified, muted or weakened depending upon the sign in which Mars is posited. The house placement in the horoscope indicates the sphere of interest to which an individual addresses the main thrust of energy and ambition.

Mars is associated with the prime of life, the productive years from age thirty-four to forty-five when people strive to achieve the goals they have set for themselves.

Mars rules the head, general muscular system, the sex organs in general (with Pluto) and male genitalia in particular, the anus, red corpuscles and hemoglobin. It has partial rulership over the adrenal glands. Fevers, inflammations, hemorrhages and injuries stemming from accidents associated with fire, guns, explosives, knives, machinery and automobiles are attributed to Mars.

Mars signifies virility, forcefulness, challenge, daring, courage, danger, lust, strife, surgery and male relatives. It rules fire, guns, knives, weapons in general, surgical instruments, war, the military, iron, steel, Tuesday, and the number nine. Sarcasm, hate, pain, and all that is sharp, intense or acute both figuratively and literally, are ascribed to Mars.

The natural houses of Mars are the first and the eighth. Mars is dignified in Aries and Scorpio, exalted in Capricorn, in detriment in Libra and Taurus and in fall in Cancer. The degree of exaltation is 28° Capricorn; the degree of fall is 28° Cancer.

## Jupiter

**J** The period of orbit and the zodiacal period of the outer planets coincide. It takes Jupiter about twelve years to travel around the zodiac. Jupiter averages one year in each sign including the retrograde period, which lasts approximately four months each year. The stationary period varies from five to nine days. Mean daily motion is 4' 49". Jupiter is masculine, warm, moist, electric and fruitful.

Jupiter represents religious, ethical and moral values and is associated with higher education, philosophy, theology and jurisprudence. Jupiter rules the abstract mind whereas Mercury rules the concrete mind. It describes one's intellectual and spiritual interests on the highest and most profound level, the search for truth.

Jupiter governs the principle of expansion and preservation on both mental and physical planes. This planet signifies benevolence and prosperity. It denotes

an element of good fortune, which safeguards a person's interests and protects one's well-being. Jupiter insures the availability of opportunities and describes one's capacity to utilize these opportunities. The degree of abundance attributable to Jupiter and the form it takes are contingent upon the sign in which it is posited, house placement, and its relative position (aspects) to the other planets in the horoscope.

Retrograde Jupiter is indicative of the deep thinker, the philosopher. Persons who have Jupiter retrograde in the horoscope are subjective individuals who keep their convictions to themselves. The stationary position of Jupiter lends to profound beliefs and reinforces the benevolent qualities of the planet.

Jupiter rules ages forty-five to fifty-seven, a comparatively prosperous period in a person's life. It is usually during the Jupiter period that one's efforts are fully rewarded.

Jupiter holds general rulership over the blood, the arteries and arterial circulation. It rules the hips, thighs, feet (with Neptune), liver and hepatic system, and holds joint rulership of the general glandular system with the Sun.

Jupiter is connected with publishing, long-range advertising, foreign interests, legal affairs, attorneys, the courts, churches and universities. It promotes honesty, generosity, joviality and success. Jupiter is associated with all that is ample, plentiful and excessive including obesity, gluttony and extravagance.

Customs, conventions, genuineness, validity, horses, horse racing, tin, Thursday and the number three are ruled by Jupiter.

The natural houses of Jupiter are the ninth and the twelfth. The planet is dignified in Sagittarius and Pisces, exalted in Cancer, detrimented in Gemini and Virgo and in fall in Capricorn. The degree of exaltation is 15° Cancer; the degree of fall is 15° Capricorn.

## Saturn

**S** Saturn crosses the zodiac once in every twenty-nine and one-half years, spending about two and one-half years in each sign. The retrograde period averages four and one-half months. Saturn remains stationary up to eleven or twelve days. This planet moves about 1° a month with a mean daily motion of 2' 1". Saturn is masculine, cold, dry, magnetic and barren.

The principle of contraction and solidification is manifested in Saturn. This planet gives nothing freely;

it demands instead that a person develop discipline, obedience and responsibility in order to earn a place in the Sun and reach the full potential of the horoscope.

Saturn represents the father-figure or teacher in the horoscope and points out the lessons one must learn through responsible action. This planet teaches patience, reliability, diligence and persistence; it symbolizes structure and organization as bases for constructive endeavor.

Saturn's influence is sobering. Saturn is the realist that strips away pretense and forces a down-to-earth approach toward major concerns in life as indicated by its horoscope placement. It promises permanence in the sense that results of Saturn-inspired endeavor are lasting, but offers neither ease nor a quick return for one's efforts.

Saturn retards and discourages; it also perfects and matures. Through Saturn, one builds a solid foundation; in so doing, a person may have to deal with hardship and heavy burdens. This planet teaches by experience the lessons one needs to learn in order to grow.

While Saturn's action may be chastening, it is rewarding as well. Saturn enables one to achieve professional ambitions and to accomplish worthwhile ends.

Retrograde Saturn acts to frustrate on the inner plane; thus it restricts outer expression. Limitations may be self-imposed, inhibitions psychologically induced, action extremely cautious. The diligence, discipline and perseverance affiliated with Saturn are increased when this planet is stationary. The individual is better able to structure personal efforts around concrete objectives.

Saturn rules the bones and joints, in particular the knees, the spleen, skin and teeth. Arthritis, rheumatism, chills and diseases of the bones are under its dominion. Chronic ailments are attributed, at least in part, to Saturn.

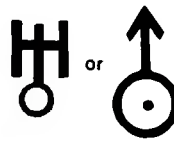
Each revolution of the horoscope that a planet completes beginning with the natal position is called a cycle. The first half of the cycle is the preparatory or initial phase; the second half of the cycle is the culminating or completion phase. As Saturn moves through the zodiac, it returns to the same position as in the natal horoscope about every twenty-nine to thirty years. Each Saturn cycle completes a stage of development in the life of the individual. Saturn-induced discipline and restriction become easier to deal with in each succeeding cycle.

Saturn is associated with the age of full maturity, the years fifty-seven to seventy. It is during this period that most people grasp the total implications of their life experiences and reap what they have sown.

In the horoscope Saturn represents older persons. It may signify the father or husband. Saturn rules politics, time, coal, lead, Saturday and the number eight. It stands for that which is conservative, regular, constant, conscientious, prudent, binding, suppressing, old and austere.

The tenth and eleventh are the natural houses of Saturn. It is dignified in Capricorn and Aquarius, exalted in Libra, detrimented in Cancer and Leo and in fall in Aries. The degree of exaltation is 21° Libra; the degree of fall is 21° Aries.

### Uranus



Uranus takes eighty-four years to traverse the zodiac and seven years to travel through one sign. This planet is retrograde for five months at a time and stationary for up to about two weeks. It moves but 4° each year, averaging 42" (seconds) per day. It is masculine, cold, dry, electric and magnetic, and barren.

Uranus was formerly called Herschel after its discoverer. The presence of Uranus in our solar system has been known only since 1781. Much has been learned about this planet in the almost two hundred years since its discovery, but there remains much more to determine.

The orbit of Uranus is irregular or eccentric and so is its action. The planet represents the unpredictable, the erratic, the different, the bizarre.

Uranian influence is disruptive. It breaks up existing patterns to make room for progress. Uranus enforces change and in so doing destroys in order to create. Uranus is not destructive in the most negative sense of the word, for it replaces what it removes. It breaks with tradition and heralds the future.

Uranus embraces the principles of compassion, humanitarianism and altruism; it introduces social reform.

Uranian action is sudden, unexpected, abrupt, spasmodic, revolutionary and dictatorial. It expresses the unconventional, the radical, the rebellious.

Uranus embodies the essence of freedom, originality and inventiveness. Flashes of insight that inspire genius are Uranian in nature.

Retrograde Uranus implies subjective expression of the urge for freedom and the desire for change. If the horoscope generally shows stability and perseverance, advanced thought and progressive ideas may lead to great discoveries. Otherwise, the individual may be merely eccentric or malcontent, subject to erratic notions. The retrograde motion of Uranus also increases any occult tendencies shown in the horoscope. Stationary Uranus emphasizes humanitarian principles and mandates change, as indicated in the rest of the horoscope.

Uranus rules the general circulatory system, the ankles, the shin bones, the pituitary gland and the aura. As the higher octave of Mercury, it has influence over the intuitive intellect and the nervous system, particularly the motor nerves. Spasmodic ailments, convulsions, lack of coordination and accidents involving electricity or lightning are due to Uranian influence.

Uranus is associated with the period in life from age seventy to eighty-four. There is little doubt that during these years a person's lifetime routine is changed and a new sense of freedom emerges as one no longer faces the responsibility of earning a living or rearing a family.

Uranus rules astrology, positive occultism, inventions, discoveries, discrepancies, contradictions, interruptions, aberrations, homosexuality, the strange and strangers, tremors, earthquakes, electricity, magnetism, uranium and the number four. Uranus signifies all that is new, novel, modern, *avant garde*.

The eleventh is the natural house of Uranus, and Aquarius its sign of dignity. Uranus co-rules Aquarius with Saturn, the traditional ruler. As more is learned about Uranus, it becomes increasingly apparent that it is probably the sole ruler of this sign. Uranus is exalted in Scorpio, detrimented in Leo and in fall in Taurus. The degree of exaltation is 7° Scorpio; the degree of fall is 7° Taurus.

## Neptune



Neptune crosses the zodiac once in 165 years and spends about fourteen years in each sign. The mean daily motion is 24"; it moves 2° each year. The retrograde period lasts for five months; it is stationary for approximately two weeks. Neptune is feminine, warm, moist, magnetic and fruitful.

Having been discovered in 1846, Neptune is considered one of the "newer" planets. It represents

the intangible, the vague, the nebulous and the elusive. Neptunian influence is difficult to pinpoint; its action is obscure, veiled, hidden.

Neptune energizes imagination, vision and spiritual powers and governs rhythm. The higher octave of Venus, this planet may inspire artistic genius in music, art, poetry or the dance. It can also bring deception, chaos and confusion. Neptune has dominion over the unconscious. It is the planet of the mystic; it rules escapism in all forms—drug addition, alcoholism and delusion.

Retrograde Neptune increases the trend toward inward forms of escapism and self-delusion. Artistic inspiration and mystical tendencies may be enhanced as well.

In a stationary position, the Neptunian qualities are strengthened. A well-aspected stationary Neptune can confer the highest level of spiritual attainment and artistic vision; an afflicted stationary Neptune can induce complete loss of touch with reality according to how its influence is channeled.

Neptune's horoscope placement indicates the illusions to which a person clings. This area represents a blind spot in the individual's view of life.

Neptune rules the feet, the pineal gland and the astral body. It is associated with hard-to-diagnose ailments, hypochondria, catalepsy, drowning mishaps and illnesses due to the introduction of toxic substances into the body or the inhalation of noxious fumes.

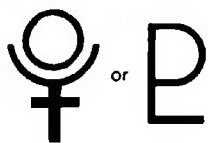
Neptune is said to rule the years eighty-four to ninety-nine, the so-called age of weakness when physical strength is at low ebb.

The planet is associated with clairvoyants, mediums, seances, yogis, hypnotism, instability, bisexuality, solvents, synthetics, transparent materials, camouflage, falsehoods, swindlers and places of confinement such as hospitals, prisons and retirement homes. Neptune governs salt water and the oceans (in conjunction with the Moon), especially the deep seas. Sleep, narcotics, photography, rubber, neptunium, the number seven and all that is secret, concealed, unrevealed, indistinct, indefinite, cloudy or hallucinatory are in Neptune's domain.

The twelfth is the natural house of Neptune. Dignified in Pisces, it shares rulership of Pisces with Jupiter, the traditional ruler; however, in view of ongoing studies, it seems likely that Neptune is the sole ruler of Pisces. Neptune is currently believed to be

exalted in Cancer and in fall in Capricorn. It is in detriment in Virgo. The degree of exaltation is 18° Cancer; the degree of fall is 18° Capricorn.

### Pluto



Pluto, the slowest moving planet, takes 248 years to complete one circuit of the zodiac, averaging about twenty-one years in each sign. Due to the eccentricity of its

orbit, it speeds through Scorpio in twelve years and slows to thirty-one years while crossing Taurus. The retrograde period is five months; the stationary period lasts up to seventeen days. In 1980, the average yearly motion was 1° in the sign Libra.

Since Pluto's recent discovery in 1930, its influence has been observed in four signs: Cancer, Leo, Virgo and Libra. Its transit of Scorpio (1983/84–1955) will give opportunity for further study. Much that is said about this planet is theoretical. Pluto appears to be a powerful planet whose action influences mass destiny. It represents transformation and regeneration at the highest level, destruction and annihilation at the lowest. Mob action lies at Pluto's doorstep; so does the evolution of some of the greatest movements in history.

Plutonian influence is operative for a long time before it manifests overtly; when it does, there is no restraining the force. Plutonian energy is potent, never weak or mediocre. Pluto's action can be purging, purifying and spiritually uplifting, or it can be obscene, degrading and criminal. For good or ill, Pluto-evolved change always has an irrevocable impact.

The effect this planet has in the personal horoscope is debatable. Unless Pluto is the horoscope ruler or occupies a strong position in the horoscope, many people seem to react only mildly to the Plutonian influence. Perhaps response is on an inward or spiritual level and therefore less readily observed, or the metamorphosis may be so slow and subtle, unfolding over a period of years, that the individual is unaware of the fundamental changes taking place.

Pluto acts to eliminate the dross, to cleanse, purify and rejuvenate on both the spiritual and physical planes. The horoscope placement of Pluto points out the means of regeneration and evolvment. Pluto coerces and urges development, but the individual makes the final choice. A person may strive for the heights of greatness or join the dregs of humanity, or

one may resist its influence and stagnate. Plutonian power is at the individual's disposal; if one misuses it, there is no turning back.

Retrograde Pluto is indicative of inner changes. The individual faces a choice between purification of the soul or spiritual bankruptcy. Stationary Pluto stresses the potency of this planet for greatness or for degradation, depending upon the direction of its power.

Pluto rules death, afterlife and rebirth, that cycle of the soul that is essentially unknown to humankind. It is associated with age one hundred and over.

Pluto rules the excretory system, the sex organs and gonads, and the astral cord.

Pluto is the higher octave of Mars. As with all higher-octave planets, there is an occult significance attached.

Pluto governs invisible forces, witchcraft, black magic and levitation. It is associated with corruption, the underground, Hades, reincarnation and resurrection. Reptiles, bats, vampires, plutonium, tungsten and the digit zero are ruled by Pluto. It has dominion over atomic fission and all that implies the unleashing of power and the transformation or recycling of energy.

The eighth is the natural house of Pluto. Pluto rules the sign of Scorpio, jointly with the traditional ruler, Mars. Some authorities designate Pluto as co-ruler of Aries; however, it seems unlikely that the lengthy gestation of Pluto-induced action is compatible with the impulsive action of Aries.

Pluto may be exalted in Leo; it is in detriment in Taurus; it may be in fall in Aquarius. The degree of exaltation is probably 17° Leo; the degree of fall, 17° Aquarius.

Each planet brings something into the life of the individual as summarized in the following poem:

#### THE PLANETS

I sustain vitality; I am the Sun.  
 I induce feeling; I am the Moon.  
 I stimulate the intellect; I am Mercury.  
 I stir affection; I am Venus.  
 I arouse passion; I am Mars.  
 I promote expansion; I am Jupiter.  
 I teach discipline; I am Saturn.  
 I provoke change; I am Uranus.  
 I inspire vision; I am Neptune.  
 I generate new life; I am Pluto.



## The Moon's Nodes

The points at which a planet's orbit intersects the ecliptic are called planetary nodes. Other than the Moon's Nodes, the significance of nodes to astrology is as yet not fully understood. Lunar nodes are meaningful; they are entered in the horoscope along with the planets. The nodes of other planets are usually omitted. Planetary nodes are discussed in Appendix A.

The position of the Moon's Nodes moves an average of 3' retrograde each day, although the true motion is both direct and retrograde. They take about nineteen years to complete one reverse cycle of the zodiac.

The Moon's Nodes neither possess nor express planetary energy. They are sensitive points in the horoscope that indicate an individual's capacity for growth within the framework of the society in which he or she lives.

### The North Node



The position of the ascending or North Node, also called the Dragon's Head, is the point of intersection of the lunar orbit and the plane of the ecliptic as the Moon travels from south to north relative to the ecliptic.

The North Node signifies those areas in which the individual's attitudes are in harmony with current trends. By reaching out into the realms of new experience as indicated by the horoscope placement of the North Node, one can develop more fully and abundantly.

### The South Node



The descending or South Node (Dragon's Tail) marks the orbital/ecliptic intersection point as the Moon travels from north to south relative to the ecliptic. The South Node lies directly opposite the North node in the zodiac.

The imaginary line that links the North and South Nodes is the Nodal Axis or Dragon.

The South Node represents deeply imbedded habit patterns that hinder a person's efforts to reach out. The individual may be out of step with the times and thereby at a disadvantage in the area of horoscope activation.

# 4 Planets and Moon's Nodes in the Signs

The sign a planet occupies describes the manner in which the energy of the planet is manifested. The planetary ruler of a sign has a major influence on the sign and on the planets in that sign.

Each sign is subdivided and planetary sub-rulers are assigned to various degrees within the sign. The ruler of a sign may also act as a sub-ruler. In those degrees that are both ruled and sub-ruled by the same planet, the characteristics of a sign are unmodified.

A sub-ruler other than the planetary ruler of the sign acts in conjunction with the ruler; its action is subordinate. Because of the influence of sub-rulers, a planet passing through a particular sign does not operate in

precisely the same way in all degrees of that sign, although the basic mode of sign expression remains unchanged.

## *Decanates*

The signs are divided into three decanates of 10° each. The first decan of a sign, 0°–10°, is ruled and sub-ruled by the planetary ruler of the sign; the second decan, 10°–20°, is sub-ruled by the ruler of the next sign in the zodiac that belongs to the same triplicity; the third decan, 20°–30°, is sub-ruled by the ruler of the remaining sign in the same triplicity as follows:

DECANATE SUB-RULERS

Sign	First Decan (0°–10°)	Second Decan (10°–20°)	Third Decan (20°–30°)
Aries	Mars	Sun	Jupiter
Taurus	Venus	Mercury	Saturn
Gemini	Mercury	Venus	Uranus/Saturn
Cancer	Moon	Pluto/Mars	Neptune/Jupiter
Leo	Sun	Jupiter	Mars
Virgo	Mercury	Saturn	Venus
Libra	Venus	Uranus/Saturn	Mercury
Scorpio	Pluto/Mars	Neptune/Jupiter	Moon
Sagittarius	Jupiter	Mars	Sun
Capricorn	Saturn	Venus	Mercury
Aquarius	Uranus/Saturn	Mercury	Venus
Pisces	Neptune/Jupiter	Moon	Pluto/Mars

A decanate sub-ruler shades or modifies the qualities of a sign in its designated decan according to its natural planetary influence. A planet that occupies its own decan of a sign in which it has little standing operates more freely than in other degrees of that sign. For example, in Scorpio, its sign of fall, the Moon is weakened; however, in the third decan (sub-ruled by the Moon) lunar energies are strengthened, and the individual is better able to cope with the emotional passion associated with this sign position.

In order to distinguish the decans, each decanate is known by the name of its sub-ruler. The name of the sign ruled by the sub-ruler is also applied to the second and third decans.

### **Decanates of Aries**

*The first decan of Aries*, a fire sign, is ruled and sub-ruled by Mars, the planetary ruler of Aries. The dynamic, initiatory and impetuous qualities of Aries are emphasized in this decan. The first decan is called the Mars decanate of Aries.

*The second decan of Aries* is ruled by Mars and sub-ruled by the Sun, the ruler of Leo which is the next sign in the fire triplicity. This is the Leo or Sun decanate of Aries. The influence of the Sun in the second decan lends sustaining power to the natural initiative that is characteristic of Aries.

*The third decan of Aries* is ruled by Mars and sub-ruled by Jupiter because Jupiter is the ruler of Sagittarius, the third sign in the fire triplicity. In this decan, Jupiter supplements and expands the natural Aries expression. The third is the Sagittarius or Jupiter decanate of Aries.

### **Decanates of Taurus**

*The first decan of Taurus*, ruled and sub-ruled by Venus, brings out the endurance, obstinacy and sensuality inherent in this earth sign. The first is called the Venus decanate of Taurus.

*The second decan of Taurus* is sub-ruled by Mercury, the ruler of Virgo that follows Taurus in the earth triplicity. Mercury's influence here lends greater flexibility and discrimination than is found in the first decan. This is the Virgo or Mercury decanate of Taurus.

*The third decan of Taurus* is sub-ruled by Saturn, which is the ruler of Capricorn, the third sign in the

earth triplicity. In this decan, Saturn intensifies the materialistic qualities of Taurus. This is the Capricorn or Saturn decanate of Taurus.

### **Decanates of Gemini**

*The first decan of Gemini*, an air sign, is ruled and sub-ruled by Mercury. Diffusion, restlessness and superficiality are predominant characteristics of this decan. The first decan is called the Mercury decanate of Gemini.

*The second decan of Gemini* is sub-ruled by Venus as the planetary ruler of Libra, the next air sign. Venus enhances the Gemini charm; the style of expression is perhaps more pleasing and attractive than in the first decanate. The second decan is the Libra or Venus decanate of Gemini.

*The third decan of Gemini* is sub-ruled by Uranus and Saturn, rulers of the remaining air sign, Aquarius. Since Uranus is the higher octave of Mercury, Uranus probably has greater significance in this decan than does Saturn. Uranus supplements the mental expression of Gemini and adds spontaneity and unpredictability. If the Saturn influence manifests itself in this decan, it should increase persistence and decrease diffusiveness without stifling versatility or impeding flexibility. The third decan is the Aquarius or Uranus-Saturn decanate of Gemini.

### **Decanates of Cancer**

*The first decan of Cancer*, a water sign, is ruled and sub-ruled by the Moon. This decan emphasizes the nurturing, protective, emotional and fluctuating attributes of the sign. This is the Moon decanate of Cancer.

*The second decan of Cancer* is sub-ruled by Pluto and Mars, rulers of Scorpio. This decan strengthens the Cancer tenacity but also increases turbulence. Plutonian influence in this decan can help transform Cancer sensitivity into productive creative expression. The second is the Scorpio or Pluto-Mars decanate of Cancer.

*The third decan of Cancer*, sub-ruled by Neptune and Jupiter as rulers of Pisces, reinforces the psychic nature of Cancer and strengthens compassion. This decan also heightens secretive tendencies and mystical inclinations. This is the Pisces or Neptune-Jupiter decanate of Cancer.

### Decanates of Leo

*The first decan of Leo*, the second fire sign, is ruled and sub-ruled by the Sun. This decan produces great vitality and power in the expression of the Leo qualities. This is the Sun decanate of Leo.

*The second decan of Leo* is sub-ruled by Jupiter, ruler of Sagittarius, the fire sign which follows Leo in the zodiac. The Sagittarius or Jupiter decanate of Leo exhibits a freer and more versatile expression of the Leo characteristics.

*The third decan of Leo* is sub-ruled by Mars as ruler of Aries, the remaining fire sign. The Aries or Mars decanate of Leo expresses greater assertiveness, independence and courage.

### Decanates of Virgo

*The first decan of Virgo*, the second earth sign, is ruled and sub-ruled by Mercury. The Mercury decanate of Virgo emphasizes perception and discrimination, sensitivity to detail and fastidiousness.

*The second decan of Virgo* is sub-ruled by Saturn, ruler of Capricorn. The Capricorn or Saturn decanate of Virgo promotes a businesslike approach and reinforces the organized methodical expression of Virgo.

*The third decan of Virgo* is sub-ruled by Venus as ruler of Taurus. The Taurus or Venus decanate of Virgo strengthens the practical qualities of the sign and increases stability.

### Decanates of Libra

*The first decan of Libra*, ruled and co-ruled by Venus, stresses harmony and companionship. The Venus decanate of Libra emphasizes expression through combined efforts on a partnership basis.

*The second decan of Libra* is sub-ruled by Uranus and Saturn, rulers of Aquarius. Uranus injects greater freedom and independence into Libra expression, but it does not override the unity and cooperation that is basic to Libra. If the Saturn influence predominates in the Aquarius or Uranus-Saturn decanate of Libra, Saturn stabilizes and thus reinforces Libra qualities.

*The third decan of Libra* is sub-ruled by Mercury as ruler of Gemini. Mercury sharpens intellectual expression in the Gemini or Mercury decanate of

Libra; it fosters flexibility and versatility, but it also adds restlessness.

### Decanates of Scorpio

*The first decan of Scorpio* is ruled and sub-ruled by Pluto and Mars. The Pluto-Mars decanate is the most powerful decanate of this sign and perhaps the harshest, for the intense Scorpio characteristics are essentially unmodified.

*The second decan of Scorpio* is sub-ruled by Neptune and Jupiter, rulers of Pisces. The Pisces or Neptune-Jupiter decanate reflects a more subtle manifestation of Scorpio attributes. Neptunian influence may, in some instances, subvert the higher motives of Scorpio expression.

*The third decan of Scorpio* is sub-ruled by the Moon, ruler of Cancer. In the Cancer or Moon decanate, the Moon softens the harshness of the sign and lends to sympathy and kindness in a rough sort of way, for there is no real gentling or taming of Scorpio expression.

### Decanates of Sagittarius

*The first decan of Sagittarius* is ruled and sub-ruled by Jupiter. The Jupiter decanate emphasizes the optimistic and idealistic qualities of the sign, but exaggerates Sagittarian restlessness and wanderlust as well.

*The second decan of Sagittarius* is sub-ruled by Mars, ruler of Aries. The Aries or Mars decanate shows increased daring, initiative and immoderation. Martian influence promotes foolhardiness, improvisation and opportunism.

*The third decan of Sagittarius* is sub-ruled by the Sun, ruler of Leo. In the Leo or Sun decanate, the Sun enhances Sagittarian vitality. Leonine influence adds staying power and modifies the restless attributes of Sagittarius so that expression is more stable than in the first and second decans.

### Decanates of Capricorn

*The first decan of Capricorn* is ruled and sub-ruled by Saturn. The Saturn decanate of Capricorn is predominantly goal-oriented. This decan stresses the diligence, perseverance and status-consciousness that is associated with this sign.

*The second decan of Capricorn* is sub-ruled by Venus as ruler of Taurus. Venus augments the materialistic and acquisitive characteristics of Capricorn in the Taurus or Venus decanate.

*The third decan of Capricorn* is sub-ruled by Mercury as ruler of Virgo. Mercury mellows the dogmatism of the sign. Common sense and greater flexibility underscore Capricorn expression in the Virgo or Mercury decanate.

### Decanates of Aquarius

*The first decan of Aquarius* is ruled and sub-ruled by Uranus and Saturn. The Uranus-Saturn decanate is progressive, unpredictable and indicative of sudden change.

*The second decan of Aquarius* is sub-ruled by Mercury as ruler of Gemini. The Gemini or Mercury decanate of Aquarius emphasizes the intellectual expression of the sign. This decan is associated with unprecedented ideas and inventive genius. The second decan does not modify the natural Aquarian tendencies; its action is to supplement.

*The third decan of Aquarius* is sub-ruled by Venus as ruler of Libra. Venus lends warmth to the impersonal Aquarian expression. There is greater scope for acceptance of the Aquarian movement in the Libra or Venus decanate.

### Decanates of Pisces

*The first decan of Pisces* is ruled and sub-ruled by Neptune and Jupiter. The Neptune-Jupiter decanate is

given a highly spiritual connotation. It is said to bring out the inevitable. In this decan the self-sacrificing elements of Pisces expression are emphasized.

*The second decan of Pisces* is sub-ruled by the Moon, ruler of Cancer. The Moon heightens impressionability and emotional vulnerability. The Cancer or Moon decanate exhibits a morbid, self-pitying or maudlin mode of expression.\*

*The third decan of Pisces* is sub-ruled by Pluto and Mars, rulers of Scorpio. Pisces, a comparatively weak sign, is strengthened by Pluto and Mars. Piscean expression may manifest as either spiritual regeneration or degradation because of the Plutonian influence in this decan. The Scorpio or Pluto-Mars decanate is representative of the power within the self to overcome inner weaknesses or bring about self-destruction.

### Duads (Dwadasamas)

A further subdivision divides the signs into twelve duads, sometimes called dwadasamas, of  $2\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  each. The first duad is ruled by the planetary ruler of the sign; the second duad is ruled by the ruler of the sign that immediately follows in the zodiac; the third duad is ruled by the ruler of the next sign in the zodiac and so on. The final duad is ruled by the ruler of the sign that directly precedes the sign of interest. The duad ruler is subordinate to both the planetary ruler of the sign and the decanate sub-ruler.

DUAD SUB-RULERS

Sign	First Duad ( $0^\circ-2\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ )	Second Duad ( $2\frac{1}{2}^\circ-5^\circ$ )	Third Duad ( $5^\circ-7\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ )	Fourth Duad ( $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ-10^\circ$ )	Fifth Duad ( $10^\circ-12\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ )	Sixth Duad ( $12\frac{1}{2}^\circ-15^\circ$ )
Aries	Mars	Venus	Mercury	Moon	Sun	Mercury
Taurus	Venus	Mercury	Moon	Sun	Mercury	Venus
Gemini	Mercury	Moon	Sun	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars
Cancer	Moon	Sun	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter
Leo	Sun	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn
Virgo	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn
Libra	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter
Scorpio	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars
Sagittarius	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus
Capricorn	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus	Mercury
Aquarius	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus	Mercury	Moon
Pisces	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus	Mercury	Moon	Sun

## DUAD SUB-RULERS

Sign	Seventh Duad (15°-17½°)	Eighth Duad (17½°-20°)	Ninth Duad (20°-22½°)	Tenth Duad (22½°-25°)	Eleventh Duad (25°-27½°)	Twelfth Duad (27½°-30°)
Aries	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter
Taurus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars
Gemini	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus
Cancer	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus	Mercury
Leo	Uranus/Saturn	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus	Mercury	Moon
Virgo	Neptune/Jupiter	Mars	Venus	Mercury	Moon	Sun
Libra	Mars	Venus	Mercury	Moon	Sun	Mercury
Scorpio	Venus	Mercury	Moon	Sun	Mercury	Venus
Sagittarius	Mercury	Moon	Sun	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars
Capricorn	Moon	Sun	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter
Aquarius	Sun	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn
Pisces	Mercury	Venus	Pluto/Mars	Jupiter	Saturn	Uranus/Saturn

This finer subdivision accounts for subtle differences found within the same sign. For example, the duad ruler of the first duad (0°-2½°) of Taurus is Venus, the planetary ruler of the sign. Venus is also the sub-ruler of the first decanate in which the first duad falls. The Venus influence as expressed in Taurus is unmodified in this duad. The final duad (27½°-30°) of Taurus is ruled by Mars, planetary ruler of Aries, the sign that precedes Taurus in the zodiac. Venus remains the planetary ruler of Taurus; Saturn is sub-ruler of the third decanate. Mars as duad ruler lends more initiative than is found elsewhere in this sign, initiative that is expressed in accordance with the Venus/Saturn influence in the third decanate.

*Navamsas*

A ninefold division of signs based on Hindu astrology describes the sub-influence of signs within a sign. Each sign is divided into nine equal parts called navamsas, of 3½° each. Beginning with the first navamsa of Aries, a sign is assigned to each navamsa in order according to natural zodiacal sequence, repeating the sequence as necessary to the ninth navamsa of Pisces. The navamsa sign colors natural sign expression thus creating slight variations within a sign.

## NAVAMSAS

Sign	First Navamsa (0°-3½°)	Second Navamsa (3½°-6½°)	Third Navamsa (6½°-10°)	Fourth Navamsa (10°-13½°)	Fifth Navamsa (13½°-16½°)
Aries	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo
Taurus	Capricorn	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus
Gemini	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn	Aquarius
Cancer	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio
Leo	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo
Virgo	Capricorn	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus
Libra	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn	Aquarius
Scorpio	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio
Sagittarius	Aries	Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo
Capricorn	Capricorn	Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus
Aquarius	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn	Aquarius
Pisces	Cancer	Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio

## NAVAMSAS

Sign	Sixth Navamsa (16 $\frac{2}{3}$ °–20°)	Seventh Navamsa (20°–23 $\frac{1}{3}$ °)	Eighth Navamsa (23 $\frac{1}{3}$ °–26 $\frac{2}{3}$ °)	Ninth Navamsa (26 $\frac{2}{3}$ °–30°)
Aries	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius
Taurus	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo
Gemini	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini
Cancer	Sagittarius	Capricorn	Aquarius	Pisces
Leo	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius
Virgo	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo
Libra	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini
Scorpio	Sagittarius	Capricorn	Aquarius	Pisces
Sagittarius	Virgo	Libra	Scorpio	Sagittarius
Capricorn	Gemini	Cancer	Leo	Virgo
Aquarius	Pisces	Aries	Taurus	Gemini
Pisces	Sagittarius	Capricorn	Aquarius	Pisces

Until recently navamsas were given little consideration by western astrologers and are not commonly used in natal astrology. They have application in astrological health questions. For example, if Capricorn, which rules bones, is a health factor in a horoscope, the Pisces navamsa would specify foot bones since Pisces rules the feet. Future studies may shed more light on the function of navamsas.

### *Special Degrees*

#### **Critical Degrees**

Critical degrees, which stem from the Hindu concept of the twenty-eight Lunar Mansions (subdivisions of the zodiac based upon the Moon's average daily motion), are, unlike navamsas, widely accepted by western astrologers. Critical degrees roughly separate the Lunar Mansions, each of which spans 12- $\frac{1}{2}$ ° of the zodiac. The critical degrees are 0°, 13°, and 26° in cardinal signs (Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn), 9° and 21° in fixed signs (Taurus, Leo, Scorpio and Aquarius), 4° and 17° in mutable signs (Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces).

Critical degrees supplement planetary strength, and they can be the deciding factor in determining which of two planets is the more influential. Of two planets that otherwise carry equal weight in a horoscope, the one occupying a critical degree is deemed the stronger of the two.

#### **Anaretic Degrees**

The last degree of a sign, from 29° to 30°, is called the anaretic degree. Anaretic degrees signify an urgent need to correctly utilize the planetary energy of the planets placed therein. The individual is directed to deal with fundamental issues as indicated by the horoscope placement of the planets that occupy anaretic degrees. These planets activate conditions which one cannot ignore but must cope with in order to grow in that area.

An anaretic degree placed on a house cusp draws attention to the affairs of the house. If the individual neglects these matters, a stalemate develops; the affairs of the house stagnate, and progress in this area is retarded.

#### **Nodal Degrees**

A planet that falls in the same numerical degree (not necessarily in the same sign) as the Moon's Nodes is given special significance. If placed in a nodal degree a planet is said to indicate crisis or catastrophe at some later point in life.

#### **Fixed Star Degrees**

A planet that occupies the same position by sign and degree as one of the major fixed stars is given added emphasis in the horoscope. This emphasis is not a matter of planetary standing or strength. Fixed stars are classed as benefic or malefic. According to its

nature, a fixed star influences the action of a planet that is placed in its zodiacal position. Major fixed stars are listed in Appendix B.

## *Planetary Expression in the Signs*

As a planet travels through the signs of the zodiac, its energy is expressed in a manner that is consistent with the characteristics of the sign it occupies at a particular time. The signs do not alter the basic energies or fundamental principles of the planets; rather each provides a unique means of expressing planetary energies.

### **The Sun in the Signs**

The Sun represents the ego. The sign in which the Sun falls describes the manifestation of the drive for self-expression. The Sun sign influences one's approach to goals in life and the method one chooses to accomplish objectives. Some physical characteristics of the Sun sign may be observed in the individual, but usually one's appearance is determined largely by the sign on the Ascendant, especially if the Ascending sign is the stronger of the two or if the planetary ruler of the Ascendant is stronger in the horoscope than the Sun.

For basic modes of Sun-sign expression, review the signs in Chapter 2. Pay particular attention to the personal characteristics which describe the individual's drives and motivation.

### **The Moon in the Signs**

The sign in which the Moon is placed colors emotional responses and instinctive actions. The Moon sign influences one's reaction to events and people encountered throughout life. It describes the attitudes that have been acquired as a result of early childhood training, the maternal relationship, and home and family attitudes.

The new Moon denotes inspiration, initiation, the beginning of a cycle. The full Moon signifies maturation, fruition, the peak of a cycle.

If the Moon is increasing in light (in the waxing phase from new to full) in the natal horoscope, the individual reacts quickly and in an active manner within the limits of sign characteristics. If the natal Moon is decreasing in light (in the waning phase from full to new), response is more passive and introverted according to the dictates of the sign. A lunation Moon

(new Moon) or full Moon in the horoscope can be critical depending upon other astrological factors since it marks a turning point or transition from one phase to another. The lunation cycle is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 10.

*The Moon in Aries* stimulates the emotions. The result is a quick temper, impetuous responses and headstrong attitudes that prompt instinctive rejection of discipline and interference. This placement calls for developing patience and safeguarding against mishaps due to haste and rash actions. The individual whose Moon is in Aries notices Arian traits in his or her mother whether she is Arian or not. This person thinks of the mother as outgoing, aggressive and perhaps bossy. Family relationships and home life are active and competitive.

*The Moon in its sign of exaltation, Taurus*, steadies the emotions and fosters consistent attitudes and stable reactions. Domestic and financial security are important to emotional well-being. This placement contributes to an affectionate, though somewhat possessive, nature. The mother is considered by the individual to be caring and reliable, someone who is there when needed. The individual values the home and family life and works hard to preserve and protect these interests.

*The Moon in Gemini* intensifies natural lunar changeability and generates fluctuating emotions, shallowness, restlessness and loquacity. This placement is indicative of a flighty emotional nature. Feelings are intellectualized and verbalized. The maternal relationship is friendly, more sisterly than parental. Outside activities are often of more concern than home and family interests.

*The Moon in its sign of dignity, Cancer*, adds depth to the emotions and gives rise to strong family ties. A pronounced need to nurture and cherish and, in turn, be approved of and loved is evident. This placement generates a tendency to brood and withdraw when hurt; it also increases psychic sensitivity. The mother is pictured as a protector and homemaker who cares deeply for her child. Throughout life, the individual maintains an ongoing interest in home and family.

*The Moon in Leo* vitalizes the emotions and stirs a dramatic and somewhat ostentatious, self-centered response to the situations encountered. This placement



is indicative of a sunny temperament, a love for children and a great deal of pride in home and family. The mother is regarded as noble and aristocratic, generous and warm. Usually the home is as lavish and showy as the individual's finances will allow.

*The Moon in Virgo* inhibits the emotions and results in reticence, modesty and a quiet demeanor. The individual is conscious of details, scrupulous in work and personal habits. This placement emphasizes concern for health, hygiene and diet. The mother is remembered as efficient and critical. The individual's own home is meticulous, and much fussing and worry accompany its maintenance.

*The Moon in Libra* creates an emotional aversion to discordant conditions and disharmonious relationships. Compatible relationships are a must for emotional well-being. The individual will go to great lengths to avoid a scene. Refinement, social grace, tact and a need for approval are present with this placement. The mother is thought of as fair and just but somewhat indecisive. The individual's home reflects an innate appreciation of nice things.

*The Moon in Scorpio*, the sign of fall, produces intense emotional drives and deep passions. This placement gives strength of purpose and determination; however, strict control of turbulent emotions is needed. If emotional control is lacking, the individual may be prone to volatile anger, jealousy, resentment or vengeance. The mother is seen as demanding and forceful. Home life is seldom peaceful or serene, although the family is deeply loved by the individual.

*The Moon in Sagittarius* interjects a need for emotional independence and freedom. There is a natural inclination to avoid ties that impinge upon personal liberty. The individual loves travel and feels a need for movement and activity. This placement produces high ideals, optimism, daring and recklessness. The mother's spiritual and religious qualities may be admired or resented by the individual, but in either case they leave a lasting impression. The individual is averse to household routine, tends to form loose-knit family ties and likes to change residence frequently.

*The Moon in Capricorn*, its sign of detriment, subdues emotional expression and induces aloof, reserved, controlled responses. A cautious, serious outlook and

a degree of pessimism accompany this placement. Emotional security is linked to status and material security. The mother is viewed as conscientious though emotionally cool. Family relationships and home life reflect materialistic concerns as well as a desire for personal privacy.

*The Moon in Aquarius* depersonalizes the emotions; the sympathies lie with humankind as a whole rather than with a particular human being. A detached sort of friendliness is present and one insists upon complete emotional and personal freedom. The individual is unconventional, a typical non-conformist. The mother is regarded as odd or eccentric (by the individual). Family relationships appear unusual to the outsider; home life is non-traditional. Home furnishings and decor tend toward the modernistic.

*The Moon in Pisces* sensitizes the emotions and enhances receptivity to people and external conditions. Psychic tendencies are marked. The individual is compassionate but may be gullible and impractical. This placement gives creative imagination; it also breeds discouragement and escapism. The mother impresses the individual as being loving, tender and kind. Close family ties are maintained. A relaxing home life can reinforce emotional stability.

For a more comprehensive understanding of the Moon in the signs, reread the section on the Moon in Chapter 3 and the mode of expression associated with each sign as described in Chapter 2.

### Mercury in the Signs

The sign in which Mercury is placed describes thinking and study habits, mental and conversational expression, the formulation and communication of ideas.

*Mercury in Aries* quickens thought processes and urges immediate and direct expression of ideas. This placement encourages competitive thinking, a love for debate, argumentiveness, impatience, impulsive decisions and ill-considered plans.

*Mercury in Taurus* inspires practical thinking and common sense. Financial and material considerations are an important part of decision making. This placement restricts mental ingenuity and flexibility, but gives good powers of concentration and prudent judgment.

*Mercury, dignified in Gemini*, indicates an agile, perceptive mind, objective thinking capacity, logical reasoning ability and fluent speech. This placement creates an avid curiosity and the desire to learn; however, mental interests may be scattered and inconsistent, knowledge superficial.

*Mercury in Cancer* links the intellectual processes to the emotions. Personal feelings and subconscious memories intrude upon decisions and ideas, thus hindering objectivity. This placement produces a good memory, but thinking is apt to be influenced more by the past than by the future.

*Mercury in Leo*, the sign of fall, channels mental energy to produce continuity and cohesiveness in thinking and planning. This placement inclines toward a creative mental outlook and the dramatic expression of ideas; however, the tendency to be opinionated or intellectually arrogant may exist as well.

*Mercury in Virgo*, the sign of dignity, blends precise logic, a penchant for detail and reasoning ability into accurate analytical capabilities. This placement contributes to efficient planning and the practical utilization of ideas as well as to preoccupation with trivial facts.

*Mercury in Libra* combines mental ability with a sense of intellectual impartiality. Decisions are weighed carefully. Overconcern with fairness and justification can cause vacillation and indecision. This placement effectively unites subtle persuasive powers and tactful speech.

*Mercury in Scorpio* gives intuitive insight and a probing mind that goes beyond the obvious and penetrates the depths of a matter. This placement indicates the desire and ability to perceive the inner or hidden nature of things. Tendencies to be secretive, shrewd, cunning, blunt and sarcastic also exist.

*Mercury in Sagittarius*, the sign of detriment, produces idealistic concepts, intellectual versatility and comprehension. Mental viewpoints are based largely on principle. This placement activates the desire to be well-informed and abreast of events, but failure to grasp the finer points or specifics of a topic can limit depth of understanding.

*Mercury in Capricorn* fosters mental discipline, good concentration and well-ordered thought. Practical

considerations form the basis for judgment. This placement indicates methodical reasoning ability and common sense but gives little intellectual resourcefulness.

*Mercury in Aquarius*, the sign of exaltation, creates an unemotional intellectual outlook. The mind is inventive; the trend of thought is progressive and original. This placement permits an unbiased view of human events and conditions; it gives rise to advanced concepts but also promotes rather extreme ideas.

*Mercury in Pisces*, the sign of detriment, heightens emotional perception and psychic awareness to the extent that intellectual impressions may be distorted. Ideas are imaginative and creative though not necessarily realistic or practical. This placement hinders the ability to discriminate between fact and fancy.

### Venus in the Signs

The sign in which Venus is posited indicates the way a person expresses himself or herself as a social companion, romantic partner or spouse. It describes one's aesthetic tastes, financial habits and material preferences.

*Venus in Aries*, the sign of detriment, induces aggressive social and romantic expression. These people are competitive, enthusiastic and passionate in their relationships. They frequently form ties impulsively. They show much initiative toward moneymaking activities; however, they often spend their money as fast as they earn it.

*Venus in Taurus*, the sign of dignity, signifies lasting friendships. These people forge serious romantic links and permanent marital bonds. They are steadfast in love and inclined to be possessive with loved ones. The arts, material comforts and gourmet food are appreciated. They possess strong financial drives.

*Venus in Gemini* denotes a friendly, charming, witty companion who is somewhat inconsistent. The individual may be a social butterfly and a flirt. Nonetheless, these people are likeable and popular. They enjoy conversation, reading and travel. Many have a tendency to squander money frivolously.

*Venus in Cancer* forms strong emotional ties. Marriage is associated with security. These people tend to "mother" and cling to those they love. They enjoy entertaining at home. Although they spend money on

their homes and families, they generally manage to set aside a substantial reserve for a rainy day.

*Venus in Leo* shows a strong attraction to the opposite sex. These people are ardent in love, gregarious socially and dominating in romance and friendship. They are extravagant with loved ones and in satisfying their pleasure needs. They like to entertain and gamble and usually do both in a big way.

*Venus in Virgo*, the sign of fall, inclines one to be very discriminating in choosing companions and a marriage partner. These people notice the shortcomings of their associates, and are quick to criticize such defects. They tend to analyze their love feelings; many are reticent to marry. Basically thrifty, they may splurge occasionally but are usually practical in money matters.

*Venus, dignified in Libra*, emphasizes the desire for congenial social relationships and a happy marriage. In their associations these people value harmony above all else. Their social and aesthetic tastes reflect refinement and culture. They are inclined to be extravagant in their efforts to obtain material luxuries.

*Venus in Scorpio*, the sign of detriment, gives rise to a dominant sex drive and a passionate love nature. If their love is betrayed, these people are resentful and vindictive. Often their romances and friendships are stormy. They are shrewd and calculating in money matters.

*Venus in Sagittarius* shows a sociable disposition and romantic ardor; however, love feelings cool quickly if romance threatens personal freedom. These people enjoy sports, games and horses. Although sometimes lucky in financial affairs, the nonchalant way they handle money usually keeps them from retaining their gains.

*Venus in Capricorn* restrains the expression of romantic feelings. These people are conservative in love and in social tastes. They marry for practical reasons such as social status or money. Attracted to people who are mature, many choose marriage partners who are older and well-established. Much significance is attached to the acquisition of financial and material assets.

*Venus in Aquarius* displays an unconventional attitude toward social relationships, romance and marriage. These people seek intellectual stimulation and gravitate toward companions who provide it. They will not

tolerate a relationship that is possessive or restrictive. Despite erratic spending and saving habits, they are usually generous and sensible in money matters.

*With Venus in Pisces*, the sign of exaltation, love becomes all important. These people are unhappy without affection. They are sensitive and sympathetic in friendship, tender and sentimental in romance. Impractical in financial matters, they show little concern for money or the lack of it.

### Mars in the Signs

The sign in which Mars falls shows how one gives expression to energy and gratifies physical desires.

*Mars in Aries*, the sign of dignity, indicates direct and immediate action. These people go after what they want without a second thought. They are energetic, impulsive, outgoing, aggressive and competitive. Although they possess initiative, courage and enthusiasm, they frequently fail to finish what they start. Their haste and thoughtlessness often cause mishaps, particularly burns, scalds, cuts and injuries due to shooting incidents or traffic accidents. These people possess a strong sex drive.

*Mars in Taurus*, the sign of detriment, retards the natural Martian initiative, yet it gives practical direction to the energies and strengthens determination. These people are slow starters, but their action is purposeful. The individual's desires are linked to moneymaking activities and material gain. They like to work with money or materials from the earth. They have a very basic approach to sex.

*Mars in Gemini* expresses energy through intellectual channels and the skilled use of the hands. Competitive and aggressive in mind and speech, these people find an outlet for their energy either through action or in being quarrelsome. Much restlessness is evident with this placement. These people waste energy by starting too many projects at the same time, finishing few. Out of boredom they may affect ill-considered and impetuous changes. They hold a cavalier attitude toward sex.

*Mars in Cancer*, the sign of fall, emotionalizes the physical drives. Highly emotional about everything they do, these people tend to get overly involved on a personal level. It is difficult for them to be objective

about their work and they resent criticism. When things go wrong at work, they are liable to vent their frustrations on their families. Sex drive is tied to emotional needs; inner security depends in part upon sexual satisfaction.

*Mars in Leo* enhances leadership ability and increases the drive for power. Ambition, initiative and enthusiasm are backed up by will power, determination and confidence. The individual has strong vitality. Basic drives, including the vigorous sex drive, are rooted in the ego. The urge to succeed is magnified because it is an issue of pride as well as material or social import.

*Mars in Virgo* denotes efficiency, orderliness and the aptitude for detailed work. These people go about things in a systematic and practical manner. Their concern for health and hygiene may spark ambition in related fields, or it may manifest itself in preoccupation with personal cleanliness, diet and general health habits. These people are usually fastidious and critical of those who are not. Sex drive is suppressed to a degree and is often diverted toward work.

*Mars in Libra*, the sign of detriment, places emphasis on partnerships and other associations. The individual's drives are expressed with and through other people. Productivity hinges largely on the cooperation and approval of others. If other factors in the horoscope indicate the inability to get along with other people, the individual's drives may be stifled. The crudeness of Mars is greatly modified in Libra. The passionate love nature is expressed in a highly romanticized version of sex.

*Mars in Scorpio*, the sign of dignity, is powerfully placed. Drive is forceful and purposeful. These people are hard-nosed, uncompromising, determined and courageous. They have a "do-or-die" attitude, seldom admitting defeat, and will tackle overwhelming odds. Activities are kept secret. As enemies, these people can be dangerous and vengeful toward anyone who stands in their way. They possess a powerful sex drive.

*Mars in Sagittarius* gives moral courage and the urge to act on one's convictions. These people back up their beliefs with action. They may be crusaders, leaders of great movements, evangelists or merely soapbox orators who expound their causes to anyone who will listen. Although open and fair, they are firm in the

defense of their ideals. Their spirit of adventure is hard to dampen, their daring matched only by persons who have natal Mars in Aries. These people have ardent but restless love natures.

*Mars in Capricorn*, the sign of exaltation, increases worldly ambition. These people are well organized and industrious. Prestige and recognition are pursued in a methodical and purposeful manner. They are capable of exerting the kind of discipline and regulated action that achieves practical results. Sex drive is controlled, prudish.

*Mars in Aquarius* gives a flair for being innovative, for doing things in an original and unique way. These people express their energies the way they see fit, independent of tradition or popular opinion. They do not adapt readily to enforced methodology or routine and seek activities which allow freedom of action. Sexual response is unemotional, cool.

*Mars in Pisces* reduces stamina and gentles drives. Confidence and self-motivation are lacking; emotional control is weak. These people function best under clear direction and in a quiet atmosphere; otherwise, their efforts may be muddled and unproductive. An affectionate love nature is, perhaps, more romantic than physical.

### Jupiter in the Signs

The sign in which Jupiter is placed signifies the mode of mental and material expansion. It describes the way intellectual, philosophical, religious and moral concepts are expressed, how benevolence is exercised and benefits received.

*With Jupiter in Aries*, the individual is outspoken and zealous about personal beliefs. These people are confident they are right whether they are or not. Generous and extravagant, they are impulsive in granting favors and giving gifts. Quick to seize upon the opportunities that come their way, they will initiate their own openings if need be. They expand through personal action and in so doing frequently overextend themselves.

*Jupiter in Taurus* gives a practical attitude toward intellectual and material resources. Educational and philosophical values that cannot be applied to everyday needs are useless to the individual. Generosity is linked to need rather than sympathy. Benefits come in the form

of money or tangible assets. These people endeavor to multiply their resources. They may be self-indulgent and overspend on physical comforts.

*Jupiter in Gemini*, the sign of detriment, increases the thirst for knowledge. Mental interests are diverse yet often superficial. These people are compelled to express their ideas in writing or verbally. Free with advice, they can be overly clever and talkative. Advantages come through mental alertness and knowledge. A good education is helpful in focusing mental energy constructively.

*Jupiter in Cancer*, the sign of exaltation, shows a tendency to cling to family beliefs and parental training. These people pass family ideals on to their own children; they express their philosophies through home and family. Benevolent in a protective, maternal way, they will shelter the homeless and feed the hungry. Benefits are derived through parents, family and domestic or home-related interests. These people tend to overeat, and many gain weight easily.

*Jupiter in Leo* dramatizes one's beliefs. These people act out their religion and promote their causes with ceremony and pomp. Creeds are lived openly and ostentatiously. With their worldly goods they are warmhearted and generous. They benefit through the attention they attract; admiration expands their sense of self and encourages the development of leadership potential. This may also be their downfall if they succumb to conceit and self-importance. Gains can come through the stock market and speculative interests; however, the individual is inclined to risk too much money and may incur heavy losses.

*Jupiter in Virgo*, the sign of detriment, symbolizes the work ethic. These people are happiest when serving others; they benefit through work that has a useful purpose. They will help the needy get a start but seldom extend free handouts. Analytical and discriminatory capabilities are enhanced but there is a tendency to become overly critical. These people are observant and careful; however, their concern with details can stand in the way of expansion.

*Jupiter in Libra* gives high principles based on a sense of justice and fair play. These people derive greatest benefits through partnerships, business associations and marriage. By being cooperative and by uniting their

efforts to advance mutual causes they benefit others. There is danger here of the individuals sacrificing personal interests to maintain harmonious ties.

*Jupiter in Scorpio* denotes deep-seated and sharply defined beliefs. There are no grey areas. Right or wrong, these people adhere to their principles, inflexible and unimpressed with what the rest of the world thinks. Secretive, they do not promote their philosophies or explain their reasons; they live as they believe. Although usually hesitant to go out on a limb for others financially or morally, they will do so when their sympathies are aroused. Strong willpower and the determination to expand are powerful assets and advantageous in overcoming obstacles.

*Jupiter in Sagittarius*, the sign of dignity, broadens the scope of intellectual and philosophical interests. The underlying need to search for truth is expressed in religion, education, idealism or moralism. These people are helpful in thought and deed, expecting little or nothing in return for their generosity. They benefit from education gained through study or travel. Because they seem to be lucky, many are willing to take foolish risks.

*Jupiter in Capricorn*, the sign of fall, produces a conservative intellectual outlook and rather narrow, old-fashioned standards. This placement adds to the drive to maintain community standing. These people are conscious of worldly position and reputation. They have great respect for money and are, therefore, prudent with their generosity. The benefits they derive are of a practical nature and usually gained through their own efforts. Little comes their way that they do not earn.

*Jupiter in Aquarius* inspires tolerance and an unconventional code of ethics. These people set their own standards but do not impose their beliefs on others. Their generosity and philosophy are prompted by unselfish, broadminded, humane leanings. They benefit from friendship and group associations and in ways that are unusual or different.

*Jupiter in Pisces*, the sign of dignity, expands human kindness and compassion. Ideals spring from the emotions, ideals which may be far removed from the realities of life. These people are self-sacrificing and good-hearted but show little discrimination in their generosity. As a result, they are frequently imposed

upon by freeloaders, or drawn into unsound causes. They benefit through deep spiritual resources; however, they may fail to recognize mystical or escapist cults that have no real spiritual value.

### Saturn in the Signs

The frustrating or inhibiting action of Saturn is expressed through the sign it occupies. Since Saturn remains in one sign for approximately two and one-half years, the house placement in the horoscope is of greater personal significance than sign influence. The sign position indicates how a person handles serious issues, approaches obstacles in life, relates to authority and exercises the discipline and control demanded by Saturn.

*Saturn in Aries*, the sign of fall, blunts the initiative yet stabilizes the spirit of enterprise. The individual must develop patience and self-discipline. Irresponsible action can lead to multiple problems and setbacks.

*Saturn in Taurus* indicates prudent handling of money and sensible management of practical affairs. The affections are steadfast; however, the individual is, perhaps, too serious in matters of love. Money difficulties and romantic heartaches can stem from overemphasizing material concerns and failing to reach out in love.

*Saturn in Gemini* curbs the free expression of ideas. It gives sound judgment and a good sense of logic. These people think over problems carefully and arrive at practical solutions. If they fail to do so, their mistakes multiply. They must utilize mental discipline.

*Saturn in Cancer*, the sign of detriment, gives the tenacity to continue on a chosen course despite obstacles. Security-conscious, these people handle difficulties in a manner that presents the least threat to emotional and material security. Because of their emotional restraint, they do not inspire sympathy; many must resolve their problems without the help or support of others.

*Saturn in Leo*, the sign of detriment, narrows creative self-expression. These people may be hampered by their own egos. They try to resolve problems and settle issues in a self-centered manner. If they are to find a permanent solution to difficulties, they need to overcome egotism and arrogant pride.

*Saturn in Virgo* attaches importance to detail and efficiency. These people analyze problems methodically in a step-by-step manner. They are perfectionists

and critical taskmasters. Many bring troubles on themselves through their insistence on precision and accuracy in petty matters instead of concentrating primarily on significant ones.

*Saturn in Libra*, the sign of exaltation, either suppresses or crystallizes reciprocal action depending upon the individual's willingness and ability to work in harmony with others. If cooperation is lacking, obstacles develop. These people must strive to obtain support and assistance and learn to cooperate with others.

*Saturn in Scorpio* prompts reserve and taciturnity. The individual handles difficulties in a secretive, shrewd, calculating manner that is intense and unrelenting. This method of dealing with problems may arouse suspicion and apprehension in the people with whom one deals, thereby creating other obstacles and increasing troubles.

*Saturn in Sagittarius* inspires conscientious intellectual responsibility and serious views based on traditional concepts. These people treat difficulties in an ethical manner. By being too moralistic and rigid, unbending in their standards, they can create obstacles for themselves.

*Saturn in Capricorn*, the sign of dignity, can give rise to obstacles and hardship; it also generates the ambition and discipline necessary to overcome these difficulties. These people tackle problems in a cool-headed, practical manner. They know the value of hard work, but they must overcome the tendency to accumulate and hoard material assets if they are to enjoy the fruits of their efforts.

*Saturn, dignified in Aquarius*, heightens personal detachment, thus permitting objective and impartial treatment of troublesome issues. These people approach difficulties from a rational and unemotional standpoint. Frequently they stir opposition with their impersonal and unconventional views. Through their peers, they learn discipline and group acceptance or rejection.

*Saturn in Pisces* restricts compassion and induces an attitude of hopelessness and despair. These people must develop a realistic attitude toward difficulties and learn to implement practical solutions to their problems. Troubles are exacerbated by discouragement and the failure to cope.

### Uranus in the Signs

The significance of Uranus in the signs has a very general application since this planet occupies the same sign for approximately seven years. Its influence in twentieth century development is pointed out in Chapter 28. A more personal emphasis may be given if other astrological factors warrant it. The sign in which Uranus is placed gives expression to the rebellious spirit, the desire for freedom, and the urge for change and breaking with traditions.

*Uranus in Aries* asserts independence and prompts change. There is danger of impetuous action that severs ties and causes estrangement, action that is motivated by impatience and a desire for freedom at any price.

*Uranus in Taurus*, the sign of fall, induces practical innovations. Changes designed to serve utilitarian purposes and produce concrete results are associated with the use of material resources.

*Uranus in Gemini* enhances ingenuity and inventiveness. However, action is erratic and novel ideas may be left to flounder due to the individual's lack of perseverance. Change may be promoted merely for the sake of change.

*Uranus in Cancer* contributes to emotional unpredictability and a certain amount of emotional instability. Emotional considerations underlie the breaks initiated and the changes effected.

*Uranus in Leo*, the sign of detriment, produces changes of the kind that increase power potential and leadership capacity. The individual may overstep the bounds of propriety and common sense in order to satisfy the urge for prominence and change.

*Uranus in Virgo* promotes systematic research, especially in job methodology and health. On a personal level, the individual may tend to adopt fads and unconventional methods of medical treatment.

*Uranus in Libra* generates instability in relationships. The desire for freedom and change can disrupt cooperative endeavors, partnerships and marriage.

*Uranus in Scorpio*, the sign of exaltation, gives rise to massive changes of a profound nature. Death and destruction may herald the need for change. Rebellion and self-will are strong motivating factors.

*Uranus in Sagittarius* magnifies the urge for intellectual freedom. Far-ranging views, advanced abstract concepts and unorthodox ideas are all part of the progressive intellectualism indicated by this placement; however, there may be lack of consistency in opinions.

*Uranus in Capricorn* gives a more conventional expression to the Uranian demand for change. Tradition is reordered and modernized rather than dispensed with entirely. Future security is the prime motivation behind change.

*Uranus in Aquarius*, the sign of dignity, produces humanitarian inspired changes that have far-reaching implications. Innovations are inventive, original and often much ahead of the times. Future trends are born here.

*Uranus in Pisces* awakens the intuitive intellect; it may prompt fundamental spiritual revelations. All too often the results from subsequent changes are disappointing because utopian hopes are founded on illusory ideals.

### Neptune in the Signs

Since Neptune spends about fourteen years in each sign, the sign placement has little effect on the individual unless other indications in the horoscope elevate the importance of this planet. The sign in which Neptune falls is indicative of the imagination, the spiritual and intuitive faculties, and the mystical leanings: all those intangible qualities in human nature. Neptune's influence in world trends and generational developments during the twentieth century as it traverses the zodiac from Gemini into Aquarius is discussed in Chapter 28.

*Neptune in Aries* (1861/62–1874/75; circa 2024–2038) fires the imagination. It induces active expression of imaginative impulses and psychic promptings. Perhaps Neptune's entry into Aries in the twenty-first century will herald daring underwater exploits, a new approach to psychic phenomena and a world-wide awakening on a spiritual level.

*Neptune in Taurus* (1874/75–1887/88; circa 2038–2053) lends concrete expression to the imagination. It encourages practical application of spiritual inspiration. This position reflects a generation that channels Neptunian energies into avenues of material concern.

Spiritual values are expressed through stewardship of financial resources.

*Neptune in Gemini* (1887/88–1901/02; circa 2053–2067) increases intuition and mental sensitivity; however, the imagination is restless and whimsical. It indicates intellectual awareness of spiritual needs on a broad scale and a logical approach to the study of subconscious motivations and mystical experiences.

*Neptune in Cancer* (1901/02–1914/15; circa 2067–2080), the probable sign of exaltation, enhances psychic powers and mediumistic tendencies, but there may be difficulty in distinguishing between the real and the imagined. This generation is extremely impressionable to existing conditions and easily swayed by public opinion. Generational tendencies depend largely upon the tenor of the times.

*Neptune in Leo* (1914/15–1928/29) indicates a creative imagination. It inspires the outward expression of creative concepts and artistic performance. This generation tends to dramatize its moment in history. If Neptune is afflicted by other heavy planets while in this sign, chaos that topples governments bringing about the downfall of those in power can ensue.

*Neptune in Virgo* (1928/29–1942/43), the sign of detriment, shows a tendency to analyze spiritual concepts and premonitions. The imagination is restrained and psychic contact rebuffed. Generational trends emphasize spiritual healing, holistic medicine and concern for nutritional needs of the underprivileged; the work ethic strongly influences spiritual ideals. If Neptune is afflicted, widespread unemployment can result.

*Neptune in Libra* (1942/43–1956/57) identifies with spiritual beauty and inner harmony, but it also increases susceptibility to deception through misplaced idealism. During post World War II years, Neptune's transit of Libra undermined marriage, leaving family structures vulnerable to Uranus' transit of Cancer and the disintegrating influence of the Uranus/Neptune square that followed. However, under more positive circumstances, Neptune in Libra is associated with a generation whose relationships are based on close spiritual or karmic bonds.

*Neptune in Scorpio* (1956/57–1971) produces depth of imagination. It fosters intuitive insight and extreme

sensitivity to subtle psychic vibrations. In this sign, Neptune creates broad interest in the spiritual aspects of life after death, reincarnation and other esoteric questions. Expressed negatively, it can induce widespread drug usage and sexual identity crises.

*Neptune in Sagittarius* (1971–1984/85) gives rise to a highly developed sixth sense; however, hunches are frequently misinterpreted. On a broad scale, it can weaken the structures of organized religion, but it fosters the search for spiritual truths. Religious cults and mystical organizations thrive under this influence.

*Neptune in Capricorn* (1984/85–1998/99), the probable sign of fall, weaves dreams of a serviceable nature, but dreams frequently fail to materialize. Because Capricorn adds structure to Neptunian inspiration, constructive spiritual ideals emerge, ideals that are reflected in the development of world affairs. Unless Neptune is severely afflicted, there is little danger of this generation losing themselves in search of utopian dreams.

*Neptune in Aquarius* (1998/99–circa 2012) promotes spiritual enlightenment, psychic awareness and an ingenious imagination. Genuine premonitions can occur with this placement. Generational influence can be seen in the startling discoveries and medical breakthroughs that occur with the activation of subconscious faculties and awakening of intuitive foresight that is associated with this placement.

*Neptune in Pisces* (circa 2012–2024), the sign of dignity, signifies a vivid imagination, strong ascetic tendencies and the potential for almost perfect spiritual attunement. If Neptune is afflicted in this sign, there is danger that the individual may become separated from reality and drift into a world of illusion. Neptune's last appearance in this sign during the mid-nineteenth century may have contributed to the growth of transcendentalism that took place in the United States at the time.

### **Pluto in the Signs**

In the fifty years since Pluto's discovery, this planet has been observed, at least in part, in the signs of Cancer, Leo, Virgo and Libra. Twentieth-century developments associated with this planet are traced in Chapter 28. The historical significance attached to Pluto's slow progress through the signs is probably of



greater importance than the effect on the individual unless Pluto is the horoscope ruler or holds a dominant position in the horoscope. Pluto's influence remains largely a matter of conjecture. The sign in which Pluto is posited probably indicates the manner in which the power of regeneration is manifested.

*Pluto in Aries* (1823-1852; circa 2082-2101) incites the regenerative movement yet does not give the endurance needed to complete the evolution. Pluto's appearance in this sign during the first half of the nineteenth century influenced the pioneer movement that opened up new frontiers in the United States.

*Pluto in Taurus* (1852-1884, circa 2101-2132), the sign of detriment, resists Plutonian development; it adds staying power, however, once the process is begun. During Pluto's last transit in this sign, the realization that people are not chattel (Taurus) evolved in the United States, although it took the Civil War to establish slavery reforms.

*Pluto in Gemini* (1884-1913/14; circa 2132-2162) expresses regeneration by intellectual and communicative means, through the dissemination of ideas. Its transit at the turn of the century coincided with Henry Ford's first automobile (1896), the birth of Charles Lindbergh (1902), and the Wright brothers' first flight at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina (1903).

*Pluto in Cancer* (1913/14-1938/39) strengthens the transformation potential because deep emotional involvement reinforces the sense of purpose. It influences developments, constructively or otherwise depending upon the overall situation, in the home and homeland. During Pluto's last transit in Cancer, World War I disrupted the homelands of many; domestic problems rose on an international scale as an aftermath of the war; world-wide famine and depression affected the home lives of millions.

*Pluto in Leo* (1938/39-1956/57), the possible sign of exaltation, shows evolution and development that are pursued in a determined manner. This transit gave rise to a power struggle that led to World War II and the downfall of powerful world leaders (Leo). The development of atomic power during this period with its potentials for useful energy applications and destruction (bomb) shows clearly Pluto's potential for positive development or destruction.

*Pluto in Virgo* (1956/57-1971/72) gives practical and efficient expression to regenerative action. The useful and useless are analyzed and sorted. On a broad scale, it is associated with advances in medicine, employment reforms and improved agricultural methods that increase food production.

*Pluto in Libra* (1971/72-1983/84) implies concern in the area of relationships. In 1980, Pluto was in Libra and was largely responsible for the revamping of structures related to social justice and marriage as well as the pattern of compromise and appeasement that has dominated international affairs in recent years.

*Pluto in Scorpio* (1983/84-1995), the sign of dignity, is powerful and potent. Evolution is a must. The potential for degeneration is as great as that for regeneration. This generation faces "life or death" decisions concerning pollution, sexual mores, atomic/nuclear power and the rising crime rate, decisions that can influence the course of history.

*Pluto in Sagittarius* (1995-circa 2017) signifies transformation through intellectual and philosophical advances. It is associated with the rebirth of high-minded ideals and the evolution of world-wide religious beliefs. Spiritual truths which unfold at the time may act as the cement that binds nations together.

*Pluto in Capricorn* (circa 2017-2040) indicates potential for an orderly transition that is more constructive than destructive. Pluto's last transit in Capricorn coincided with the signing of the Declaration of Independence and the founding of the United States. Since then, all nations have become closely involved in each other's affairs. A world government could evolve during its next transit in the twenty-first century.

*Pluto in Aquarius* (circa 2040-2061), the possible sign of fall, spurs revolutionary action in order to bring about needed change. This transit operated during the American and French revolutions. However, in light of subsequent progress in national relations, when it recurs in the twenty-first century its influence will probably be directed toward humanitarian reforms.

*Pluto in Pisces* (circa 2061-2082) contributes to confusion and delusion. Misguided efforts undermine the Plutonian evolutionary principle and may create

a chaotic, muddled state of affairs. Out of the chaos can come a deeper understanding of the real meaning and purpose of life on Earth and afterlife.

### *The Moon's Nodes in the Signs*

The Moon's North and South Nodes always fall in opposing signs. The sign in which the North Node appears shows how a person reaches out to others in order to overcome inertia and to outgrow habits which block progress. The North Node's sign denotes the manner in which one approaches the new experiences that are essential to development.

The sign the South Node occupies describes the way a person expresses habitual tendencies that are responsible for stagnation, those tendencies that retard potential development.

*The North Node in Aries and the South Node in Libra* require initiative and self-assertion to overcome the tendency to rely on others. Indecision and the failure to strike out on one's own inhibit growth.

*The North Node in Taurus and the South Node in Scorpio* call for practical and determined action as the means of releasing deep-seated emotional frustrations which limit development. In some instances there may be sexual connotations with these sign positions. If so, the individual can find meaningful expression in sexual love only after self-centered passions are conquered.

*The North Node in Gemini and the South Node in Sagittarius* emphasize the need for a logical, objective approach that shows concern for central facts. It is necessary to correct the habit of acting on generalities without giving sufficient consideration to essential details.

*The North Node in Cancer and the South Node in Capricorn* indicate that one must reach out with feeling and display sensitivity and protective concern toward others as the means of overcoming selfish ambition, emotional coolness and indifference.

*The North Node in Leo and the South Node in Aquarius* signify the need to extend creativity and personal warmth in order to open doors that have remained closed because of impersonal attitudes or eccentric habits.

*The North Node in Virgo and the South Node in Pisces* stress the importance of discrimination and attention to detail. These sign placements emphasize the need to overcome laziness, indecision and aimlessness.

*The North Node in Libra and the South Node in Aries* show that growth comes through cooperation and association with others. Willfulness and argumentativeness that interfere with establishing productive relationships must be stifled.

*The North Node in Scorpio and the South Node in Taurus* specify the need for regenerating the spirit and mastering materialistic tendencies. So positioned, the Moon's Nodes also have sexual implications, which attach significance to healthy sexual expression and require control of licentious tendencies.

*The North Node in Sagittarius and the South Node in Gemini* point out ethical action based on high-minded principles as the key to growth. Clever or cunning habits that stand in the way of honesty must be overcome.

*The North Node in Capricorn and the South Node in Cancer* call for a well-organized approach and constructive action. It is imperative that the individual deal with emotional obstacles that create the tendency to withdraw from others.

*The North Node in Aquarius and the South Node in Leo* require open expression of friendliness founded on humanitarian concepts. One must master egotism and play down self-importance in order to grow.

*The North Node in Pisces and the South Node in Virgo* present self-sacrifice and a deep spiritual concern for the suffering of others as the way to outgrow faultfinding and overly critical tendencies.

# 5 *The Houses of the Horoscope*

The twelve houses are the basic units of the horoscope. A line drawn from the outer circle of a horoscope to the center of the chart marks the beginning (cusp) of one house and the end of the preceding one. Refer to Chapter 1, Figure 2.

## *Hemispheres of the Horoscope*

Each house represents specific areas or conditions of life. Larger divisions within the horoscope, hemispheres and quadrants, have a general application.

### **The Ascendant–Descendant Axis**

The cusp of the seventh house, the Descendant, lies directly opposite the cusp of the first house, the Ascendant. The line that connects these two houses, the Ascendant–Descendant axis (horizontal axis), represents the horizon.

The section of the horoscope above this axis, the southern hemisphere, charts signs and planets that appear in that part of the sky above the horizon at the time and place of birth. Houses seven through twelve, which lie above the Ascendant–Descendant axis, the axis of intellectual expression and spiritual reaction, are referred to as collective or dispersive houses. A large number of planets placed in the collective houses of the southern hemisphere or day section of the horoscope indicates outgoing, active, intellectual expression and mental objectivity in a general way.

Signs and planets that appear below the horizontal axis are those that are below Earth's horizon. Houses one through six, which fall below this axis in the

northern hemisphere or night section of the horoscope, are termed personal or focal houses. A majority of planets occupying personal houses signifies receptive, passive intellectual expression and mental subjectivity.

### **The Midheaven (MC)–Imum Coeli (IC) Axis**

The IC falls directly opposite the MC in the horoscope. The line joining these two angles is defined as the MC–IC axis, or vertical axis. The vertical axis, the axis of physical action and emotional response, separates the eastern and western hemispheres of the horoscope.

In a quadrant system of house division (unequal house system), the MC denotes the cusp of the tenth house and the IC marks the cusp of the fourth house. In such a system, the houses are not the same size; that is, depending upon the time and place of birth, one house differs from another in the number of zodiacal degrees it contains.

An equal house system is one in which each house is comprised of 30°. The cusps of the fourth and tenth houses are dependent upon the degree of the Ascendant (as are the other house cusps). The angles of a horoscope occupy the same sign and degree in all house systems for any particular set of birth data. Regardless of the house system used, the MC and IC always form the vertical axis even if these points differ from the cusps of the tenth and fourth houses.

The houses that lie in the eastern section of the horoscope (left of the vertical axis) are collectively termed independent houses. In a quadrant system of house division these are houses one, two, three, ten, eleven and twelve. Heavy planetary emphasis in the eastern hemisphere of a horoscope denotes self-motivation and

self-directed endeavor. Action is not contingent upon circumstances; the individual will force opportunities.

Houses in the western hemisphere of the horoscope (right of the vertical axis) are dependent houses. These are houses four, five, six, seven, eight and nine in a quadrant system. A preponderance of planets in the western hemisphere indicates that freedom of action is limited to some extent by society. A passive or receptive response to circumstances is more typical than self-initiated activity. The individual tends to go along with conditions as they are rather than introduce changes; one is more or less dependent upon society for opportunities.

Refer to Chapter 1, Figure 2, for positions of the houses in a horoscope.

### The Vertex-Anti-Vertex Axis

The Vertex marks the intersection of the ecliptic and the prime vertical (the vertical great circle that passes through the east point of Earth's horizon, zenith and nadir) in the west; the opposite point is the Anti-Vertex. The axis connecting these two points is called the third angle of the horoscope. The astrological significance of these two points and the hemispheric division created by their axis is not fully established. It is believed that the Vertex indicates fateful or karmic events that play an important part in the life of an individual. Vertex events are not fateful in the sense that something *must* happen; these events are related to cause and effect. For example, a person through his or her actions (Anti-Vertex) can set up chain reactions which lead to a specific result (Vertex). The Anti-Vertex indicates self-action that begins the chain and the Vertex indicates the point of result. If, however, action is changed or modified anywhere along the line, the end result will be changed or modified accordingly.

The Vertex is also known as the wish-fulfillment factor, but wishes are apt to be fulfilled in a very perverse manner. For instance, if the Vertex activates the eighth house, which rules insurance and legacies, the wish for a large sum of money might be fulfilled through collection of insurance stemming from destruction of possessions or through a legacy, a direct result of a death. Either way, suffering, tragedy and/or sacrifice is the price of wish fulfillment. Self-activation (Anti-Vertex) in the form of the wish involved second house (financial) matters in this case, perhaps because of unconscious desires for economic security or financial status.

The Vertex is always on the western side of a horoscope and usually falls between the fifth and eighth houses. As a rule, other people are involved in whatever is implied by the sign, house, and aspects associated with this point. Personal relationships may be significant here, or others may be responsible for related external conditions, depending upon all astrological factors concerned. The Anti-Vertex, found in the eastern section of the chart, indicates the point of beginning action in relation to the Vertex.

Much more needs to be learned about the true nature of the Vertex in order to determine its exact significance in natal astrology. Current data does suggest that a conjunction between the Vertex and a planet (both in the same sign and degree) lends power to both. For example, if Neptune conjuncts the Vertex in the seventh house, which rules marriage and partnerships, unrealistic (Neptune) expectancies (Vertex) in matters concerning partners and mate (seventh house) are indicated. Expectations are self-oriented (Anti-Vertex in the first house opposite the seventh house); social interaction (seventh house) depends upon personal development, a first house matter. If the conjunction is in Virgo, the individual might expect perfection in relationships and be disappointed if hoped-for perfection failed to materialize. However, the ability to handle these relationships comes through self-development and self-understanding as indicated by the Anti-Vertex. Other planets that influence the conjunction would indicate how the individual might deal with Vertex-related situations.

It is good practice to insert the Vertex, abbreviated V, in a horoscope and study its connection with actual events or relationships that seem to be related. Calculations for computing the zodiacal positions of the Vertex and Anti-Vertex are given in Chapter 12.

### East Point

The East Point is the precise degree of zodiacal longitude rising at the equator at the time of birth. Also called the equatorial Ascendant or hidden Ascendant, the East Point describes the inner or hidden side of the personality. These traits, though not always observable, frequently manifest when the individual is under stress. Aspects to the East Point give important clues as to how one forms and maintains relationships. If an individual has trouble relating to the inner aspects of the personality, he or she will

probably have difficulty in relating to others. Stressful aspects to the East Point indicate difficulty in expressing all facets of the personality and in overcoming conflicting modes of expression. Study of the East Point reveals karmic lessons and karmic relationships that were self-formed and impressed upon the inner self. The East Point and its opposite coincide with the Ascendant and Descendant for births occurring along the equator (0° latitude). East Point calculations are given in Chapter 12.

### Quadrants of the Horoscope

The angles (Ascendant, Descendant, MC and IC) separate the four quadrants (quarters) of the horoscope. Each quadrant is part of two hemispheres (eastern or western and northern or southern) in relation to both the horizontal and vertical axes, and combines the hemispheric influences attributed to its area of the horoscope.

The first quadrant, bounded by the Ascendant and IC and consisting of houses one through three, describes qualities of both the northern and eastern hemispheres. Planetary emphasis in the first quadrant implies mental receptivity and subjectivity (northern hemisphere) in combination with outgoing emotional and physical expression (eastern hemisphere emphasis).

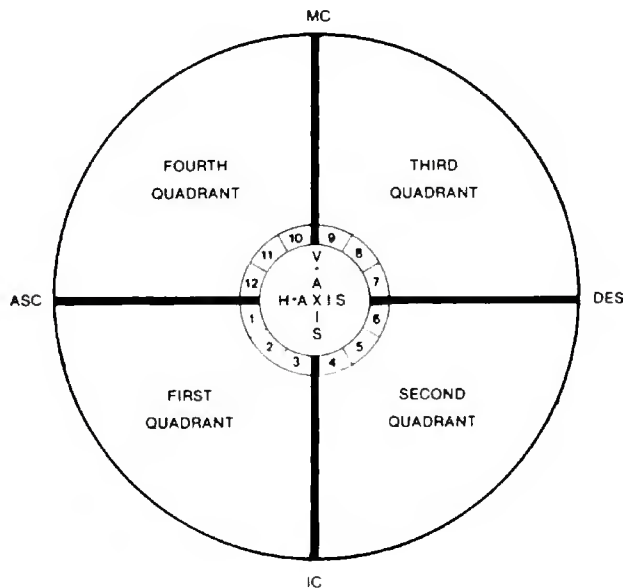


Figure 6. The Quadrants of the Horoscope

The IC and Descendant bound the second quadrant, which contains houses four, five and six. A combination of northern and western hemisphere emphasis is shown here. When a large number of planets is placed in the second quadrant, tendencies toward intellectual, emotional and physical passiveness are emphasized.

The third quadrant is bounded by the Descendant and the MC. A majority of planets occupying this quadrant combines emotional and physical receptivity with mental objectivity and outgoing intellectual expression.

The MC and Ascendant bound the fourth quadrant. Heavy planetary distribution in this quadrant indicates outgoing intellectual, emotional and physical activity (see Figure 6).

Quadrants are also associated with stages of developing the self in relation to the general focus of the houses contained therein. This aspect of quadrant emphasis is discussed in this chapter in the section entitled "Developmental Focus of Quadrant Houses" following individual house descriptions.

The term *occidental* is used variously to denote all the houses in the western hemisphere (second and third quadrants) or to specify houses one, two, three, seven, eight and nine, which form the first and third quadrants. The term *oriental* is sometimes applied to all houses in the eastern hemisphere (first and fourth quadrants) and sometimes to those houses in the second and fourth quadrants, namely houses four, five, six, ten, eleven and twelve. These terms are misleading when applied to houses and, if used, should be explicitly defined.

It is less confusing and always correct to refer to a planet as being *oriental of the Sun* when it rises and sets before the Sun or as *occidental* if it rises and sets after the Sun.

### Hylegiacal and Anaretic Places

Hylegiacal places, also called aphetic places, are portions of the horoscope that are termed life supportive. The hylegiacal places are the last 5° of the twelfth house, the first 25° of the first house, the last 5° of the sixth house, the first 25° of the seventh house, the last 5° of the eighth house, all of the ninth house, the entire tenth house and the first half of the eleventh house (see Figure 7).

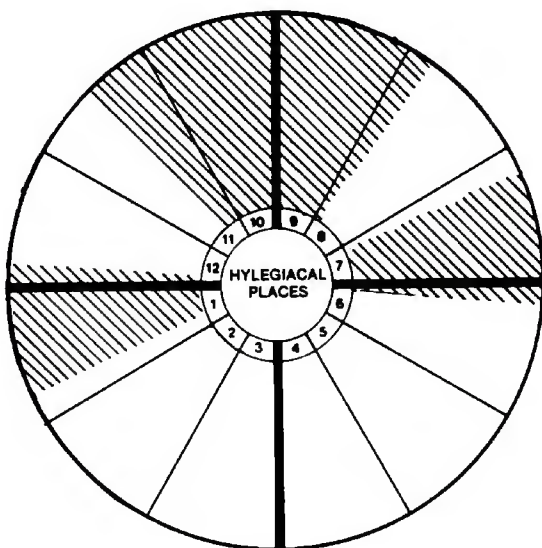


Figure 7. The Hylegiacal Places (shaded areas) in the Horoscope

A benefic planet that is positioned in a hylegiacal place and is strong and well aspected is designated the Hyleg or Apheta of the horoscope, the giver of life. In a man's horoscope, the Sun, if qualified, is the Hyleg; if the Sun is not in a hylegiacal place, or is afflicted and weak by sign, the Moon is used; if neither planet qualifies, the planetary ruler of the Ascendant is considered next, then Jupiter, Mercury and Venus in that order. In a woman's horoscope, the Moon is considered first in determining the Hyleg, then the Sun, the Ascendant ruler, Venus, Jupiter and Mercury. If all such planets are afflicted, the hylegiacal benefic that is least afflicted is chosen Hyleg. The Hyleg is associated with longevity and the sustaining of life.

The Anareta, the most influential malefic, which occupies or rules the sign on the cusp of the fourth, sixth, eighth or twelfth house, is the destroyer of the horoscope; it is associated with death. Its position is the anaretic place, which describes the termination of life.

### *House Classifications*

The houses are classified according to similar or complementary association.

#### **Modal Houses**

Modal houses are classed according to the general mode of activity shared by the houses in each group.

This threefold division classifies the houses as *angular*, *succedent* or *cadent*.

The angular houses are one, four, seven and ten. Each of these houses is ruled naturally by a cardinal sign, and each reflects cardinal qualities in its activities. These houses are indicative of initiatory, dynamic action. Planets placed in angular houses are powerful, for they act as motivators.

Succedent houses (two, five, eight and eleven), naturally fixed houses, are associated with reliable, steady action in a general sense. Specific action in any house is determined by the planets and signs involved. Ideas and activities that originate in angular houses are carried out in these houses.

The cadent houses, ruled naturally by mutable signs, are three, six, nine and twelve. Adaptability and diversified action are shown here. These houses disperse the results of angular and succedent house activity.

#### **Functional Houses**

Functional houses are grouped according to complementary function; that is, each house in a group represents a particular branch of the same general function described by the group to which it belongs. This important classification is composed of four groups: *individual* houses (one, five and nine), all ruled naturally by fire signs, *temporal* houses (two, six and ten), ruled naturally by earth signs, *relative* houses (three, seven and eleven), ruled naturally by air signs and *terminal* houses (four, eight and twelve), ruled by water signs.

Individual houses are associated with the person, the self, life. In this context, the first house represents the body, the fifth house represents the creative spirit, and the ninth house represents the abstract intellect. This group is also called the Trinity of Life.

Temporal houses have bearing on the material aspects of life. Money and possessions are associated with the second house, work and service are associated with the sixth house, and prestige and career interests are associated with the tenth. These houses are known as houses of substance or possessive houses and form the Trinity of Wealth.

Relative houses are concerned with human relationships. The third house represents close relatives and neighbors, the seventh house represents business and marriage partners, and the eleventh house

represents friends and colleagues. These houses constitute the Trinity of Association.

Terminal houses pertain to endings and results. The fourth house deals with the closing years of life, the eighth deals with death, and the twelfth deals with the ultimate consequences of life. As water houses, these are also considered occult houses; they form the Trinity of Psychism.

### **The Significance of Each of the Houses**

By studying the signs and planets that influence a house, the astrologer determines conditions and activity relevant to affairs governed by that house.

The sign that appears on a house cusp is the ruling sign of that house; the planetary ruler of the cusp sign is the ruler of the house. Planets occupying a house are co-rulers of the house.

In an unequal house (quadrant) system of house division, it is possible for all 30° of a sign different from that on the cusp to fall within a house. A sign that does not appear on a house cusp but is contained entirely within a house is called an intercepted sign. Though its expression is somewhat subdued and obscured by the cusp sign, this sign is significant in house affairs and its planetary ruler is also co-ruler of the house.

The natural sign and planetary ruler associated with a house bear some influence in the affairs of that house, for these three, though they function differently, share common rulerships.

### **The First House**

The first house is the most personal of houses. It represents the individual, the appearance, facial characteristics, mannerisms, disposition, attitudes, the body and the condition of the body, and is thus associated with general health. The first house also signifies personal affairs and beginnings, including the beginning of life. This is the house of self. The natural sign of the first house is Aries; the natural ruler is Mars.

The sign on the Ascendant (the cusp of the first house), called the rising sign, essentially influences personal characteristics, temperament, personality and appearance. Along with the Sun and Moon, the Ascendant describes the individual. The Sun represents the ego and defines creative self-expression; the Moon is associated with the responsive side of the personality; the Ascendant portrays the outward expression of personal identity, the projection of the personality.

The planetary ruler of the Ascending sign is designated the horoscope ruler or chart ruler. The planetary ruler of a sign that is intercepted in the first house is not the horoscope ruler; however, it is considered a co-ruler of the first house.

### **The Second House**

The second house represents personal material resources. Money, tangible assets, personal belongings, movable possessions, personal income and expenditures all come under the dominion of the second house. This house describes a person's earning capacity, how personal money is spent, how financial obligations are met, how one budgets, saves and invests. This is the house of personal finance. Taurus is the natural sign of the second house, and Venus is the natural ruler.

### **The Third House**

The third house rules the intellect and communication. A person's thinking capacity, mental expression, conversational tendencies, literary interests, reading preferences and study habits are described in the third house. Speech, letters, writings, documents, books, magazines, telephones, and primary and secondary education are ascribed to this house. Short trips and commuter travel belong to the third house as does walking, hiking, bike riding and visiting. The third house represents brothers, sisters, relatives in general, neighbors and the neighborhood environment. This is the house of learning. The natural sign of the third house is Gemini; Mercury is the natural ruler.

### **The Fourth House**

The fourth house deals with the home, family life and domestic affairs. Fixed possessions, houses and property are governed by the fourth house. It represents one's mother and describes the maternal relationship in particular, the parental relationship in general. The fourth house reflects one's inherited tendencies as well as early childhood environment and experiences. The conclusion of undertakings rests in the fourth house and so do the closing years of life. This is the house of the home. Cancer is the natural sign of the fourth house, and the Moon is the natural ruler.

### **The Fifth House**

The fifth house governs pleasurable pursuits. Creative expression, romance, courtship, love affairs, social

activities, recreation, entertainment, amusements, sports, games, hobbies, gambling interests and financial speculation are represented by the fifth house. Although investments fall in the general category of financial affairs belonging to the second house, those of a risky or speculative nature are ruled by the fifth house. The fifth house is associated with education and educational institutions and, along with the third house, has bearing on one's education. A person's children, and the first child in particular, are also represented by the fifth house. This is the house of pleasure. The natural sign of the fifth house is Leo, and the natural ruler is the Sun.

### **The Sixth House**

The sixth house is associated with health and one's capacity for work and service. Matters to do with diet, nutrition, hygiene, health care, sickness and disease are ascribed to the sixth house. General working conditions, one's ability to obtain and hold a job, job efficiency, occupational hazards, and one's relationships with co-workers and employees are described by this house. The sixth house rules pets and domestic animals; it is connected with animal husbandry. This is the house of health. Virgo is the natural sign of the sixth house; Mercury is its natural ruler.

### **The Seventh House**

The seventh house is representative of a person's interaction with society, one's close associations and one's dealings with the public. Marriage, divorce, business partnerships and close personal relationships belong to this house. Open enemies, rivals, competitors and allies come under the dominion of the seventh house. This house rules agreements, mergers, lawsuits and contracts. Note that while the paper, writing and signing of a contract are third house matters, the essential agreement is a seventh house affair. This is the house of partnership. The natural sign of the seventh house is Libra; the natural ruler is Venus.

### **The Eighth House**

The eighth house represents death, death benefits, the affairs of the dead, partnership resources and joint financial interests. This house describes legacies, inherited assets, insurance, the marriage partner's earnings and money-managing tendencies, alimony,

gains obtained through business partners, and taxes. The recycling of discarded items and the salvaging of worn articles is attributed to the eighth house. The eighth house is associated with sexual energies and regeneration. Interest in life after death and reincarnation is found here. This is the house of rejuvenation. Scorpio is the natural sign of the eighth house; Pluto and Mars share natural rulership.

### **The Ninth House**

The ninth house governs legal affairs, foreign interests, religion, abstract thought, higher education, publishing, long-range advertising and lengthy journeys. This house rules courts of law, foreign countries, churches and universities. The ninth house represents the relatives of the marriage partner and describes a person's relationship with in-laws. Horses, especially race horses, are associated with this house. It is called the house of philosophy. The natural sign of the ninth house is Sagittarius, and the natural ruler is Jupiter.

### **The Tenth House**

The tenth house refers to worldly affairs, professional and career interests, a person's business life, recognition, community standing, prestige, one's employer, one's superiors and the government. This house deals with a person's public life and achievements and is the house of worldly attainments. It also represents the father and describes parental authority in general. Capricorn is the natural sign of the tenth house, and Saturn is the natural ruler.

The MC (Midheaven) has much significance in tenth house affairs. Whether or not it forms the cusp of the tenth house, the MC indicates the natural direction of a person's efforts as applied to his or her career, worldly ambitions and other outside interests of a public nature.

### **The Eleventh House**

The eleventh house describes the friends a person chooses and the organizations to which one belongs. The eleventh house rules fraternal lodges and cooperative societies. This house represents one's colleagues, acquaintances and companions, the potential to advance personal objectives through friendship and group affiliations lies therein. A person's hopes and wishes are found in this house. This is the house of friendship. The natural sign of the



eleventh house is Aquarius; Uranus and Saturn are the natural rulers.

### The Twelfth House

The twelfth house represents sorrows, troubles, bondage, limitations, anxieties, worries, confinement, seclusion and all that is secret, hidden or clandestine. Confidential matters, private affairs, secret societies, hidden enemies, treachery and deceit are twelfth house concerns. Charitable organizations, welfare offices and relief agencies are part of this house. Hospitals, sanitariums, rest homes, jails, prisons, reformatories and detention camps are represented by the twelfth house. This house is referred to as the house of self-undoing or karma because it is associated with karmic responsibilities. Pisces is the natural sign of the twelfth house; the natural rulers are Neptune and Jupiter.

### *Developmental Focus of Quadrant Houses*

The quadrant that contains the largest number of planets indicates the stage of development on which an individual naturally focuses his or her attention according to general properties shared by quadrant houses.

The first quadrant (houses one through three) is the "me" or "mine" quadrant and the focus is on self-needs. From this point of view, the first house relates to "me," the second to "my" possessions and the third to "my" environment. The third house also describes learning to communicate in the manner that enables one to fulfill self-desires. This quadrant represents the first stage of development in which a person discovers his or her needs, desires and abilities. If the first is the most heavily populated quadrant in the horoscope, the individual focuses initially on self-development as the first or beginning step toward total development. This does not mean that one remains in the first stage of growth throughout life, but future development is heavily influenced by self-interests.

The second quadrant (houses four through six) emphasizes the second stage of development, that of merging self-desires with the needs of others in the home and family (fourth house), through children and creativity (fifth house) and in work and service (sixth house). Although the second quadrant is below the horizon, as is the first quadrant, it is in the western hemisphere and therefore indicates less initiative and

greater dependency on others in the developmental process. Charts with second quadrant emphasis stress integrating intellectual, emotional and physical needs on an inner level to prepare for outward development. This is difficult to achieve without first learning the lessons of the previous quadrant. The individual must either combine both stages of development or begin at the beginning and learn self-development before concentrating on second quadrant growth. To begin development in the second quadrant is comparable to starting a book in the second chapter; one must eventually read the first chapter in order to get the most out of what follows.

The third stage of development, which takes place in the third quadrant (houses seven through nine), begins with developing the self through relationships and social interaction. Third quadrant emphasis concentrates attention on relationships through social expansion (seventh house), regeneration of energies (eighth house) and intellectual or spiritual growth (ninth house). If third quadrant development is to be fully realized, the first and second developmental stages must first be completed.

The fourth quadrant (houses ten through twelve) indicates the final stage in total development, the development of responsible action in life through career goals (tenth house), friends and social awareness (eleventh house) and spiritual progress (twelfth house). Fourth quadrant emphasis is the most difficult with which to deal, for the individual's natural tendency is to begin at the end of the developmental process. One cannot achieve the full potential for growth without mastering each stage of development.

# 6 *The Influence of the Signs in the Houses*

Each of the twelve signs influences the horoscope. The sign on the cusp of a house indicates the mode of action applied to the affairs of that house; it shows how one deals with the conditions described therein. An intercepted sign also influences the house it occupies and must be considered along with the sign that appears on the cusp.

## *Influence of the Signs in the First House*

Signs that influence the first house have bearing on the total person: appearance, temperament, attitudes and personal affairs. The sign on the Ascendant (the cusp of the first house) not only influences the first house, it also colors the entire horoscope because it largely describes the personality. The Ascending sign is reflected in part in everything a person does; it is the astrological signature of the individual. After reading about the signs on the cusp of the first house, review the section in Chapter 2 on the signs. In order to gain a broader understanding of the significance of the sign that appears on the Ascendant, observe in particular those traits that describe personal mannerisms, abilities, physical characteristics and appearance.

*Aries, the natural sign of the first house, lends courage, daring, initiative, self-motivation, competitiveness and decisiveness to one's nature when it appears on the cusp or is intercepted in the first house. These people are enthusiastic, impetuous and impatient.*

*Taurus on the cusp of the first house shows patience, determination, stability, endurance, practicality and an*

*appreciation for the beauty and comforts in life. These people are industrious, purposeful and responsible.*

*Gemini on the cusp of the first house indicates agility, perceptivity, curiosity, restlessness, a somewhat nervous disposition, busy hands and a busy mind. These people are versatile, talkative and unsettled.*

*Cancer on the cusp of the first house gives active emotions, sensitivity, impressionability, receptivity, a tendency toward introspection and a strong maternal instinct. These people are changeable, creative and security-conscious.*

*Leo on the cusp of the first house brings out pride, self-respect, loyalty, ambition, leadership ability and a sunny disposition. These people are outgoing and warmhearted. They usually attract a great deal of attention whatever they do, wherever they go.*

*Virgo on the cusp of the first house indicates detailed powers of observation, discrimination, dedication to service, a modest manner and a concern with health and hygiene. These people are retiring and meticulous. Many are habitual faultfinders.*

*Libra on the cusp of the first house denotes physical beauty, charm, natural courtesy, a taste for luxury and an innate desire for harmony and fair play. These people are refined and peace-loving. They are persuasive in a tactful way.*

*Scorpio on the cusp of the first house is indicative of deep passion, penetrating insight, firm resolve, inflexibility, fearlessness and an unwavering sense*

of purpose. These people are taciturn, secretive and very capable.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the first house* signifies an adventurous spirit, a straightforward manner, eagerness, optimism, exuberance and a keen sense of humor. These people are idealistic, independent and outspoken.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the first house* denotes worldly ambition, concern with status, respect for tradition, conservatism, self-discipline and a reserved demeanor. These people are serious, well-organized and materialistic.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the first house* lends to originality, resourcefulness, inventiveness, unpredictability and the urge for intellectual and physical freedom. These people are unconventional, impersonal and altruistic.

*Pisces on the cusp of the first house* shows emotional sensitivity, sympathy, compassion, moodiness, indecisiveness and a gentle disposition. These people are pliable, hesitant and mystically inclined.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Second House*

Signs that influence the second house describe a person's attitudes toward money and material possessions. These signs indicate in part how a person manages personal financial affairs.

Review the second house in Chapter 5 and apply the mode of expression basic to each sign as described in Chapter 2 to all elements of this house. Follow this same procedure after reading the section pertaining to each house in this chapter in order to acquire a more comprehensive view of the scope of expression of the signs.

*Aries on the cusp of the second house* indicates motivation and dynamic interest in financial affairs. One's initiative is directed toward moneymaking activities. However, savings may be practically nonexistent because of excessive spending.

*Taurus, the natural sign of the second house*, lends to practical interest in financial affairs when it occupies the cusp of this house (or is intercepted within). The determination to achieve security and enjoy the comforts of life motivates moneymaking activities.

*Gemini on the cusp of the second house* shows diverse financial interests and multiple moneymaking ideas. In all probability, regular earnings will be supplemented by sideline activities. Fluctuations in income are likely.

*Cancer on the cusp of the second house* brings out the need to protect financial interests and to provide for the future. Security is equated with a substantial "nest egg" that must remain intact except in emergencies. The balance of income, however, may be spent freely.

*Leo on the cusp of the second house* implies creative direction of financial affairs. Money is a matter of pride and income is earned and spent with flair. This can be the position of the "wheeler and dealer."

*Virgo on the cusp of the second house* denotes sensible handling of financial affairs. Accurate accounts are kept of earnings and itemized expenditures. Money is usually budgeted carefully and spending geared to income limitations. Since Virgo is a mutable sign, normal spending habits vary occasionally, and extravagant tendencies may emerge from time to time.

*Libra on the cusp of the second house* shows that a partner or financial agent can be helpful in managing monetary affairs. Income and expenditures must be properly balanced if resources are to be adequately developed.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the second house* produces an intense moneymaking drive that can result in a lucrative income. Financial affairs are considered private business and financial dealings are often shrouded in secrecy.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the second house* is associated with good luck in financial affairs, but little common sense in handling money. This sign position suggests the free spender.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the second house* directs ambition toward moneymaking activities and the accumulation of material assets. Financial affairs are handled in a conservative, cautious manner.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the second house* inspires unique moneymaking ideas that may be unconventional, quite unusual and almost always original.

Financial affairs are frequently linked to group or organizational interests.

*Pisces on the cusp of the second house* is indicative of careless money-managing habits, which produce disorganized financial affairs. Impracticality and gullibility can result in heavy losses. There may be a tendency to get involved in easy-money schemes of dubious merit.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Third House*

The sign on the cusp or one intercepted in the third house influences a person's manner of intellectual expression. It also shows how a person relates to close relatives and the neighborhood environment.

*Aries on the cusp of the third house* describes an energetic, aggressive intellect. These people are quick with new ideas. Decisive, sometimes hasty, they implement plans as they formulate them. They are outspoken and argumentative. It is difficult for these people to concentrate on any one topic for a long period of time. Intellectual interests and conversation center around adventure, physical activities and current events. This sign placement fosters sibling rivalry and conflict with neighbors.

*Taurus on the cusp of the third house* gives a practical intellect and a slow, deliberate mind. These people take ample time to formulate plans or decisions and stubbornly resist change once they make up their minds. They think before they speak and mean what they say. Possessing good powers of concentration, what they learn, they learn well. Mental interests gravitate toward finances, art and music. These people form strong ties of affection with close kin; they are thoughtful neighbors.

*Gemini, the natural sign of the third house*, implies logical intellect, curiosity and mental alacrity when it appears on the cusp. These people express ideas fluently. Easily distracted, they need to cultivate good study habits. Literature or journalism may be appealing subjects. Drawn toward varied intellectual interests, their lack of concentration or focus may keep them from becoming well grounded in any one particular area. Often they are adept at languages. They usually maintain an amiable relationship with brothers and sisters, but

remain free of restrictive ties. They endeavor to keep abreast of neighborhood events and are likely to visit and telephone neighbors frequently.

*Cancer on the cusp of the third house* adds emotional color to the intellect. Imaginative and subjective, one's feelings and subconscious memories influence the mind. These people possess excellent powers of recall and are interesting conversationalists. Unless the topic is of prime interest and they are in the mood, they do not usually like to study. Mental interests fluctuate though an affinity for the study of home economics, infant care and botany is common. They tend to become emotionally attached to close kin; they are hospitable to neighbors.

*Leo on the cusp of the third house* indicates creative thinking and dramatic expression of ideas. Forceful speakers, they like to be heard and do not hesitate to expound their views. They are unbiased but opinionated. They study topics that appeal to them, refusing to waste time and energy on subjects they consider irrelevant. Studies connected with the theater, the stock market and political science usually interest them. These people are warm toward brothers and sisters and cordial toward neighbors.

*Virgo on the cusp of the third house* shows sound reasoning ability. These people are observant and perceptive and formulate detailed plans. Not much for idle conversation, they voice their thoughts precisely and unambiguously. Mental interests are practical and sensible. Studious and able to absorb the specifics of a particular area of study, they can do especially well in studies dealing with statistics, accounting and nutrition. The tendency to criticize may interfere with the relationship to close kin and neighbors.

*Libra on the cusp of the third house* denotes a keen intellect and an active mind. Soft-spoken and tactful, these people enjoy the companionship that conversation provides. They are drawn to studies connected with social or behavioral sciences, the fine arts and decorating; however, they are not inclined to study hard. These people try to maintain congenial relations with brothers and sisters and with neighbors.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the third house* indicates a shrewd mind and intellectual insight. Terse and brusque in speech, these people do not varnish the

truth nor embellish their statements with flowery words. They are set in their opinions. An aptitude for research is often exhibited and many excel in the study of chemistry, criminal investigation and forensic medicine. They are secretive about their plans. Jealousy and antagonism frequently mar relationships with close kin. These people are apt to be suspicious of neighbors and are not fond of frequent visiting.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the third house* reveals an inquiring mind and a broad range of intellectual interests. These people are witty, outspoken and forthright. Study habits may be irregular because the mind is restless, often dreaming of distant places. Once they develop the capacity to concentrate, they learn easily. They do well in philosophy, science and world geography. Although friendly with kin, they do not form close family ties. They are generous and helpful to neighbors.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the third house* denotes mental discipline and good powers of concentration. These people are capable of creating well-organized plans. They voice their ideas carefully and cautiously, always conscious of their purpose, and have little time for chitchat. Purposeful toward their studies, they are interested in subjects that have practical application to their careers and business interests, such as mathematics, history and business administration. They are more engrossed in their own affairs than those of brothers and sisters and usually remain somewhat aloof from neighbors.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the third house* is indicative of a progressive intellect and independent thought. Reasoning powers are not hampered by prejudice or traditional concepts. Ideas are advanced and farsighted. Although objective and intuitive, these people are also stubborn and opinionated. They are gifted conversationalists. Study habits are erratic despite able powers of concentration; interests may include psychology, electronics or astrology. These people are genial toward close kin and neighbors; however, they seldom get involved on an emotional level. They do not pry into anyone else's personal business and expect the same consideration in return.

*Pisces on the cusp of the third house* enriches the imagination and enhances intuition. These people form vivid mental pictures of their ideas. Reasoning is

sometimes questionable, guided by a sense of logic that only they understand. These people are dreamers who would rather fantasize than study. They need quiet in order to study and motivation to keep them at their studies. Subjects which challenge the imagination are appealing. Most like poetry and the ballet; a few are interested in toxicology. They form sentimental links with brothers and sisters and are sympathetic and kind to neighbors.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Fourth House*

Signs that affect the fourth house are descriptive of a person's approach to family life and domestic affairs.

*Aries on the cusp of the fourth house* shows active interest in family affairs. These people display initiative in handling matters pertaining to the home. There is competitiveness in the home and some squabbling and strife but no lasting animosity or bitterness.

*Taurus on the cusp of the fourth house* indicates a stable family life and a home that is reasonably secure financially. Comfortable surroundings, good food, music and art are part of the home atmosphere with this sign placement.

*Gemini on the cusp of the fourth house* signifies a lively home life, varied family interests and numerous changes of residence. Many of these people maintain two homes simultaneously. Lines of communication are open between family members; domestic affairs are discussed objectively.

*Cancer, the natural sign of the fourth house*, links the nurturing and protective qualities of the sign to the home and family affairs when it is placed on the cusp of the fourth house. These people are emotionally attached to their roots. Although many moves are probable, the pull of one's childhood home often prompts an eventual return to the birthplace.

*Leo on the cusp of the fourth house* brings out pride in family, home and heritage. Warmth, love, loyalty and generosity are natural parts of family life. Home entertainment can be a real production, lavishly designed to impress as well as to entertain.

*Virgo on the cusp of the fourth house* denotes an orderly home life. Domestic affairs are handled in a

systematic manner. The household is neat, uncluttered and probably hygienically clean. Family life is not devoid of affection, but there is a noticeable lack of warmth and gaiety.

*Libra on the cusp of the fourth house* is indicative of a harmonious home life where companionship and general accord are valued. Family affairs are treated in a fair manner. The home atmosphere reflects refinement, culture and a taste for beautiful furnishings.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the fourth house* fosters family disturbances and a somewhat tumultuous home life. Domestic affairs are confined to the home and family, a veil of secrecy protects family matters from outside interference. There is strong family loyalty with this sign placement, but, in the event of a split, differences will probably not be reconciled.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the fourth house* is conducive to a carefree home life. Family routine is irregular; associated activities are spontaneous. Outside interests frequently have priority over domestic affairs. There is much moving about; many changes are effected within the home which alter the family lifestyle.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the fourth house* implies a restrictive and highly disciplined home life. Domestic affairs are handled sensibly and privately. There is a dominant sense of family responsibility. The home is a status symbol; the atmosphere is emotionally cool.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the fourth house* shows the home is a friendly place, a gathering spot for acquaintances. Family interests tend to be unusual and domestic affairs reflect little regard for convention or tradition. Home decor is usually contemporary.

*Pisces on the cusp of the fourth house* gives a need for a relaxing home environment free of squabbles and family conflict. The home is a place of spiritual retreat. Family affairs may be disorganized and the household cluttered; yet, a sense of peace pervades the atmosphere.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Fifth House*

Signs which influence the fifth house bear upon a person's romantic attitudes, pleasurable interests and gambling instincts. These signs also describe how a

person relates to children. Fifth house signs give some indication of one's child-producing potential, although planets ruling and aspecting the fifth house have greater significance.

*Aries on the cusp of the fifth house* denotes an active love life keynoted by impetuous and ardent romances. Many of these people are daredevils who imperil their personal safety in sporting activities or risk their money in chancy gambling ventures. The likelihood of male children is predominant. Though impatient, these people feel warmly toward children.

*Taurus on the cusp of the fifth house* fosters stable romantic relationships. These people seldom play the field, they prefer love affairs that are constant, stable and exclusive. Few risks are taken in love or in speculative activities. This sign slightly increases the chances of having female offspring. These people are affectionate with children, but they maintain discipline.

*Gemini on the cusp of the fifth house* suggests a capricious love life. Fickle, these people shy away from restraining love ties and shun deep emotional involvements. They are capable of engaging in two or more romances concurrently. They display little interest in gambling. Gemini is a barren sign; nevertheless, there is a possibility of twins if the rest of the horoscope indicates offspring.

*Cancer on the cusp of the fifth house* signifies emotional love relationships. These people are romantic and sentimental, open and vulnerable to emotional hurts in unwise love affairs. Gambling tendencies are not very strong. Cancer is a fruitful sign which increases the likelihood of having children. These people tend to nurture and protect their children.

*Leo, the natural sign of the fifth house,* fosters a flamboyant love life when it is placed on the cusp. These people are warm, affectionate and highly attracted to the opposite sex. They throw themselves wholeheartedly into romance. Whether they win or not, they enjoy gambling. They are loving and generous with children. Leo is a barren sign, which reduces the probability of having children, but these people are extremely proud of any offspring they have.

*Virgo on the cusp of the fifth house* is indicative of a low-key love life. These people are choosy about

their companions and discriminating in love. They are perfectionists who set high standards for their romantic partners. Gambling holds little attraction for them. Since Virgo is a barren sign these people usually do not have a large number of offspring and are fussy and particular with the children they do have.

*Libra on the cusp of the fifth house* shows a desire for romantic companionship. These people seek refined, intelligent companions and are repulsed by uncouth behavior. Nevertheless, since they do not like to be alone, many get involved in unsatisfactory love relationships. Gambling interest is minor. This sign reinforces whatever child-producing potential is shown in the rest of the horoscope. These people view their children objectively and treat youngsters impartially.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the fifth house* indicates passionate love affairs. These people are prone to jealousy and do not bounce back quickly when a romance is over. They are not avid gamblers. Shrewd enough to calculate risks carefully, when they do speculate the chance of loss is minimal. Scorpio is a fruitful sign, which adds to the probability of having children. Relationships with offspring can be disruptive as these people are demanding with children.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the fifth house* inspires a happy-go-lucky attitude toward romance. Although ardent, these people hesitate to get deeply involved in love affairs. They are gregarious persons who enjoy the company of the opposite sex and do not take their many romances too seriously. Most enjoy gambling and usually are fairly lucky. They like young people and tend to grow closer to their own offspring as the children near adulthood. The sign Sagittarius is primarily associated with male offspring.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the fifth house* shows sincerity in matters of the heart. Casual love affairs do not interest these people and they seldom get involved in romantic escapades. They are as cautious toward gambling as they are toward love; few take chances with either. This sign is not conducive to a large family unless other indications in the horoscope increase the child-producing potential; children of either sex are possible. These people conscientiously fulfill the responsibilities associated with rearing children; however, they are undemonstrative and show little outward affection for their offspring.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the fifth house* gives an inclination toward platonic relationships. Many of these people prefer friendship to romance; love is more apt to develop from friendship than from an immediate physical attraction. Intellectual companionship is important with this sign placement. There is little affinity for gambling. The child-producing potential is not high since Aquarius is ruled by two barren planets, although the chances of having male offspring predominate. These people are friendly with all children, including their own.

*Pisces on the cusp of the fifth house* describes sentimental romantic attachments and secret love affairs. These people follow their hearts, not their heads. Many are victims of unrequited love or romantic disillusionment. Gambling luck is above average, but most of these people push their luck too far and consequently suffer substantial losses. Pisces is a fruitful sign, which gives predominance to female offspring. Although fond of children, their offspring frequently cause much sorrow and heartache.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Sixth House*

Signs which influence the sixth house affect a person's approach to work and service. These signs show how one reacts to routine working conditions. They also have bearing upon health and hygiene.

*Aries on the cusp of the sixth house* is indicative of the person who will go out and actively look for a job rather than wait for opportunities to arise through chance or circumstance. These people are energetic workers who would rather boss than be bossed. They are susceptible to feverish ailments; many are accident-prone. If these people work with dangerous equipment, they should follow strict safety procedures.

*Taurus on the cusp of the sixth house* shows a worker who is steady and reliable. These people perform their jobs capably and do not miss work without valid reasons. They follow job procedures and regulations consistently. They can give orders as well as take them, but they prefer the former. These people are predisposed to sore throats, especially if the job or home atmosphere is contaminated by irritants such as smoke or dust.

*Gemini on the cusp of the sixth house* denotes a versatile worker who prefers intellectual occupations. These people need employment that occupies their hands as well as their minds. They grow restless quickly and may change jobs frequently. Many hold down two jobs. Because their respiratory systems may be weak, these people must take proper precautions if they work or live in an environment that is polluted with smoke, dust or other fine particles that are easily inhaled.

*Cancer on the cusp of the sixth house* emphasizes the necessity for satisfactory job conditions. Sensitive and impressionable, these people perform best in a homelike atmosphere where co-workers are congenial and relationships are comfortable. Job stress can induce nausea. These people have to pamper their digestive systems and eat regular meals.

*Leo on the cusp of the sixth house* shows that work is handled in an authoritative manner. These people do not yield readily to the authority of others and are dissatisfied as subordinates. They take pride in their work; they can be counted on to do their best. Although these people possess a great deal of vitality, they should avoid putting too much stress on the heart or back.

When *Virgo, the natural sign of the sixth house*, appears on the cusp, it indicates a dedicated worker who is devoted to his or her job. Virgo represents the work ethic. These people are methodical and perform their jobs with painstaking accuracy. A clean working area is necessary for both physical well-being and job efficiency. Many of these people are subject to intestinal disorders and duodenal ulcers.

*Libra on the cusp of the sixth house* necessitates harmonious working conditions and a compatible job atmosphere; otherwise, these people cannot perform their work efficiently, nor remain satisfied in their jobs. The cooperation of co-workers is a must. Emotional disturbances and nervous stress reduce physical vitality. The kidneys may be weak; these people are prone to urinary ailments.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the sixth house* signifies a hard-working individual. These people tax their powers of endurance. They do not like to leave a job unfinished and will work long hours to complete what they have started. These people should learn how to properly lift heavy objects; many are susceptible to hernias and

other ailments which are caused by physical strain, particularly those afflicting the groin and genital area.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the sixth house* portrays a willing worker who tackles a job enthusiastically. Nevertheless, these people do not like to comply with stringent regulations which impinge on freedom of thought and action. Given adequate leeway, they do an excellent job; under constant supervision, they are apt to perform poorly, become disgusted and quit. They are subject to ailments that affect the liver and thighs.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the sixth house* indicates a worker who is ambitious, well-organized and efficient. If these people are in a position to do something about it, they will not put up with laziness or slipshod work from others. The skin is sensitive; these people should wear protective clothing if they work with irritating materials. They are prone to rheumatism, arthritis and chronic ailments.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the sixth house* denotes an innovative and original mode of job performance. These people are interested in finding a better way of doing things and in improving working conditions. They rebel against restrictive regulations, although they follow the rules that make sense to them. These people should avoid standing on their feet for long periods of time; many are troubled with swollen ankles or varicose veins.

*Pisces on the cusp of the sixth house* implies adaptability and the capacity to adjust to job requirements. With this sign placement there may be a lack of stamina that precludes work of a physically strenuous nature. These people must learn to pace their energies and avoid a workload that is too heavy. Congenial working conditions are advantageous as these people are sensitive to their surroundings. A tendency toward hypochondria or psychosomatic ailments is often present. Many suffer from corns, bunions and other foot problems.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Seventh House*

The sign on the cusp or one intercepted in the seventh house influences marriage and partnerships. These signs indicate the type of partner one attracts or to whom one is attracted.



*Aries on the cusp of the seventh house* signifies that the individual is attracted to dynamic, aggressive partners. These people frequently marry on impulse and form partnerships without considering the consequences of their actions. In marriage and business partnerships contention is likely.

*Taurus on the cusp of the seventh house* stresses material factors as prime considerations in marriage and partnerships. These people are conscious of the financial prospects of close involvements. They seek stability and security in marriage and partnerships.

*Gemini on the cusp of the seventh house* can be indicative of more than one marriage. These people seek intellectual compatibility in marriage and business partners. Common interests are of a mental or literary nature.

*Cancer on the cusp of the seventh house* associates marriage with a home and family. These people marry for domestic security. With this sign placement, strong emotional bonds develop between the individual and close associates. Emotional security is sought from both marriage and business partners.

*Leo on the cusp of the seventh house* indicates contradictory interests in relationships. These people find authoritative persons appealing, yet they are independent and domineering themselves. In marriage and business, they seek partners who, in some way, enhance their self-esteem or flatter the ego.

*Virgo on the cusp of the seventh house* shows a practical approach to marriage and partnerships. These people seek as partners persons who are more pragmatic and discriminating than they are. Faultfinding and criticism can interfere with the harmony of marriage and partnerships.

*When Libra, the natural sign of the seventh house, falls on the cusp, it lends to harmonious partnership relations. These people seek balance in marriage and business and ally themselves with partners who can provide it. They are attracted to persons who are peace-loving, refined and well mannered.*

*Scorpio on the cusp of the seventh house* can produce dynamic partnerships because of the passionate involvement of the individuals concerned. However, hostility between partners can develop. Jealousy and suspicion

can be disruptive to marriage and business partnerships.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the seventh house* may denote more than one marriage. These people seek partners who share their ethical and moral values; yet many marry persons who come from entirely different backgrounds. The marriage partner may be of foreign birth.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the seventh house* can delay marriage. Many of these people marry late in life or choose a marriage partner who is mature and established. Cautious, they are hesitant to commit themselves to a marriage that has little to offer but love. They seek to advance worldly ambitions and gain status through marriage and business partnerships.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the seventh house* implies an indifferent attitude toward marriage. These people like the feeling of belonging that comes from close associations, but they do not want to have their freedom curtailed. They seek marriage and business partners who do not demand that they conform and who do not infringe upon their rights as individuals.

*Pisces on the cusp of the seventh house* fosters an idealistic concept of marriage and the marriage partner. These people see their partners as they wish them to be; therefore, they are vulnerable to disappointments. Many are gullible in business partnerships.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Eighth House*

Signs which influence the eighth house describe material benefits that are derived with and through other people. These signs denote the partner's financial interests and money-managing techniques.

*Aries on the cusp of the eighth house* produces conflict over death benefits and disagreements in affairs related to marital funds and partnership resources. Tax matters and alimony payments can be troublesome.

*Taurus on the cusp of the eighth house* increases the possibility of a substantial inheritance of either money or property or both. The partner's able handling of financial affairs produces gains in either marriage or business.

*Gemini on the cusp of the eighth house* implies gains from a variety of sources including death benefits

from relatives. The marriage or business partner's versatile money-managing abilities contribute to joint financial prospects.

*Cancer on the cusp of the eighth house* is indicative of a family or parental inheritance. The conserving tendencies of the marriage or business partner are conducive to the building of joint financial assets.

*Leo on the cusp of the eighth house* shows generally beneficial circumstances connected with death benefits, taxes and other eighth house affairs. The marriage or business partner will probably want the final say in joint financial questions.

*Virgo on the cusp of the eighth house* lends to practical handling of joint financial interests. The marriage or business partner tends to keep accurate accounts and tax records. The chances of inheritance or other death benefits are about average.

*Libra on the cusp of the eighth house* indicates a fair distribution of joint financial resources and an equitable division of the attendant responsibilities. This sign placement suggests that death benefits may stem from marriage or partnership.

*When Scorpio, the natural sign of the eighth house, is placed on the cusp, financial gains through insurance, inheritance and partnership interests are probable, but associated conditions may produce conflict. The marriage or business partner is inclined to be secretive about money matters.*

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the eighth house* signifies a little good luck in the affairs of the house. Related legal aspects are favorable. The marriage or business partner may risk joint funds without proper consent or approval.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the eighth house* reduces the prospects of inherited assets; encumbrances may be imposed on eighth house benefits. Marriage and partnerships can prosper, but the partner is liable to be tight with money.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the eighth house* suggests a legacy or other financial gains stemming from the death of a benefactor or friend. Marital and partnership resources benefit from unusual circumstances.

*Pisces on the cusp of the eighth house* signifies contradictory possibilities. The individual may either

receive benefits or be cheated out of what rightfully belongs to him or her. Joint financial affairs may suffer because of the marriage or business partner's mismanagement.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Ninth House*

Signs affecting the ninth house are expressed in a person's religion, philosophy and beliefs. Higher education, the law, travel and foreign affairs are influenced by these signs. They also describe the type of relationship a person maintains with the partner's relatives.

*Aries on the cusp of the ninth house* introduces an adventurous spirit into philosophy, religion and travel. These people do not hesitate to initiate litigation. They are argumentative with in-laws and frequently get involved in divisive quarrels.

*Taurus on the cusp of the ninth house* fosters interest in a utilitarian philosophy that can be applied to mundane affairs. These people are conservative in religious matters and legal affairs. They are cordial with in-laws.

*Gemini on the cusp of the ninth house* links objective thought with the abstract intellect. These people seek a logical basis for philosophical religious beliefs. They like to travel. With in-laws they are friendly but casual.

*Cancer on the cusp of the ninth house* contributes to the spiritual significance of philosophy and religion. These people are emotionally stirred by their beliefs. They accept in-laws as part of the family.

*Leo on the cusp of the ninth house* is indicative of an optimistic philosophy that is somewhat ego-centered. These people have a great deal of faith in themselves. The ceremonial aspects of religion appeal to them. They try to maintain amiable relations with in-laws, but tolerate no interference in personal affairs.

*Virgo on the cusp of the ninth house* encourages a pragmatic view of higher education, philosophy and religion. These people analyze the abstract and try to relate the spiritual to the earthly plane. They are critical of in-laws.

*Libra on the cusp of the ninth house* signifies a philosophy and standard of ethics founded on equality and fairness. These people exhibit keen interest in

justice under the law. Relations with in-laws are seldom discordant.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the ninth house* brings out the need to penetrate the heart of the philosophy or religion embraced. These people seek the ultimate meaning and will not accept platitudes. They do not conceal their feelings about their in-laws; they treat them accordingly.

*Sagittarius, the natural sign of the ninth house*, indicates devout beliefs when it appears on the cusp. Idealistic and high-principled, these people live their religion; many preach or teach their philosophy. They are concerned with higher education and the law. These people love to travel. Relationships with in-laws are friendly but not necessarily close.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the ninth house* signifies interest in orthodox forms of religion and traditional philosophies. These people are somewhat narrow-minded where morals and ethics are concerned. Although they do not get personally involved with in-laws, they are not averse to doing business with them.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the ninth house* generates a humanistic philosophy and unprejudicial values. These people harbor their own unique ideas about religion but do not impose their beliefs on others. They are tolerant of in-laws but rather detached and unemotional toward them.

*Pisces on the cusp of the ninth house* emphasizes the mystical aspects of religion. Beliefs are spiritually inspired; religious concepts spring from within. Often these people show a preference for sea travel. Compassionate toward in-laws, they willingly share the problems of the partner's relatives.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Tenth House*

Signs which influence the tenth house deal with a person's public affairs and associated interests. These signs show how one goes about business and professional activities and are linked to reputation and prestige. The sign on the MC has a major bearing on tenth house affairs; it is read in conjunction with the sign that appears on the tenth house cusp if the two signs differ in an equal house horoscope.

*Aries on the cusp of the tenth house* implies that career activities are prompted by the desire for rapid advancement. These people are apt to switch professions if they feel their careers are at a standstill or that prospects for promotions are too far in the future.

*Taurus on the cusp of the tenth house* suggests that career interests are highly influenced by financial drives. These people expect to be well paid for their services and seek occupations that meet their financial requirements.

*Gemini on the cusp of the tenth house* prompts diverse career possibilities. These people must attempt to combine various interests or focus attention on a major line of endeavor; too many undertakings dissipate the potential for success in any one particular field.

*Cancer on the cusp of the tenth house* shows a sensitivity to public needs that can be helpful to the career. Professionally these people respond in a manner designed to gain approval. However, they tend to withdraw from criticism and resent slurs against their reputations.

*Leo on the cusp of the tenth house* denotes a strong drive to achieve a position of authority. These people are not content in subordinate posts and strive to reach the top in their fields. They are proud of their achievements and their reputations; they derive ego-satisfaction from both.

*Virgo on the cusp of the tenth house* signifies that career activities are geared to a useful purpose. These people weigh success in terms of the service they perform. Public behavior is usually above reproach.

*Libra on the cusp of the tenth house* enhances one's public image. The ability to get along with others is an asset to career advancement. Most of these people engage professionally in partnership activities or those in which teamwork is a factor. They are recognized for their tact and courtesy.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the tenth house* intensifies the drive to succeed and strengthens determination. Not easily distracted from their objectives, these people, with unswerving purpose, strive toward singular goals. They do not overlap public and private interests; their personal lives remain a mystery to the outside world.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the tenth house* shows a broad range of career interests, but these people tend to splinter their efforts. Their ambitions are idealistic in nature. Their reputations reflect integrity and joviality.

*Capricorn, the natural sign of the tenth house*, increases professional ambition when it is on the cusp. These people seek careers that lend stature in the community. They are conscious of their reputations and strive to preserve dignity and prestige.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the tenth house* indicates career interests that are associated with new or advanced realms of experience in which a novel approach is permissible. These people function well in group situations. The public image is that of the intellectual.

*Pisces on the cusp of the tenth house* can induce unrealistic career ambitions or subdue the drive to achieve. These people may lack determination, or they may be sidetracked from their goals by illusory objectives. With this sign placement, some possibility of scandal exists.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Eleventh House*

The sign on the cusp or one intercepted in the eleventh house is associated with group activities. Eleventh house signs describe the friends and organizations a person chooses.

*Aries on the cusp of the eleventh house* shows that a person is outgoing socially. Not shy or self-conscious, these people quickly introduce themselves to strangers. They often initiate and lead group activities.

*Taurus on the cusp of the eleventh house* links financial interests and friendship. These people tend to move in affluent circles. They establish long-lasting friendships. Conservative organizations and those which provide material benefits are preferred.

*Gemini on the cusp of the eleventh house* signifies general popularity. These people make friends easily; most of them are acquainted with a multitude of people. They choose witty, intellectual friends and may participate in literary groups.

*Cancer on the cusp of the eleventh house* gives a tendency to join close-knit groups. These people form

emotional ties with their friends. Friends and members of the groups to which these people belong are entertained in their homes.

*Leo on the cusp of the eleventh house* shows conviviality. These people form warm and lasting friendships. They usually participate actively in groups and often head the organizations to which they belong.

*Virgo on the cusp of the eleventh house* produces a certain amount of reticence in making friends and in participating in group activities. These people choose co-workers and those who share job interests as friends.

*Libra on the cusp of the eleventh house* describes social charm. These people cultivate friendship with persons who share their aesthetic tastes. They join artistic groups and cultural organizations.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the eleventh house* denotes a person who is not outgoing or sociable. The few friends these people have are probably powerful and of some use to them. Many prefer secret societies and occult groups.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the eleventh house* is indicative of an active social life. These people are well liked and form spontaneous friendships. They are inclined to join philanthropic or religious organizations.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the eleventh house* implies that a person is not much of a joiner. These people prefer business-oriented groups to purely social organizations. When they are young, they usually associate with older, established friends; as they mature, they choose younger, ambitious friends.

*When Aquarius, the natural sign of the eleventh house*, appears on the cusp, it brings out a knack for making friends. These people have a diverse group of friends in all walks of life. They participate in humanitarian organizations.

*Pisces on the cusp of the eleventh house* indicates that a person forms friendships out of compassion. Many of these people do not use good judgment in choosing their friends; they are frequently the victims of disloyalty or deception from those they consider their friends. Mystical organizations and esoteric groups may attract them.

### *Influence of the Signs in the Twelfth House*

Signs which influence the twelfth house show what a person worries about and how one deals with anxiety. These signs describe the source of hidden enmity and difficulties that are rooted in one's own actions.

*Aries on the cusp of the twelfth house* denotes anxieties and problems that stem from one's impetuous actions. These people may arouse enmity by headstrong conduct and combative behavior.

*Taurus on the cusp of the twelfth house* shows possible financial worries. With this sign placement, the love of possessions and the comforts of life could bring about one's downfall.

*Gemini on the cusp of the twelfth house* generates troubles associated with gossip or the written word. Relations with close kin and neighbors can be difficult.

*Cancer on the cusp of the twelfth house* signifies family anxieties. Disharmony in the home can be the root of enmity. Karmic responsibilities may be associated with the mother.

*Leo on the cusp of the twelfth house* indicates worries over children and troubles in romance. False pride and arrogance can lead to the person's downfall. There may be karmic ties with offspring.

*Virgo on the cusp of the twelfth house* fosters a tendency to worry over petty differences. Job relations are often the source of enmity. Preoccupation with trivia can result in one's self-undoing.

*Libra on the cusp of the twelfth house* is indicative of marital and partnership anxieties. A secret marriage and clandestine involvements are possible. Extravagant tastes can lead to one's downfall.

*Scorpio on the cusp of the twelfth house* increases the danger of hidden enemies. These people can create powerful foes. Self-undoing may stem from harbored resentment or uncontrolled passions.

*Sagittarius on the cusp of the twelfth house* gives some protection from hidden enmity; at least, the effects are mitigated. Treacherous actions aimed at the individual frequently boomerang on the perpetrator. Foolish optimism can prompt one's downfall.

*Capricorn on the cusp of the twelfth house* may frustrate one's ambitions. Career and business interests frequently foster enmity. Selfishness and materialistic inclinations can bring about one's self-undoing.

*Aquarius on the cusp of the twelfth house* denotes the possibility that friendship will turn into enmity. One's downfall is rooted in the overwhelming urge for freedom. Restraint is needed here.

*Pisces, the natural sign of the twelfth house*, stresses loneliness and disillusionment when it is placed on the cusp. Self-undoing lies in escapism through drugs, alcohol or an imaginary dream world.

# 7 *Planets and Moon's Nodes in the Houses*

The energy of a planet is primarily directed toward the affairs of the house it occupies and the house(s) it rules in the horoscope. A planet has some influence in its natural house, but this influence is secondary to that of the planets posited in that house and those ruling the sign on the cusp or a sign intercepted within the house.

Planets also influence houses ruled and occupied by other planets with which they form aspects. The strength and flavor of planetary action channeled through aspects depends upon the planets involved and the type of aspects formed. Aspects are defined in Chapter 14 and discussed in detail in Chapters 16 through 26.

A void house, one which contains no planets, does not necessarily indicate lack of activity in related affairs. Aspects to its ruling planet energize an empty house. If few aspects are formed with its ruler, the individual tends to be more objective and less personally concerned about its affairs. Greater interest occurs during periods when transits or progressed planets occupy the house or activate it by aspecting its ruler.

## *Planets and Nodes in the First House*

A planet that occupies the first house energizes the individual's personality and personal interests according to the nature of the planet. A person's disposition, mannerisms, attitudes and physical characteristics reflect qualities associated with a planet in the first house within the range described by the sign in which the planet is placed.

*The Sun in the first house* implies pride, self-confidence, initiative and willpower. These people

possess keen self-awareness. Their ambitions are clearly defined. A strong urge to achieve power through self-directed efforts is present. This placement is indicative of the attention-seeker and the leader. The Sun in the first house also increases vitality and personal warmth.

*The Moon in the first house* indicates an emotional disposition, a changeable temperament. Intuitive, impressionable and receptive, these people are subject to periods of moodiness. They are sensitive to social pressures and public opinion and instinctively react to the needs and demands of other people with whom they come in contact. Many go on eating binges as an emotional release and, as a result, are apt to gain too much weight.

*Mercury in the first house* contributes to intellectual awareness and versatility. These people like to talk about themselves, their personal interests and ideas. Being restless, many tend to develop nervous habits. Unless Mercury is adversely aspected with the other planets in the horoscope, these people are agile and well coordinated; many are ambidextrous.

*Venus in the first house* signifies social charm. These people are friendly, companionable and polite. Many are unusually good looking. Aware of their appearance, they dress attractively and behave graciously. If Venus is in disharmony with the other planets, these people may be self-indulgent, vain or extravagant. Nevertheless, this placement is conducive to popularity.

*Mars is accidentally dignified in the first house* because the first is this planet's natural house. Mars in the first

house increases self-assertiveness, energy and ambition. These people are audacious, competitive, aggressive, impulsive, headstrong and somewhat boisterous. Leadership ability, initiative and self-motivation are evident with this placement, but action may lack direction. This placement also gives vitality and physical strength; however, many of these people are accident prone.

*Jupiter in the first house* indicates an exuberant nature and jocular disposition. These people are optimistic, outgoing and enthusiastic. They tend to exaggerate or overestimate their abilities. Even so, they are generous, high-principled, kind and basically honest. If Jupiter is well aspected with the other planets, personal benefits frequently come to these people with little effort on their parts.

*Saturn in the first house* denotes a serious outlook, a reserved disposition and a dignified manner. These people are conscientious and self-disciplined, motivated by the drive for community status and material affluence. A lack of confidence during youth may retard early success. Congenital physical handicaps are possible with this placement.

*Uranus in the first house* contributes to much personal magnetism and a sparkling personality. These people are inventive and original. Independent, willful and rebellious, they may be given to eccentric behavior and precipitate action. These people are impossible to categorize, unpredictable and unconventional. Although they may be extremists of sorts, they are always interesting.

*Neptune in the first house* gives vision and sensitivity. Mystical leanings may be present. These people are sensitive to their surroundings; intuition is well developed. They are gentle and compassionate, but often unreliable. Prone to self-deception, many are blind to their own faults and shortcomings. They lack confidence and underestimate their abilities. This placement tends to weaken the vitality.

*Pluto in the first house* shows that personal action is the key to regeneration. The individual must develop self-awareness. Pluto's power is released through the personality and the body, and it is here that evolution begins. Pluto in the first house strengthens vitality and recuperative powers.

*The North Node in the first house* brings out the positive attributes in one's personality and aids in the development of natural abilities. Personal experiences are a vital part of the individual's growth.

*The South Node in the first house* indicates that the tendency to take the easiest course may hinder the development of native ability. These people must overcome habits that stand in the way of personal growth.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Second House*

Planets occupying the second house activate financial conditions in the life of the individual; these planets direct energy toward the handling of personal finances.

*The Sun in the second house* shows an active interest in financial affairs. These people display initiative in moneymaking pursuits and are likely to manage their finances personally. They are proud of their earning capacity and their possessions because they equate power with money and material belongings. Generous by nature, many are extravagant, ostentatious spenders.

*The Moon in the second house* is indicative of periodic financial fluctuations. If the Moon is in a fixed sign, variations are less broad. Despite changes in monetary affairs, these people depend largely upon financial stability for their emotional security. They spend freely on their homes and families.

*Mercury in the second house* combines financial and intellectual interests. These people are seldom at a loss for moneymaking ideas. They seek education as a means of increasing their earning power. A bit tricky when it comes to handling financial affairs, they are not necessarily dishonest, merely shrewd. They keep detailed records of income and expenditures.

*Venus is accidentally dignified in the second house*, its house of natural rulership. This placement is generally helpful to financial affairs. These people are rarely underpaid. They derive much enjoyment and satisfaction from their money and possessions; purchases reflect a taste for luxury and pleasure. They are inclined to be extravagant, but unless Venus is badly afflicted they probably can afford to splurge. With Venus in the second house, the individual may benefit financially from marriage and business partnerships.

*Mars in the second house* directs incentive toward moneymaking activities. Where financial affairs are concerned, these people are enterprising, aggressive and competitive. This placement increases the earning power of the individual, but it also gives rise to impulsive and reckless spending practices.

*Jupiter in the second house* safeguards one's financial interests even during economic slumps. This placement indicates an abundant income; however, many of these people are spendthrifts who have little to show for their money. If afflicted, Jupiter in the second house fosters excessive spending and the accumulation of huge debts.

*Saturn in the second house* requires discipline in the handling of financial affairs. These people may encounter economic hardship, especially during early years, and thus learn the value of a dollar. They are cautious spenders who steer clear of chancy investments. Naturally thrifty, these people must guard against extreme frugality or greed that can inhibit financial growth.

*Uranus in the second house* indicates unstable financial interests. Unexpected gains are frequently offset by sudden losses. Resourceful in making money, these people need to develop a conservative spending policy. They must learn to handle economic extremes in order to protect their holdings.

*Neptune in the second house* shows a tendency to be careless about financial matters. Money seems to slip through these people's fingers. Many are attracted to easy-money schemes which, if not actually fraudulent, are impractical and unrealistic.

*Pluto in the second house* indicates that the potential for regeneration lies in the development and stewardship of material resources. This placement gives insight into the intricacies of large-scale financial operations. If Pluto is afflicted, there is danger that the acquisition of money will become an end unto itself. The individual may consider any means of achieving financial goals justified.

*The North Node in the second house* signifies substantial financial growth and eases economic difficulties. With proper effort, the individual can successfully develop personal resources and attain a degree of prosperity.

*The South Node in the second house* points out the need to replace outdated economic practices that reduce the potential for financial development.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Third House*

A planet posited in the third house generates mental activity and sparks one's intellectual drives. It is associated with learning aptitude, reasoning ability, and the capacity to communicate ideas verbally or in writing. A planet in the third house also has influence on commuter travel, neighborhood associations, and relations with brothers, sisters and other close kin (except parents).

*The Sun in the third house* indicates pride, superiority and self-satisfaction in intellectual matters. These people possess a compelling drive to acquire knowledge and to prove themselves intellectually. They are able to develop good command of language. Depending upon the aspects, they may be forceful speakers who are convincing and authoritative, or opinionated and arrogant braggarts who are given to pompous speech. They treat brothers and sisters warmly and take active interest in the neighborhood.

*The Moon in the third house* aids the memory and imagination; it also creates a restless mind and a tendency to daydream. These people find it difficult to be objective since their emotions intrude upon their thoughts. Decisions are prompted by emotional considerations; logic is affected by feelings. Frequent changes of scenery and routine keep these people from becoming discontented.

*Mercury is accidentally dignified in the third house* because this is Mercury's natural house. This placement enhances intellectual interest and communicative skills. These people are curious, perceptive and fluent. They possess a keen desire to learn, although the mind lacks perseverance and tends to skip from one topic to another. Knowledge is diverse but may lack depth. Changeable, restless and fond of travel, many of these people are continually on the move. They keep in touch with brothers, sisters and neighborhood happenings.

*Venus in the third house* shows that intellectual preferences lean toward music, the arts and cultural interests. These people are charming conversationalists



who express their ideas with grace and tact and enjoy pleasant social repartee. They maintain friendly relations with close kin and neighbors and take great pleasure in visiting them.

*Mars in the third house* stimulates the mental processes. These people are quick-thinking and decisive; however, they are prone to rash judgment and often augment plans without adequate forethought. They express ideas vigorously and aggressively; they can be argumentative and quarrelsome. There is considerable rivalry with brothers, sisters and neighbors. This rivalry may or may not be good-natured depending upon Mars' aspects. Many of these people delight in driving fast cars, though driving habits may be reckless.

*Jupiter in the third house* encourages mental expansion. These people possess wide-ranging intellectual interests. Regardless of their formal education they endeavor to be well informed and knowledgeable. Many are philosophically inclined. These people express their ideas freely; if Jupiter is afflicted, they talk too much. Relationships with close kin and neighbors are usually beneficial.

*Saturn in the third house* sobers and stabilizes the mind. Intellectual interests are associated with worldly ambitions and business pursuits. These people possess great mental discipline with the power to concentrate over lengthy periods of time. They organize their thoughts and speech well. Superficial social conversation is of little interest. Everyday travel is prompted by job and business interests rather than pleasure. Relations with close kin and neighbors may be strained; brothers or sisters frequently impose responsibilities upon the individual.

*Uranus in the third house* gives mental ingenuity and an original trend of thought. These people demand intellectual freedom and are not restrained by traditional concepts or prevailing opinion. They expound their views openly for all to hear. Relationships with close kin and neighbors are, perhaps, stimulating or exciting, but these associations are subject to sudden breaks. Not likely to make long-range travel plans, these people take trips on the spur of the moment.

*Neptune in the third house* indicates the capacity to picture ideas vividly and sometimes signifies a photographic memory. The mind is intuitive but

impractical. Many of these people would rather daydream than study. Often they show intellectual interest in the metaphysical and the mystic. At times their inability to clearly express ideas creates misunderstandings or misconceptions, though they may also deliberately mislead others or confuse issues. They treat brothers, sisters and neighbors amiably, but are inconsistent about maintaining contact with them.

*Pluto in the third house* denotes learning experiences and intellectual development as the basis for evolvement and regeneration. This placement also gives penetrating intellectual insight and the ability to comprehend the very basics of a subject. These people express their ideas forcefully or not at all. Although themselves very secretive, they are adept at prying secrets from others. Contact with close kin and neighbors may eventually dwindle to the point of nonexistence.

*The North Node in the third house* indicates that the potential for abundant growth lies in intellectual development. Education is the key to the advancement of the individual.

*The South Node in the third house* shows that the individual is mentally lazy, content with whatever knowledge comes along and averse to reaching out into new fields of intellectual endeavor. In order to grow intellectually, these people must develop good study habits.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Fourth House*

Planets that fall in the fourth house direct energy into domestic affairs. These planets influence home life and family conditions.

*The Sun in the fourth house* signifies that self-expression is directed toward family affairs. These people take pride in their homes and family background and strive to make their homes impressive places that reflect their importance. They tend to dominate the household. The Sun in the fourth house also implies that the father is the most influential parent in the individual's early environment. Later years should be productive and reasonably secure.

*The Moon is accidentally dignified in the fourth house*, its house of natural rulership. Individuals whose Moon is placed in the fourth house form closely-knit family ties; they identify emotionally with home and family.

Emotional security and happiness are dependent upon a harmonious home and family life. The mother is dominant in the early upbringing of the individual. Despite the likelihood of numerous changes of residence, these people maintain strong feelings for their birthplaces and parental homes. Later years usually contain greater domestic stability.

*Mercury in the fourth house* links intellectual interests with the home and family. The home reflects the individual's literary and educational inclinations: the home probably has a well-stocked library. These people like to talk about their homes and families. Inter-family communication is good; the individual tries to resolve domestic differences through objective discussion. Frequent moves are likely; these people adapt readily to changes in home environment. Later years are productive ones, filled with travel and literary pursuits.

*Venus in the fourth house* indicates that harmony in the home is of prime importance; these people endeavor to maintain domestic accord. They enjoy their homes and family life. The home is tastefully furnished and regarded as a social center. These people are affectionate toward their parents. Later years reflect extensive social interests.

*Mars in the fourth house* shows family life to be active and competitive. Initiative and the spirit of individuality are expressed in domestic affairs. Men with this placement may build or repair their homes themselves; women like to do their own decorating. The home atmosphere is apt to be marred by friction and hostility if Mars is adversely aspected. As children, these people rebel against parental authority; as adults, many hold hostility toward their parents. However, an active interest in family affairs is maintained in later years.

*Jupiter in the fourth house* signifies that benefits stem from home life and related affairs. Early years are financially secure and it is probable that later years will be also. Moral and religious training plays a large part in the individual's upbringing. Family relationships are genial and the home atmosphere is a jovial, pleasant one. Unless Jupiter is very badly afflicted, these people are generous with their parents and vice versa.

*Saturn in the fourth house* is indicative of burdensome family obligations. Childhood discipline is strict, and

the early home atmosphere is restrictive. Family ties may be strong because of a sense of duty, but family relationships are not particularly happy. The parents may eventually become the responsibility of the individual. These people usually must work hard to maintain their homes and families. Later years reflect the fruits of the individual's efforts to achieve status and security through home and family interests.

*Uranus in the fourth house* is disruptive to family life. Frequent changes of residence and unexpected circumstances that alter family life or bring about upsets within the home occur in childhood and may continue throughout the life of the individual. Family structure is loosely knit and in many ways atypical. These people are rebellious toward their parents. They insist on personal freedom in their own homes. Group activities are an important part of the home function, especially during late years. Later years may be marked by eccentricity.

*Neptune in the fourth house* shields the individual from family peculiarities. Although home and family conditions may be far from ideal, the individual is not bothered. The home is part of a dream world. These people fail to view family shortcomings realistically, idealizing their parents and early environment. Childhood memories are fond but often inaccurate. These people form close family bonds that are spiritual and emotional in nature. During later years, much time may be spent in meditation or seclusion.

*Pluto in the fourth house* points to one's heritage and family background as the path toward evolvment. These people cannot ignore their beginnings, but they can overcome them and surpass their birthrights. Pluto in the fourth house also indicates a tyrannical attitude on the part of the parents, an attitude which the individual may carry over in the running of his or her adult home. Estrangement from one or both parents through death or separation is possible if Pluto is adversely aspected. Later years will probably be markedly different from the earlier years of life.

*The North Node in the fourth house* denotes the potential for improvement through family affairs and the development of property interests. Family relationships are important and helpful to the individual's growth.

*The South Node in the fourth house* signifies the

tendency to accept family conditions as they are. The individual must strive to overcome unpleasant or difficult circumstances in order to provide a more abundant and pleasant family life.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Fifth House*

Planets which occupy the fifth house act to energize creative self-expression and artistic endeavors. These planets also influence romantic affairs, the pursuit of entertainment, leisure interests and children.

*The Sun in the fifth house*, where it is accidentally dignified, lends to creative expression through sports, the theater and the arts. These people actively pursue romance and pleasure. Fond of children, they may work with young people in some way during their spare time. Most like to gamble. Depending upon the sign in which the Sun is placed and the aspects it forms with the other planets, these individuals may be prone to taking unwise speculative risks.

*The Moon in the fifth house* shows that emotional satisfaction is an important part of the individual's romantic involvements and creative pursuits. A certain amount of fluctuation is associated with fifth house matters; these people's interests tend to change frequently. The Moon in the fifth house signifies fertility with a dominant potential for female children.

*Mercury in the fifth house* gives a preference for literary art forms and intellectual games and hobbies. These people seek mental versatility in their romantic partners. They are capricious in love and frequently involve themselves in successive or concurrent love affairs. If indications of fertility are present, multiple births are possible.

*Venus in the fifth house* increases the chance of happy romances. Venus here also enhances the pleasure derived from artistic pursuits unless it is very badly afflicted. Speculative activities are both gainful and enjoyable. These people are affectionate toward children. This placement predisposes to female offspring.

*Mars in the fifth house* indicates an aggressive and passionate pursuit of romance. The individual's love life is active but not without conflict and controversy. Artistic and creative interests might include sculpting, needlework and carving. These people like competitive

sports. Many are impulsive gamblers who tend to take foolhardy risks. Offspring may be headstrong and rebellious and constant quarreling can cause strained relations with them. With this placement the potential for male offspring is dominant.

*Jupiter in the fifth house* is indicative of a full love life and extensive creative interests. These people stand to benefit from speculation and through their children. If Jupiter is adversely aspected, the individual may indulge excessively in gambling and pleasure. Jupiter is associated with male offspring.

*Saturn in the fifth house* restrains creative expression. A sense of duty can interfere with love interests and the pursuit of pleasure. Delays and responsibilities are associated with romance. Many of these people are attracted to older romantic partners. Childbearing and child-rearing frequently impose hardships on these people. Saturn in this house can restrict the number of children.

*Uranus in the fifth house* induces a lively love life. One romantic fling may quickly follow another. The individual is spontaneous, unpredictable and inconsistent in love. Speculative interests are also subject to swift changes. Creative interests lean toward modern art forms. Offspring may be brilliant or eccentric and probably highly individualistic.

*Neptune in the fifth house* is conducive to romantic disillusionment. Many of these people drift into romantic intrigues or secret love affairs that seem unlikely or ill-fated from the start. They often enjoy acting and rhythmic art forms such as music and the dance. Deception or losses are possible through speculative activities. Children may be a disappointment.

*Pluto in the fifth house* offers the chance of evolvment through creative expression and love. Romantic attachments can express the highest form of love or the basest sexual desires. Love can be spiritually uplifting or degrading to the individual, the romantic partner or both. A dictatorial attitude toward children can erode the relationship between these people and their offspring.

*The North Node in the fifth house* shows that creative self-expression is an important part of growth. As these people develop creatively, so they enrich themselves. They also grow with and through their offspring.

*The South Node in the fifth house* implies the existence of selfish attitudes which prohibit real happiness in romance and curtail creative expression. The individual must learn to reach out unselfishly in love.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Sixth House*

Planets which occupy the sixth house exert a major influence on conditions relevant to the individual's work and associated relationships. These planets have a bearing on the services one performs. They are also significant to health, sickness and disease.

*The Sun in the sixth house* gives the tendency to dominate the workplace. These people find satisfaction in performing their jobs to the best of their abilities and in the recognition they receive as a result. If the Sun is well aspected, vitality and resistance to disease are strong; if it is afflicted, vigor and recuperative powers are reduced.

*The Moon in the sixth house* causes job performance and work relationships to fluctuate according to the individual's emotional state. Physical health is dependent upon emotional health. A lack of emotional stability can induce psychosomatic ailments.

*Mercury in the sixth house*, its house of accidental dignity, indicates that the individual performs work with detailed accuracy. These people converse freely with job associates and like to talk about their work and their health. An aversion to monotonous routine often prompts numerous job changes. Anxiety and nervous tension can deplete the individual's health.

*Venus in the sixth house* is characteristic of the individual who gains pleasure and satisfaction from work. Harmonious working conditions and congenial job relationships are essential to a competent and productive job performance. These people are usually cooperative and friendly, well liked by co-workers. If Venus is afflicted, they may be susceptible to sore throats and urinary ailments.

*Mars in the sixth house* gives a strong incentive for work. Willing and enthusiastic workers, they are also competitive in their jobs. Job relations are apt to be discordant, especially if Mars is adversely aspected. Machinery, guns, knives, any sort of weapons and fire present potential occupational hazards. Safety

regulations should be stringently adhered to if the individual works with or around such hazards. When ill, these people frequently run high fevers.

*Jupiter in the sixth house* is helpful to general working conditions and to health. These people have little trouble obtaining jobs. Most benefit from service to others. If Jupiter is afflicted, the individual may suffer from liver complaints stemming from dietary excesses.

*Saturn in the sixth house* typifies the serious, responsible worker; however, work is liable to be laborious and arduous. These people seldom socialize with job associates. Saturn in this house weakens the vitality and makes necessary a lengthy recuperation period when illness strikes. These people may be subject to chronic illnesses.

*Uranus in the sixth house* signifies an unpredictable or unusual work situation. Unexpected circumstances often force job changes. Job opportunities may arise suddenly; jobs may be terminated with little or no notice. These people prefer to work where they are free to experiment with new techniques. Friendly, impersonal job relationships are maintained. Electricity and electrical equipment represent potential occupational hazards if Uranus is afflicted.

*Neptune in the sixth house* introduces deceptive conditions associated with a person's job and the people with whom he or she works. An element of sacrifice is connected with work and service. Health can be adversely affected by an incongenial job environment. Stamina may be low. Many of these people are susceptible to mysterious ailments, which are difficult to diagnose. Hypochondria, drugs, poisons and alcohol pose possible threats to health.

*Pluto in the sixth house* indicates that regeneration comes through work and service. Job relations can be very good or very discordant depending upon Pluto's aspects; either way, such relations are significant to one's work performance. Pluto in this house increases vigor and physical endurance.

*The North Node in the sixth house* increases a person's awareness of and receptivity to advanced job techniques and modern health care procedures.

*The South Node in the sixth house* denotes a tendency to cling to outdated work methods and old-fashioned

health remedies. These people must open their minds to modern advances in the areas of work and health.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Seventh House*

Planets which fall in the seventh house influence a person's interaction with society. These planets activate marriage and the partnerships in which one becomes involved.

*The Sun in the seventh house* ties the ego and the drive for self-expression to the individual's relationships. The urge to achieve is directed into joint endeavors and partnership activities. Self-expression is dependent upon interaction with society; therefore, productive partnerships and marriage are essential to these people.

*The Moon in the seventh house* indicates that meaningful relationships are important to emotional well-being. These people are emotionally sensitive to the other people in their lives. They are readily swayed by the opinions and reactions of the society in which they live. Marital and partnership relations vary with the mood of the individual. Happiness in marriage depends upon the emotional rapport that exists between these people and their mates.

*Mercury in the seventh house* emphasizes the need for communication and intellectual rapport in marriage and partnerships. The individual forms relationships with youthful, intelligent persons. Many of these people marry early in life, or they choose a younger marriage partner.

*Venus is accidentally dignified in the seventh*, its natural house. This placement fosters a happy marriage and profitable partnerships. Business relationships are based on mutual cooperation and harmony; personal relationships are based on companionship and love.

*Mars in the seventh house* promotes initiative and action in marriage and partnership interests. These people attract aggressive, outgoing partners and their relationships are usually competitive. Many marry or divorce impulsively. Partnerships are frequently undermined by bickering and strife.

*Jupiter in the seventh house* is beneficial to marriage and partnerships. Partnership activities result in

prosperity and good fortune. If Jupiter is afflicted, religious differences can be disruptive to marriage. In the event of a split, these people usually salvage the greater share of joint material holdings unless the eighth house dictates otherwise.

*Saturn in the seventh house* adds enduring qualities which are helpful to lasting relationships; however, marriage or partnerships can be burdensome. These people are reluctant to assume the responsibilities of marriage until they or their prospective mates are firmly established; therefore, many marry much later in life than their contemporaries.

*Uranus in the seventh house* provokes exciting and novel relationships which are apt to be short-lived, especially if Uranus is adversely aspected. Many of these people jump into spontaneous marriages. If they find their personal freedom curtailed by the relationship, they will sever marital ties without a second thought. Partnerships are often unstable and subject to sudden changes.

*Neptune in the seventh house* inspires an idealistic concept of marriage. Depending upon Neptunian aspects, relationships may be sensitive and spiritual in nature, or they may be disappointing and disenchanting to the individual. If Neptune is afflicted, these people must protect themselves against fraud or treachery stemming from unwise partnerships.

*Pluto in the seventh house* stresses the importance of social interaction as the basis for regeneration. Plutonian power is directed into marriage and partnerships; it is through these relationships that involvement is possible.

*The North Node in the seventh house* denotes that the individual is in touch with the public pulse. Sensitivity to other people and circumstances brings about an instinctive reaction that is advantageous to the individual. Benefits come through marriage and partnerships, all of which are important to the individual's development.

*The South Node in the seventh house* indicates strained social interaction and lack of harmony in marriage and partnerships. The individual must master selfish habits that stand in the way of cooperation and agreement.

## *Planets and Nodes in the Eighth House*

A planet occupying the eighth house activates joint financial interests and affairs associated with death. Planetary energy is directed toward conditions concerning marital resources, partnership monies, inherited assets, and other financial dealings, which are not solely the individual's responsibility or do not stem entirely from personal efforts.

*The Sun in the eighth house* is a good indication of financial benefits derived through marriage and business partnerships, unless the Sun is badly afflicted. These people usually gain through inheritance and/or insurance. Many are interested in reincarnation and the spiritual aspects of death. Death can bring honors if the Sun is well aspected.

*The Moon in the eighth house* signifies that joint financial interests are changeable; gains associated with marriage or business partnerships are unstable. Any inherited assets are most likely to stem from a family legacy. Since the eighth house is an occult house and the Moon represents receptivity, this placement increases psychic sensitivity. Death may be of public interest.

*Mercury in the eighth house* promotes inquisitiveness about and intellectual interest in joint financial affairs and matters associated with death. These people often benefit financially from the death of a brother, sister or close relative other than their parents; they like to read, talk and perhaps write about death and the hereafter. Death may be newsworthy; resultant publicity can be creditable or scandalous according to the nature of the aspects Mercury forms.

*Venus in the eighth house* is beneficial to eighth house matters. This placement denotes gains through marriage, business partnerships, legacies and insurance. Since this house is associated with sexual energies, there can be a preoccupation with sex if Venus is adversely aspected. Death should be peaceful unless Venus is heavily afflicted by malefics.

*Mars is accidentally dignified in the eighth house.* When placed in this house, Mars is conducive to an aggressive interest in joint financial matters. These people are not content to let their partners manage related affairs. They are compelled to play active roles in the handling of joint finances; in so doing they

frequently create a great deal of friction between themselves and their partners. Conditions of violence can be associated with death if Mars is adversely aspected, especially by Uranus or Pluto.

*Jupiter in the eighth house* is favorable to matters that pertain to joint finances, inheritance, insurance and taxes. Prosperity can result from the partner's action in financial affairs. Deep religious concern may be present, concern which motivates profound study of the mysteries of life and death. These people view death as a natural transition, a transition that is usually met with serenity.

*Saturn in the eighth house* limits the financial benefits derived through others. The marriage partner may be parsimonious; business partners may thrust heavy obligations upon the individual; inheritances may be reduced by litigation or attendant responsibilities; taxes may devour joint profits. The benefits that do manifest usually come rather late in life and as a result of the individual's personal efforts in connection with eighth house affairs. In regard to death, concomitant circumstances frequently prolong the inevitable.

*Uranus in the eighth house* produces sharp changes in circumstances relevant to marital funds, partnership resources, inherited assets, insurance and taxes. These people may benefit from a partner's windfall or an unexpected legacy or they may suffer drastic losses because of a partner's mishandling of joint finances. Often a lively interest in the occult is shown. Death can be swift and totally unexpected.

*Neptune in the eighth house* indicates that joint financial affairs may not be handled in an entirely open and aboveboard manner. The partner may attempt to deceive or defraud the individual in money matters. There can be misrepresentation associated with taxes and insurance. This placement fosters attunement with the spiritual world. Mysterious conditions frequently surround death.

*Pluto is accidentally dignified in the eighth house* because the eighth is its natural house. This is a powerful position for a powerful planet. The potential for regeneration is twofold. Evolvement may come through the individual's capacity to penetrate the mysteries of death and life after death, or it may come about on a material plane through the development

of partnership resources and other jointly held financial assets. Pluto in the eighth house also energizes the sex drive. Death can be linked to criminal circumstances if Pluto is heavily afflicted.

*The North Node in the eighth house* enhances the prospects for financial benefits derived from the partner's influence in money matters. This placement indicates substantial development in connection with joint finances, insurance, legacies and taxes.

*The South Node in the eighth house* calls for action on the part of the individual in relation to the handling of jointly held monies. The tendency to rely on the partner to take care of financial affairs in which the individual shares an interest restricts the development of shared resources and thereby effectively reduces benefits.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Ninth House*

Planets posited in the ninth house influence conditions relevant to the formulation and dissemination of structured social concepts. These planets produce activity in higher education, philosophy, religion, ethics, the law, and the institutions which teach or publish associated precepts. Planets in the ninth house generate interest in other cultures and long distance travel. These planets also influence relations with relatives of marriage and business partners.

*The Sun in the ninth house* urges the individual to actively seek higher education. These people display natural interest in foreign cultures; whether this interest is expressed through travel or vicariously through study depends largely upon the sign in which the Sun is placed. If the Sun is in a fixed sign, travel is less frequent or extensive. These people hold high standards of ethics; most adopt orthodox religious beliefs. They tend to dominate relations with in-laws. Such relationships are harmonious or discordant according to the aspects the Sun forms with the other planets.

*The Moon in the ninth house* prompts the individual to cling to the ethical values and religious concepts that are part of early childhood training and family background. These people find emotional security in the beliefs with which they were raised. They are intuitive and imaginative; many are psychic. Wanderlust may motivate extensive travel; many of these people take up residence in a foreign country or in

another place far from the childhood home. They treat their in-laws as family members.

*Mercury in the ninth house* broadens one's intellectual interests. Depending upon Mercury's aspects, this placement can be indicative of the well-educated person or the intellectual dilettante; either way, these people display avid mental interest in ninth house affairs. They like to discuss their ideas and beliefs. If circumstances permit, they travel extensively. They are friendly with in-laws in an offhand way.

*Venus in the ninth house* sparks interest in music and art of a religious nature. Higher education is often associated with the arts. These people are receptive to philosophies based on principles of justice and equality. They enjoy travel, but do not like to travel alone. Congenial companionship is essential to the pleasure these people derive from their journeys. Relations with in-laws are usually harmonious and frequently very profitable.

*Mars in the ninth house* incites religious zeal and idealistic fervor. These people are not satisfied to intellectualize their beliefs; they must act on them. Much travel is motivated by the lust for adventure. If Mars is afflicted, there exists the potential for danger from accidents when traveling abroad. Friction is apt to develop between these people and their in-laws.

*Jupiter is accidentally dignified in the ninth*, its natural house. Jupiter in the ninth house inspires lofty principles, moral rectitude and religious integrity. These people stand to benefit from higher education. Others benefit from their knowledge, too, because these people impart learning readily; many are instructors. Travel is an educational experience to these people; many visit distant places in order to acquire first-hand knowledge about the lifestyles and beliefs of other peoples. Relationships with in-laws can be beneficial to all parties involved.

*Saturn in the ninth house* indicates rigid moral standards and conservative religious views. These people value higher education as the means of furthering worldly ambition and achieving status. Travel is associated with business interests. These people are dutiful toward in-laws, but these relationships lack warmth.

*Uranus in the ninth house* stirs interest in progressive

education, modern philosophy and contemporary or unorthodox religion. The beliefs of these people are far ahead of the times. Travel is stimulating to them and they embark on frequent impromptu trips. Relations with in-laws are sporadic or unusual.

*Neptune in the ninth house* gives rise to beliefs based on Eastern philosophy, mysticism and spiritualism. These people embrace utopian ideals. They may be lackadaisical toward higher education unless other factors in the horoscope indicate practical interest in this area. Travel is apt to be poorly planned and disorganized. These people maintain desultory contacts with in-laws.

*Pluto in the ninth house* signifies that the potential for regeneration lies in the realms of higher education, philosophy, the law and in moral development. This placement can give deep insight into complex intellectual concepts. If Pluto is adversely aspected, these people may encounter degrading experiences in foreign countries. Relations with in-laws can be unpleasant.

*The North Node in the ninth house* points toward the development of the higher intellect as the path to growth. The individual is in tune with current thought and receptive to the experiences of advanced education.

*The South Node in the ninth house* emphasizes the need to dispense with narrow intellectual concepts and open the mind to contemporary philosophies and broader ideas.

### *Planets and Nodes in the Tenth House*

Planets which occupy the tenth house activate worldly ambition. Planetary energy is channeled into professional achievements, career and business interests, and one's reputation and community standing.

*The Sun in the tenth house* strengthens the drive to achieve distinction in one's chosen career. Dissatisfied in the background, these people strive to attain positions of authority that provide the power and recognition they desire. They thrive on success. Many of them are drawn into professions in public life as a way of satisfying their desire for attention and acclaim. This placement favors political leaders, corporation heads, directors, promoters, and other positions that call for confidence, leadership and management skills.

*The Moon in the tenth house* enables the individual to establish an easy rapport with the public; many of these people gravitate toward prominent positions. Family and female associates can be helpful in furthering career pursuits. The inconsistent nature of the Moon may manifest as fluctuating fortunes or changing career interests. This placement is helpful to hotel managers, waiters and waitresses, politicians, sales personnel, and in posts where confidence and trust must exist between the individual and customers, clients, or the public.

*Mercury in the tenth house* shows diversified career interests. The individual may pursue two occupations simultaneously. If Mercury is afflicted, splintered efforts can interfere with success. These people have the advantage of being able to relate on an intellectual level and to communicate easily with their superiors. This placement favors secretaries, journalists, lecturers, statisticians, and those positions that require alacrity, agility and versatility.

*Venus in the tenth house* links one's career ambitions to interests in art and finance. If Venus is well aspected, the social charm these people possess is a valuable asset in their climb to success. This placement enhances one's public image and reputation. Venus in the tenth house is helpful to cashiers, beauticians, social coordinators, diplomats, and to persons in positions that call for poise, geniality and protocol.

*Mars in the tenth house* depicts the typical go-getter. These people are dynamic and competitive in their efforts to advance their career ambitions. They are self-motivated and possess impelling drives to succeed. If Mars is afflicted, these people may resort to no-holds-barred tactics to achieve their objectives. Such action can result in notoriety instead of the desired fame. This placement favors machinists, surgeons, military personnel, investigators, and positions that demand initiative and leadership ability.

*Jupiter in the tenth house* is helpful to one's career and reputation. These people are admired as professionals and respected in the community. They suffer few real setbacks in their careers because here Jupiter protects professional ambitions and attracts honors and recognition. This placement benefits administrators, university professors, jurists, the clergy, and those positions that depend upon integrity and high principles.



*Saturn is accidentally dignified in the tenth, its natural house. When in the tenth house, Saturn intensifies career ambitions and the drive for status. Success, community standing and recognition are important to these people; they work hard to achieve prominence. Although success is indicated by this position, it will probably be belated. If Saturn is adversely aspected, the drive to achieve prominence may overshadow integrity. These people may utilize any means available in order to reach the top, and in so doing may reap ruin and dishonor. This placement is helpful to contractors, business people, government officials, politicians, and to persons in fields that require diligence, dedication and organizational skills.*

*Uranus in the tenth house indicates extreme changes in career and/or fortune. This placement is indicative of the overnight celebrity. Frequently, fame is short-lived if Uranus is afflicted, for the individual may instantly achieve then just as swiftly drop out of public favor. This is a placement of astrologers, pilots, scientists, specialists, and professions that call for expertise, ingenuity and innovation.*

*Neptune in the tenth house produces little worldly ambition. These people are sensitive, more concerned with job satisfaction than with public acclaim. If they are uncomfortable in their professions or do not get along well with superiors, they are apt to quit even though they have no immediate job prospects. Career goals may be unrealistic and related efforts impractical. This placement is associated with poets, chemists, musicians, hospital personnel and positions that permit behind-the-scenes endeavors. Neptune in the tenth house is indicative of the power behind the throne rather than the obvious seat of power.*

*Pluto in the tenth house is powerfully placed. The potential for regeneration lies in worldly ambition and professional activity. The individual may reach the heights of public honor or fall to the depths of public shame. This placement is linked to space exploration, chain store syndicates, mass production, trade unions and those interests that involve huge power blocs.*

*The North Node in the tenth house indicates stature in one's profession and high standing in the community. The individual has an accurate sense of timing that is helpful to career advancement.*

*The South Node in the tenth house shows lack of sensitivity to prevailing career and business trends. These people may prepare for careers that have limited openings, or they may fail to recognize the need for changes within their chosen profession.*

### *Planets and Nodes in the Eleventh House*

Planets in the eleventh house influence friendship and group associations. These planets activate interest in clubs, lodges and organizations and motivate one's hopes and desires.

*The Sun in the eleventh house aids the individual in forming friendships with influential persons who can be helpful to the pursuit of personal objectives. These people are active club members; many hold important posts in the organizations to which they belong.*

*The Moon in the eleventh house shows that the individual has an emotional need for many friends. Friendships are probably numerous but not necessarily lasting or helpful. Women friends usually outnumber men friends. These people tend to join groups that are in some way associated with family interests.*

*Mercury in the eleventh house indicates a large number of friends and acquaintances. These people prefer friends who are witty, youthful and intellectually stimulating. They enjoy literary organizations, lecture groups and debate societies.*

*Venus in the eleventh house inclines one to make friends with persons who are affluent and refined. Friends can help these people attain their hopes and wishes. Artistic groups and cultural societies may be joined and marriage partners met through club activities.*

*Mars in the eleventh house induces one to take the initiative in friendship and group activities. These people make friends on impulse. They are attracted to competitive, outgoing persons. If Mars is afflicted, friendships can be discordant and group associations strife-ridden. The majority of friends are probably male.*

*Jupiter in the eleventh house signifies good fortune and advantages stemming from friendship and group associations. These people attract friends who are in positions to help them achieve their goals and who are willing to do so. Most of these people show a*

preference for discussion groups, philanthropic organizations and religious societies.

*Saturn is accidentally dignified in the eleventh house.* This placement limits the number of friendships, but those that do exist are lasting. These people choose friends who are serious-minded and mature. Business associations, professional organizations and groups that are advantageous to their careers are preferred to purely social ones.

*Uranus is accidentally dignified in the eleventh, its natural house.* When so placed, Uranus brings colorful characters with diverse backgrounds into the life of the individual. Friendship is spontaneous, but these associations are subject to sudden breaks if Uranus is adversely aspected. These people prefer humanitarian societies, fraternal clubs and occult groups.

*Neptune in the eleventh house* exerts a disappointing influence. These people can benefit from friendships of the highest order, but all too often their friends deceive or desert them. Many of these people are indiscriminate in their choice of friends, fascinated by imaginary glamour and gullible to those who falsely proclaim high ideals. These people tend to join psychic groups, spiritualistic organizations and secret societies.

*Pluto in the eleventh house* indicates that involvement has its roots in friendship and group activities. For good or ill, these people exert powerful influence on their friends or vice versa. Their associates may be instrumental in furthering their objectives, or colleagues may subvert and corrupt their aims.

*The North Node in the eleventh house* assists in forming advantageous friendships and in joining groups that aid the individual's growth and development.

*The South Node in the eleventh house* stresses the need to get out of a social rut. These people must widen their circle of acquaintances and establish meaningful friendships through group experiences in order to grow.

## *Planets and Nodes in the Twelfth House*

A planet in the twelfth house acts on conditions which pertain to confinement, subconscious motivations and hidden aspects of life. Planetary action in this house can alleviate or stir up difficulties that stem from repressed

desires; planetary influence can mitigate or aggravate obscure conditions that give rise to enmity; planetary action can relieve or intensify restrictive circumstances that restrain the body, the mind or the soul. Much depends upon the nature of the aspects a twelfth house planet forms with others in the horoscope.

*The Sun in the twelfth house* obscures the ego and self-expression. These people lack confidence. They function better behind-the-scenes than in positions of public leadership. They like solitude, but many spend too much time alone. The relationship with the father can be the source of deep-rooted emotional blocks. If the Sun is afflicted, these people tend to bring many problems on themselves.

*The Moon in the twelfth house* inhibits outward emotional expression. These people mask their feelings. Many fail to reach out to others on an emotional level. They may be lonely and introverted. Most are sensitive and usually very psychic. Family differences can be the source of enmity and sorrow. If the Moon is heavily afflicted, severe psychological problems may stem from early childhood experiences and the relationship with the mother.

*Mercury in the twelfth house* hinders verbal and written expression of thoughts and ideas. Though intuitive, deep thinkers, these people are secretive and uncommunicative. Subconscious mental blocks may hamper reading ability and learning aptitude during early years, making basic education difficult. Troubles can arise because these people sign documents that are improperly drawn up or papers that they do not clearly understand. They may be victims of scandal, libel or poison-pen letters. Enmity can spring from difficulties with close kin (other than parents) and neighbors.

*Venus in the twelfth house* can soften the blows of hidden enmity, especially if it is well aspected. However, if Venus is afflicted, there can be marital and financial difficulties. Secret love affairs and romantic intrigues can end in sorrow or tragedy. Romantic disappointments or sexual misfortunes can occur; such experiences are apt to leave lasting scars upon the individual.

*Mars in the twelfth house* generates hostility due to impulsiveness. If Mars is heavily afflicted, rash actions frequently produce dire consequences. Mars in the

twelfth house can be dangerous. In extreme cases, enemies may attempt to inflict bodily harm; sexual abuse or rape are unpleasant possibilities. In the case of wartime military personnel, capture, torture and imprisonment present potential threats. However, if Mars is well aspected, the individual can direct Martian energy toward charitable or rehabilitation work.

*Jupiter in the twelfth house* acts to protect these people from their enemies and to safeguard their interests in times of tribulation. If Jupiter is severely afflicted, excesses as described by the sign in which Jupiter is placed can be responsible for the individual's downfall. This placement gives deep spiritual and religious feelings.

*Saturn in the twelfth house* can bring loneliness, frustration and despair. These people have to work hard to obtain recognition but may never receive as much credit as their efforts merit. Career interests are frequently associated with charitable organizations, hospitals, reformatories or similar institutions. These people tend to get involved in silent business deals and may make enemies as a result of selfish professional ambition.

*Uranus in the twelfth house* strengthens intuitive faculties and psychic awareness. It also increases the urge for independence while restricting the individual's personal freedom in some way. These people incur enmity because of willful or rebellious behavior. Dangerous situations can arise as a consequence of the individual's precipitate actions. Misfortune may result from natural disasters. Humanitarian interests can provide a constructive outlet for the individual's frustrations.

*Neptune is accidentally dignified in the twelfth house*, its house of natural rulership. If Neptune is well aspected, this placement gives rise to spiritual depth and compassion. If Neptune is adversely aspected, there can be tendencies toward self-pity and self-destruction. The individual may be the victim of plots perpetrated by secret enemies.

*Pluto in the twelfth house* emphasizes the potential for spiritual regeneration or spiritual degradation. If Pluto is heavily afflicted, these people may become the victims of powerful and ruthless enemies. They may be responsible for the corruption of others and thus bring about their own downfalls. Suppressed hostility can erupt violently with tragic results.

*The North Node in the twelfth house* alerts the individual to conditions of enmity and potential danger. Therefore, these people are able to deal effectively with adverse situations.

*The South Node in the twelfth house* indicates self-sacrifice as the key to development. These people must overcome secret desires that retard spiritual growth.

# 8 Planetary Dispositors

The planetary ruler(s) of a sign is said to disposit any planet(s) placed in that sign. When a planet occupies a sign other than the one it rules, this planet is dispossited by the ruler(s) of the sign in which it is placed. The dispositor of a planet influences the action of the dispossited planet and its affairs and is taken into consideration in the interpretation of the planets in the various signs. Interrelationships in the horoscope particularize these meanings. For example, Jupiter, dispositor of Venus in Sagittarius, influences Venusian affairs and expression in the manner consistent with its horoscope standing. If Jupiter is badly afflicted, some negative Jupiterian qualities manifest in Venusian activities to the degree indicated by Venus aspects. An aspect formed between a planet and its dispositor strengthens the influence of the dispositor on the dispossited planet. If the planets form no mutual aspect but both are in aspect with the same third planet, their energies are united by the third planet, and the dispositor's influence is greater than if no link is shown. Examination of a dispositor sheds light on motives that are not immediately apparent in the dispossited planet. In Chapter 13, Figure 18, Jupiter dispossits Venus; they are not in aspect to each other, but both aspect the Sun, also dispossited by Jupiter (Sun conjunct Venus, Sun square Jupiter). Refer to Chapter 14, "Aspects Defined." Unconventional standards and group activities that are not explained by Venus alone, but are reflected in Venus' influence in the first (Taurus on the cusp, ruled by Venus), second (naturally ruled by Venus), sixth (Libra on the cusp, ruled by Venus) and the seventh (occupied and ruled naturally by Venus) houses are attributed in part to the influence of Jupiter as dispositor in Aquarius in the eleventh house.

Two planets that are in mutual reception by virtue of each occupying the other's sign of natural rulership (dignity) dispossit each other; planetary influence is mutual. These planets are interpreted first as they appear in the horoscope, then additional information is obtained by placing each in its own sign in the same degree it occupies in the other sign.

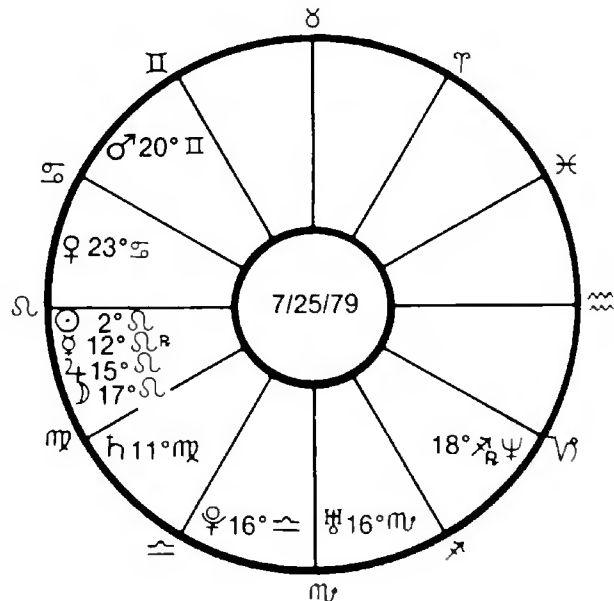


Figure 8. The Sun As Final Dispositor

The dispositor of a planet indirectly dispossits any planets placed in the sign ruled by the planet it dispossits. For example, if the Sun is in Taurus it is dispossited by Venus, the planetary ruler of Taurus;

Venus then indirectly disposes all planets in Leo because these planets are disposed by the Sun, ruler of Leo, and Venus disposes the Sun.

A planet that occupies its sign of dignity may serve as indirect dispositor for several planets. It is possible for one planet to act as dispositor or indirect dispositor for the remaining nine planets. When this happens the disposing planet becomes the final dispositor of the horoscope and, as such, bears influence on the overall tenor of the horoscope.

Consider the planetary arrangement shown in Figure 8: Sun in Leo, Moon in Leo, Mercury in Leo, Venus in Cancer, Mars in Gemini, Jupiter in Leo, Saturn in Virgo, Uranus in Scorpio, Neptune in Sagittarius and Pluto in Libra.

The Sun disposes the Moon, Mercury and Jupiter because these planets are placed in Leo, and the Sun rules Leo. The Sun in its sign of natural rulership has no dispositor. Venus is disposed by the Moon, ruler of Cancer; in turn, the Moon is disposed by the Sun, which therefore indirectly disposes Venus. Mars in Gemini and Saturn in Virgo are both disposed by Mercury, ruler of Gemini and Virgo. The Sun indirectly disposes Mars and Saturn because it disposes Mercury. Uranus is disposed by Mars and Pluto, rulers of Scorpio; Mars is indirectly disposed by the Sun and Pluto is disposed by Venus, which is indirectly disposed by the Sun; therefore, both Pluto and Uranus are indirectly disposed by the Sun. Neptune in Sagittarius is disposed by Jupiter, which is also disposed by the Sun. Thus, all planets lead to the Sun; the chain stops with the Sun because the Sun acts as its own dispositor. In this example, the Sun is the final dispositor.

During days in which no planet changes sign, the final dispositor, if one exists, is the same in the horoscope of every person born that day. Because of astrological variations observed at different times and in different localities, a single planet seldom influences any two horoscopes in an identical manner. The final dispositor links all planets in a horoscope and thereby colors all planetary action; it describes underlying motivation that prompts expression of planetary drives, motivation contingent upon the nature of the dispositor and its bearing in the horoscope.

The basic principles of a final dispositor describe general motivation. Its influence is broad and touches all areas of life. The Sun as final dispositor indicates

that the need for ego-satisfaction and self-esteem is linked to other drives. For example, Venus rules the principle of attraction, but the desire to attract others is a matter of ego if the Sun is final dispositor. Persons whose Sun is the final dispositor seek relationships and activities that enhance self-esteem.

The Moon as final dispositor shows that emotional needs and family considerations underlie decisions and actions. These people enter jobs and form relationships that provide emotional security and inner satisfaction.

Mercury as final dispositor indicates intellectual motivation. These people base decisions on logic; they choose companions and activities that provide mental stimulation. If Mercury is in Virgo rather than Gemini, the drive for perfection is evident as well.

In Taurus, Venus as final dispositor emphasizes material needs. The desire for financial well-being and physical comfort underlies all decisions and actions. Venus in Libra as final dispositor brings out needs for companionship and harmony. Decisions and activities reflect a desire for balance and cooperation.

Mars in Aries as final dispositor motivates physical action on all levels. These people find no satisfaction in sedentary interests. They act decisively to keep their affairs moving. In Scorpio, Mars as final dispositor links sexual needs to other drives. Sexual energies stimulate creativity, worldly ambition, sense of purpose and activity in all affairs. But fulfillment is incomplete if sexual satisfaction, a prime motivating factor, is lacking.

Jupiter as final dispositor stirs motivation based on the need for truth and integrity in actions and relationships. Decisions spring from unselfish desires. A strong element of self-sacrifice, not shown with Jupiter in Sagittarius, is pronounced if the planet is in Pisces. Jupiter in Sagittarius inspires intellectual motivation; in Pisces, emotional motivation.

With Saturn as final dispositor in Capricorn, worldly ambition is the driving force behind planetary drives. The need for recognition and status colors decisions and actions in personal affairs as well as in mundane pursuits. Motivation is essentially selfish; in Aquarius, Saturn-inspired selfishness is tempered by humane considerations, but ambitious drive remains the prime motivating factor.

Uranus as final dispositor describes motivation rooted in the need for change. If Uranus is well aspected, it is a most significant indication of progress.

Future-oriented, these people are urged onward by the desire to improve conditions and relationships. If Uranus is afflicted, precipitous changes produce an erratic state of affairs. These people find little of the satisfaction they seek in change, but they are compelled to continuously explore new interests, relationships and methods.

Neptune as final dispositor indicates spiritual motivation. These people are unfulfilled without spiritual satisfaction and seek to find it in all their activities and relationships. With this placement, much depends upon Neptune's aspects. If afflicted, misguided spiritual drives can undermine and subvert expression of planetary energies.

Pluto as final dispositor produces an almost overwhelming drive for power, reflected in the domineering manner these people express in their affairs and relationships. If Pluto is heavily afflicted, corruption can be a product of power drives.

Two planets in mutual reception share final dispositorship if they jointly serve as dispositors or indirect dispositors for the remaining eight planets. If one of the joint dispositors has greater standing in a horoscope, the stronger planet is the more influential of the two in respect to dispositorship. If Mars in Capricorn (Saturn's sign of dignity) shares dispositorship with Saturn in Aries (Mars' sign of dignity) by virtue of mutual reception, Mars is the more influential dispositor of the two because Mars is exalted in Capricorn and Saturn is in fall in Aries. A mutual reception between the Moon in Sagittarius and Jupiter in Cancer shows Jupiter to be the stronger dispositor because Jupiter is exalted in Cancer and the Moon is peregrine (lacks standing) in Sagittarius. If two planets in mutual reception have equal standing in the horoscope according to sign, house placement and aspects, they exert equal influence as joint dispositors.

There can be no final dispositor in a horoscope unless at least one planet occupies a sign it rules or two planets are in mutual reception. If more than one planet is dignified and each disposes one or more of the remaining planets, the disposing planets are given added weight in the horoscope, although influence is not as widespread as that of a final dispositor.

With no planets in ruling signs, it is possible to have a continuous circle of dispositors. Such is the case for the planetary sign positions shown in Figure 9: Sun in Scorpio, Moon in Scorpio, Mercury in Scorpio,

Venus in Sagittarius, Mars in Taurus, Jupiter in Aquarius, Saturn in Cancer, Uranus in Libra, Neptune in Sagittarius and Pluto in Libra.

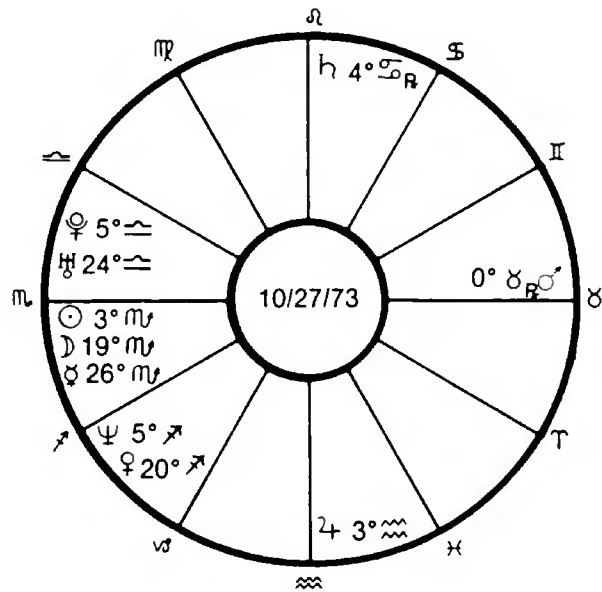


Figure 9. Circle of Dispositors

The Sun, Moon and Mercury are disposed by Mars and Pluto, both of which are disposed by Venus, which is disposed by Jupiter, which is disposed by Uranus, which is disposed by Venus, and the circle continues around and around. Saturn is disposed by the Moon (which leads to Venus), and Neptune is disposed by Jupiter (which also leads to Venus); thus every planet forms part of a continuous chain. This formation links and integrates (harmoniously or not, depending upon aspects) planetary energies. Directly or indirectly each planet influences the other nine; therefore, activities are interdependent. A circle of dispositors reinforces confusion and indecision if these elements are otherwise present in the horoscope; in a well-aspected horoscope, planetary energies are mutually supportive.

# 9 The Shaping of the Horoscope

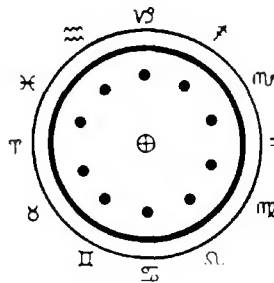
Though many horoscopes show similarities, few are exactly alike. The disparity of a few miles in birth location alters the horoscopes of persons born at the same time. In the natal charts of twins, the difference of a few minutes in birthtime results in slight but often important variations between the two horoscopes. Nevertheless, many horoscopes show similar planetary arrangements.

The distribution of the planets around the horoscope forms recognizable planetary patterns or pictures. Seven such patterns have been identified by the eminent astrologer, Marc Edmund Jones (*The Guide to Horoscope Interpretation*, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: David McKay, 1941).

A horoscope is classified according to its shaping, that is, according to the pattern that the planets form within the horoscope. The planetary pattern has a bearing on the general character of the horoscope. Shaping is considered part of the overall picture. It does not overshadow or equal specific astrological factors such as planetary influence or aspects, although it may reinforce these things. The extent and direction of shaping emphasis is determined by the total horoscope.

All horoscopes fall into one of the seven categories described by Jones. In some instances the planetary pattern may not be clear-cut, but one category will fit more closely than the others. The following examples picture the ideal planetary distribution for each type.

## The Splash

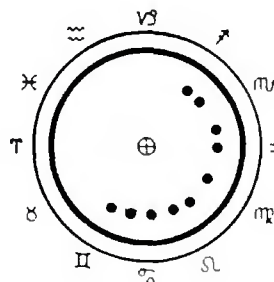


The Splash is indicated by a fairly uniform planetary arrangement. The planets are more or less evenly distributed around the horoscope. Usually no more than two planets occupy any one sign. The space between planets is seldom

greater than that covered by two consecutive signs or two consecutive houses. Ideally, planets should be placed no more than a sextile (60°) apart.

This scattering of planets suggests a scattering or dispersion of interests. Splash people are versatile. They involve themselves in a wide range of activities. Because of such diversity, interest may be superficial if the rest of the horoscope shows lack of depth or perseverance.

## The Bowl



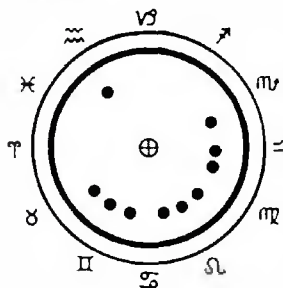
The Bowl shows all ten planets occupying approximately one-half of the horoscope with the other half devoid of planets. If the planets happen to fall exclusively to one side of either the vertical or the horizontal axis, the main

thrust of planetary energy is expressed according to hemisphere emphasis.

Bowl people are self-contained. They direct their energies toward the areas in which the planets are placed and tend to exclude or be excluded from unoccupied areas. The occupied half of the horoscope represents what these people contribute in terms of experience; the empty half indicates challenge.

The planet moving away from the empty half of the horoscope, according to the natural direction of the zodiac, is designated the leading planet. This planet leads the group clockwise in the horoscope. The leading planet is the key to meeting the challenge and filling the void that exists in the unoccupied half of the horoscope.

### The Bucket



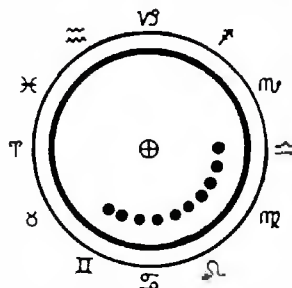
The Bucket is similar to the Bowl. In this configuration nine planets occupy one-half of the horoscope. One planet is placed in the other half, roughly opposing the group of nine, forming the "handle" of the bucket. If the handle planet is the

only planet occupying that particular hemisphere, it is called a singleton. Two planets placed in close conjunction, within a degree of each other, may serve together as a bucket handle for the eight planets occupying the opposite hemisphere.

Bucket people bear some similarity to Bowl people in that activity is directed toward the occupied section of the horoscope. However, the handle planet is the focal point of action. A heavy planet at the handle gives balance to the horoscope; a lighter planet such as the Moon is unable to focus planetary energies as effectively as a heavier one unless it is in close conjunction with another planet, then the two planets function together.

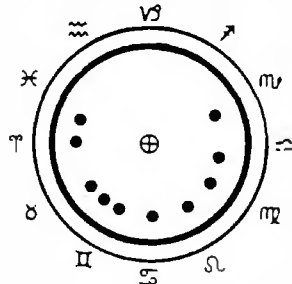
### The Bundle

The Bundle consists of a tightly packed planetary arrangement. All ten planets are confined to the space of a trine (120°) or very nearly so. Only four or possibly five consecutive signs are occupied by planets. About two-thirds of the horoscope is empty.



The Bundle is uncommon and so is the individual in whose horoscope it appears. Bundle people are in some way unique. They confine and focus their interests, specializing in the area(s) indicated by the most heavily occupied part of the horoscope. These people are self-contained and narrow. Because planetary energy is concentrated in such a small portion of the chart, the scope of experience is somewhat limited, but activity in that area is powerful. The planet leading clockwise directs planetary drives.

### The Locomotive

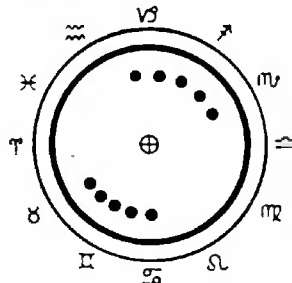


The Locomotive is the pictorial opposite of the Bundle. All ten planets are placed within the space of two consecutive trines (240°); one trine (120°) is empty. This planetary arrangement occupies two-thirds of the horoscope;

one-third is devoid of planets.

Locomotive people are self-motivated and self-driven. Essentially goal-oriented, they are dynamic people who seem to possess almost unlimited energy. Once they achieve a particular objective, they are ready to begin working toward another. The planet leading clockwise signifies motivation; the house it occupies shows the main focus of energy.

### The See-Saw



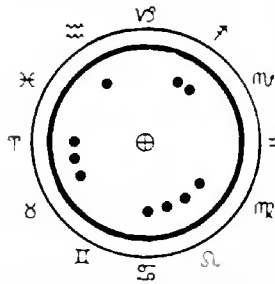
The See-Saw consists of two distinct groups of planets that fall opposite each other in the horoscope. It is not necessary that each group have the same number of planets, but there must be at least two planets in one group and all ten planets must be combined within the two groups. The ideal situation would be five planets in each group with an empty space of a square (90°) on



each side separating the groups. In any case, the groups must be separated by at least the space of a sextile (60°).

See-Saw people seek balance. They usually consider both sides of a question and weigh contrasting views. With planets in polarity, their energies are focused in opposite but complementary directions. In a weak horoscope this shaping can contribute to indecisiveness and uncertainty; in a strong horoscope there is perspective and perhaps a sense of harmony.

### The Splay



The Splay is somewhat difficult to identify. It has been referred to as the “catchall”—the shaping used when nothing else fits. This is not correct. The Splay consists of an irregular planetary distribution that contains two or more

clusters of planets bunched together at random points in the horoscope. A lack of symmetry and irregularly spaced planet clusters identify the Splay.

Splay people are individualists who resist the system. They refuse to be regimented or limited by anything or anyone but themselves. They have their own set of rules, unique tastes and self-directed interests. Intense and purposeful, they direct their energies in accordance with planetary placement in the horoscope.

Few horoscopes meet the ideal requirements of a shaping category. It is recommended that the student read Jones' book, *The Guide to Horoscope Interpretation*, and study the numerous examples and variations he illustrates.

# 10 *The Lunation Cycle and Eclipses*

The changing face of the Moon has fascinated earthlings since time immemorial. Who has not watched the almost invisible new Moon "grow" into a round full Moon and then "shrink" to another new Moon? As the Moon travels around Earth, following Earth's orbit of the Sun, it turns on its own axis. In so doing it seems to change shape. Of course, it does not, but as its position changes relative to Sun and Earth so does the visible portion of the Moon, the portion that reflects sunlight to Earth.

## *The Lunation Cycle*

The time interval between two successive new Moons (lunations), the lunation cycle, is about twenty-nine and one-half days. The lunation cycle is divided into two phases, waxing and waning (see Chapter 4). Each of these phases is sub-divided into two quarters; each of the four quarters consists of two stages.

The first stage of the first quarter of the lunation cycle begins with the new Moon, starting the waxing phase. At the time of lunation, the Moon is in the same sign and degree of the zodiac as the Sun (conjunct the Sun). As the Moon moves away from the Sun's zodiacal position, a crescent becomes visible within a few days. The crescent Moon completes the first stage of the first quarter of the lunation cycle. In approximately one week following the new Moon, a waxing half-moon, called the first quarter Moon, appears, ending the first quarter and beginning the second. At this point in the lunation cycle, the Moon's zodiacal position is  $90^\circ$  past that of the Sun.

The first quarter Moon enlarges to a gibbous Moon (about three-quarters of a circle) in the first stage of

the second quarter, then swells to a full Moon to mark the completion of both the second quarter and the waxing phase and the beginning of the third quarter and the waning phase (see Figure 10). At the full Moon, the Sun and Moon lie exactly opposite each other in the zodiac; the Moon then starts to approach the zodiacal position of the Sun.

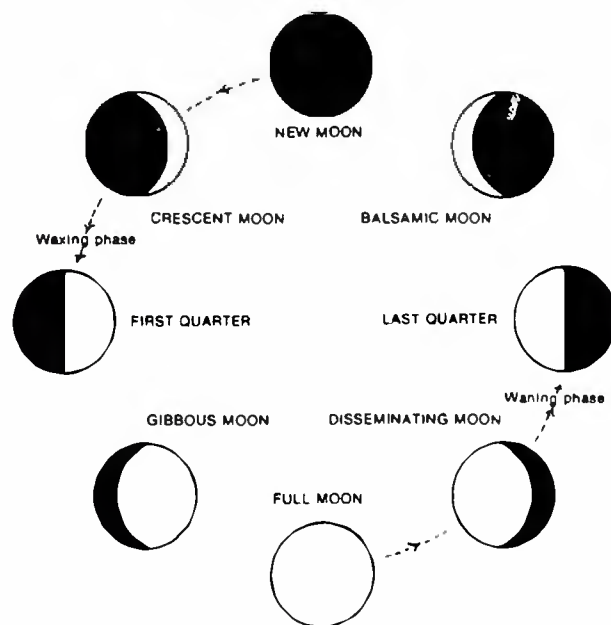


Figure 10. The Lunar Cycle

(Unshaded areas of the Moon are those portions which are visible from Earth during the different stages of the lunar cycle.) The first stage of the third quarter ends when the full Moon has shrunk to the size of a

gibbous moon, called the disseminating Moon in the waning phase. The third quarter ends with the second half-moon in the lunation cycle, termed the last quarter Moon to distinguish it from the half-moon that occurs in the waxing phase.

During the fourth quarter a second crescent, the balsamic Moon, is formed in the first stage; the quarter ends with a new Moon and another lunation cycle begins.

The solar-lunar relationship described by the stage of the Moon's cycle at birth has bearing upon personality integration. Assimilation and utilization of solar energy depends upon the lunar cycle as follows:

*New Moon* (Moon conjunct Sun to Moon 45° ahead of Sun): Motivation is instinctive, actions impulsive. People born during this period in the lunation cycle seek and meet challenges eagerly. They are magnetic and relate vividly to others. Because they project feeling and personality, many are good actors.

*Crescent Moon* (Moon 45° to 90° ahead of the Sun): This stage represents struggle against the established pattern; the new is pitted against the old, but the old always hangs on in some form. These people strive to break with the past and seek new vistas.

*First Quarter Moon* (Moon 90° to 135° ahead of the Sun): These people are survivors; they act through and deal with crises. They attract active, stimulating, noisy situations. Dynamic and energetic (within sign dictates), they may try to move ahead too quickly.

*Gibbous Moon* (Moon 135° to 180°—opposite—ahead of the Sun): Motivation is based in self-analysis. These people are conscious of their actions and feel prompted to make life something of value. They tend to keep a running score or evaluation of personal progress.

*Full Moon* (Moon opposite to 135° behind the Sun): Motivation stems from relationships; action is objective, structured, purposeful. These people seek self-perfection through bonding instinct and intellect.

*Disseminating Moon* (Moon 135° to 90° behind the Sun): Distribution of knowledge and information is important in this phase. Natural communicators of ideas in which they believe, these people pursue their causes with dedication and purpose.

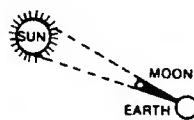
*Last Quarter Moon* (Moon 90° to 45° behind the Sun): This stage is associated with a crisis in consciousness. An inner or hidden germinating process prods reorientation of self and reality resulting in continuous states of revision and change.

*Balsamic Moon* (Moon 45° behind to conjunction with the Sun): Commitment to destiny is represented here. These people sense that something larger than self can manifest through them if they permit it. They may be prophets of the future or martyrs to it.

The rhythmic cycle of the Moon describes a fluid, changing relationship as the Moon moves through the signs. Two successive lunations usually occur in sequential signs of the zodiac but not always. Sometimes when a new Moon occurs in an early degree of a sign, the next new Moon falls in a late degree of the same sign. A new Moon that occurs in the same sign as the previous lunation signifies the need to re-evaluate relationships as indicated by sign and horoscope position.

The Moon crosses the ecliptic an average of twice during a lunation cycle, once at its North Node while traveling from south to north, and once at its South Node as it moves southward (see the section on the Moon's Nodes in Chapter 3). If, at lunation, both luminaries are equidistant from the celestial equator (both are in the same degree of declination; refer to Chapter 1) and both are placed within 19° of one of the Moon's Nodes, an eclipse can occur.

## Solar Eclipses



When the Sun, Moon and Earth are in direct alignment as the Moon passes between the Sun and Earth, the Sun is eclipsed, either hidden wholly (a total eclipse) or in part (a partial eclipse) from Earth. A solar eclipse always occurs during a new Moon, but an eclipse does not take place at every new Moon.

Other specific criteria must be met in order for the Sun, Moon and Earth to be properly aligned for a solar eclipse event. For a solar eclipse to develop, both the Sun and Moon must be either north or south of the celestial equator (both luminaries must lie on the same side of the celestial equator) and the luminaries may

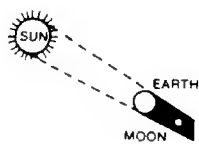
not be separated by more than  $1^\circ$  declination. In addition, one of the Moon's Nodes must fall within  $18^\circ 31'$  of the zodiacal position of the Sun and Moon. If the Moon's Node is found within  $9^\circ 55'$  of the zodiacal longitude of the Sun and Moon at the time of an eclipse, the eclipse is total. If the distance between the Moon's Node and the luminaries is between  $9^\circ 55'$  and  $11^\circ 15'$ , the eclipse may be either total or partial; at greater distances up to the eclipse limits of  $18^\circ 31'$ , solar eclipses are always partial.

A solar eclipse may last from about one minute to a maximum of seven minutes and forty seconds. An eclipse begins on the western side of the Sun and moves across its face to the eastern side. Solar eclipses usually occur twice a year at six-month intervals, although there can be as many as five solar eclipses visible at some point on Earth in a given year. Solar eclipses operate on an approximate eighteen-year cycle called the Saros Cycle. An average of forty-one solar eclipses take place during one Saros Cycle.

During a solar eclipse, the Moon blocks sunlight from Earth; its shadow effectively reduces the Sun's astrological influence on Earth and in the natal horoscope.

A solar eclipse that occurs at the time of birth weakens the Sun's action in the horoscope of the individual whether or not the eclipse is visible at the birthplace. The affairs governed by the Sun lack strength unless other planets energize these areas. The individual's vitality is depleted.

## Lunar Eclipses



A lunar eclipse (eclipse of the Moon) takes place at the time of a full Moon when the luminaries occupy opposite points in the zodiac. As the Earth passes between the Sun and Moon, the Moon is darkened by Earth's shadow moving across the Moon's surface from east to west.

In order for a lunar eclipse to occur, one of the luminaries must be in north declination and the other in south, and both in the same degree of declination or within  $1^\circ$  of each other. Each luminary must lie within  $12^\circ 15'$  of the zodiacal position occupied by one of the Moon's Nodes. If the luminaries and the Nodes are not separated by more than  $3^\circ 45'$  zodiacal longitude, the lunar eclipse is total. If the luminaries and Nodes are separated by less than  $6^\circ$  but more than  $3^\circ 45'$ , the

eclipse may be either total or partial; at separating distances greater than  $6^\circ$  and less than  $12^\circ 15'$ , the lunar eclipse is partial.

A lunar eclipse may last as long as one hour and forty minutes. The maximum number of lunar eclipses that occur in one year is three; there may be none. One Saros Cycle usually contains twenty-nine lunar eclipses in addition to the forty-one solar eclipses for a total of seventy eclipses. When a lunar eclipse occurs, it always precedes or follows a solar eclipse within about two weeks. Lunar eclipses never take place without a companion solar eclipse; solar eclipses can occur as single events.

The function of a lunar eclipse in the natal horoscope differs from that of a solar eclipse. The Moon has no light of its own; it reflects the radiance of the Sun. When the Earth blocks the Sun's rays, the Moon is dark and cold. A lunar eclipse in a natal horoscope frustrates the emotions and warps instinctive reactions. The affairs governed by the Moon are dependent upon the planets with which the Moon is in aspect.

Comparatively few people are born during eclipses. Those that are tend to be extremely sensitive to future eclipses if these eclipses occur in the same degree occupied by a natal planet or one of the angles of the horoscope. Later eclipses that activate a natal horoscope bring pressure to bear upon the affairs ruled by the planets and houses affected.

## The Prenatal Eclipse

Because an eclipse has an astrological after-effect, the solar eclipse that directly precedes birth stamps the natal horoscope even if the eclipse occurred six months prior to birth.

The first solar eclipse that precedes birth, regardless of the time difference, is called the *prenatal eclipse*. The prenatal eclipse elevates the house that contains the sign and degree of the eclipse. In effect, the prenatal eclipse sensitizes the affairs ruled by the house in which it falls; subsequent eclipses that fall in this house or aspect its rulers re-emphasize the affairs of the house throughout life. This can be a sore spot for the individual if the rulers of the house are afflicted in the natal horoscope; if the rulers are well placed and well aspected, the prenatal eclipse reinforces the promise of the house. The influence of the prenatal eclipse depends entirely on the horoscope; it merely emphasizes what is there for good or ill.

## *Occultations*

If a planet other than the Sun or Moon is eclipsed, the event is termed an occultation. The energy of an occulted (hidden) planet, absorbed by the eclipsing planet, which blocks Earth's view, is distributed in the horoscope via the eclipsing planet. The eclipsing planet dominates the house(s) and affairs ruled by the occulted planet. For example, if Uranus, occulted by the Moon, rules the eleventh house and the Moon rules the fourth, matters pertaining to friends and organizations (eleventh house affairs) operate through the home and family (fourth house); change, a Uranian quality, manifests through the emotions, a lunar function.

# CALCULATIONS

# 11 *The Tools of Astrology*

Because numerous computer services are now available, many astrologers no longer construct horoscopes. These astrologers devote their skills to delineating (interpreting) horoscopes. For the person seriously interested in astrology, however, there are advantages to knowing how to correctly erect one. An astrologer who is familiar with the calculations can readily spot any errors that may exist in a prepared horoscope. As beginners learn how to calculate and erect an accurate horoscope, they gain understanding of the basis for astrology. One begins to get the feel of a horoscope during the process of drawing it up.

The two major steps in calculating a horoscope are as follows: (1) determining the house cusps and (2) locating the planets. The essential data required are the exact time, date and place of birth. The following tools are needed: (1) an atlas or longitude and latitude table, (2) a time zone/time changes book, (3) a Table of Houses and (4) an ephemeris. Prepared chart forms (horoscope blanks), printed calculation sheets and a calculator are helpful.

## *Geographic Longitude and Latitude*

It is necessary to describe the location of the birthplace in terms consistent with those used in astrological calculations. The location of a place is defined by its geographic longitude and latitude. Longitude and latitude tables list the locations of numerous towns and cities throughout the world.

Longitude and latitude are given in degrees and minutes. Some tables also include seconds of arc. The

symbol for degrees is  $^{\circ}$ , for minutes:  $'$  and for seconds:  $''$ . One writes  $10^{\circ} 35' 06''$  instead of 10 degrees, 35 minutes and 6 seconds. There are sixty seconds of arc in each minute of longitude and latitude and sixty minutes in each degree of longitude and latitude.

One should not confuse minutes and seconds of longitude or latitude with minutes and seconds of time. Longitude describes the distance in arc a place is situated east or west of Greenwich, England. The longitude of Greenwich is  $0^{\circ}$ . In writing, the direction of longitude follows the degrees. West is abbreviated "W" and east "E." Eighty degrees west longitude is written:  $80^{\circ} W$ . If minutes and/or seconds are included, the direction of longitude is inserted between the degrees and minutes. Eighty degrees and forty-eight minutes west longitude is written as  $80^{\circ} W 48'$ . Latitude describes the distance in arc a place is located north or south of the Earth's equator. The latitude at the equator is  $0^{\circ}$ . Latitude is written in the same style as longitude: "N" stands for north and "S" stands for south. Forty-three degrees and seventeen minutes south latitude is written  $43^{\circ} S 17'$ .

Cities and towns are arranged alphabetically in longitude and latitude tables according to country and state, or province where applicable

(Meridians of longitude pass through the North and South Poles as they encircle the Earth. The prime meridian,  $0^{\circ}$  longitude, from which all other meridian lines are measured passes through Greenwich, England. Lines of latitude are drawn parallel to the Earth's equator, which is designated  $0^{\circ}$  latitude.)

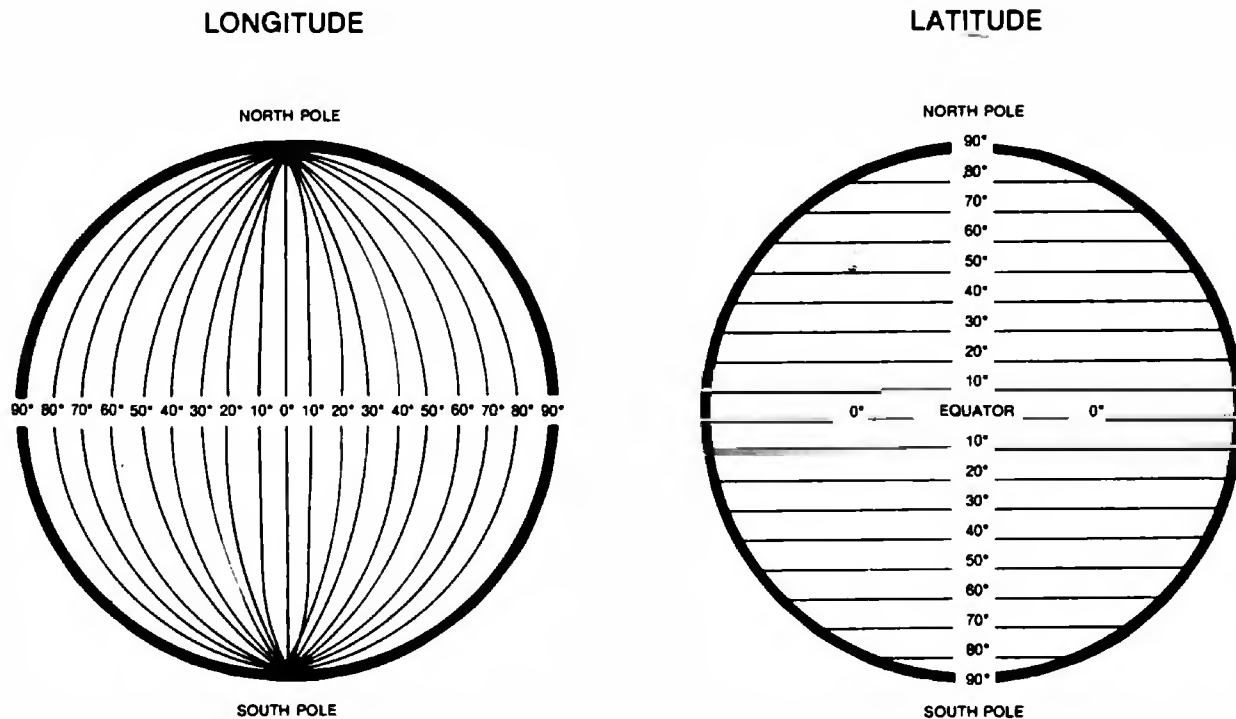


Figure 11. Geographic Longitude and Latitude

## Time

Time zone/time changes books give the world standard time zones and the Standard Time Meridian (longitude) on which a country or section of a country bases its clock time. There are twenty-four standard time zones in the world. Clock time increases one hour for each 15° longitude east of Greenwich and decreases one hour for each 15° longitude west of Greenwich.

Planetary positions are listed in reference books according to Greenwich Mean Time (universal time), which is standard clock time in Greenwich, England. Birthtime must be converted to Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) in order to complete the calculations that are needed to erect an accurate horoscope.

Standard time zones are designated by a number and/or a letter of the alphabet. The number assigned to a time zone indicates the number of hours by which standard clock time in that particular zone differs from Greenwich Mean Time. Greenwich is in the zero zone.

A plus sign (+) preceding a time zone number signifies that the specified number of hours is added to standard clock time in that zone to equal Greenwich Mean Time. Time zone hours are added to standard

clock time in the western hemisphere in order to convert to Greenwich Mean Time because clock time in places west of Greenwich decreases one hour for every 15° longitude.

A minus sign (–) preceding a time zone number indicates that the hour(s) differential is subtracted from standard clock time in that zone to convert to Greenwich Mean Time. Time zone hours are subtracted from clock time in the eastern hemisphere to convert to Greenwich Mean Time because clock time increases one hour for each 15° longitude east of Greenwich.

Letters of the alphabet are sometimes used to designate time zones. Zero degrees longitude, at which Greenwich lies, is the Standard Time Meridian for the "Z" zone; each 15° zone east of Greenwich is lettered consecutively "A" through "M" with the omission of "J"; zones west of Greenwich are lettered "N" through "Y" (refer to Figure 12).

Seven standard time zones are in effect in the United States. The Eastern Standard Time zone (EST) is based on the Standard Time Meridian at 75° west longitude;



the Central Standard Time zone (CST) is based on 90° W; the Mountain Standard Time zone (MST) is based on 105° W; the Pacific Standard Time zone (PST) is based on 120° W; the Yukon Standard Time zone (YST), which affects parts of Alaska, is based on 135° W; the Alaska-Hawaii Standard Time zone (AHST) is based on 150° W, and the Nome Standard Time zone (NST), which is also in force in parts of Alaska, is based on the Standard Time Meridian at 120° west longitude.

If the Standard Time Meridian on which a locality bases its time is known, the zone number can be calculated by dividing the longitude of the Standard Time Meridian by fifteen; a plus sign precedes the zone number if the longitude of the Standard Time Meridian is west; a minus sign precedes if the longitude is east.

STANDARD TIME MERIDIAN WEST	ZONE NUMBER	ZONE LETTER
0°	0	Z
15°	+ 1	N
30°	+ 2	O
45°	+ 3	P
60°	+ 4	Q
75°	+ 5	R
90°	+ 6	S
105°	+ 7	T
120°	+ 8	U
135°	+ 9	V
150°	+ 10	W
165°	+ 11	X
180°	+ 12	Y

STANDARD TIME MERIDIAN EAST	ZONE NUMBER	ZONE LETTER
0°	0	Z
15°	- 1	A
30°	- 2	B
45°	- 3	C
60°	- 4	D
75°	- 5	E
90°	- 6	F
105°	- 7	G
120°	- 8	H
135°	- 9	I
150°	- 10	K
165°	- 11	L
180°	- 12	M

Figure 12. World Standard Time Zones

New York City, located in the + 5 or R zone, observes Eastern Standard Time (EST). When it is 5:00 P.M. EST in New York, it is 10:00 P.M. GMT in Greenwich (standard clock time in New York plus the zone number in hours: 5:00 P.M. EST + 5:00 = 10:00 P.M. GMT).

The Standard Time Meridian for Berlin, Germany is 15° E 00'. This is the -1 or A zone. When it is 5:00 P.M. standard time in Berlin, it is 4:00 P.M. in Greenwich (5:00 P.M. - 1:00 = 4:00 P.M. GMT).

Places that observe or have observed Daylight Savings Time, War Time or Double Summer Time (Great Britain) are listed in the time zone/time changes books with appropriate dates. If a birth is recorded in Daylight Savings Time or War Time, the time must be changed to standard time by subtracting one hour from clock time before converting to Greenwich Mean Time. Two hours are subtracted from Double Summer Time in order to obtain standard time.

To convert 10:00 A.M. Eastern Daylight Time (EDT) to GMT these two steps are followed:

(1) 10:00 A.M. EDT - 1:00 = 9:00 A.M. EST  
(Daylight Savings Time minus one hour equals standard time.) Eastern Standard Time is in the + 5 zone.

(2) 9:00 A.M. EST + 5:00 = 2:00 P.M. GMT  
(Standard clock time plus zone number in hours equals GMT.)

All localities do not use standard time. Places that observe Local Mean Time (True Local Time) are listed in the time zone books along with local time information. The calculation required to convert Local Mean Time (LMT) to Greenwich Mean Time is given in Chapter 12.

Astrological data is based on sidereal time (star time). Sidereal time, measured in relation to fixed stars, differs from Sun time (solar time), on which most clocks are based, by about four minutes each day. A sidereal day is made up of twenty-three hours, fifty-six minutes and four seconds of clock time; a solar day (clock day) contains twenty-four hours, three minutes and fifty-six seconds of sidereal time. The difference amounts to 9.86 seconds per hour.

### Tables of Houses

A Table of Houses lists the position of the MC (Midheaven) for the sidereal times at which it moves ahead 1° in the zodiac; it advances 1° in approximately

four minutes of sidereal time. The positions of the Ascendant and other house cusps at those particular times are given for various degrees of north latitude. This data is adapted to birth localities in south latitude by a simple computation, which is shown in Chapter 12.

Tables of Houses vary according to the system of horoscope erection for which they are designed. There is some disagreement among astrologers as to which house system yields the most accurate interpretation, for planets and signs do not always occupy the same houses in different systems. Most astrologers study several systems until they determine the one which seems, to them, valid.

The Equal House system, one of the oldest, is based on equal divisions of the ecliptic. In this system all house cusps bear the same numerical degree as the Ascendant; the signs on the cusps follow the natural order of the zodiac beginning with the sign on the Ascendant. Each house contains 30°; there are no intercepted signs. The MC is inserted in the horoscope at the proper zodiacal degree (Figure 15).

The Placidian system, designed by the Italian monk Placidus de Tito in the seventeenth century, is currently the most widely used quadrant system (unequal house) of horoscope erection. In this system time is adapted to space. House cusps are calculated from two trisected semi-arcs, the time in right ascension (sidereal time expressed in degrees and minutes of arc) it takes for each degree of the ecliptic to rise from the lower meridian to the horizon (nocturnal semi-arc) and the time to rise from the horizon to the upper meridian (diurnal semi-arc). This system breaks down at latitudes greater than 66° 33' because some degrees are circumpolar (do not touch the horizon near the poles) and form only diurnal or nocturnal semi-arcs, not both, in far northern or southern locations.

A comparatively new system, the Koch or Birthplace house system, devised several years ago by Dr. Walter Koch, is rapidly becoming popular. In this method, based on time dynamics, the position of each degree of the ecliptic is considered relative to the Ascendant and the birthplace. The polar elevation of the birthplace is included in calculations for all house cusps.

Two other quadrant house systems, Campanus (thirteenth century) and Regiomontanus (fifteenth century), both space systems, are still much in use.

In space systems, a reference great circle is divided into twelve sections; other great circles that pass through the points of division, the ecliptic and the north and south points of the horizon are calculated. House cusps are found at the points of intersection of these circles and the ecliptic. The Campanus system is based on division of the prime vertical, the great circle that rises vertically and passes through Earth's zenith, nadir, and east point of the horizon; the Regiomontanus method uses Earth's equator as its reference great circle.

Another system favored by many, Porphyry (third century), combines equal house and quadrant methods. Each quadrant of the horoscope as determined by the Ascendant and MC and their opposite points, the Descendant and IC, are divided into three houses of equal size. Houses in the first and third quadrants contain the same number of degrees; houses in the second and fourth quadrant are alike in size.

The method of horoscope calculation and construction is the same for all house systems; the difference lies in the data given in the Table of Houses for each system.

In order to use a Table of Houses one must first calculate the Local Sidereal Time. The Local Sidereal Time is the sidereal time that corresponds to clock time at the time and place of birth.

The calculated Local Sidereal Time is found in the Table of Houses. The MC and Ascendant listed for that time at the latitude of the birthplace are entered in the horoscope blank. For systems other than Equal House, the intermediate house cusps that correspond to the Local Sidereal Time and birth latitude are also entered.

The MC forms the cusp of the tenth house in all quadrant systems. The opposite point in the zodiac is the cusp of the fourth house. This is the IC. The fourth house falls opposite the tenth in the horoscope. In the Equal House system, the MC is not the cusp of the tenth house nor is the IC the cusp of the fourth house.

Tables of Houses list only the cusps for six houses: 1 (Ascendant), 2, 3, 10 (MC), 11 and 12. The remaining six houses bear the same degree and opposite sign as the house opposed in the horoscope.

Figure 13 shows an excerpt from page 56 of Dalton's Table of Houses (Placidian system). Latitude is listed in degrees at the left of the page. Each of the six large

columns is headed at the top of the page as follows: sidereal time (abbreviated here as SID. T.), the Right Ascension in arc (ARC) and, to the right of these figures, the sign and degree of the MC.

(Reprinted by permission of the Macoy Publishing

Company, 3011 Dumbarton Road, Richmond, VA 23229.)

The sidereal time is written in units of hours, minutes and seconds. A colon is inserted to separate each unit.

TABLE OF HOUSES FOR LATITUDES 22° TO 56°.

56		UPPER MERIDIAN, CUSP OF 10th H.																																		
SID. T. 19 56 12 } 27°					30 0 23 } 28°					30 6 34 } 29°					30 6 44 } = 0°					30 13 54 } = 1°					30 17 8 } = 2°											
ARC 299° 2' 9"					300° 5' 8"					301° 8' 5"					302° 11' 1"					303° 13' 4"					304° 15' 8"											
H.	11	12	1	2	3	11	12	1	2	3	11	12	1	2	3	11	12	1	2	3	11	12	1	2	3	11	12	1	2	3	11	12	1	2	3	
Lat.	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	
22	24.9	28.8	7 9	7 0	2.2	26.1	0.1	8 24	8 0	3.2	27.2	1.4	9 38	9 1	4.1	28.4	2.7	10 52	10 1	5.1	29.5	4.0	12 5	11 1	6.0	0.7	5.2	13 18	12 1	7.0						
23	8	8	7 30	3 4	0	1 8 45	3 3	1	4 10 1	4 3	3	7 11 15	4 2	4	0 12 28	4 2	6	3 13 41	4 1																	
24	7	8	7 52	6 5	25 9	1 9 8	6 5	0	4 10 23	7 4	2	7 11 38	7 4	3	0 12 52	7 4	5	3 14 6	8 3																	
25	6	8	8 14	9 7	8	1 9 31	9 7	26 9	4 10 47	10 0	6	1 7 12 2	11 1	5	2	1 13 17	12 1	5	4 3 14 31	13 1																
26	5	8	8 37	8 2	9	7 1 9 55	9 2	8	4 11 11	3 8	0	2 8 12 27	4 7	1	1 13 42	4 7	0 3	5 4 14 56	4 6																	
27	24.4	28.8	9 1	5 3 0	6	0 11 10 19	5 4 0	7	1 5 11 36	6 9	27 9	8 12 53	7 9	0	4 1 14 8	7 8	2	4 15 23	8 8																	
28	3	8	9 26	9 2	5	1 10 45	9 2	6	5 12 2	11 0	5 1	8 13 19	12 1	6 0	28 9	2 14 35	13 1	7 0	1 5 15 51	14 1																
29	2	8	9 52	9 3	4	25 3	1 11 11	10 3	3	5	5 12 29	4 3	7	8 13 47	4 2	8	2 15 3	4 2	0	5 16 19	5 1															
30	1	8	10 19	7 6	2	1 11 39	7 5	26 4	5 12 57	8 5	6	2 9 14 15	8 4	7	2 15 32	8 4	29 9	5 6 16 49	8 3																	
31	23.9	8	10 47	10 1	7	1 11 2 7 11 1	7 3	5 13 26	12 2	6	5	9 14 45	13 2	6	6	3 16 3 14 2	5 8	6 17 19	15 2																	
32	8	28 7	11 16	5 9	0	0 11 2 37	5 9	2	1 5 13 57	6 8	27 4	9 15 16	5 8	5	4 3 16 34	6 7	7	7 17 51	6 7																	
33	7	7 11 46	9 4 1	24 8	1 13 8	9 5 1	0	5 14 28	13 0	6 0	2	9 15 48	9 7 0	28 4	3 17 6 15 0	9 6	7 18 24	16 0	9																	
34	5	7 12 18	11 3	3 7	1 13 40	12 3	3 25 9	5 15 1	4 2	1	3 0 16 21	14 4	2 3	4 17 40	4 8 1	5	5 8 18 59	4 9 0																		
35	23.4	7 12 51	7 5 6	1 14 14	7 5 8	6 15 36	8 4 0	0 16 56	8 4 2	4 18 16	8 3 29 4	8 19 34	8 2																							
36	3	7 13 26	12 1	7 5	1 14 49	13 1	7 7	6 16 12	14 2	6 26 9	0 17 33	15 2	6 1	5 18 53	16 2	5 2	9 20 12	17 2	4																	
37	2	28 7	14 3	5 9	24 4	0 15 27	6 9	6	1 6 16 49	6 8 7	1 18 11	7 8 0	4 5 19 32	7 7 1	9 20 51	7 7																				
38	0	7 14 41	13 0	5 1	2	1 16 5 14 1	6 1 25 4	6 17 29	15 1	7 0	6	1 18 51	16 1 8 0	27 9	6 20 12	17 2	9 0	6 0 21 32	18 2																	
39	22.9	7 15 21	5 4 1	1 16 46	5 3 3	6 18 10	6 3 4	3 1 19 33	6 2 7	6 20 55	6 9 2	28 8	1 22 15	6 10 1																						
40	7	6 16 3	14 0	6 23 9	1 17 29	15 0	6 1	7 18 54	16 1 5 26 3	2 20 17	17 1 5 5	7 21 39	18 1 4 7	1 23 0	19 1 3																					
41	5	6 16 48	5 9 7	1 18 15	6 8 24 9	7 19 40	6 8 1	2 21 3	6 7 4	4 7 22 26	6 6 5	2 23 47	7 6																							
42	4	28 6	17 35	15 1	6 1	0 1 19 2	16 1 7 1	8 1 7 20 28	17 2 8 0	0	2 21 52	18 2 9 1	8 23 15	19 2 9 3	6 24 17	20 2 8																				
43	2	6 18 25	7 4 4	2 19 54	7 4 6	7 21 19	8 3 25 8	3 22 44	7 9 2 0	8 24 7	8 10 3 2	4 25 29	7 11 1																							
44	0	6 19 18	16 3	7 2	2 20 46	17 3 6 4	8 22 13	18 4 6 6	3 23 39	19 3 5 26 8	9 25 22	20 3 4 1	5 26 25	21 3 4																						

Figure 13. Excerpt from Dalton's Table of Houses

Each of the six large columns shown in Figure 13 contains five subcolumns headed 11, 12, 1, 2 and 3. The subcolumn headed "1" lists the degrees and minutes of the Ascendant, which is the cusp of the first house. The other subcolumns list the degrees and tenths of a degree of the house cusp that corresponds to the heading number. The numerical value of the digit representing tenths of a degree is multiplied by 6 to obtain minutes of arc (ignore the decimal point).

The degrees and decimal point are not repeated for each column entry. If no degree is listed one must look up the column to the previous degree entry. Do not omit degrees; if a house cusp is placed at 0°, a zero will be indicated in the column.

The appropriate sign for each house cusp is entered directly below the heading number. Sign changes that occur at various latitudes are listed throughout the column.

In Figure 13 find the sidereal time 20:12:54 at the top of the page in the fifth column. The MC is listed beside the sidereal time. At this time the MC is 1° Aquarius.

Find 41° in the latitude column; go across the row to the large column headed 20:12:54. Look under the corresponding subcolumn headed "1" in the 41° row to find the zodiacal longitude of the Ascendant for a birth that took place at 41° north latitude and occurred at 20:12:54 Local Sidereal Time. The sign of the Ascendant is at the top of that subcolumn directly beneath the heading number "1." The Ascendant for 41° north latitude at 20:12:54 Local Sidereal Time is 22° 26' Taurus. This is the zodiacal position of the cusp of the first house.

The cusp of the seventh house (Descendant) lies directly opposite the Ascendant in the horoscope. In this example, the zodiacal position of the Descendant is 22° 26' Scorpio, the point opposite 22° 26' Taurus (the Ascendant) in the zodiac.

To determine the remaining Placidian house cusps for this same sidereal time and latitude, find the cusps for 2, 3, 11 and 12 in the 41° row under the large column headed 20:12:54 in Figure 13. Reverse these cusp positions for houses 8, 9, 5 and 6. The Placidian house cusps for this horoscope are shown in Figure 14. (Note that neither Virgo nor Pisces appears on a house cusp. These signs are enclosed in parentheses to indicate interception. Virgo is intercepted in the fifth house; Pisces is intercepted in the eleventh.)

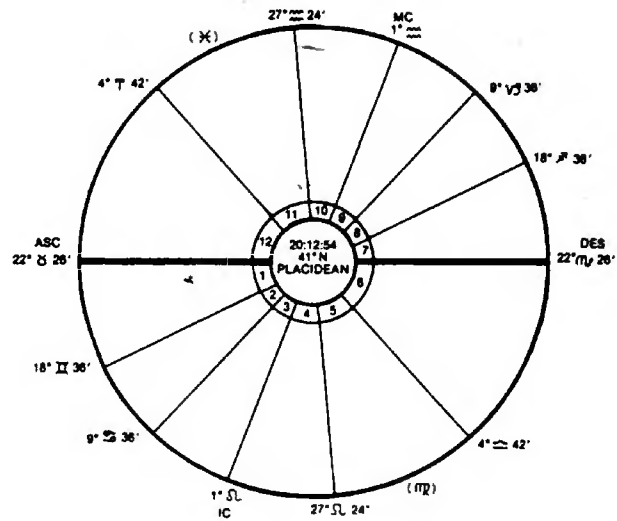


Figure 14. Placidian House Cusp

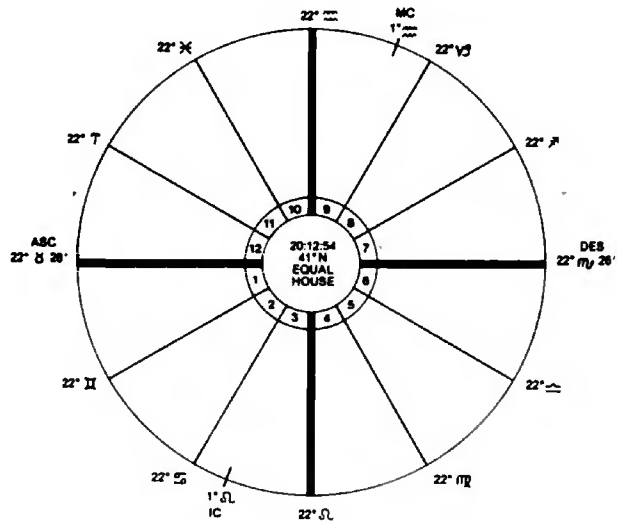


Figure 15. The Houses in an Equal House Horoscope

Compare the Placidian houses shown in Figure 14 with the Equal House houses shown in Figure 15. (The MC and IC do not form house cusps in this example; they are indicated by a line which intersects the outer circle at the correct zodiacal degree. The IC falls in the third house; the MC is in the ninth.) These figures depict the houses of horoscopes erected for the same Local Sidereal Time and latitude. A different sign appears on the cusps of the fifth and eleventh houses

in these two horoscopes. Because of the difference in signs and degrees on some of the cusps, planets may occupy different houses in the two horoscopes. These differences alter the interpretation of the horoscopes. The student should practice with both types until he or she can choose the one that produces the most accurate picture of the individual it represents.

If the Local Sidereal Time at birth falls between two times listed in the Table of Houses, an interpolation is made to obtain the correct house cusps at the exact Local Sidereal Time. A similar correction is made to account for the difference between birth latitude and the listed latitude for all localities that do not lie exactly on a parallel of latitude (zero minutes). These calculations are given in Chapter 12.

### Ephemerides

An ephemeris lists the zodiacal positions and declinations of the planets and Moon's North Node at the given sidereal time at Greenwich for a specified clock time each day. The data in a noon ephemeris is correct at 12:00 noon GMT (12:00 P.M.). Data in a zero hour (midnight) ephemeris is correct at 12:00 midnight GMT (12:00 A.M. = 00:00:00). Ephemerides are printed in editions that cover from one to two thousand years. Planetary data listed for a birthdate of interest must be corrected according to time of birth.

Sample listings from *The Concise Planetary Ephemeris for 1950 to 2000 A.D. at Noon* are reproduced in Figure 16.

NOVEMBER 1950													
DAY	EPHEMERIS SIDEREAL TIME	☉	♊	☾	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐	♑	♒	♓
		h m s	o /	o /	o /	o /	o /	o /	o /	o /	o /	o /	o /
LONGITUDE at NOON													
1 W	14 40 49.2	8♈30.0	25♋59.3	21♄0.3	8♌22.3	5♍21.9	26♎26.2	27♏42.2	28♐10.6	9♑22.0	17♒53.3	19♓45.9	
2 T	14 44 45.8	9 30.0	25 56.1	3♄16.5	9 60.0	6 37.1	27 10.9	27 43.9	28 16.8	9♑21.1	17 55.4	19 46.4	
3 F	14 48 42.3	10 30.1	25 52.9	15 49.2	11 37.3	7 52.4	27 55.7	27 45.9	28 23.0	9 20.2	17 57.5	19 47.0	
4 S	14 52 38.9	11 30.3	25 49.8	28 42.7	13 14.1	9 7.7	28 40.5	27 48.1	28 29.2	9 19.2	17 59.6	19 47.5	
5 S	14 58 35.5	12 30.4	25 46.6	12♎1.2	14 50.5	10 23.0	29 25.4	27 50.4	28 35.3	9 18.1	18 1.7	19 47.9	
6 M	15 0 32.0	13 30.6	25 43.4	25 47.4	16 26.5	11 38.3	0♈10.4	27 53.0	28 41.4	9 17.0	18 3.7	19 48.4	
7 T	15 4 28.6	14 30.8	25 40.2	10♌2.0	18 2.1	12 53.7	0 55.5	27 55.7	28 47.4	9 15.9	18 5.8	19 48.8	
8 W	15 8 25.1	15 31.1	25 37.1	24 43.1	19 37.4	14 9.0	1 40.8	27 58.7	28 53.3	9 14.7	18 7.8	19 49.2	
9 T	15 12 21.7	16 31.4	25 33.9	9♋45.1	21 12.3	15 24.3	2 25.8	28 1.8	28 59.2	9 13.5	18 9.8	19 49.5	
10 F	15 16 18.2	17 31.7	25 30.7	24 59.6	22 48.8	16 39.7	3 11.0	28 5.2	29 5.0	9 12.2	18 11.9	19 49.9	
11 S	15 20 14.8	18 32.1	25 27.5	10♌15.8	24 21.0	17 55.0	3 58.3	28 8.7	29 10.7	9 10.8	18 13.8	19 50.2	
12 S	15 24 11.4	19 32.5	25 24.4	25 22.7	25 55.0	19 10.5	4 41.7	28 12.5	29 16.5	9 9.5	18 15.9	19 50.5	
13 M	15 28 7.9	20 32.9	25 21.2	10♈11.1	27 28.8	20 25.8	5 27.2	28 16.4	29 22.1	9 8.1	18 17.8	19 50.7	
14 T	15 32 4.5	21 33.3	25 18.0	24 34.8	29 1.9	21 41.2	6 12.7	28 20.5	29 27.8	9 6.8	18 19.8	19 51.0	
15 W	15 36 1.0	22 33.7	25 14.8	8♌30.5	0 34.9	22 56.5	6 58.2	28 24.8	29 33.1	9 5.1	18 21.7	19 51.1	
16 T	15 39 57.6	23 34.2	25 11.8	21 59.0	2 7.7	24 11.9	7 43.8	28 29.3	29 38.5	9 3.5	18 23.8	19 51.3	
17 F	15 43 54.1	24 34.7	25 8.5	5 x 2.5	3 40.2	25 27.3	8 29.4	28 34.0	29 43.9	9 1.9	18 25.5	19 51.4	
18 S	15 47 50.7	25 35.2	25 5.3	17 44.9	5 12.5	26 42.7	9 15.2	28 38.8	29 49.1	9 0.3	18 27.4	19 51.5	
19 S	15 51 47.3	26 35.7	25 2.1	0♎10.3	6 44.5	27 58.0	10 0.9	28 43.9	29 54.3	8 58.8	18 29.3	19 51.6	
20 M	15 55 43.8	27 36.3	24 58.9	12 23.0	8 16.3	29 13.8	10 48.7	28 49.1	29 59.5	8 56.9	18 31.1	19 51.8	
21 T	15 59 40.4	28 36.9	24 55.8	24 26.5	9 47.9	0 28.8	11 32.6	28 54.5	0♌4.5	8 55.1	18 32.9	19 51.8	
22 W	16 3 36.9	29 37.5	24 52.8	6♎24.1	11 19.3	1 44.2	12 18.5	29 0.0	0 9.5	8 53.3	18 34.7	19 51.8	
23 T	16 7 33.5	0 38.1	24 49.4	18 16.1	12 50.4	2 59.8	13 4.4	29 5.8	0 14.4	8 51.5	18 36.5	19 51.8	
24 F	16 11 30.0	1 38.7	24 46.2	10♌10.4	14 21.3	4 15.0	13 50.4	29 11.7	0 19.2	8 49.6	18 38.2	19 51.5	
25 S	16 15 26.6	2 39.4	24 43.1	12 2.5	15 51.9	5 30.3	14 36.5	29 17.8	0 24.0	8 47.7	18 40.0	19 51.4	
26 S	16 19 23.2	3 40.1	24 39.9	23 55.8	17 22.2	6 45.7	15 22.8	29 24.0	0 28.8	8 45.7	18 41.7	19 51.3	
27 M	16 23 19.7	4 40.8	24 36.7	5♄51.8	18 52.3	8 1.1	16 8.7	29 30.5	0 33.2	8 43.7	18 43.4	19 51.1	
28 T	16 27 16.3	5 41.5	24 33.5	17 51.8	20 22.0	9 18.5	16 54.9	29 37.0	0 37.7	8 41.7	18 45.0	19 50.9	
29 W	16 31 12.8	6 42.3	24 30.4	29 58.7	21 51.3	10 31.9	17 41.1	29 43.8	0 42.2	8 39.6	18 46.7	19 50.7	
30 T	16 35 9.4	7 43.1	24 27.2	12♎15.5	23 20.3	11 47.3	18 27.4	29 50.7	0 46.5	8 37.5	18 48.3	19 50.5	
DECLINATION at NOON													
1 W	14 40 49.2	14S 20.5	1S 35.7	28N 29.0	13S 57.4	12S 21.4	24S 42.2	13S 25.0	2N 34.8	23N 25.6	5S 34.0	22N 47.9	
4 S	14 52 38.9	15 17.4	1 39.5	14 15.4	15 47.5	13 39.8	24 45.0	13 22.5	2 27.8	23 25.8	5 36.3	22 48.3	
7 T	15 4 28.6	16 12.0	1 43.3	5S 0.3	17 30.4	14 55.2	24 45.4	13 19.4	2 21.1	23 26.1	5 38.6	22 48.7	
10 F	15 16 18.2	17 4.1	1 47.1	23 12.8	19 5.3	16 7.2	24 43.4	13 15.6	2 14.6	23 26.5	5 40.8	22 49.3	
13 M	15 28 7.9	17 53.7	1 50.8	28 0.4	20 31.8	17 15.4	24 38.9	13 11.2	2 8.4	23 26.8	5 43.0	22 49.9	
16 T	15 39 57.6	18 40.4	1 54.6	18 56.5	21 49.2	18 19.5	24 32.1	13 6.3	2 2.4	23 27.2	5 45.1	22 50.6	
19 S	15 51 47.3	19 24.1	1 58.4	0N 21.1	22 56.9	19 19.1	24 22.7	13 0.7	1 56.7	23 27.6	5 47.1	22 51.3	
22 W	16 3 36.9	20 4.7	2 2.2	16 43.2	23 54.3	20 13.9	24 11.0	12 54.6	1 51.3	23 28.0	5 49.1	22 52.2	
25 S	16 15 26.6	20 41.9	2 6.0	27 4.5	24 40.7	21 3.6	23 56.7	12 48.0	1 46.2	23 28.5	5 51.0	22 53.2	
28 T	16 27 16.3	21 15.7	2 9.7	26 51.5	25 15.6	21 47.9	23 40.1	12 40.8	1 41.3	23 28.9	5 52.8	22 54.2	

Figure 16. Sample from *The Concise Planetary Ephemeris*  
 (Reprinted by permission of the Hieratic Publishing Co., P.O. Box 133, Medford, MA 02155.)

The month and year appear above the columns; the first column, headed "DAY," lists the date and weekday and the second gives the ephemeris sidereal time at Noon GMT on the corresponding date. The listed sidereal time must be adjusted according to birthtime and birthplace. Entries for the zodiacal positions of the planets and the Moon's North Node follow across the page in the upper section of the table marked "LONGITUDE at NOON" in columns headed by their symbols (glyphs). Zodiacal longitude is listed to the nearest tenth of a minute of arc, each tenth being equal to six seconds of arc. When inserting planets in a horoscope, it is customary to round off the positions to the nearest minute.

The glyph for the sign each planet occupies is entered in the ephemeris for the first day of the month. If a planet changes sign during the course of a month, the sign change is noted at Noon GMT on the appropriate date. Figure 16 shows that the Sun (third column) is in Scorpio on the first day of November 1950. Note the similarity between the glyph for Scorpio and for Virgo, which appears under Saturn, and learn to distinguish between the two. The glyph for Virgo always has a cross stroke on the last leg of the "m"; sometimes the glyph for Scorpio has an arrowhead pointing upward on the last stroke. Refer to pictures of glyphs in Chapter 2 in the Virgo and Scorpio sections.

In the column for the Sun, notice that it had entered Sagittarius on November 23. Four other planets also change sign once in November: Mercury from Scorpio to Sagittarius on the 15th (sixth column), Venus from Scorpio to Sagittarius on the 21st (seventh column), Mars from Sagittarius to Capricorn on the 6th (eighth column), and Saturn from Virgo to Libra on the 21st (tenth column). The column for the Moon (fifth) shows that this fast-moving planet changes sign every two and one-half days.

Notice the eleventh column, headed Uranus. An "R" is inserted between the degrees and minutes of longitude on November 2. The "R" means that Uranus is retrograde. The retrograde symbol is not repeated each day; it is entered only on the day a planet goes retrograde and on the second day of each month thereafter that the planet remains retrograde (some ephemerides note retrograde motion on the first day of the month). Note that Pluto (last column) goes retrograde on the 24th. A planet is retrograde from

the date the "R" is first entered until the date on which a "D" is entered to signify direct motion. Direct motion is not indicated in the ephemeris except on the date of transition from retrograde to direct motion. Always check the planet columns from the birthdate upward for a change in motion or sign.

To denote retrograde motion in a horoscope, an "R" is written beside the planet's position. Direct motion is not indicated in a horoscope unless a planet goes direct on the GMT birthdate.

Some ephemerides list the stationary periods of planetary motion; most do not. In order to estimate the stationary period, note a planet's zodiacal position on the transition date; that is, the date that a planet changes motion from direct to retrograde (the date on which an "R" is first entered during a retrograde period) or from retrograde to direct as indicated by a "D." A planet is stationary on those consecutive days immediately preceding and/or following the transition date for which the zodiacal longitude is the same as on the transition date. No variation of position is allowed, as even a change in seconds of arc indicates some motion. A planet is stationary on the transition date but may remain so for only a brief time.

An "S" is used to distinguish a stationary planet in a horoscope. If a birth occurs on the transition date, a stationary planet is marked "SD" or "SR" to indicate stationary direct or stationary retrograde, as applicable.

In Figure 16, the distance in arc that a planet lies north or south of the celestial equator, its declination, is listed for every third day in the lower columns for November 1950. Direction of declination (N = north; S = south) is indicated in the first entry and throughout the column as changes occur. Declinations, exact at Noon GMT on the entry date, are corrected according to birthdate and birthtime.

# 12 Calculation of House Cusps

The first step in determining the house cusps for a horoscope is the calculation of the Local Sidereal Time (LST) at birth. One must be able to perform various mathematical operations involving time and longitude in order to calculate the Local Sidereal Time.

## Mathematical Operations

### Longitude

In mathematical operations involving longitude, the units are dealt with separately. Degrees may be converted to minutes of arc and minutes converted to seconds of arc if necessary to complete calculations. Conversions are based on the following longitude equivalents:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ degree} &= 60 \text{ minutes of arc} \\ 1 \text{ minute of arc} &= 60 \text{ seconds of arc} \end{aligned}$$

### Subtraction

To subtract  $3^{\circ} 50'$  from  $80^{\circ} 15'$ ,  $80^{\circ} 15'$  must first be changed to  $79^{\circ} 75'$  ( $50'$  cannot be subtracted from  $15'$ ) by converting  $80^{\circ}$  to  $79^{\circ} 60'$  and adding the  $60'$  to the  $15'$ . The subtraction is carried out as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 80^{\circ} 15' \\ - 3^{\circ} 50' \\ \hline \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} 79^{\circ} 75' \\ - 3^{\circ} 50' \\ \hline 76^{\circ} 25' \end{array}$$

### Addition

The minutes and seconds in a longitude sum may be greater in number than the basic equivalent units. If

a sum has more than  $60'$  or  $60''$ , the multiples of 60 are reduced to degrees or minutes respectively. For example, add  $5^{\circ} 46' 18''$  to  $24^{\circ} 25' 48''$ :

$$\begin{array}{r} 24^{\circ} 25' 48'' \\ + 5^{\circ} 46' 18'' \\ \hline 29^{\circ} 71' 66'' = 30^{\circ} 12' 6'' \end{array}$$

In this example the  $66''$  in the initial answer was reduced to  $1' 6''$ , the  $1'$  was added to the  $71'$ , giving  $72'$ , the  $72'$  was then reduced to  $1^{\circ} 12'$ , the  $1^{\circ}$  was added to the  $29^{\circ}$  for a final result of  $30^{\circ} 12' 6''$ . In conversions of this kind all degrees, minutes and seconds must be accounted for.

## Time

In computations involving time, the hours, minutes and seconds are treated as separate units. Hours may be converted to minutes and minutes to seconds or vice versa. It is correct to add 24 hours in order to carry out calculations or to subtract 24 hours in order to reduce the final result to the lowest unit. The following equivalents are used in time conversions:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ day} &= 24 \text{ hours} \\ 1 \text{ hour} &= 60 \text{ minutes of time} \\ 1 \text{ minute of time} &= 60 \text{ seconds of time} \end{aligned}$$

### Subtraction

A greater number of hours may be subtracted from a lesser number of hours by adding 24 hours to the lesser number. To subtract 10:24:15 (ten hours,

twenty-four minutes and fifteen seconds) from 5:13:40 (five hours, thirteen minutes and forty seconds), 5:13:40 is first changed to 29:13:40 by adding 24 hours to the 5 hours (10 hours cannot be subtracted from 5 hours); then 1 hour is converted to 60 minutes and added to the 13 minutes (24 minutes cannot be subtracted from 13 minutes) to give 28:73:40. The subtraction is carried out as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 5:13:40 \\ - 10:24:15 \\ \hline \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} 29:13:40 \\ - 10:24:15 \\ \hline \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} 28:73:40 \\ - 10:24:15 \\ \hline 18:49:25 \end{array}$$

### Addition

When times are added, the final result is reduced to the lowest units. For example, the sum of 4:20:31 and 22:51:02 is computed as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 4:20:31 \\ + 22:51:02 \\ \hline 26:71:33 \end{array} = 27:11:33 = 3:11:33$$

The initial sum contains more than 24 hours, and 71 minutes is greater than 60 minutes, the time equivalent of 1 hour. To reduce the answer to lowest units first convert the 71 minutes to 1 hour and 11 minutes and add the 1 hour to the 26 hours, which gives 27:11:33; then subtract 24 hours from the 27 hours to obtain a final result of 3:11:33.

### Sidereal Time Variation

Sidereal time varies from solar time (clock time) by 9.86 seconds per hour. To calculate the sidereal time variation over a period of time, multiply the time interval in hours by 9.86; the result is seconds of time. The sidereal time variation for a period of 3 hours is calculated thus:

$$3 \text{ hr.} \times 9.86 \text{ sec. per hr.} = 29.58 \text{ sec.} = 30 \text{ sec.} \\ \text{(to the nearest second)}$$

In this calculation the "×" indicates multiplication. The final answer is rounded off to the nearest second. A decimal remainder of less than .50 (one-half) is dropped; 1 second is added if the decimal remainder is equal to or greater than .50 as in the above example.

To calculate the time variation over a period of minutes, the minutes are written as a fraction of an hour, and this fraction is multiplied by 9.86. The number of

minutes in the time period forms the numerator of the fraction (the numerals above or to the left of the fractional line) and the number of minutes in 1 hour (60) forms the denominator (the numerals below or to the right of the fractional line). For example, proceed as follows to calculate the sidereal time variation for a period of 3 hours and 15 minutes:

1. Write the minutes as a fraction of an hour:  
15 min. =  $\frac{15}{60}$  hr.
2. Solve the problem as in the previous example:  
 $3\frac{15}{60}$  hr. × 9.86 sec. per hr. = 32.04 sec. = 32 sec.

If a calculator is not available, it is easier to convert the minutes to a decimal fraction before carrying out the multiplication. To convert a fraction into decimal form, divide the numerator by the denominator as follows:

$$\frac{15}{60} = 0.25 \text{ (The line dividing the numerator and denominator of the fraction indicates division. } \frac{15}{60} \text{ is correctly read as the fraction "fifteen-sixtieths" or as 15 divided by 60. The division is simpler to handle if the fraction is first reduced to the lowest common denominator: } \frac{15}{60} = \frac{1}{4} \text{.)}$$

The total time period, 3 hours and 15 minutes, is written as 3.25 hours and multiplied by 9.86:

$$3.25 \text{ hr.} \times 9.86 \text{ sec. per hr.} = 32.04 \text{ sec.} = 32 \text{ sec.}$$

In this example .04 was dropped because it is less than .50.

A close approximation of the sidereal time variation is obtained by allowing 10 seconds per hour and 1 second per 6 minutes of clock time; fractions of a second are dropped from the final answer. To estimate the time variation, the number of hours is multiplied by 10, the number of minutes is divided by 6, and the two results are added together. The final answer is seconds of time. The time variation for an interval of 3 hours and 15 minutes is estimated as follows:

$$3 \times 10 = 30 \text{ sec.} \\ \text{(number of hours of time interval multiplied by 10)}$$

$$\frac{15}{6} = 2\frac{3}{6} = 2 \text{ sec.} \\ \text{(number of minutes divided by 6, the fractional part of the answer is dropped)}$$



30 sec. + 2 sec. = 32 sec.  
 (The number of seconds variation for 3 hours is added to the variation for 15 minutes to obtain the total variation for the time interval.)

In this case the approximation agrees with the answer as calculated in the previous example. However, the approximation may vary from the calculated variation by 1 to 3 seconds. For example, the approximation is close but not exact for a time interval of 9 hours and 15 minutes. The approximation gives a time variation of 1 minute and 32 seconds; the calculated variation is 1 minute and 31 seconds as shown below.

Approximation:  $9 \times 10 = 90$  sec.  
 $1\frac{1}{2} = 2\frac{1}{2}$  sec. = 2 sec.  
 90 sec. + 2 sec. = 92 sec. = 1 min. and 32 sec.  
 (00:01:32)

Calculation: The time period is written as  $9\frac{15}{60}$  hours or 9.25 hr.  
 $9.25$  hr.  $\times$  9.86 sec. per hr. = 91.21 sec. = 91 sec.  
 91 sec. = 1 min. and 31 sec. (00:01:31)

The approximation is not used in work that demands precision.

### Longitude-Time conversions

Astrological calculations require the conversion of longitude units to time units. The following longitude-time equivalents are used in these conversions:

- 15 degrees of arc = 1 hour of time
- 1 degree of arc = 4 minutes of time
- 1 minute of arc = 4 seconds of time

To convert longitude to time, degrees and minutes of arc are multiplied separately by 4; degrees convert to minutes of time; minutes of longitude convert to seconds of time. The following example shows how to calculate the equivalent time for  $34^\circ$  E  $6'$  (longitude).

$34^\circ \times 4 = 136$  min. = 2 hr. and 16 min.  
 $6' \times 4 = 24$  sec.  
 2 hr. and 16 min. + 24 sec. = 2:16:24

The result is called longitude time. The conversion gives the clock time equivalent of longitude. A sidereal

time variation is calculated in the same manner as for clock time. The sidereal time variation for the time equivalent of  $34^\circ$  E  $6'$  is calculated as follows:

$34^\circ 6' = 2:16:24 = 2.27$  hr.  
 (round off seconds to the nearest minute)  
 $2.27$  hr.  $\times$  9.86 sec. per hr. = 22.38 sec. = 22 sec.

In this case the 10 sec. per hr. approximation is valid. ( $10 \times 2 = 20$  sec.;  $1\frac{1}{2} = 2$  sec.;  $20$  sec. +  $2$  sec. =  $22$  sec.) A similar approximation can be applied to the degrees of longitude, omitting the longitude-time conversion. The longitude time variation is based on the 10 sec. per hr. approximation and is derived as follows:

10 sec. per hr. = 10 sec. per  $15^\circ$  ( $15^\circ = 1$  hour)  
 $10_{15} = 2\frac{2}{3}$  (reduce the fraction)

To estimate the longitude time variation directly, the minutes of longitude are ignored; the degrees are multiplied by  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; the answer is reduced to a whole number, and the fractional remainder is dropped. The result is seconds of time. The longitude time variation for  $34^\circ$  E  $6'$  is approximated as follows:

$34 \times \frac{2}{3} = 22\frac{2}{3} = 22$  sec.  
 (degrees of longitude multiplied by  $\frac{2}{3}$ )

The longitude time variation approximation may vary from the calculated variation by 1 or 2 seconds. The following example shows a variation of 1 second at  $75^\circ$ .

Approximation:  $75 \times \frac{2}{3} = 150, = 50$  sec.

Calculation:  $75^\circ = 5$  hr.  
 $5$  hr.  $\times$  9.86 sec. per hr. = 49.3 sec. = 49 sec.

### Conversion of Standard Time to Local Mean Time

Some astrological calculations require that a birthtime recorded in standard time be converted to Local Mean Time (LMT). Local Mean Time is based on the position of the Sun relative to a particular locality. It is 12:00 p.m. (noon) Local Mean Time in a given locality when the Sun reaches its highest point in the sky relative to that place. Clocks based on standard time read noon throughout the entire time zone when the Sun reaches its high point overhead at the Standard Time

Meridian. Because the Sun appears to move from east to west across the sky, the Sun has passed the noon point in places east of the Standard Time Meridian before standard time clocks there read noon; the Sun has not reached the noon point in places west of the Standard Time Meridian when standard time clocks in those places read noon.

When standard time clocks read noon in localities east of the Standard Time Meridian, it is actually later according to Local Mean Time because the Sun has already passed the noon point in those places. When standard time clocks read noon in places west of the Standard Time Meridian, it is actually earlier by Local Mean Time because the Sun has not yet reached the noon point overhead. The time difference between Local Mean Time and standard time depends upon the distance in longitude between the birth locality of interest and the Standard Time Meridian in use in that locality.

To convert a standard birthtime to Local Mean Time, the longitude differential (distance in arc between the longitude of the birthplace and the longitude of the Standard Time Meridian in use at the birthplace) is changed to time units. The longitude differential expressed in units of time is added to the standard time for birth localities that lie east of the Standard Time Meridian; the differential is subtracted from standard time if the birthplace is situated west of the Standard Time Meridian.

In the following example a 6:30 P.M. EST birthtime is converted to Local Mean Time. The Standard Time Meridian for the Eastern Standard Time zone (EST) is 75° W. The birthplace is located at 73° W 35'.

Step 1. Calculate the longitude differential.

$$\begin{array}{r} 75^{\circ} \text{W} 00' \\ - 73^{\circ} \text{W} 35' \\ \hline \end{array} = \begin{array}{r} 74^{\circ} 60' \text{ (longitude of the STM)} \\ - 73^{\circ} 35' \text{ (longitude of the} \\ \text{birthplace)} \\ \hline 1^{\circ} 25' \text{ (longitude differential)} \end{array}$$

Step 2. Convert the longitude differential into time units.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1^{\circ} \times 4 = 4 \text{ min.} = 00:04:00 \\ 25' \times 4 = 100 \text{ sec.} = 1 \text{ min. and } 40 \text{ sec.} = 00:01:40 \\ \hline 00:04:00 \\ + 00:01:40 \\ \hline 00:05:40 \text{ (longitude time differential)} \end{array}$$

Step 3. Add or subtract the longitude time differential found in Step 2 from the standard time of birth according to whether the birthplace lies east or west of the Standard Time Meridian.

$$\begin{array}{r} 6:30:00 \text{ P.M. EST (standard time of birth)} \\ + 00:05:40 \text{ (longitude time differential)} \\ \hline 6:35:40 \text{ P.M. LMT (Local Mean Time at birth)} \end{array}$$

It is irrelevant to Step 3 whether the birthplace is located east or west of Greenwich; the location of the birthplace in reference to the Standard Time Meridian is the pertinent factor.

The birthplace in the preceding example lies west of Greenwich (west longitude), but it is located east of the Standard Time Meridian; therefore, the longitude time differential was added to standard clock time in order to obtain the corresponding Local Mean Time.

### *Conversion of Birthtime to Local Sidereal Time*

Before calculations are begun, the name of the subject, the date of birth, the place of birth, the time of birth and the kind of clocktime in effect on the birthdate are recorded. A birthtime given in Daylight Savings Time or War Time is changed to standard time. The longitude and latitude of the birthplace are noted. Printed calculation sheets and horoscope blanks provide space for such data.

There are several methods of calculating the Local Sidereal Time. The astrologer uses the method with which he or she feels at ease. The two most common methods are presented here. The student should become familiar with both methods as a check against errors until the calculations are mastered.

#### **Method I: The LMT Method of Calculation**

Until standard time was adopted on a world-wide basis, many localities observed Local Mean Time. The LMT method for calculating the Local Sidereal Time of birth was developed before the adoption of standard time. In this method, the sidereal time listed in the ephemeris is adjusted to allow for the time interval between the Local Mean Time of birth and the ephemeris reference time. Two corrections are applied to this adjusted sidereal time to account for the 9.86 seconds per hour variation between sidereal time and clock time: one correction is based on the time interval, the other is

based on the longitude of the birthplace. An additional adjustment of plus 12 hours is made for births that occur in south latitude.

**EXAMPLE 1**

Birth Data: Name John Doe  
 Birthdate 11/18/50  
 Birthtime 11:00 A.M. LMT  
 Longitude 28° E 02' (longitude of birthplace)  
 Latitude 26° S 12' (latitude of birthplace)

**Procedure Using a Noon Ephemeris**

1. ST at noon on the birthdate ..... 15:47:51  
 [Enter the sidereal time listed in a noon ephemeris for November 18, 1950. Round off tenths of a second to the nearest second. Refer to Figure 16.]
2. LMT interval ..... 1:00:00  
 [Enter the time difference between the birthtime and noon. John's birthtime is 11:00 A.M. : The LMT interval is 1 hour.]
3. LMT interval correction .. 00:00:10  
 [Approximation: Allow 10 sec. per hr. for each hour of LMT interval time entered on line 2.  
 $(1 \times 10 = 10 \text{ sec.})$   
 Calculation: Multiply the LMT interval time in hours by 9.86 sec. per hr.  
 $(1 \times 9.86 = 9.86 \text{ sec.} = 10 \text{ sec. to the nearest sec.)]$
4. Enter the sum of lines 2 and 3 ..... 1:00:10  
 [Add lines 2 and 3. The sum includes the adjustment for the difference between the Local Mean Time of birth and the ephemeris reference time (noon) and the correction for the sidereal time variation of the LMT interval.]
5. Add lines 1 and 4 if the birthtime is

P.M. (after noon); subtract line 4 from line 1 if the birthtime is A.M. (before noon) ..... 14:47:41  
 [Line 4 was subtracted from line 1 because John's birthtime is A.M.]

6. Longitude time correction ..... 00:00:18  
 [Approximation: Multiply the degrees of birthplace longitude by  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; drop the fractional remainder; the result is seconds of time.  
 $(28 \times \frac{2}{3} = 18\frac{2}{3} = 18 \text{ sec.})$   
 Calculation: Convert the birth longitude to units of time;  
 $(28^\circ 02' \times 4 = 1:52:08)$   
 multiply longitude time in hours by 9.86 to correct for the sidereal time variance. The result is seconds of time.  
 $(1:52:08 = 1.87 \text{ hours})$   
 $1.87 \times 9.86 = 18.44 \text{ sec.} = 18 \text{ sec. to the nearest second)]$
7. Add lines 5 and 6 if the longitude of the birth place is west of Greenwich; subtract line 6 from line 5 if the longitude is east. The result is the Local Sidereal Time for a north latitude birth ..... 14:47:23  
 [Line 6 was subtracted from line 5 because John's birthplace is in east longitude.]
8. Add 12 hours to line 7 if the birthplace is in south latitude ..... 2:47:23  
 [12 hours was added to line 7 because John's birthplace is in south latitude.  
 $(14:47:23 + 12:00:00 = 26:47:23)$   
 24 hours was subtracted to reduce the final answer to lowest units:  
 $26:47:23 - 24:00:00 = 2:47:23.)$   
 This is the sidereal time to use as a reference in the Table of Houses to locate the house cusps for John's horoscope.]

The signs for the house cusps listed in the Table of Houses for north latitude under the sidereal time of interest are reversed for a birth that occurs in south

latitude. For example, Figure 13 shows the Ascendant under 19:56:12 at 35° latitude to be 12° 51' Taurus. If the birth occurred in south latitude at that sidereal time (as calculated in line 8), the correct Ascendant would be 12° 51' Scorpio, not Taurus. The correct MC for the same birth is 27° Cancer.

The LMT method of calculating the Local Sidereal Time at birth may be used for births that are recorded in standard time by first converting standard time to Local Mean Time.

**EXAMPLE 2**

Birth Data: Name Susan Doe  
 Birthdate 11/29/50  
 Birthtime 4:05 P.M. EST (include time zone)  
 Longitude 80° W 24'  
 Latitude 41° N 24'

**Conversion of Birthtime to Local Mean Time**

The Standard Time Meridian is 75° W.

Step 1. Calculate the longitude differential.

80° W 24' (longitude of the birthplace)  
 - 75° W 00' (longitude of the STM)  
 5° 24' (longitude differential)

Step 2. Convert the longitude differential into time units.

5° × 4 = 20 min. = 00:20:00  
 24' × 4 = 96 sec. = 1 min. and 36 sec. = 00:01:36  
 00:20:00  
 + 00:01:36  
 00:21:36 (longitude time differential)

Step 3. Subtract the longitude time differential from the standard birthtime (the birthplace lies west of the Standard Time Meridian). The result is the Local Mean Time at birth.

4:05:00 P.M. EST      3:64:60  
 - 00:21:36              = - 00:21:36  
    3:43:24 P.M. LMT

The procedure to convert the Local Mean Time of birth to Local Sidereal Time is the same as that followed in Example 1.

**Procedure Using a Noon Ephemeris**

1. ST at noon on the birthdate . . . . . 16:31:13  
 [Consult Figure 16 to find the sidereal time at noon on November 29, 1950.]
2. LMT interval . . . . . 3:43:24  
 [Calculate the time interval between the LMT at birth and noon.]
3. LMT interval correction . . . 00:00:37  
 [Follow the same procedure as in Example 1, line 3, using 3:43:24 as the interval time.]
4. Enter the sum of lines 2 and 3 . . . . . 3:44:01
5. Add lines 1 and 4 if the LMT birthtime is P.M.; subtract line 4 from line 1 if the LMT birthtime is A.M. . . . . 20:15:14  
 [Lines 1 and 4 were added because Susan's LMT birthtime is P.M.]
6. Longitude time correction . . . . . 00:00:53  
 [Follow the same procedure as in Example 1, line 6, using 80° 24' as the birth longitude.]
7. Add lines 5 and 6 if the longitude of the birthplace is west of Greenwich; subtract line 6 from line 5 if the longitude is east. The result is the Local Sidereal Time for a north latitude birth . . . . . 20:16:07  
 [Lines 5 and 6 were added because Susan's birthplace is in west longitude.]

The result in line 7 is the reference sidereal time to use in the Table of Houses to locate the house cusps for Susan's horoscope. Line 8 of Example 1 is omitted here because Susan's birthplace is in north latitude.

The same general procedure is followed to calculate the Local Sidereal Time of birth when using a zero hour (midnight) ephemeris as when using a noon ephemeris. However, the sidereal time and other data listed in a zero hour ephemeris is correct at 12:00 A.M. GMT, which marks the beginning of the day (12:00 A.M. = 00:00:00); therefore, 12:00 A.M. is the

reference time used in calculations. The birthtime interval is calculated from 12:00 A.M. rather than from 12:00 P.M. (noon) as is done when using a noon ephemeris. The sum of the birthtime interval and the interval correction is added to the ephemeris sidereal time regardless of whether the birthtime is A.M. or P.M. because 00:00:00 begins the day and all subsequent births on that day occur at a time later than the ephemeris reference time.

**EXAMPLE 3**

Birth Data: Same as for Example 2.

**Procedure Using a Zero Hour Ephemeris**

1. ST at 00:00:00 on the birthdate . . . . . 4:29:15  
[Consult a zero hour ephemeris to find the sidereal time listed for November 29, 1950.]
2. LMT interval . . . . . 15:43:24  
[Susan's LMT birthtime is 3:43:54 P.M. = 15:43:24 in the circle of 24 hours.]
3. LMT interval correction . . . . . 00:02:35  
[The approximation yields 2 min. and 37 sec; the calculation yields 2 min. and 35 sec.]
4. Enter the sum of lines 2 and 3 . . . . . 15:45:59
5. Add lines 1 and 4 . . . . . 20:15:14  
[4:29:15 + 15:45:59 = 19:74:74 = 20:15:14.]
6. Longitude time correction . . . . . 00:00:53  
[Same as Example 2, line 6.]
7. Add lines 5 and 6 if the longitude of the birthplace is west of Greenwich; subtract line 6 from line 5 if the longitude is east. The result is the Local Sidereal Time for a north latitude birth . . . . . 20:16:07  
[Lines 5 and 6 were added as in Example 2, line 7.]

The result in line 7 agrees, as it should, with the final result calculated in Example 2 using a noon ephemeris.

(ST data listed in various ephemerides may differ by 1 second.) Had the approximation been used in line 3, the sidereal times would have differed by 2 seconds.

**Method II: The GMT Method of Calculation**

The GMT method of calculating the Local Sidereal Time has grown in popularity with the increased use of standard time. In this method the birthtime is first converted to Greenwich Mean Time. This step serves a dual purpose; corrections that are applied to planetary positions listed in the ephemeris also require the calculation of the Greenwich Mean Time of birth. The sidereal time listed in the ephemeris on the GMT birthdate is adjusted according to the GMT birthtime. The GMT birthdate is the date on which the GMT birthtime occurs. It is usually the same day as the recorded birthdate, but it may be the day preceding or following the given date. One correction applied to the GMT interval includes the longitude time correction. The sidereal time adjustment and subsequent correction give the sidereal time at Greenwich at the time of birth; the Greenwich sidereal time is then adapted to the longitude of the birthplace to determine the Local Sidereal Time at the place of birth.

**EXAMPLE 4**

Birth Data: Name	<u>Natasha Doe</u>	
Birthdate	<u>11/5/50</u>	
Birthtime	<u>2:15 P.M.</u>	(standard time)
Longitude	<u>72° E 14'</u>	
Latitude	<u>41° N 05'</u>	

**Conversion of Standard Time to Greenwich Mean Time**

Natasha's birthplace is located in east longitude (east of Greenwich) and falls in the -5 time zone. Therefore, 5 hours are subtracted from her birthtime, which is recorded in standard time to determine the Greenwich Mean Time of birth.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2:15 \text{ P.M. (standard time)} \\
 - 5:00 \text{ (zone standard correction)} \\
 \hline
 9:15 \text{ A.M. GMT}
 \end{array}$$

**Procedure Using a Noon Ephemeris**

1. ST at noon on the GMT birthdate . . . . . 14:56:36  
[Consult Figure 16.]

2. GMT interval ..... 2:45:00  
 [Enter the time difference between noon and the GMT birthtime calculated. Do not use the time interval between noon and the standard birthtime (12:00 P.M. - 9:15 A.M. = 2:45)]
3. GMT interval correction .. 00:00:27  
 [Determine the sidereal time variation for the GMT interval on line 2.]
4. Enter the sum of lines 2 and 3 ..... 2:45:27
5. Add lines 1 and 4 if the GMT is P.M.; subtract line 4 from line 1 if the GMT is A.M. .... 12:11:09  
 [This operation is based on the Greenwich Mean Time of birth, not the recorded birthtime. In this example, the GMT birthtime is A.M. although the standard birthtime is P.M.; therefore, line 4 was subtracted from line 1. The result is the sidereal time of birth at Greenwich.]
6. Longitude time ..... 4:48:56  
 [Multiply the birth longitude by 4 to convert to time units. The longitude time of the birthplace is referred to as the Equivalent Greenwich Mean Time (EGMT).]
7. Add lines 5 and 6 if the longitude of the birthplace is east of Greenwich; subtract line 6 from line 5 if the longitude is west. The result is the Local Sidereal Time for a north latitude birth ..... 17:00:05  
 [This step adapts the ST at Greenwich for the time of birth to the location of birth. Lines 5 and 6 were added because Natasha's birthplace is in east longitude. Do not confuse this step with line 7 of the LMT method, in which the

longitude time correction requires the opposite mathematical operation according to direction of birth longitude.]

8. Add 12 hours to line 7 if the birthplace is in south latitude ..... \_\_\_\_\_  
 [Line 8 is omitted here since Natasha's birthplace is in north latitude.]

The GMT method can be used for births recorded in Local Mean Time. Local Mean Time is converted to Greenwich Mean Time in the same manner as standard time, but a longitude time adjustment is applied instead of a zone standard correction. For births that occur in west longitude, the longitude time (EGMT) is added to the Local Mean Time to convert to Greenwich Mean Time; longitude time is subtracted from the Local Mean Time of birth if the birthplace is in east longitude.

**EXAMPLE 5**

Birth Data: Same as for Example 1.

**Conversion of Local Mean Time to Greenwich Mean Time**

John's birthplace is at 28° E 02'. The longitude time (1:52:08) is subtracted from his birthtime to convert to Greenwich Mean Time because his birthplace is in east longitude.

11:00:00 A.M. LMT	(John's birthtime)
- 1:52:08	(longitude time =
9:07:52 A.M. GMT	EGMT = 28°2' × 4)

**Procedure Using a Noon Ephemeris**

1. ST at noon on the GMT birthdate .. 15:47:51  
 [Consult Figure 16.]
2. GMT interval ..... 2:52:08  
 [Enter the time difference between noon and the GMT birthtime calculated.]
3. GMT interval correction .. 00:00:28  
 [2:52:08 = 2.87 hours

2.87 hr. × 9.86 sec. per  
hr. = 28 sec.]

4. Enter the sum of lines 2 and 3 ..... 2:52:36
5. Add lines 1 and 4 if the GMT is P.M.; subtract line 4 from line 1 if the GMT is A.M. .... 12:55:15  
[Line 4 is subtracted from line 1 because John's GMT birthtime is A.M.]
6. Longitude time ..... 1:52:08  
[Enter the time equivalent of the longitude of John's birthplace (EGMT).]
7. Add lines 5 and 6 if the longitude of the birthplace is east of Greenwich; subtract line 6 from line 5 if the longitude is west ..... 14:47:23  
[Lines 5 and 6 were added because John's birthplace is in east longitude.]
8. Add 12 hours to line 7 if the birthplace is in south latitude ..... 2:47:23  
[John's birthplace is in south latitude: 14:47:23 + 12:00:00 = 26:47:23; subtract 24 hours to reduce to lowest units.]

The final result agrees with that calculated in Example 1 using the LMT method.

**EXAMPLE 6**

Birth Data: Name Bobby Doe  
 Birthdate 4/30/75  
 Birthtime 6:06 P.M. EST (include time zone)  
 Longitude 81° W 52'  
 Latitude 41° N 28'

**Conversion of Standard Time to Greenwich Mean Time**

The zone number for the Eastern Standard Time zone in which Bobby's birthplace is located is +5.

6:06 P.M. EST (standard birthtime)  
 + 5:00 (zone standard correction)  
11:06 P.M. GMT

**Procedure Using a Zero Hour Ephemeris**

1. ST at 00:00:00 on the GMT birthdate ..... 14:29:16  
[Consult a zero hour ephemeris to find the sidereal time listed for April 30, 1975.]
2. GMT interval ..... 23:06:00  
[Bobby's GMT birthtime is 11:06 P.M., which is 23 hours and 6 minutes after the beginning of the day.]
3. GMT interval correction .. 00:03:48  
[Calculate the sidereal time variation for the GMT interval on line 2. The approximation is invalid in this example; it yields 51 seconds instead of 48 as calculated.]
4. Enter the sum of lines 2 and 3 ..... 23:09:48
5. Add lines 1 and 4 ..... 37:38:64  
[The ephemeris reference time is 00:00:00; therefore, the sum of the interval and interval correction are added to the ephemeris ST for A.M. and P.M. births.]
6. Longitude time ..... 5:27:28  
[Enter the time equivalent of the longitude of Bobby's birthplace.]
7. Add lines 5 and 6 if the longitude of the birthplace is east of Greenwich; subtract line 6 from line 5 if the longitude is west ..... 8:11:36  
[Bobby's birthplace is in west longitude; line 6 is subtracted from line 5:  
 37:38:64 - 5:27:28 = 32:11:36;  
 32:11:36 - 24:00:00 = 8:11:36  
 (subtract 24 hours to reduce to lowest units).]

Since Bobby's birthplace is in north latitude, line 7 completes the calculations to determine the Local Sidereal Time at birth.

Once the Local Sidereal Time for the time and place of the birth of interest is calculated, the house cusps that correspond to that sidereal time and the latitude of the birthplace are determined.

### *Correcting the House Cusps for a Placidean Horoscope*

The position of the house cusps for a horoscope may be taken directly from the Table of Houses if the exact Local Sidereal Time and latitude of the birthplace are listed. If the Local Sidereal Time falls between two consecutive sidereal time listings, the positions of the house cusps are interpolated according to the proportional sidereal time difference. Except for the MC (Midheaven), which forms the cusp of the tenth house in the Placidean system of horoscope erection, a similar interpolation is made based on latitude for births that do not occur at an exact degree of latitude listed in the Table of Houses.

#### **Time Correction for House Cusps**

The position of a house cusp moves in proportion to the corresponding time change. The ratio of the sidereal time increment to the sidereal time interval is equal to the ratio of the house cusp increment to the house cusp interval at a specified degree of latitude. The sidereal time increment (ST increment) is the time difference between the calculated Local Sidereal Time (LST) at birth and the closest earlier sidereal time listed in the Table of Houses; the sidereal time interval (ST interval) is the time difference between the closest earlier sidereal time and the following (later) consecutive sidereal time listed (the calculated LST will fall between these two listings); the house cusp increment is the distance in arc a cusp moves during the time span of the ST increment; the house cusp interval is the distance a cusp moves during the ST interval.

A fractional equation can be formed as follows:

$$\frac{\text{ST increment}}{\text{ST interval}} = \frac{\text{Cusp increment}}{\text{Cusp interval}}$$

The equation can be transposed and written in the following manner:

$$\frac{\text{ST increment}}{\text{ST interval}} \times \text{Cusp interval} = \text{Cusp increment}$$

This equation describes the mathematical operations to be performed in order to calculate the house cusp increment. They are: Divide the ST increment by the ST interval and multiply the result by the cusp interval. The final result is the correction (cusp increment) to be applied to the house cusp position listed at the closest earlier sidereal time to account for the motion of the cusp during the time span between the closest earlier sidereal time listed and the calculated Local Sidereal Time at birth.

The data needed to correct a house cusp for time include:

- (a) the Local Sidereal Time at birth
- (b) the closest earlier sidereal time listed
- (c) the closest later sidereal time listed
- (d) the position of the house cusp of interest at the closest earlier sidereal time listed for the degree of birth latitude
- (e) the position of the house cusp of interest at the closest later sidereal time listed for the degree of birth latitude.

#### **To Correct the MC**

The Local Sidereal Time calculated for Susan's birth in Example 2 is 20:16:07. In Chapter 11, Figure 13 shows that this Local Sidereal Time falls between the two listings 20:12:54 and 20:17:03. To correct the MC (Midheaven, cusp of the tenth house in the Placidean system) for Susan's horoscope, proceed as follows:

1. List the required data. Refer to Figure 13 as needed.
  - (a) 20:16:07 (Local Sidereal Time at birth)
  - (b) 20:12:54 (closest earlier sidereal time listed)
  - (c) 20:17:03 (closest later sidereal time listed)
  - (d) 1° Aquarius (position of the MC at the earlier listed sidereal time, 20:12:54)
  - (e) 2° Aquarius (position of the MC at 20:17:03, the closest later sidereal time listed)
2. Calculate the ST increment (the time difference between the closest earlier sidereal time listed and the Local Sidereal Time at Susan's birth).

$$\begin{array}{r} 20:16:07 \text{ (LST)} \\ - 20:12:54 \text{ (earlier ST)} \\ \hline 00:03:13 \text{ (ST} \\ \text{increment)} \end{array}$$



3. Calculate the ST interval (the time difference between the closest earlier sidereal time listed and the closest later sidereal time listed in reference to the Local Sidereal Time of birth).

$$\begin{array}{r} 20:17:03 \text{ (later ST)} \\ - 20:12:54 \text{ (earlier ST)} \\ \hline 00:04:09 \text{ (ST interval)} \end{array}$$

4. Calculate the cusp interval (the distance the MC travels between the position listed at 20:12:54 and the position listed at 20:17:03).

$$\begin{array}{r} 2^\circ \text{ Aquarius (position of MC at 20:17:03)} \\ - 1^\circ \text{ Aquarius (position of MC at 20:12:54)} \\ \hline 1^\circ \text{ (MC interval = the distance the MC travels during the ST interval)} \end{array}$$

The MC always moves 1° during the time interval between two consecutive sidereal time listings in the Dalton Table of Houses. This is *not* true of any other house cusp.

5. Write the problem in mathematical form.

$$\frac{\text{ST increment}}{\text{ST interval}} \times \text{Cusp interval} = \frac{00:03:13}{00:04:09} \times 1^\circ$$

The fractional part of the problem ( $\frac{00:03:13}{00:04:09}$ ) is the same for each house cusp; only the cusp interval changes. This fraction is called the ST factor; it need be calculated just once for a particular horoscope. The cusp interval for each cusp is then multiplied by the same ST factor to determine the cusp increment for each house cusp.

6. Solve the problem.

To solve the problem with a calculator that is programmed to handle time units, enter 0 hr. 3 min. 13 sec. divided by 0 hr. 4 min. 9 sec. multiplied by 60 (1° = 60' of arc). The result is in minutes of arc. The display should read 46.5. Therefore, 47' = the MC increment to the nearest minute of arc.

To carry out long division and multiplication, the numerator and denominator of the ST factor are reduced to seconds of time to give the lowest like time units in both parts of the fraction. The cusp interval is converted to minutes of arc; the result is in minutes of arc.

(a)  $00:03:13 = 193 \text{ sec.}; 00:04:09 = 249 \text{ sec.}; 1^\circ = 60'$

- (b) The problem is rewritten as follows:

$$\begin{array}{l} \frac{193 \text{ sec.}}{249 \text{ sec.}} \times 60' = 0.775 \times 60' = 46.5' = 47' \\ = \text{MC increment.} \end{array}$$

The ST factor is  $193/249 = 0.775$ .

7. Correct the MC.

The MC moved forward in the zodiac during the time interval from 20:12:54 to 20:17:03; therefore, the correction (MC increment) is added to the position of the MC at the earlier listed sidereal time.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1^\circ 00' \text{ Aquarius (position of MC at earlier ST)} \\ + 47' \text{ Aquarius (MC increment)} \\ \hline 1^\circ 47' \text{ Aquarius (corrected MC)} \end{array}$$

The MC always moves forward in the zodiac as time increases, so the correction in Step 7 is always added to the earlier position of the MC. If a house cusp moves backward in the zodiac as time increases, the time correction must be subtracted from the earlier position.

The cusp of the tenth house for Susan's horoscope is 1°47' Aquarius; the cusp of the fourth house (the IC) is at the opposite point: 1°47' Leo.

### The Use of Logarithms

The calculation in Step 6 is relatively simple with the use of a calculator; without one the division and multiplication can be complicated. An alternate mathematical method, which involves subtraction and addition instead of division and multiplication, is frequently employed. In this method proportional logarithms (logs) replace the original numerical units; there is no need to convert time or longitude to like units or smaller units. Logs (numbers), which correspond to the time and/or longitude (or latitude) in a particular problem, are found in a proportional logarithm table (log table). If the original problem requires division, the log that represents the divisor is subtracted from the log that replaces the dividend; if the problem requires multiplication, the corresponding logs are added.

In Figure 17 the columns are headed "HOURS or DEGREES" across the top of the log table; the rows



are headed "Min" (minutes). Because the same proportion (1:60) exists between hours and minutes of time as exists between degrees and minutes of arc, the columns can be used to represent either hours of time or degrees of arc; the rows can be used for minutes of time or minutes of arc.

The same proportion (1:60) exists between minutes and seconds of time; therefore, the table can be adapted to the problem in Step 5 by using the hours columns for minutes and the minutes rows for seconds.

To use logs, the problem in Step 5 is rewritten in log form as follows:

$$\begin{array}{l}
 \text{(a) } \text{Log of ST increment} \\
 \quad \underline{- \text{Log of ST interval}} \\
 \quad \text{Log of ST factor} \\
 \\
 \text{(b) } \text{Log of ST factor} \\
 \quad \underline{+ \text{Log of cusp interval}} \\
 \quad \text{Log of cusp increment}
 \end{array}$$

The logs in (a) are subtracted because the original problem called for division of the ST increment (dividend) by the ST interval (divisor). The logs in (b) are added because the ST factor is multiplied by the cusp increment in the original problem. In problems of this sort, the log of the ST factor is a constant that is used to correct each house cusp of the horoscope for time. The log of the cusp interval for each house cusp is added to the same constant, the log of the ST factor, to determine the time correction for that cusp.

To find the log that corresponds to the ST increment for Susan's horoscope (00:03:13), go across row "13" (now representing seconds) to column "3" (adapted to minutes for this problem) in Figure 17. The number (log) entered is 0.8728. (Note that if no decimal appears in the log number, it is assumed that the number listed is preceded by "0." Other tables may vary in format.) To find the log for the ST interval (00:04:09), go across row "9" to column "4"; the appropriate log is 0.7622. Notice that the larger the numerical value of the time or longitude units, the smaller the corresponding log. The log for the cusp interval, in this case the MC interval (1°), is found in row "0," column "1"; it is 1.3802. Substituting these logs in (a) and (b), the problem is solved as follows:

1. Perform the log operations.

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \text{(a) } 0.8728 & \text{(log of ST increment)} \\
 \quad \underline{- 0.7622} & \text{(log of ST interval)} \\
 \quad 0.1106 & \text{(log of ST factor)} \\
 \\
 \text{(b) } 0.1106 & \text{(log of ST factor)} \\
 \quad \underline{+ 1.3802} & \text{(log of cusp interval)} \\
 \quad 1.4908 & \text{(log of cusp increment)}
 \end{array}$$

2. Find the cusp increment in longitude units.

To find the cusp increment in longitude units, look in the log table (Figure 17) for 1.4908, the log of the cusp increment. The logs are listed in descending order. The calculated log is not listed, so find the log that is closest in numerical value. It is 1.4863; it is entered in "0" column (degrees), row "47" (minutes of arc). The cusp increment is the anti-log of 1.4863, which is 0°47' or just 47', the same result as derived previously.

### To Correct the Ascendant for Time

The same procedure is followed to correct the Ascendant of the horoscope for time as is used to correct the MC. Since the time data remains the same, and therefore, the ST factor is constant, only three steps are required to correct the Ascendant of Susan's horoscope for time: (1) calculate the cusp interval for the Ascendant at the degrees of Susan's birth latitude (disregard minutes of latitude for the present); (2) multiply the cusp interval by the ST factor to determine the cusp increment (correction) for the Ascendant; (3) add or subtract the cusp increment to or from the position of the Ascendant at the earlier sidereal time, depending upon the motion of the Ascendant during the ST interval.

1. Calculate the cusp interval at the degree of birth latitude. (Susan's birth latitude is 41° N 24'.)

In Chapter 11, Figure 13, under 20:12:54 (earlier ST) in the row headed "41" (41° latitude), the position of the Ascendant is listed as 22°26' Taurus; in the same row under

20:17:03 (later ST) the Ascendant is at 23° 47' Taurus. Subtract to find the cusp interval.

$$\begin{array}{r} 23^{\circ} 47' \text{ Taurus (Ascendant at the later ST} \\ \text{for } 41^{\circ}) \\ - 22^{\circ} 26' \text{ Taurus (Ascendant at the earlier ST} \\ \text{for } 41^{\circ}) \\ \hline 1^{\circ} 21' \text{ (cusp interval for the Ascendant at } 41^{\circ}) \end{array}$$

2. Multiply the cusp interval by the ST factor, 0.775. (Refer to Step 6 of the MC correction for the ST factor.)

$$1^{\circ} 21' \times 0.775 = 81' \times 0.775 = 62.7' = 63' = 1^{\circ} 03' \\ 1^{\circ} 03' = \text{cusp increment} = \text{Ascendant correction for time}$$

3. Correct the Ascendant. Add the cusp increment to the Ascendant position at the earlier ST because the Ascendant moved forward in the zodiac during the ST interval.

$$\begin{array}{r} 22^{\circ} 26' \text{ Taurus (Ascendant at earlier ST for } 41^{\circ}) \\ + 1^{\circ} 03' \text{ (cusp increment for} \\ \text{the Ascendant at } 41^{\circ}) \\ \hline 23^{\circ} 29' \text{ Taurus (corrected Ascendant at 20:16:07,} \\ \text{the LST of birth, for } 41^{\circ} \text{ latitude)} \end{array}$$

To calculate the time correction for the Ascendant by logs, add the log of the Ascendant interval to the log of the constant ST factor. Consult Figure 17 to find the log of 1° 21' (the Ascendant interval).

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.1106 \text{ (log of ST factor)} \\ + 1.2499 \text{ (log of Ascendant interval)} \\ \hline 1.3605 \text{ (log of Ascendant increment)} \end{array}$$

The log listed in the table closest in numerical value to 1.3605 is 1.3590, which is found in column "1," row "3." The desired anti-log is 1° 03', the correct Ascendant increment.

### To Correct the Intermediate House Cusps for Time

The intermediate house cusps are corrected for time in the same manner as the Ascendant. Always note whether a house cusp moves forward or backward in the zodiac as the sidereal time increases from the earlier reference ST to the later ST. The cusp correction is subtracted from the earlier position if the cusp moves backward (decreases).

## Latitude Correction for House Cusps

All house cusps except the MC must be corrected for latitude unless the exact latitude of the birthplace is listed in the Table of Houses. In order to calculate the correction for latitude, the latitude increment is divided by the latitude interval, and the result is multiplied by the distance in arc that the time corrected cusp moves during the latitude interval. For most Tables of Houses the latitude interval is 1° (the difference between the degree of birth latitude and the next higher degree of latitude listed); the latitude increment equals the minutes of latitude of the birthplace.

The mathematical operations that yield the cusp correction for latitude are similar to those used to determine the time correction for house cusps. The problem is stated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Latitude increment}}{\text{Latitude interval}} \times \text{Cusp distance} \\ = \text{Cusp correction for latitude}$$

The data required to correct a house cusp for latitude include:

- the latitude of the birthplace
- the next higher degree of latitude listed in the Table of Houses
- the time corrected house cusp for the degree of latitude at the birthplace
- the time corrected house cusp for the next higher degree of latitude.

### Procedure

Example A: Correct the Ascendant of Susan's horoscope for latitude.

- List the required data.
  - 41° N 24' (latitude of Susan's birthplace)
  - 42° (the next higher degree of latitude listed)
  - 23° 29' Taurus (the time corrected Ascendant for 41°)
  - 24° 19' Taurus (the time corrected Ascendant for 42°)

The time corrected cusp in (d) is calculated as follows (refer to Chapter 11, Figure 13 for the positions of the Ascendant at the earlier and later sidereal times for 42° latitude):

- a.  $24^{\circ}37'$  Taurus (Ascendant at 20:17:03, later ST, for  $42^{\circ}$ )  
 $- 23^{\circ}15'$  Taurus (Ascendant at 20:12:54, earlier ST, for  $42^{\circ}$ )  


---

 $1^{\circ}22'$  (cusp interval for the Ascendant at  $42^{\circ}$ )
- b.  $1^{\circ}22' \times 0.775 = 63.5' = 64' = 1^{\circ}04' =$  cusp increment
- c.  $23^{\circ}15'$  Taurus (Ascendant at earlier ST for  $42^{\circ}$ )  
 $+ 1^{\circ}04'$  (cusp increment for the Ascendant at  $42^{\circ}$ )  


---

 $24^{\circ}19'$  Taurus (time corrected Ascendant at  $42^{\circ}$ )

2. Calculate the cusp distance.

$$\begin{array}{r} 24^{\circ}19' \text{ Taurus (position of the Ascendant at } 42^{\circ}\text{)} \\ - 23^{\circ}29' \text{ Taurus (position of the Ascendant at } 41^{\circ}\text{)} \\ \hline 50' \text{ (cusp distance = the distance the Ascendant moved during the latitude interval from } 41^{\circ} \text{ to } 42^{\circ}\text{)} \end{array}$$

3. Write the problem in mathematical form.

$$\frac{\text{Latitude increment}}{\text{Latitude interval}} \times \text{cusp distance} = \frac{24'}{1^{\circ}} \times 50'$$

4. Solve the problem.

$$\frac{24'}{1^{\circ}} \times 50' = \frac{24'}{60'} \times 50' = \frac{2}{3} \times 50' = 20' = \text{correction for latitude}$$

$1^{\circ}$  was converted to  $60'$  and the resultant fraction reduced to  $\frac{2}{3}$ . The fraction  $\frac{2}{3}$ , or in decimal form 0.4, is the constant latitude factor.

5. Correct the cusp.

The correction is added to the time corrected cusp at  $41^{\circ}$  latitude because the Ascendant moved forward in the zodiac from  $41^{\circ}$  to  $42^{\circ}$ .

$$\begin{array}{r} 23^{\circ}29' \text{ Taurus (time corrected Ascendant at } 41^{\circ}\text{)} \\ + 20' \text{ (correction for latitude)} \\ \hline 23^{\circ}49' \text{ Taurus (corrected Ascendant at } 20:16:07, \text{ the LST at birth, for } 41^{\circ}24' \text{ latitude, the latitude of the birthplace)} \end{array}$$

The final result in Step 5 is the correct Ascendant for Susan's horoscope. Therefore, the cusp of the first

house is  $23^{\circ}49'$  Taurus, and the cusp of the seventh house (the Descendant) is  $23^{\circ}49'$  Scorpio, the opposite point in the zodiac.

To determine the latitude correction using logs, subtract the log of the latitude interval from the log of the latitude increment to determine the log of the latitude factor (a constant); add the log of the latitude factor to the log of the cusp distance as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 1.7781 \text{ (log of } 24', \text{ the latitude increment)} \\ - 1.3802 \text{ (log of } 1^{\circ}, \text{ the latitude interval)} \\ \hline 0.3979 \text{ (log of the latitude factor)} \\ + 1.4594 \text{ (log of } 50', \text{ the cusp distance)} \\ \hline 1.8573 \text{ (log of the correction for latitude)} \end{array}$$

The log table in Figure 17 shows that the anti-log of 1.8573 is  $20'$ .

It is not always necessary to calculate the time correction for a given house cusp at the next higher degree of latitude in order to determine the cusp distance required in the correction for latitude. In many instances a house cusp moves an equal distance between the same two latitudes at both the earlier and later sidereal times closest to the Local Sidereal Time of birth; if so, the time corrected cusp must move that same distance during the same latitude interval because the Local Sidereal Time falls between the two listed times. The correct cusp distance can then be found by calculating the difference between the positions listed for the house cusp at the two latitudes of interest at either the closest earlier sidereal time or the later sidereal time.

Refer to Chapter 11, Figure 13. The positions of the intermediate house cusps are listed in degrees and tenths of a degree. Tenths of a degree are converted to minutes by multiplying the digit following the decimal point by 6. The number of degrees and the decimal point are not repeated for each row in the intermediate columns. If none appears in the row of interest, look up the column to the first degree and decimal point entry that precedes the row of interest.

For example, row 41 under 20:12:54 in the subcolumn headed "11" shows only a 4. The complete listing is 27.4 degrees or  $27^{\circ}24'$  Aquarius. The sign appears at the top of the subcolumn. In this same column for the eleventh house cusp, note that the cusp decreases  $\frac{3}{10}$  of a degree or  $12'$  from  $41^{\circ}$  latitude to  $42^{\circ}$  latitude; this same cusp also decreases  $12'$  during

the same latitude interval under 20:17:03. For any given sidereal time that falls between these two sidereal time listings, the cusp distance of the eleventh house cusp is 12' for the latitude interval from 41° to 42°.

**Example B:** Correct the eleventh house cusp for Susan's horoscope (1.) for time at 41° (the degree of latitude of the birthplace) and (2.) for latitude.

1. (a) Calculate the cusp interval for the cusp of the eleventh house at 41°.

$$\begin{array}{r} 28^{\circ} 30' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 at 20:17:03 for 41}^{\circ}\text{)} \\ - 27^{\circ} 24' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 at 20:12:54 for 41}^{\circ}\text{)} \\ \hline 1^{\circ} 06' \text{ (cusp interval for cusp 11 at 41}^{\circ}\text{)} \end{array}$$

- (b) Multiply the cusp interval by the ST Factor.

$$1^{\circ} 06' \times 0.775 = 51' = \text{cusp increment for cusp 11}$$

- (c) Correct the eleventh cusp listed at the earlier ST. Add the cusp increment to the earlier cusp position because the cusp moved forward in the zodiac as time increased.

$$\begin{array}{r} 27^{\circ} 24' \text{ Aquarius (position of cusp 11 at the} \\ \text{earlier ST)} \\ + \quad 51' \quad \text{(correction for cusp 11)} \\ \hline 28^{\circ} 15' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 corrected for time} \\ \text{at 41}^{\circ}\text{)} \end{array}$$

2. (a) Multiply the cusp distance by the constant latitude factor to find the cusp correction for latitude. The cusp distance (difference between the cusp position at 41° and 42° latitude) was found to be 12'. The constant latitude factor for this horoscope is 0.4 (see Example A, Step 4).

$$12' \times 0.4 = 4.8' = 5' = \text{cusp correction for latitude}$$

- (b) Correct cusp eleven for latitude. Cusp eleven moved backward in the zodiac during the latitude interval; i.e., the zodiacal longitude decreased between 41° and 42° latitude. Therefore, the correction for latitude is subtracted from the position of the time corrected cusp for 41°.

$$\begin{array}{r} 28^{\circ} 15' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 at 20:16:07 for 41}^{\circ}\text{)} \\ - \quad 05' \quad \text{(correction for latitude)} \\ \hline 28^{\circ} 10' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 at 20:16:07} \\ \text{for 41}^{\circ} 24'\text{)} \end{array}$$

The final answer in 2, Step (b), is the correct position of the eleventh house cusp for Susan's horoscope. It has been corrected to her Local Sidereal Time at birth, 20:16:07, and corrected to her birth latitude, 41° N 24'. The cusp of the fifth house is located at the opposite point in the zodiac, 28° 10' Leo. The remaining house cusps are calculated in the same manner.

To solve Example B by the log method, proceed as follows:

1. (a) Calculate the log of the cusp increment at 41°.

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.1106 \text{ (log of the constant ST factor)} \\ + 1.3388 \text{ (log of the cusp interval, 1}^{\circ} 06'\text{)} \\ \hline 1.4494 \text{ (log of the cusp increment for} \\ \text{cusp 11 at 41}^{\circ}\text{)} \end{array}$$

- (b) Find the anti-log of 1.4494 in the log table to determine the cusp increment for cusp eleven.

The log closest in numerical value to 1.4494 is 1.4508, which appears in column "0," row "51." The correct cusp increment is 51'.

- (c) Correct the position of cusp eleven listed at the earlier ST for 41°.

$$\begin{array}{r} 27^{\circ} 24' \text{ Aquarius (position of cusp 11 at the} \\ \text{earlier ST)} \\ + \quad 51' \quad \text{(time correction for cusp 11)} \\ \hline 28^{\circ} 15' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 corrected for time} \\ \text{at 41}^{\circ}\text{)} \end{array}$$

2. (a) Determine the log of the correction for latitude. The log of the constant latitude factor was found to be 0.3979 in the latitude correction for the Ascendant; the log table gives 2.0792 as the log for 12', the cusp distance calculated previously.

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.3979 \text{ (log of the constant latitude factor)} \\ + 2.0792 \text{ (log of the cusp distance)} \\ \hline 2.4771 \text{ (log of the correction for latitude)} \end{array}$$

- (b) Find the anti-log of 2.4771 in the log table to determine the correction for latitude for cusp eleven. The log closest in numerical value to 2.4771 is 2.4594 in column "0," row "5." The latitude correction is 5'.

- (c) Apply the latitude correction to the position of the time corrected cusp for 41°.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 28^{\circ} 15' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 at 20:16:07} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{for } 41^{\circ}) \\
 - \quad \quad \quad 05' \quad \quad \quad \text{(correction for latitude)} \\
 \hline
 28^{\circ} 10' \text{ Aquarius (cusp 11 correct to the birth} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{LST and the birth latitude)}
 \end{array}$$

### Summary of House Cusp Calculations

1. Calculate and record the Local Sidereal Time that corresponds to the clock time of birth at the place of birth. Look for the calculated Local Sidereal Time in a Table of Houses. If the Local Sidereal Time appears in the table, the MC listed for that time may be entered on the chart form without correction. The other house cusps that are listed for this time at the degree of latitude of birth need only be adjusted to the exact latitude of the birthplace according to the procedure outlined in Steps 13–19.

2. If the Local Sidereal Time of birth does not appear in the Table of Houses, it will fall between two consecutive sidereal time listings, one that is earlier in time than the Local Sidereal Time and one that is later. Record these two sidereal times. Label the earlier time “earlier ST”; label the later time “later ST.”

3. Calculate and record the time difference between the Local Sidereal Time of birth and the earlier ST. Label the result “ST increment.” If you prefer the log method of calculation, find the log of the ST increment in a log table; record and label the log of the ST increment.

4. Calculate and record the time difference between the earlier ST and the later ST. Label the result “ST interval.” If calculations are to be completed by the log method, find the log of the ST interval in a log table, record and label.

5. Complete this step with either the regular method of calculation or the log method.

*Regular method:* Divide the ST increment by the ST interval to determine the constant ST factor. Record and label the ST factor. It will be used to correct each house cusp for time.

*Log method:* Subtract the log of the ST interval from the log of the ST increment to determine the log of the ST factor. Record and label the result; it is a constant that is used to correct each house cusp for time.

Follow Steps 6–8 to correct the MC. Proceed with Steps 9–19 to correct all other house cusps for time and latitude.

6. Record the zodiacal position of the MC that is listed for the earlier ST.

7. Calculate the cusp increment (correction) for the MC by either the regular or log method.

*Regular method:* Multiply the ST factor calculated in Step 5 by  $1^{\circ}$  (or  $60'$ ) to determine the cusp increment.

*Log method:* Add the log of the ST factor calculated in Step 5 to the log of  $1^{\circ}$ . Find the anti-log of the result in a log table. This anti-log is the cusp increment.

8. Add the cusp increment calculated in Step 7 to the earlier position of the MC recorded in Step 6. The result is the correct MC for the horoscope.

9. Record the position of the house cusp of interest (not the MC) at the earlier ST and at the later ST listed for the degree of latitude of the birthplace. For the present, disregard minutes of latitude.

10. Calculate the difference between the position of the house cusp of interest at the earlier ST and its position at the later ST. This difference is the cusp interval; record and label the cusp interval. Note whether the house cusp increases (moves forward in the zodiac) or decreases (moves backward in the zodiac) as the sidereal time increases. If the log method is being followed, find the log of the cusp interval and record it.

11. Determine the cusp increment (correction) for the house cusp of interest by either the regular or log method.

*Regular method:* Multiply the cusp interval calculated in Step 10 by the ST factor calculated in Step 5. The result is the cusp increment.

*Log method:* Add the log of the cusp interval (determined in Step 10) to the log of the ST factor (found in Step 5). The anti-log of the result is the cusp increment.

12. Add the cusp increment to the position of the house cusp of interest, which is listed at the earlier ST, if the cusp increases as the sidereal time increases; subtract the cusp increment from the earlier position if the cusp decreases as time increases. If the birthplace is located at the exact degree of latitude listed in the

Table of Houses, the result is the correct position of the house cusp and may be entered in the horoscope. If the birth latitude contains minutes, this cusp must be adjusted to the exact latitude of the birthplace according to the procedure given in Steps 13–19.

13. Record the position of the house cusp of interest listed at the earlier ST and at the later ST for the latitude that is  $1^\circ$  greater than the degree of birth latitude (disregard minutes of birth latitude). Omit this procedure if the cusp distance can be taken directly from the Table of Houses; instead, record the appropriate cusp distance (the cusp distance is the difference between the time corrected position of a cusp at the birth latitude and its time corrected position at  $1^\circ$  higher latitude). If the log method is used, record the log of the cusp distance. Continue with Step 16, omitting Steps 14 and 15.

14. Substituting the cusp positions recorded in Step 13 for the positions listed at the degree of birth latitude, follow Steps 10 through 12 to determine the time corrected cusp at the higher latitude.

15. Calculate the difference between the position of the time corrected cusp at the degree of birth latitude and the position of the time corrected cusp at the higher latitude. The result is the cusp distance; record it. If the log method of calculation is being used, record the log of the cusp distance. Note whether the cusp position increases or decreases as the latitude increases.

16. Record the number of minutes in the birth latitude that are in excess of an even degree. These extra minutes are the latitude increment. The latitude interval is  $1^\circ$  ( $60'$ ). If logs are used, record the log of the latitude increment and the log of  $1^\circ$  (latitude interval).

17. Complete this Step by either the regular or log method of calculation.

*Regular method:* Divide the latitude increment (from Step 16) by  $60'$ ; the result is the constant latitude factor. Record and label the constant latitude factor; it will be used to calculate the latitude correction for each house cusp except the MC, which needs no latitude correction.

*Log method:* Subtract the log of  $1^\circ$  from the log of the latitude increment calculated in Step 16. Record the result; it is the log of the latitude factor, a constant that will be used to correct each house cusp (except the MC) for latitude.

18. Determine the latitude correction with either the regular method or the log method.

*Regular method:* Multiply the cusp distance as determined in Step 13 or Step 15 by the constant latitude factor calculated in Step 17. The result is the correction for latitude.

*Log method:* Add the log of the cusp distance (from Step 13 or Step 15) to the log of the latitude factor determined in Step 17. Find the anti-log of the result in the log table to determine the latitude correction.

19. Add the correction for latitude, which was calculated in Step 18, to the position of the time corrected cusp for the degree of birth latitude (Step 12) if the cusp position increases as latitude increases; subtract the correction if the position decreases as latitude increases. Do *not* apply the latitude correction to the time corrected cusp for the higher latitude (Step 14). The higher latitude cusp is calculated in order to determine the correct cusp distance in those instances when the cusp distance over a given latitude interval varies at the earlier and later sidereal times of interest. The correction for latitude is applied to the time corrected cusp for the degree of birth latitude.

Step 19 completes the calculations necessary to determine the correct house cusps for a horoscope. Steps 9–19 are repeated for the Ascendant and the intermediate house cusps. Tables of Houses list only six house cusps (1, 2, 3, 10, 11 and 12). An unlisted house cusp occupies the same degree and opposite sign that appears on the house cusp that lies directly opposite it in the horoscope.

### *Charting Placidian Houses*

The houses form the skeleton of the horoscope. After the house cusps are calculated, they are entered on a chart form. There are two methods of charting Placidian houses. In one method the Ascendant is entered in the eastern section of the horoscope and labeled according to its zodiacal position. The remaining house cusps are drawn in at the exact degree they occupy in the zodiac relative to the Ascendant. Ecliptic chart forms, which denote degree increments on the outer circle, are available; the face of the horoscope is blank. Each cusp line is properly labeled and drawn from the correct zodiacal degree on the



outer circle to the center of the horoscope. Intercepted signs that do not appear on any house cusp are enclosed in parentheses or brackets outside the outer circle at the corresponding zodiacal position. This method gives a visual representation of the actual sizes of the houses. Refer to Chapter 11, Figure 14.

The more common practice is to correctly label the zodiacal positions of the house cusps, which appear on a prepared chart form that is printed with twelve houses drawn in the face of the horoscope. This so-called *houses* chart form is not a replica of the ecliptic; it represents the houses of the horoscope. These chart forms depict houses of equal size and look like Equal House horoscopes. Therefore, one must visualize the variance in house sizes. An intercepted sign is enclosed in parentheses or brackets outside the house in which it is contained. Susan's Placidian horoscope is shown in Chapter 13, Figure 18 and is erected on a houses chart form. Compare the houses in Susan's horoscope with the Placidian houses in Chapter 11, Figure 14, which are drawn on an ecliptic chart form.

Houses based on other quadrant systems (Koch, Campanus, Regiomontanus, etc.) and Porphyry houses are charted in the same manner as Placidian houses. Cusps are corrected by the same procedure using data from a Table of Houses designed for the particular method used.

### *The Equal House Horoscope*

For an Equal House horoscope, the MC and Ascendant are corrected as for a Placidian horoscope; no other house cusps corrections are necessary. The first house cusp on a houses chart form (at the eastern point) is labeled with the zodiacal position of the Ascendant; all other house cusps (including the tenth) bear the same degree as the Ascendant. Signs on house cusps follow in natural order from the Ascendant. The MC, an angle of the horoscope but not necessarily a house cusp in this system, is marked at its correct zodiacal position as is its opposite point, the IC (see Chapter 11, Figure 15).

### *Charting Houses for an Unknown Birthtime*

There are methods, based on actual events in a person's life, by which an unknown birthtime can be ascertained (rectified). A solar chart, which places the first house cusp in the position of the Sun (conjunct the Sun) as listed in the ephemeris on the birthdate, is often used for persons whose birthtimes are uncertain and unrectified. The houses, called solar houses, follow as in an Equal House horoscope with cusp signs appearing in natural sequence beginning with the Sun sign on the first house. Planetary positions are entered as given in the ephemeris (uncorrected). A solar chart is not equivalent to a horoscope erected for the time and location of birth. It has no Ascendant or MC and any reference to the Ascendant, MC or other angles is excluded. Otherwise, houses have the same meaning as those in a regular horoscope. Interpretation relates the individual's potentials to the Sun, which represents the self and the life force. Such a chart with its narrow perspective gives a somewhat limited view based on the Sun's influence in the person's life.

Some astrologers prefer to use a sunrise chart, cast for the time of sunrise on the day of birth at the birthplace, if the birthtime is uncertain. This type of chart can be drawn up either as an equal house or quadrant (Placidian, etc.) horoscope substituting the time of sunrise for birthtime in calculations. It depicts the astrological tone set at the beginning of the day, which has universal application and is, therefore, applicable to the individual in a general way.

Another method for charting houses when the birthtime is unknown uses a natural (flat) chart which has 0° Aries on the cusp of the first house followed by natural houses and signs as shown in Chapter 1, Figure 2. This chart shows the relationship between planets as they appear on the birthdate (as listed in an ephemeris) and their natural signs and houses. Since each sign and planet has influence in its natural house in any horoscope, many astrologers believe that the flat chart more closely describes the individual's needs, motivations and potentials than either a solar or sunrise chart does.

Solar, sunrise and flat charts are not utilized exclusively in connection with unknown birthtimes. Many astrologers routinely compare these charts with an individual's horoscope as a means of gaining a more complete astrological picture.

### *Locating the Vertex, Anti-Vertex and East Point*

To locate the Vertex (V), find in the Table of Houses the Ascendant listed for co-latitude ( $90^\circ$  minus birth latitude) under the Midheaven, which equals the natal IC. The Anti-Vertex (A-V) is the opposite point. For example, the IC (cusp of the fourth house) for the horoscope shown in Chapter 11, Figure 14, erected for  $41^\circ$  north latitude, is  $1^\circ$  Leo. The co-latitude for this chart is  $49^\circ$  ( $90^\circ - 41^\circ$ ). The Ascendant listed at  $49^\circ$  under the MC  $1^\circ$  Leo is  $24^\circ 05'$  Libra, the Vertex; the Anti-Vertex is  $24^\circ 05'$  Aries.

The co-latitude of Susan's birthplace is  $48^\circ 36'$  (refer to Example 2 for birth data); her IC is  $1^\circ 47'$  Leo. Interpolation shows that the Vertex for her chart is at  $24^\circ 47'$  Libra in the sixth house of her horoscope.

The East Point (E or E. Pt.) is the Ascendant listed at  $0^\circ$  latitude for the Local Sidereal Time calculated for a birth, the ST used to find house cusp listings. If the Table of Houses does not include  $0^\circ$  latitude, the latitude at the equator, the position of the East Point can be calculated by adding 6 hours to the Local Sidereal Time of Birth and finding the MC for this advanced ST. The East Point at birth is at the same position as the MC listed for the advanced ST. The East Point is corrected in the same manner as the MC if the exact time of interest is not listed. For Susan's horoscope, the LST is 20:16:07 (Example 2); the advanced ST is 2:16:07 ( $20:16:07 + 6:00:00 = 26:16:07$ , reduced by 24 hours = 2:16:07). The MC given for the nearest earlier sidereal time is  $6^\circ$  Taurus; interpolation locates the exact East Point at  $6^\circ 21'$  Taurus, the same position as listed for 20:16:07, the LST, at  $0^\circ$  latitude.

The Vertex and East Point may be entered in the horoscope or listed on the chart form.

# 13 *Charting the Planets and Moon's Nodes*

The planetary positions entered in the ephemeris for a particular date are exact at the ephemeris reference time on that date. The listed positions must be adjusted to account for planetary motion during the time interval between the GMT birthtime and the GMT ephemeris reference time. The reference time for a noon ephemeris is 12:00 P.M. GMT; the reference time for a zero hour ephemeris is 00:00:00 GMT (12:00 A.M.).

## *Procedure to Correct the Zodiacal Longitude of the Planets and Moon's Nodes*

The procedure to determine the exact position of a planet or node at the time of birth is as follows:

1. Calculate the GMT birthtime. Refer to Chapter 12, Examples 4, 5 and 6, for this calculation. Note the GMT birthdate (the date on which the GMT birthtime falls).

2. Calculate the GMT interval (the time interval between the GMT birthtime and the GMT reference time). If a noon ephemeris is used, follow the method given in Chapter 12, Examples 4 and 5, Step 2, to find the GMT interval. If a zero hour ephemeris is used, follow the procedure given in Chapter 12, Example 6, Step 2, to determine the GMT interval. If you use the regular method of calculation, proceed with Step 3. If you use the log method, record the log of the GMT interval and continue with Step 4. This log is the log constant that will be used to calculate the correction for each planet (node).

3. Calculate the GMT constant (regular method only; omit this step if you use the log method). If the GMT interval is an even number of hours (no minutes), divide the GMT interval by 24 (number of hours in a day) to determine the GMT constant; if the GMT interval contains minutes of time, convert the entire interval to minutes and divide the result by 1440 (number of minutes in a day) to determine the GMT constant. Record this constant; it will be used to calculate the correction for each planet (node).

4. Calculate the daily motion for the planet (or node) of interest. If a noon ephemeris is used, calculate the difference between the planet's (node's) positions listed on the GMT birthdate and the preceding date if the GMT birthtime is A.M.; find the difference between the planet's (node's) positions listed on the GMT birthdate and the following date if the GMT birthtime is P.M. If a zero hour ephemeris is used, calculate the difference between the planet's (node's) positions listed on the birthdate and the following date for both A.M. and P.M. birthtimes. The result is the daily motion for that planet (node) on the birthdate. Note whether the planet's motion is direct or retrograde. The Moon's Node's average motion is retrograde. Some ephemerides list the position of the True Node, whose position may differ from that of the Mean Node, which most ephemerides list, and whose motion may be direct or retrograde. Use the True Node's position and motion if it is listed.

5. Calculate the correction in longitude to be applied to the zodiacal position listed for the planet

(node) of interest on the GMT birthdate. Use either the regular method or the log method of calculation.

*Regular method:* Multiply the daily motion by the GMT constant. The result is the required correction.

*Log method:* Add the log of the daily motion to the log constant. The anti-log of this result is the required correction.

6. Correct the planet's (node's) position that is listed on the GMT birthdate. To correct the position of a planet that is in direct motion, proceed as follows: If a noon ephemeris is used, subtract the correction derived in Step 5 from the planet's position listed on the GMT birthdate if the GMT birthtime is A.M.; add the correction to the listed position if the GMT birthtime is P.M. If a zero hour ephemeris is used, add the correction to the position listed on the GMT birthdate. To correct the position of a planet in retrograde motion, add the correction for an A.M. birth when using a noon ephemeris; subtract the correction for a P.M. birth when using a noon ephemeris; subtract the correction for all births when using a zero hour ephemeris. The result gives the correct zodiacal position of the planet (node) at the time of birth.

**EXAMPLE 1**

Using a noon ephemeris, calculate the correct position of the Sun to the nearest minute of zodiacal longitude for Susan's horoscope. (Refer to Chapter 11, Figure 16 for the required planetary data.) Susan's birthdate is November 29, 1950; her birthtime is 4:05 P.M. EST. The zone number for EST is + 5. Complete birth data is given in Chapter 12, Example 2.

*Regular Method:*

1. Calculate the GMT birthtime; note the GMT birthdate.

$$\begin{array}{r} 4:05 \text{ P.M. EST} \quad (\text{Susan's birthtime}) \\ + 5:00 \quad \quad \quad (\text{zone standard correction}) \\ \hline 9:05 \text{ P.M. GMT} \end{array}$$

The GMT birthtime falls on the same date as the standard birthtime; therefore, the GMT birthdate is November 29, 1950.

2. Calculate the GMT interval.

The time difference between 12:00 P.M. (noon

ephemeris reference time) and 9:05 P.M. (GMT birthtime) is 9 hours and 5 minutes.

3. Calculate and record the GMT constant.

$$\frac{9:05}{24 \text{ hr}} = \frac{545 \text{ min}}{1440 \text{ min}} = 0.378$$

(The GMT interval divided by the amount of time in one day equals the GMT constant.)

4. Calculate the daily motion of the Sun on the GMT birthdate.

$$\begin{array}{r} 7^{\circ} 43.1' \quad (\text{Sun's noon position on November 30, 1950}) \\ - 6^{\circ} 42.3' \quad (\text{Sun's noon position on November 29, 1950}) \\ \hline 1^{\circ} 0.8' \quad = 1^{\circ} 01' \text{ to the nearest minute of arc} \end{array}$$

5. Calculate the correction to be applied to the Sun's noon position listed in the ephemeris.

$$1^{\circ} 01' \times 0.378 = 23'$$

(The daily motion multiplied by the GMT constant equals the required correction.)

6. Correct the Sun's listed position. The Sun's motion is direct (as always), and the GMT birthtime is P.M.; therefore, the correction is added to the Sun's position listed for noon on the GMT birthdate.

$$\begin{array}{r} 6^{\circ} 42' \quad \text{Sagittarius } (6^{\circ} 42.3' = 6^{\circ} 42' \text{ to the nearest minute}) \\ + 23' \quad (\text{correction}) \\ \hline 6^{\circ} 65' \quad = 7^{\circ} 05' \text{ Sagittarius to the nearest minute of arc} \end{array}$$

The Sun is entered in Susan's horoscope at 7° 05' Sagittarius.

*Log Method:*

1. Calculate the GMT birthtime; note the GMT birthdate. The GMT birthtime was found to be 9:05 P.M. GMT and the GMT birthdate November 29, 1950, in Step 1 of the regular method.

2. Calculate the GMT interval; record the log of the GMT interval. The GMT interval is 9:05 (the time difference between the GMT birthtime and 12:00

p.m., which is the GMT reference time for a noon ephemeris). Figure 17 shows the log of 0:05 is 0.4220. This is the log constant.

3. Calculate the daily motion of the Sun. Subtract the position listed for November 29, 1950, from the position listed for the Sun on the following day, November 30, 1950 (noon ephemeris, p.m. birth). This calculation carried out in Step 4 of the regular method shows the Sun's daily motion to be  $1^{\circ}01'$ .
4. Add the log of the Sun's daily motion to the log constant (the log of the GMT interval). Refer to Figure 17 to find the log of  $1^{\circ}01'$ , the Sun's daily motion on the GMT birthdate.

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.4220 \quad (\text{log constant}) \\ + 1.3730 \quad (\text{log of } 1^{\circ}01') \\ \hline 1.7950 \quad (\text{log of correction}) \end{array}$$

5. In Figure 17, find the anti-log of the result calculated in Step 4. This anti-log is  $23'$ , the required correction to be applied to the Sun's position listed on the GMT birthdate.
6. Correct the Sun's position exactly as was done in Step 6, regular method.

All the data that is needed to correct the remaining planets (nodes) is now recorded except the noon position and daily motion of each planet and the Moon's North Node.

### EXAMPLE 2

Determine the correct zodiacal position of the Moon for Susan's horoscope.

1. Calculate the Moon's daily motion. Note that the Moon is in the late degrees of Cancer on November 29; it has crossed into Leo before the time of the next entry on November 30. The Moon is at  $29^{\circ}58.7'$  Cancer at noon on the GMT birthdate; it passes through  $1.3'$  of Cancer then travels to  $12^{\circ}15.5'$  Leo by noon GMT the following day for a total of  $12^{\circ}17'$  daily motion (to the nearest minute of arc).

2. Calculate the correction for the Moon.

*Regular method:*

$$\begin{array}{l} 12^{\circ}17' \times 0.378 = 4^{\circ}39' \\ 12^{\circ}17' \text{ may be converted to } 737' \text{ to complete the} \\ \text{multiplication. The result, } 279', \text{ is then reduced to} \\ \text{degrees and minutes.} \end{array}$$

*Log method:*

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.4220 \quad (\text{log constant}) \\ + 0.2909 \quad (\text{log of } 12^{\circ}17') \\ \hline 0.7129 \quad (\text{log of correction}) \end{array}$$

The anti-log of 0.7129 is  $4^{\circ}39'$ .

3. Correct the Moon's noon position on the GMT birthdate.

$$\begin{array}{r} 29^{\circ}59' \quad \text{Cancer (Moon's position at noon} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{on November 29, 1950)} \\ + 4^{\circ}39' \quad (\text{correction}) \\ \hline 33^{\circ}98' \quad = 34^{\circ}38' = 4^{\circ}38' \text{ Leo} \\ \quad \quad \quad (\text{Moon's position at birthtime}) \end{array}$$

There are only  $30^{\circ}$  in any one sign. Since the result in Step 3 contains more than  $30^{\circ}$ , it is apparent that the Moon moved into Leo.

Always note a sign change that occurs during the time period of interest. A planet may or may not occupy the same sign at birthtime as it occupies at the ephemeris reference time. In instances when the correction is subtracted, the sign a planet occupies at birthtime may be the sign preceding that listed on the GMT birthdate. When the correction is added, the sign at birthtime may be the one that follows that listed on the birthdate, as is the case with the Moon in Susan's horoscope.

### EXAMPLE 3

Determine the correct zodiacal position of Mercury for Susan's horoscope.

1. Calculate Mercury's daily motion.

$$\begin{array}{r} 23^{\circ}20.3' \quad (\text{Mercury's noon position on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{November 30)} \\ - 21^{\circ}51.3' \quad (\text{Mercury's noon position on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{November 29)} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 22^{\circ} 80.3' \\ - 21^{\circ} 51.3' \\ \hline 1^{\circ} 29' \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{(Mercury's daily} \\ \text{motion on the} \\ \text{GMT birthdate)} \end{array}$$

2. Calculate the correction for Mercury.

*Regular method:*

$$1^{\circ} 29' \times 0.378 = 34'$$

*Log method:*

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.4220 \quad (\text{log constant}) \\ + 1.2090 \quad (\text{log of } 1^{\circ} 29') \\ \hline 1.6310 \quad (\text{log of correction}) \end{array}$$

The anti-log of 1.6310 is 34'.

3. Correct Mercury's position listed on the GMT birthdate.

$$\begin{array}{r} 21^{\circ} 51' \quad \text{Sagittarius (Mercury's position} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{at noon, November 29, 1950)} \\ + \quad 34' \quad \quad \text{(correction)} \\ \hline 21^{\circ} 85' \quad \text{Sagittarius} = 22^{\circ} 25' \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{Sagittarius (Mercury's position} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{at birthtime)} \end{array}$$

#### EXAMPLE 4

Determine the correct zodiacal position of Venus for Susan's horoscope.

1. Calculate the daily motion for Venus.

$$\begin{array}{r} 11^{\circ} 47.3' \quad \text{(Venus' position at noon} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{on November 30)} \\ - 10^{\circ} 31.9' \quad \text{(Venus' position at noon} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{on November 29)} \\ \hline 1^{\circ} 15.4' \quad = 1^{\circ} 15' \quad \text{(Venus' daily motion on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{the GMT birthdate)} \end{array}$$

2. Calculate the correction for Venus.

*Regular method:*

$$1^{\circ} 15' \times 0.378 = 28'$$

(Multiply the daily motion by the GMT constant.)

*Log method:*

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.4220 \quad (\text{log constant}) \\ + 1.2833 \quad (\text{log of } 1^{\circ} 15') \\ \hline 1.7053 \quad (\text{log of correction}) \end{array}$$

The anti-log of 1.7053 is 28', the required correction.

3. Correct Venus' position.

$$\begin{array}{r} 10^{\circ} 32' \quad \text{Sagittarius (Venus' position at} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{noon on the GMT birthdate)} \\ + \quad 28' \quad \quad \text{(correction)} \\ \hline 10^{\circ} 60' \quad = 11^{\circ} 00' \quad \text{Sagittarius (Venus' position at} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{birthtime)} \end{array}$$

The same procedure is followed to determine the corrections for the remaining planets and Moon's North Node in Susan's horoscope as was used to calculate the corrections for the Sun, Moon, Mercury and Venus. The appropriate correction is added to the noon position of each planet except Uranus and Pluto. It can be seen in Chapter 11, Figure 16 that these two planets are retrograde; the Moon's North Node also moves in retrograde motion. The corrections for Uranus, Pluto and the Node are subtracted from their noon positions.

The positions of planets that move very slowly may not require a correction. According to data in Figure 16, Pluto moved 12" (0.2') on the day of interest; calculation shows that it moved only 4" in 9 hours and 5 minutes, the time of the GMT interval. Since Pluto's motion during the GMT interval is less than 30" (0.5 minutes of arc), no correction is applied to the listed position.

### *Entering the Planets and Nodes in the Chart Form*

Before the planets are entered in the horoscope, it is good practice to check the approximate position of the Sun in the horoscope against the birthtime. Think of the horoscope as a clock with each house representing a two-hour interval. Place 6:00 A.M. at the Ascendant, 12:00 noon at the MC, 6:00 P.M. at the Descendant and 12:00 midnight at the IC. The Sun should occupy the section of the horoscope that represents the *actual*

birthtime (not the GMT birthtime or the Local Sidereal Time of birth). If the Sun is not at the approximate position that corresponds to the actual birthtime, recheck the calculations for the Local Sidereal Time and the house cusps. The house cusps are probably positioned incorrectly. Bear in mind that the Sun's position in the horoscope may not correlate exactly with this astrological clock. The Ascendant is more correctly associated with sunrise, which may occur earlier or later than 6:00 A.M. However, if the Sun does not fall within a few degrees of the house that corresponds to the birthtime, calculations should be checked.

The planets and the Moon's North Node are entered in the horoscope according to their corrected positions. The Moon's South Node may be omitted, but it is understood that the South Node occupies the point in the zodiac and the horoscope that lies directly opposite the position of the North Node.

The planets and the signs they occupy are designated in the horoscope by the corresponding glyphs. Planetary glyphs (symbols) are entered in the face of the horoscope near the outer ring. The zodiacal position may be written from left to right or vertically, whichever is more legible. The notation for the zodiacal position may precede or follow the planetary glyph. All planetary entries (glyphs and position designations) are placed within the outer circle and written so they may be read from a normal reading position without turning the horoscope around. Styles vary, but it is common practice to insert the sign designation between the degrees and minutes of zodiacal longitude, as is displayed in Figure 18.

The placement of the planets in the horoscope depends upon the house system and type of chart form used. For a Placidian horoscope charted on an ecliptic chart form, a small tick is placed on the outer circle at the zodiacal degree a planet occupies; the correct planetary entry is written opposite the tick inside the circle.

For a Placidian horoscope charted on a houses chart form, the planets are placed in correct zodiacal sequence close to the house cusp that bears the same sign as the planet. If two house cusps bear the same sign as a planet, the planet is placed near the cusp to which the planet lies closest in the zodiac. Correct zodiacal sequence is always observed; a planet is placed on the side of the house cusp according to where it falls in the natural order of the zodiac. A planet in an intercepted sign is placed near the center of the house it occupies. Parallel

lines that intersect the outer circle may be drawn on each side of a planet to indicate interception, but this is not necessary if the intercepted sign is correctly indicated by brackets outside the circle. Figure 18 shows Susan's Placidian horoscope charted on a houses chart form.

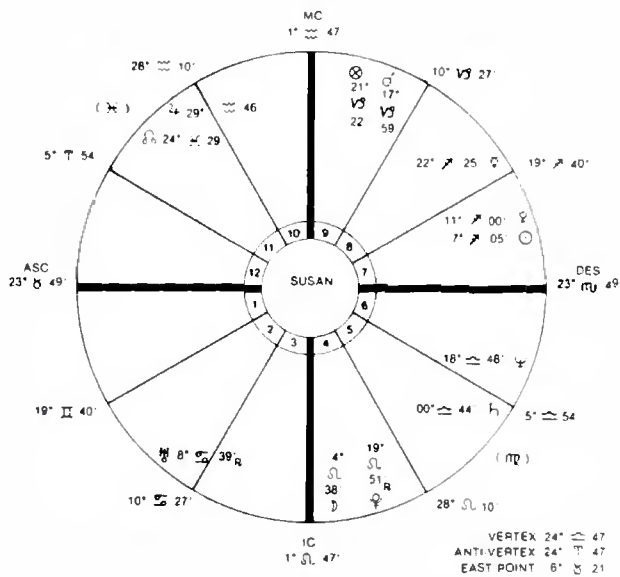


Figure 18. Susan's Horoscope

The planets in an Equal House horoscope are entered at the degree of the zodiac they occupy.

### Declinations

The declinations listed in the ephemeris are corrected in a manner similar to that used to correct the zodiacal positions of the planets. The procedure is the same; the daily travel of declination replaces daily motion in the calculations. To determine the correction for declination, the daily travel of declination is multiplied by the GMT constant (the same GMT constant used to correct the planets' zodiacal longitude), or, if the log method is preferred, the log of travel is added to the log constant (the same log constant used to correct planetary positions). If the ephemeris used does not list declinations for each day, daily travel is based on the average travel per day during the time span between entries. Declinations for an unlisted date are interpolated according to the two consecutive entries between which the date of interest falls.

When calculating the daily travel of declination, record the direction of declination, N (north of the celestial equator) or S (south of the celestial equator). Note whether the declination is increasing numerically or decreasing. The correction for increasing declination is added to or subtracted from the listed declination according to the rules for correcting a planet in direct motion; decreasing declination is treated in the same manner as a retrograde planet. If a planet crosses the celestial equator ( $0^\circ$  declination) from N to S or vice versa, the declination will decrease to  $0^\circ$  and then increase. The correction is treated accordingly.

**EXAMPLE 5**

Determine the correct declination of the Sun for Susan's horoscope. *The Concise Planetary Ephemeris* (Figure 16) does not list declinations for her birthdate (November 29, 1950). Interpolation is based on entries for November 28 and December 1.

1. Calculate the travel of declination; record the direction of declination; note whether the declination is increasing or decreasing during the period of travel.

$$\begin{array}{r} 21^\circ 46.0' \quad \text{S (Sun's declination on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{December 1, 1950)} \\ - 21^\circ 15.7' \quad \text{S (Sun's declination on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{November 28, 1950)} \\ \hline 30.3' \quad \text{(declination traveled by Sun} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{in 3 days)} \end{array}$$

$$30.3/3 = 10.1' = 10' \quad \text{(daily travel of declination for the Sun)}$$

The Sun's declination is south and increases from November 28 to December 1.

2. Calculate the correction for declination.

*Regular method:*

$$10' \times 0.378 = 4' \quad \text{(to the nearest minute)}$$

(Travel of declination multiplied by the GMT constant equals the correction for birthtime.)

*Log method:*

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.4220 \quad \text{(log constant)} \\ + 2.1584 \quad \text{(log of } 10') \\ \hline 2.5804 \quad \text{(log of correction)} \end{array}$$

The anti-log of 2.5804 is  $4'$  (see Figure 17).

3. Correct the Sun's declination listed on November 28. The distance the declination moved in one day from November 28 to November 29, the birthdate, must be accounted for as well as the correction for birthtime calculated in Step 2.

$$\begin{array}{r} 10' \quad \text{(daily travel of declination)} \\ + 4' \\ \hline 14' \quad \text{(total declination traveled by the Sun} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{from Noon GMT on November 28 to} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{9:05 GMT on November 29, the} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{birthtime)} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 21^\circ 16' \quad \text{S (Sun's Declination on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{November 28)} \\ + 14' \\ \hline 21^\circ 30' \quad \text{S (Sun's declination at birthtime)} \end{array}$$

The total correction was added in Step 3 because the Sun's declination increased during the period of travel.

**EXAMPLE 6**

Determine the correct declination of the Moon for Susan's horoscope.

1. Calculate travel of declination; note direction and increase or decrease of position.

$$\begin{array}{r} 26^\circ 51.5' \quad \text{N (Moon's declination on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{November 28)} \\ - 15^\circ 40.5' \quad \text{N (Moon's declination on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{December 1)} \\ \hline 11^\circ 11' \quad \text{(declination traveled by Moon in} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{3 days)} \end{array}$$

Since the travel of declination is  $11^\circ 11'$  for three days, it must average  $3^\circ 44'$  in one day. It is north and decreasing.

2. Calculate the correction for declination.

*Regular method:*

$$3^\circ 44' \times 0.378 = 1^\circ 25'$$

*Log method:*

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.4220 \quad \text{(log constant)} \\ + 0.8081 \quad \text{(log of } 3^\circ 44') \\ \hline 1.2301 \quad \text{(log of correction)} \end{array}$$



The anti-log of 1.2301 is  $1^{\circ}25'$ .

3. Correct the Moon's declination listed for November 28. The total correction to be applied is  $5^{\circ}09'$  ( $3^{\circ}44' + 1^{\circ}25'$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 26^{\circ}52' \quad \text{N (Moon's declination on} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{November 28)} \\ - 5^{\circ}09' \quad \text{(correction)} \\ \hline 21^{\circ}43' \quad \text{N (Moon's declination at birthtime)} \end{array}$$

The correction was subtracted in Step 3 because the Moon's declination decreased during the period of travel. At the time of Susan's birth, the Sun and Moon formed a contraparallel, both being the same number of degrees from the celestial equator but lying in opposite directions.

The declinations for the remaining planets and Moon's North Node in Susan's horoscope are corrected in the same manner. The declination of the heavier planets changes so slowly that a correction may not be required.

Most chart forms provide a space in which to enter the corrected declinations. If no space is provided, the declinations are listed on the chart form wherever there is room. The declinations may be written with the N or S following the degrees and minutes.

The declinations for the Ascendant and MC are listed on the chart form with the planetary declinations. The declination of the Ascendant is the same as that of the Sun at the time the Sun occupies the same zodiacal position as the Ascendant; the declination of the MC is the same as that of the Sun at the time the Sun occupies the position of the MC. In order to determine the declination of the Ascendant, find the date in the ephemeris on which the Sun is in the same zodiacal position as the Ascendant; the declination of the Sun listed on that date is the declination of the Ascendant. If the exact position of interest is not listed, the declination entered on the date on which the Sun's position is closest to the Ascendant's position can be corrected by interpolation. The declination for the MC is found in the same way.

Some ephemerides do not list the declination of the Moon's North Node. If the Node's declination is not listed, follow the same procedure used to determine the declinations for the Ascendant and MC to estimate the declination for the Node.

## The Part of Fortune



The Part of Fortune (Pars Fortunae) is a sensitive point in the horoscope that lies a distance from the Ascendant equal to the distance the Moon lies from the Sun. The symbol for the Part of Fortune is similar to that for Earth; an X is placed inside the circle instead of the cross, which symbolizes Earth.

The Part of Fortune, most widely used of the numerous Arabic Parts, is considered a fortunate point that shows by house position the area in which one's endeavors are most apt to reap success and by sign position one's approach to these endeavors. Refer to Appendix C for information about other Arabic Parts.

Success indicated by the Part of Fortune does not necessarily denote material gains. Intellectual accomplishments, good health, or the vicarious success one experiences through achievements of his or her children are among the possible benefits associated with the Part of Fortune depending upon sign and house placement; it is read in context with the overall horoscope.

An adversely aspected Part of Fortune, especially if it is in the sign of Pisces, may be termed the "Part of Misfortune," for little benefit is likely to manifest.

To calculate the Part of Fortune, the position of the Moon is added to the position of the Ascendant; the position of the Sun is subtracted from this sum. The signs are designated by number according to their natural position in the zodiac (Aries = 1, Taurus = 2, Gemini = 3, etc.). The full circle of 12 signs may be added if necessary to carry out the subtraction. One sign may be converted to 30 degrees in order to complete calculations. The final result is reduced to lowest units. There can be no more than 12 signs, 29 degrees, or 59 minutes in the final answer ( $60' = 1^{\circ}$ ;  $30^{\circ} = 1$  sign). The sign number is replaced by the usual sign designation.

### EXAMPLE 7

Calculate the Part of Fortune for Susan's horoscope. Taurus, the sign of the Ascendant, is the second sign of the zodiac; it is designated by the number 2. Leo, the sign the Moon occupies, is the fifth sign of the zodiac; it is represented by 5. The Sun sign, Sagittarius, the ninth sign, is designated by 9.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2\ 23^{\circ} 49' \text{ (Asc)} \\
 + 5\ 4^{\circ} 38' \text{ (Moon)} \\
 \hline
 7\ 27^{\circ} 87' \\
 - 9\ 7^{\circ} 05' \text{ (Sun)} = \frac{19\ 27^{\circ} 87'}{- 9\ 7^{\circ} 05'} \\
 \hline
 10\ 20^{\circ} 82' = 10\ 21^{\circ} 22'
 \end{array}$$

Capricorn is the tenth sign of the zodiac; the correct position for the Part of Fortune is  $21^{\circ} 22'$  Capricorn.

The Part of Fortune is entered in the horoscope with the planets and Moon's North Node. The declination is determined in the same manner as for the Ascendant and listed on the chart form.

# 14 Aspects Defined

Aspects depend upon the angular distance between two planets or the distance between a planet and an important point in the horoscope such as an angle or house cusp, the Moon's Nodes or the Part of Fortune.

Aspects provide the means of planetary interaction. Planets in aspect influence each other's action according to the type of aspect and the nature of the planets forming the aspect. The relationships that planets bear to each other through aspects in the natal horoscope constitute patterns of experience and development that are unique to the individual. Aspects give the astrologer a more complete picture of planetary influence in the horoscope.

## Calculation and Tabulation of Aspects

All aspects except the parallel and the contraparallel are defined by a specified number of degrees, which separate two points in the zodiac. Parallels and contraparallels are defined by declination. Two planets that occupy the same numerical degree and direction of declination (both planets either north or south) are said to be parallel. Two planets which occupy the same numerical degree of declination with one planet north and the other south are contraparallel.

The point at which an aspect is exact to the degree and minute is termed *partile*. An aspect that is within 1° of partile, is called an *exact* aspect; however, an aspect need not be exact to be effective. The number of degrees by which an aspect may vary from partile is called the *orb* of influence. An aspect that is not exact but still falls within the allowable orb is termed a *platic* aspect. The closer an aspect is to partile (the smaller the orb), the stronger its influence.

Aspects fall into two general categories, major and

minor. Major aspects are more powerful and influential in the horoscope than are minor aspects.

### MAJOR ASPECTS

Name	Symbol	Separating Distance	Orb
Conjunction	♌	0°	8°
Sextile	✳	60°	6°
Square	□	90°	8°
Trine	△	120°	8°
Opposition	♋♏	180°	8°
Parallel		0° (declination)	1°
Contraparallel	‡	0° (declination)	1°

The orbs for major zodiacal aspects between planets and the angles, Nodes or Part of Fortune are shortened to 5°. The conjunction is the only aspect considered between planets and the intermediate house cusps in a natal horoscope; the orb is 3°.

### MINOR ASPECTS

Name	Symbol	Separating Distance
Vigintile	⊥	18°
Quindecile	√	24°
Semi-sextile	⋈	30°
Decile	⊥	36°
Semi-square	∠	45°
Septile	⌘	51° (51 3/7°)
Quintile	♄	72°
Tredecile	♁	108°
Sesquiquadrate (Sesqui-square)	♁	135°
Bi-quintile	±	144°
Quincunx (Inconjunct)	♁	150°

The orb for all minor aspects is 2°. The semi-sextile, semi-square, sesquiquadrate and quincunx are usually the only minor aspects studied in a natal horoscope. Some astrologers consider the quincunx a major aspect and weight it accordingly. The influence of the other minor aspects is slight. Nevertheless, these aspects form links between planetary energies, however weak. Frequently, the less important aspects support stronger indications in the horoscope.

The faster moving planet of two in aspect is called the *significator*; the slower moving planet is the *promittor*. The significator is said to aspect the promittor; the promittor is said to be in aspect with the significator. With the exception of solar aspects, the order in which natal aspects are written is significator, aspect, promittor. It is customary to list the Sun first regardless of whether it is the significator or promittor. For example, a conjunction between the luminaries is usually written Sun conjunct Moon (☉☽) although the Moon as the fastest moving of all the planets is the significator in any aspect it forms. When a planet is retrograde, stationary or approaching transition from direct to retrograde or vice versa, its motion may be slower than average. Check the daily motion on the birthdate to determine the correct significator if in doubt.

If the significator is moving toward but has not reached the point of partile, the aspect is said to be *applying* (forming); if the significator is past and moving away from the point of partile, the aspect is *separating* (receding). An applying aspect indicates a condition, experience, action, state of mind or development that will become evident as the life of the individual progresses. A separating aspect suggests that which is a part of the individual's experience or character at birth: one's unacquired characteristics, innate knowledge or instincts, one's heredity, one's prenatal experience, perhaps one's karma.

In order to calculate aspects, one usually starts with the Sun and counts the number of degrees that separate the Sun and other occupied points in the horoscope. Aspects may be counted forward or backward in the zodiac. If the direction from significator to promittor is forward in the zodiac (counterclockwise in the horoscope), the aspect is called *approaching* because the significator is approaching the point occupied by the planet it aspects. If the direction from significator to promittor is backward in the zodiac (clockwise in

the horoscope), the aspect is termed *departing* because the significator is departing from (leaving) the point occupied by the promittor.

Do not confuse the terms applying and separating with the terms approaching and departing. Applying and separating aspects depend upon the partile point of the aspect; approaching and departing aspects are based on the zodiacal direction from the significator to the promittor. An approaching aspect may be either applying or separating, as can a departing aspect.

An approaching aspect is given a broader, more outward and social significance than a departing aspect; it is considered more overt in manifestation. A departing aspect has a more personal and subjective influence; it is given a subtle and somewhat fatalistic connotation.

The Moon's aspects are calculated after the Sun's. One proceeds to do the same with each remaining planet in order of swiftest moving to slowest.

The conjunction and opposition are fairly easy to recognize. Planets that lie side by side in the horoscope are conjunct if within orb; planets opposite each other in the horoscope are in opposition if within orb. For example, a planet in 5° 21' Sagittarius is conjunct any planet that is posited between 27° 21' Scorpio and 13° 21' Sagittarius; it is in opposition with any planet that falls between 27° 21' Taurus and 13° 21' Gemini. The orb is 8° on either side of partile, which gives a 16° span of influence. A conjunction that is formed between planets in different signs is a *dissociate* conjunction; an opposition that occurs between planets in signs not directly opposite each other in the zodiac is a dissociate opposition. If a planet is within orb but occupies a sign different from that of the partile point, the aspect formed is called dissociate.

Planets that are within a 6° orb and 60° apart form a sextile. If a planet occupies the beginning or ending degrees of a sign, it may form sextiles with planets that are one, two or three signs away. A planet in 1° 30' Taurus can form a sextile with any planet posited between 25° 30' Aquarius (three signs from Taurus) and 7° 30' Pisces (two signs from Taurus), and it can form a sextile with any planet that falls between 25° 30' Gemini (one sign from Taurus) and 7° 30' Cancer (two signs from Taurus). A sextile formed from Taurus to Aquarius or Pisces is a departing sextile (backward in the natural order of the zodiac); a sextile from Taurus to Gemini or Cancer is an approaching sextile (forward in the zodiac). A sextile formed

between a planet in Taurus and one in Aquarius or Gemini is a dissociate sextile.

Planets that occupy different signs of the same quadruplicity and are not opposite each other form a square aspect if within orb. In Susan's horoscope (Chapter 13, Figure 18) Mars in 17° 59' Capricorn (a cardinal sign) squares Neptune in 18° 48' Libra (a cardinal sign). Mars is the significator (it moves faster than Neptune). The square is exact (the orb is 49', the difference between Mars' position and partile). It is applying (Mars is moving toward partile, which is 18° 48' Capricorn) and departing (the direction of the aspect from the significator, Mars, to Neptune is clockwise in the horoscope; Mars is moving away from Neptune's position).

A dissociate square is formed between planets within orb that are posited in signs belonging to different quadruplicities. The Sun in Susan's horoscope, placed at 7° 05' Sagittarius (a mutable sign), squares Jupiter in 29° 46' Aquarius (a fixed sign). The aspect is platic; the orb is a wide 7° 19'. The aspect is separating and approaching; the Sun is moving away from the point of partile (29° 46' Scorpio); the direction of the square from the Sun (significator) to Jupiter (promittor) is forward in the zodiac and counterclockwise in the horoscope.

Planets that occupy different signs of the same triplicity are in trine if the degrees are in orb. In Susan's horoscope the Moon at 4° 38' Leo (a fire sign) trines both the Sun at 7° 05' Sagittarius and Venus at 11° 00' Sagittarius (a fire sign). Both trines are platic, applying and approaching. A trine is dissociate if it is formed between planets that belong to different triplicities.

Parallels and contraparallels are easy to identify from the declinations listed on the chart form; they can be separated by no more than 1°.

Of the important minor aspects, the semi-sextile and the quincunx are the easiest to calculate. The semi-sextile is formed by planets that are within 2° (orb) of being 30° (one full sign) apart; the quincunx is formed by planets that lie within 2° orb and are five signs apart.

The semi-square and the sesquiquadrate are more difficult to recognize. It may be helpful to add 15° to the actual degrees a planet occupies and then count forward one sign or backward two signs for the semi-square and count forward four signs or backward five signs for the sesquiquadrate. For example, a planet in 5° Leo forms a semi-square with one in 20° (5° + 15°) Virgo or

Gemini; the same planet can form a sesquiquadrate with a planet in 20° Sagittarius or Pisces. If this method is confusing, the actual degrees must be counted until one becomes familiar with these aspects.

Most chart forms display an aspectarian similar to the one shown in Figure 19. As the aspects are calculated they are entered by symbol in the aspectarian. Zodiacal aspects are placed in the right diagonal half of the aspectarian; parallels and contraparallels are listed in the left diagonal. Aspects to the Ascendant and MC are entered in the two bottom rows of the aspectarian in the column headed by the aspecting planet. Planets that aspect the Descendant or IC form complementary aspects with the Ascendant or MC respectively; these aspects are listed according to the aspect formed with the Ascendant or MC. All aspects to the North Node and Part of Fortune, including parallels and contraparallels, are entered in the corresponding column in the row headed by the aspecting planet. Aspects to the South Node (complementary aspects of the North Node) are not recorded in the aspectarian.

ASPECTARIAN													
☉	☽	♀	♂	♃	♄	♅	♆	♇	♈	♉	♊	♋	
☉	☽												
☽		☽											
♀			♀										
♂				♂									
♃					♃								
♄						♄							
♅							♅						
♆								♆					
♇									♇				
♈										♈			
♉											♉		
♊												♊	
♋													♋
Asc													
MC													

Figure 19. Aspectarian

To tabulate aspects in the aspectarian, start with the Sun and list in the first row directly beneath the

symbol of the aspected planet all zodiacal aspects the Sun forms with the other planets. Use symbols to designate the aspects; if an aspect is exact, write an "E" in the square containing the aspect entry; if an aspect is close to the allowable orb, enter a "W" beside its symbol to indicate that the aspect is wide. If no aspect exists between the Sun and a particular planet, place a dot in the corresponding square as a reminder that the planet's position has been checked for aspects with the Sun. In the same row and proper column, enter aspects the Sun forms with the North Node and Part of Fortune.

In the first column headed by the Sun, list the Sun's aspects to the Ascendant and MC. Parallels and contraparallels are entered in the same column opposite the symbol of the aspected planet, Ascendant or MC. Parallels and contraparallels formed with the North Node or Part of Fortune are entered in the same square as the zodiacal aspects.

Next, enter in the second row and corresponding column the aspects made by the Moon. Do not enter a Moon/Sun aspect; it belongs in the first row; no aspect is entered twice. Complete the tabulation of the Moon's aspects in the same manner as the Sun's. Mercury's aspects, except those formed with the Sun or the Moon, are entered in the third row in the column headed by the planet Mercury aspects; parallels and contraparallels are listed in the third column headed by Mercury in the row which corresponds to the aspected planet. Venus' aspects are considered next and so on until all aspects are entered in the aspectarian.

### *Basic Significance of the Aspects*

Aspects are classed as hard (difficult) or easy (soft). Hard aspects stimulate action and induce motivation. Except for the conjunction and parallel, all hard aspects are disharmonious to some extent depending upon the strength of the aspect and the natures of the planets involved. These aspects create tension, friction or difficulties, which in turn produce activity. The conjunction and parallel may be harmonious or disharmonious; either way, they stimulate planetary energies as do all hard aspects. Easy aspects generate harmony; they blend planetary energies smoothly and create conditions of ease and accord. They partially mitigate difficulties or hardships imposed by inharmonious aspects and contribute to "good luck."

Planetary action in a horoscope depends largely upon the aspects formed. The same aspect will not have the same effect in one horoscope as in another. All relevant factors, including other aspects, are weighed in determining the influence a given aspect exerts in a particular horoscope. In any case, the essential characteristics of an aspect remain unchanged although its significance may be modified by other factors.

*Conjunction:* A major hard aspect, the conjunction is the most powerful of all aspects. It merges planetary energies and focuses planetary drives. If the natures of the two planets in conjunction are in harmony (as with two benefics), the conjunction unifies and strengthens planetary influence in a horoscope. If the planets are naturally discordant (as with a benefic and a malefic or with two malefics), the conjunction is disruptive; the stronger planet will overshadow or distort the weaker planet's influence.

*Vigintile:* A minor easy aspect, the vigintile is mildly harmonious but has little effect in a natal horoscope.

*Quindecile:* A minor easy aspect, the quindecile has a weak but favorable influence.

*Semi-sextile:* A minor easy aspect, the semi-sextile is of some importance in a natal horoscope. The energies of planets in semi-sextile adapt harmoniously; if these planets are otherwise afflicted, the semi-sextile may partially mitigate adverse effects.

*Decile:* A minor easy aspect, the decile, also called a semi-quintile, has a harmonious effect although its influence in the natal horoscope is weak.

*Semi-square:* A minor hard aspect, the semi-square ranks as the most influential of the minor aspects. The semi-square is irritating and creates friction between the planets in aspect. Mild stress accompanies the dispersion of planetary energies.

*Septile:* Probably a hard aspect, the septile is seldom used. This minor aspect is said to produce an intangible effect that may have to do with karma or destiny.

*Sextile:* A major easy aspect, the sextile is considered helpful and beneficial; it is associated with opportunities and advantages.

*Quintile:* A minor easy aspect, the quintile is favorable although moderately weak.

*Square:* A major hard aspect, the square is the most dynamic aspect. The square generates tension and galvanizes action. It produces difficulties and obstacles that thwart planetary drives, but it also spurs ambition to overcome such barriers.

*Tredecile:* A minor easy aspect, the tredecile is harmonious but carries little weight in a natal horoscope.

*Trine:* A major easy aspect, the trine is the most propitious and influential easy aspect. The trine is associated with ease and good fortune. A trine to an otherwise afflicted planet is extremely helpful in alleviating the difficulties imposed by adverse aspects.

*Sesquiquadrate:* A minor hard aspect, the sesquiquadrate ranks only slightly lower than the semi-square in influence. This aspect creates agitation between planetary energies and gives rise to aggravation and discord.

*Bi-quintile:* A minor easy aspect, the bi-quintile has a moderately harmonious effect; it is of slight significance in a natal horoscope.

*Quincunx:* A minor hard aspect, the quincunx emphasizes the need for adjustment; planetary energies do not combine harmoniously and their expression is strained, uncomfortable.

*Opposition:* A major hard aspect, the opposition is separative in nature. Planets in polarity present a challenge as well as an attraction and antagonism between opposing energies. The opposition is second only to the conjunction in strength.

*Parallel:* A major hard aspect, the parallel has a unifying effect for good or ill depending upon the nature of the planets involved. A harmonious parallel reinforces planetary influence; a disharmonious parallel induces discord and conflict.

*Contraparallel:* A major hard aspect, the contraparallel is disruptive; planetary energies are at cross-purposes.

### *Special Aspect Configurations*

Several aspects may combine to form a particular pattern or configuration. The influence of combined aspects may alter or extend that of the aspects considered individually.

*Stellium or multiple conjunction:* This configuration is composed of three or more planets that form a series of conjunctions. Some authorities reserve the term stellium for those series of conjunctions that occur within one sign; the term multiple conjunction is then applied to a series of conjunctions that extend from one sign into another. The stellium focuses planetary activity in accordance with the houses and signs involved. A member of a stellium is influenced by aspects made to other members of the stellium even if the orb is too wide to normally include that planet. This is called aspect by *association*. Associative aspects broaden the influence of the initial aspect.

*T-square:* A T-square is formed when two planets in opposition both square the same third planet. The squared planet acts as a focal point for the tension generated by the planets in opposition; it represents the means of resolving attendant difficulties and surmounting the obstacles inherent in this configuration. A cardinal T-square is one in which each planet occupies a different sign of the cardinal quadruplicity; it prompts impatience and urges decisive, often hasty action, which can create greater problems than existed initially. A fixed T-square implies endurance and resistance in the face of adversity, but it can produce inflexibility, which inhibits progress. A mutable T-square gives more leeway. The easiest course may be to try to avoid or ignore difficulties, but such action does nothing to resolve them. T-squares create conflict but they also spark ambition. A dissociate T-square (one that contains signs belonging to mixed quadruplicities) does not carry the impact that a cardinal, fixed or mutable T-square wields. The symbol for a T-square is "T"; the crossbar denotes the opposition and the vertical line indicates the planet, which is square to both ends of the opposition.

*Grand square or grand cross:* This configuration consists of four squares and two oppositions and contains at least one planet in each member of the same quadruplicity. This formation differs from that of the T-square with the addition of another planet placed opposite the "squared" planet. The extreme tension produced by the grand square creates a state of constant struggle and crisis. The affairs of the planets and houses involved undergo continuous upheaval; difficulties are consistent with the occupied

quadruplicity. There is no focal planet in this configuration; each planet is under stress. The planet in the grand square that forms the largest number of favorable aspects with other planets is the key to partial resolution of problems. A trine or sextile is extremely helpful here. A dissociate (mixed) grand square signifies conflict as described by the individual aspects, but it is not as difficult as a cardinal, fixed or mutable grand square. The symbol for the grand square is "⊠." Each corner of the square represents a squared planet; the X signifies the two oppositions.

*Grand trine:* This configuration is formed when three planets that occupy different signs of the same triplicity form mutual trines. A most fortunate combination, it indicates ease and a smooth flow of planetary energies. A grand trine does much to alleviate the strain produced by adverse aspects. The affairs of the planets and houses that are affected by the grand trine bring benefits and pleasure. A grand trine that is placed in fire signs confers inspiration and creativity; an earth grand trine is associated with material blessings; an air grand trine enriches intellectual expression and mental development; a water grand trine stresses compassion, receptivity and responsiveness. A grand trine composed of mixed elements (dissociate) lacks cohesiveness; nonetheless, three trines in a horoscope are certainly advantageous. The symbol for a grand trine is "△"; the element (triplicity) is noted in the center of the triangle.

*Yod:* A yod occurs when two planets in sextile both form a quincunx with the same third planet. The planet that is in quincunx with the other two represents the action point of the yod; the point directly opposite in the zodiac is the reaction point. The reaction point will be at or near the midpoint of the two planets in sextile. Planetary action induced at the action point produces consequences at the reaction point; the effect influences all three planets as well as the affairs of the house that contains the reaction point. The yod has a karmic connotation; the action point represents cause, the reaction point shows effect. The yod is associated with circumstances not of one's own making; one shapes his or her destiny in the affected areas according to how such conditions are met. The symbol for the yod is 'Y.' The arms of the Y represent the planets in sextile; the vertical line indicates the planet to which the other two are quincunx.

## *Aspect Lines*

Lines that connect planets in aspect may be drawn on the face of the horoscope to give a visual representation of the aspects and aspect configurations. Major aspects may be indicated by a solid line, minor aspects by a broken line. It is easy to spot the various aspects if a different color is used for each. Conjunctions, parallels and contraparallels are not usually indicated by lines. Nor are aspect lines drawn to the angles, Nodes or the Part of Fortune. Aspect lines permit one to see at a glance which planets are well aspected and which are afflicted and to readily identify special aspect configurations.

## *Midpoints*

Sensitive degrees in a horoscope, called midpoints, are usually calculated along with aspects. A direct midpoint is that point in the zodiac and in the horoscope lying exactly midway between two planets. When aspected by a third planet it describes by house and sign position a common focus of interest, which links the three planets as indicated by the aspect. There are two such points for each pair of planets. For example, 10° Virgo is a midpoint of Venus at 10° Leo and Jupiter at 10° Libra; the opposite degree and other direct midpoint, 10° Pisces, also lies midway between the two planets. Planets that aspect these midpoints (within 1° orb) influence both Venus and Jupiter, although not as strongly as if in direct aspect with the planets themselves. The conjunction, the most influential midpoint aspect, provides a direct channel for release of the energies of all three planets involved.

Any point in a horoscope that forms an angle of 45°, 90° or 135° (semi-square, square or sesquiquadrate) with a direct midpoint is an indirect midpoint. Aspects to these points give clues to subtle relationships among planets.

Indirect midpoints are frequently omitted in a natal horoscope. They are, however, useful in determining future trends and events, as are direct midpoints. Potentials described in the natal horoscope often manifest when a progressed or transiting planet comes to the degree occupied by a midpoint (conjuncts the midpoint). Midpoint conjunctions are most significant when the two planets involved form a natal aspect, as in the Venus/Jupiter example above (Venus sextile Jupiter). A progressed or transiting planet that



conjuncts the midpoint of two planets in aspect natally prompts an outward function of the natal aspect. A progressed or transiting conjunction to a midpoint of two planets not in aspect natally sets the stage for events, but activation depends upon reinforcement by planetary aspects (natal or progressed).

For clarity, midpoints, also called half-sums, are listed in zodiacal sequence rather than entered in the horoscope; they are written in the following style:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{♀} / \text{♃} &= 10^\circ \text{♍} \\ \text{♀} / \text{♃} &= 10^\circ \text{♋} \end{aligned}$$

When calculations for midpoints and aspects are completed, the horoscope is ready for study and delineation.

# DELINEATION

# 15 *Methodology*

Delineation of a horoscope involves more than interpretation of astrological factors. A horoscope contains a wealth of information and the key to delineation lies in synthesizing the various components into a cohesive whole. Some items of information may seem to conflict with others. It is up to the astrologer to analyze and weigh the data, to correlate the findings and to place the proper emphasis on each astrological fact. If apparently contradictory findings appear, the astrologer must first determine if the deductions are valid from an astrological point of view. If no error is discovered, the astrologer must decide whether one piece of data outweighs the other in influence or if the items represent a point of major conflict in the character or life of the individual.

Bear in mind that the planets energize the horoscope, the signs color the expression of planetary energies, the houses denote the direction of these energies and aspects qualify planetary energies and direct planetary influence throughout various parts of the horoscope. No single component of the horoscope can be isolated from the others.

With practice, every astrologer develops the particular system of organizing data that is most natural for him or her. The beginner usually makes comprehensive notes based on each of the astrological factors and the corresponding deductions (interpretations). One method is to list interpretational notes under specific categories that correspond to the areas of life described in the horoscope. A piece of astrological information that applies to more than one area of life is entered under each applicable category and interpreted accordingly. Each astrological factor

is listed beside the corresponding deduction(s). This procedure serves as a check against omissions and other mistakes and enables one to verify the findings.

It is simplest to jot down interpretational notes on large index cards or in a loose-leaf notebook, reserving one card or one page for each category. It is an easy matter to insert additional cards or pages as needed for lengthy categories. Suggested categories include physical characteristics, intellectual aptitudes and interests, emotional qualities, career potential, financial prospects, romance, marital outlook, family life, children, friendship, social interests, hobbies, health and miscellaneous activities. Other categories may be added or some combined to suit the individual horoscope.

Obvious characteristics of a horoscope may be noted on the chart form for easy reference. Where applicable, deductions based on these characteristics are entered in the interpretational notes under the correct category; then each element of the horoscope is studied in detail. The following procedure assures that no important points are overlooked.

1. Consider the general planetary distribution in the horoscope.
  - (a) Note the number of planets which lie east and west of the MC-IC axis and the number which lie north and south of the Ascendant-Descendant axis. In the interpretational notes enter a general observation based upon hemispheric and quadrant emphasis.
  - (b) Identify the shaping pattern of the horoscope. Base the identification on the distribution of planets only; disregard the Nodes and Part of

- Fortune. Enter a corresponding deduction in the interpretational notes.
2. Consider planetary distribution among the signs.
    - (a) List the number of planets in each triplicity; enter in the interpretational notes a deduction concerning the general characteristics of the individual based upon the most heavily occupied triplicity. If the same number of planets occupy more than one triplicity, and these triplicities are the most heavily populated, consider the sign on the Ascendant as a deciding factor. If the Ascending sign does not belong to one of the triplicities of interest, use the sign on the MC. If it is unsuitable and the Sun sign belongs to one of the dominant triplicities, give emphasis to that triplicity. If no deciding factor is found, give equal weight to the most heavily occupied triplicities. Do not count the Nodes or Part of Fortune.
    - (b) List the number of planets in each quadruplicity and enter a deduction based on the dominant quadruplicity. In case of an equal distribution, use the above sequence to determine dominance.
    - (c) List the number of planets in positive and negative signs; enter a deduction based on positive/negative emphasis. Equal distribution denotes balance between dynamic and passive qualities.
  3. Consider planetary distribution in the houses.
    - (a) Enter a deduction based on house distribution according to angular, succedent and cadent house emphasis.
    - (b) Enter a deduction based on planetary dominance in the individual, temporal, relative and terminal houses.
  4. As a reminder when determining planetary influence in the horoscope, note on the chart form all planetary dignities, debilities and mutual receptions. Also note the chart ruler (the planetary ruler of the sign on the Ascendant).
  5. In the interpretational notes, enter a general observation based on the final dispositor or a circle of dispositors if either exists.
  6. Note any special aspect configurations. Interpret.
  7. From the aspectarian, determine if about half of all major zodiacal aspects are of one particular kind (conjunction, sextile, etc.). Do not include the parallel or contraparallel in the count. These are not zodiacal aspects; they are based on declination. Note the general influence of the type of aspect that is in the majority. Conjunction emphasis lends the power of unification to planetary drives; conditions that permit the focusing of energies and encourage the merging of interests are indicated; activity is expressed with and through other people. A majority of sextiles signifies opportune circumstances that foster productive use of energies and enable one to handle the affairs of life to best advantage. Square emphasis stimulates ambition; the individual must rise to the challenge of obstacles and trying conditions or be defeated by adversities. Trine emphasis denotes harmonious conditions that allow one's affairs to flow smoothly; the rewards of life come easily and abundantly to the individual. A predominance of oppositions gives the individual a sharp awareness of the polarities and contrasts in life; conflicting conditions and opposing interests force the individual to adequately balance internal and external affairs.
  8. Note any planet that has no major or minor aspect. An unaspected planet has no effective outlet. Its influence is limited and weakened because its energy is not integrated in the horoscope and, therefore, corresponding drives are not integrated in the totality of the person.
  9. Note the position of the prenatal eclipse.
  10. Note the event if a solar or lunar eclipse occurred on the birthdate.
  11. Interpret and record the meaning of the sign on the cusp of the first house (the Ascendant) and any sign intercepted within the house. Interpret according to sign and house position the planet(s) that occupies the first house, the planet(s) that rules the sign on the cusp and the planet(s) that rules a sign intercepted within the house. Interpret the aspects that these planets form. Study the natural ruler(s) of the house and any planets that occupy the natural sign of the house to determine the influence these planets exert in this house. Repeat the same procedure for each house in the horoscope. Include interpretation of the Nodes and Part of Fortune, and evaluation of the Vertex, East Point and eclipse effects.

When interpreting sign positions, consider the decanate, duad and degree (anaretic, critical, nodal or fixed star).

In judging a planet's strength, evaluate its standing in the horoscope according to the guidelines given in Chapter 3. When determining the emphasis of planetary action, consider the effect of the planet's motion (direct, retrograde or stationary). Study a planet's total sphere of influence, which includes the characteristics, drives and affairs naturally governed by the planet: the affairs of the house it rules and occupies in the horoscope, the affairs of its natural house; the affairs associated with the sign in which it is placed; and the natural affairs of the houses that are ruled and occupied by the planet(s) it aspects. Weigh a planet's influence in each area in light of the influence other planets exert in the same area.

An aspect's influence is weighed in terms of the other aspects formed by the same two planets with other planets in the horoscope. An aspect that forms part of a special configuration is interpreted accordingly. The aspect meanings given in Chapters 16 through 26 are to be interpreted in relation to the affairs or characteristics the aspects influence. Consider whether the aspect is approaching or departing, applying or separating.

The house of the prenatal eclipse is emphasized; the eclipse event must be considered in the interpretation of the astrological factors that influence this house. If a natal solar or lunar eclipse occurred on the birthdate, the effects of the eclipse are taken into account in the interpretation of the eclipsed luminary.

An alternate order of procedure that may be substituted in Step 11 follows. Instead of methodically studying the astrological factors that influence each house, one organizes the interpretation around the planets. Beginning with the Sun or chart ruler, each planet's sign and house position are interpreted. Its aspects are interpreted, its influence in the house it rules in the horoscope and the signs associated with that house are interpreted, and its influence in its natural house is noted. Lastly, the Nodes, Part of Fortune, Vertex and East Point are interpreted. With either procedure all the information contained in the horoscope is transferred to the interpretational notes and arranged systematically under the various categories.

After all astrological factors are interpreted and listed in appropriate categories, findings are analyzed objectively as they relate to specific areas of life. As

the interpretational notes are reviewed, the same notation will probably be discovered beside different astrological factors, and this is as it should be. More than one indication is needed to confirm a given point.

It is usually easier for the beginner to write the final analysis of a horoscope rather than to give it verbally in person or on tape. Before writing or giving an oral report, it is wise to make an outline that covers all areas of life. The information contained in the interpretational notes can then be easily condensed into a readable or listenable form that is coherent and complete.

### *Delineation Exercise: The First House*

The general characteristics of a horoscope, noted in Steps 1 through 10, are incorporated, as applicable, in the analysis of the four major features: planets, signs, houses and aspects.

Susan's Ascendant (refer to Susan's horoscope, Chapter 13, Figure 18), 23°49' Taurus, is in the Capricorn (third) decanate of Taurus, ruled by Venus and sub-ruled by Saturn, and the Aquarius (tenth) duad, sub-ruled by Uranus and Saturn. Saturn is relatively strong in the chart, exalted (in Libra), in a critical degree (0° of a cardinal sign) and fairly well aspected (a sextile, square, trine, quincunx and quintile). It emphasizes the materialistic qualities of Taurus, reinforces worldly ambition and adds a serious aspect to the personality as Ascendant sub-ruler (decanate and duad).

Uranian influence (tenth duad) introduces progressive attitudes and behavior that is more unconventional than is characteristic of either Taurus or Capricorn (decan). Aquarian tendencies are more pronounced than one would normally expect from duad influence because the Sun is in the Aquarius (third) duad of Sagittarius, and Uranus, dispossited by the Moon, is the leading planet in a Locomotive (the shaping of the horoscope), which indicates self-motivation and dynamic action (refer to Chapter 9).

As the leading planet in the second house, Uranus indicates that Susan is materially-oriented as well as goal-oriented (leading planet of Locomotive and ruler of the tenth house, Aquarius on the MC) supporting indications described by the Ascending sign. Uranus, as leading planet, also shows that she is motivated by a drive for progress and change, a desire for emotional

freedom and the need to prove herself as an individual without family help or restraint (Uranus in Cancer, parallel the Moon). Uranus forms a semi-square with the Ascendant, which contributes to personal idiosyncracies, avant-garde behavior, and, because of second house influence, financial inconsistencies (refer to Chapters 3, 4, 7, 8 and 17).

The square between Saturn and Uranus, the sub-rulers of the Ascendant, places the need for discipline in conflict with the desire for freedom. Saturn forms a quintile with Venus, which is both its dispositor (as ruler of Libra) and the Ascendant ruler (as ruler of Taurus). This may help Susan utilize Saturnian energies to control and direct Uranian energies constructively, perhaps through creative activities or children (Saturn in the fifth house), or education and travel (Saturn is the ruler of the ninth house with Capricorn on the cusp) and in her life's work (Saturn natural ruler and co-ruler, with Uranus, of the tenth house). She may be especially drawn toward creative activities and children as outlets for personality conflicts since the fifth house in her chart is ruled by the Sun (creative self-expression) and is also the house sensitized by her prenatal eclipse, which occurred on September 12, 1950, in 18°48' Virgo, intercepted in the fifth house. These affairs become more prominent during periods in life when later eclipses activate the house by position or aspect.

Cardinal influence in the Ascendant (Capricorn decanate) encourages initiative and ambition; double fixed sign influence (Taurus and Aquarius) adds stability to efforts. These observations are supported in part by aspect emphasis and planetary distributions.

Zodiacal aspects are about evenly divided between easy and hard aspects; however, of the sixteen major zodiacal aspects, six are squares, more than enough to spur ambition.

Modal house distribution, fairly well balanced, places joint emphasis on angular and succedent houses (four planets in angular houses, four in succedent and two in cadent houses) suggesting that Susan has the initiative to begin action (angular) and the steadiness to complete that action (succedent). (Refer to Chapter 5.)

Because Aries is the cardinal/fire sign, the combination of cardinal/fire emphasis in Susan's horoscope (four planets in cardinal signs, three in fixed, three in mutable and five planets in fire signs, one in earth, three in air, one in water) suggests Arian

qualities: motivation, initiative, action, spontaneity, enthusiasm. Heavy positive emphasis (eight planets in positive signs, two in negative) reinforces outgoing, dynamic traits (see Chapter 2).

Venus, chart ruler (Ascendant ruler), placed in the Aries (second) decan of Sagittarius (11°00'), ruled by Jupiter and sub-ruled by Mars (natural ruler of the first house) and in the Aries (fifth) duad, sub-ruled by Mars, also reflects Arian qualities. Behavior is somewhat aggressive and competitive, but since Mars, exalted in Capricorn, is in the Taurus decanate (Leo duad) and does not afflict Venus or the Ascendant, Martian influence here is not abrasive.

Rather weak ties link Venus with its dispositor, Jupiter. Both planets form aspects with the Sun and Saturn. Jupiter is in the Libra (third) decan of Aquarius, sub-ruled by Venus. Although the Sun/Jupiter square promotes exaggerated self-expression, Sagittarian influence on the personality, through Venus and the Ascendant, leads to good will, sociability and idealistic attitudes.

Jupiterian influence promotes broader interests than a Taurus Ascendant usually suggests. Functional house distribution (two planets in individual houses, two in temporal, three in relative and three in terminal houses) supports this assumption. The balanced distribution indicates that Susan does not neglect one broad area of life to focus excessive attention on other spheres. She shows interest in personal and social concerns (individual and relative houses) and in material and spiritual concerns (temporal and terminal houses). She may, of course, show more or less interest in a particular area within a general sphere if other factors in the horoscope so indicate.

Venus is accidentally dignified in the seventh house, and forms a conjunction and a parallel with the Sun, which occupies the Jupiter (first) decan and Aquarius (third) duad of Sagittarius. These aspects increase sociability and friendliness. They reinforce financial drives, material interests, aesthetic tastes and innovative attitudes (Aquarian influence) described by the Ascendant.

With both the chart ruler and the Sun placed in the seventh house, it is clear that self-expression depends upon interaction with society and cooperation with associates, a conception supported by western hemisphere emphasis (eight planets west, two east). The implication that Susan is influenced by society, that she reacts to circumstances imposed by society rather than

initiates action, appears to contradict other findings. The degree to which society actually influences her and the sphere of such influence, general or particular, as well as the direction and strength of self-initiative, depends upon the final analysis of all relevant factors. However, Sagittarians demand independence, and with the Mars and Uranus influence also urging independent action, she has a natural tendency to shy away from freedom-threatening relationships and to actively rebel against personally restrictive conditions.

The Sun/Venus conjunction is all the more significant because the Moon (disposited by the Sun and accidentally dignified in its natural house, the fourth), trines both planets. The three planets that bear directly upon the personality, Venus (by virtue of Ascendant rulership), the Sun and the Moon are closely interrelated and harmoniously so. It would seem that Susan is a well-integrated personality who likes herself and who can find satisfaction in what she does as well as in the relationships she maintains. However, contraparallels between the Moon and the same two planets (Sun and Venus) indicate emotional conflicts stemming from family relationships and the marital situation. These aspects suggest that Susan may have difficulty relating emotionally on both personal and public levels of social interaction. The trines (applying, see Chapter 14) mitigate potentially severe effects of the contraparallels. They signify the capacity to cope with emotional problems, to resolve emotional conflicts, which bar emotional fulfillment, and to achieve a large measure of emotional satisfaction.

The only other major Venus aspect, a contraparallel with Pluto in combination with the Pluto/Ascendant square, coarsens the natural physical beauty and refined taste associated with Venus as Ascendant ruler and indicates discord in seventh house relationships (Pluto rules Scorpio, which appears on the cusp).

The one minor Venus aspect, the quintile to Saturn, is relatively unimportant as an isolated factor. But because Saturn sub-rules the decanate and duad occupied by the Ascendant, which is ruled by Venus, the aspect gains greater significance. It provides a harmonious link, however weak, between the ruler and sub-ruler of the Ascendant, thus harmonizing energies and strengthening common characteristics.

Venus aspects, examined narrowly as they apply to the first house, have a broader connotation in terms

of the houses that the planets in aspect occupy and rule. Venus aspects link affairs of the first house, which it rules, the sixth house, which it also rules in Susan's horoscope (Libra on the cusp), the seventh house, which it occupies and rules naturally, and the second house, which it rules naturally to the affairs governed by planets in aspect. From this standpoint, the Sun/Venus conjunction assists vitality, cooperative endeavors, family affairs (Leo, ruled by the Sun, on the cusp of the fourth house), romantic interests and relationships with children (Leo on the cusp of the fifth house and natural sign of the fifth). The ego and creative self-expression, as signified by the Sun, are tied to the first house and all that Venus and the Sun govern and aspect in the horoscope.

Aspects to the Ascendant as well as those to the ruler of the Ascendant are considered in analyzing first house affairs. Other than Pluto, no planet forms a major aspect with the Ascendant (within a 5° orb). The North Node forms a sextile (South Node a trine) and the Part of Fortune a trine with the Ascendant relating eleventh house (occupied by the North Node), fifth house (occupied by the South Node) and ninth house (occupied by the Part of Fortune) interests to first house affairs.

Of the three minor aspects that planets form with the Ascendant (Moon quintile Ascendant, Mercury quincunx Ascendant and Uranus semi-square Ascendant), the Uranus/Ascendant semi-square is the strongest (by nature of the aspect) and the most important because Uranus sub-rules, in conjunction with Saturn, the duad occupied by the Ascendant.

The Moon/Ascendant quintile reinforces the Moon/Venus trine strengthening harmony of personality and further offsetting the severity of inner conflicts.

The Mercury/Ascendant quincunx implies a need to make minor adjustments in projecting thoughts and ideas (Mercury in Sagittarius, its sign of detriment, suggests a tendency to skip details), in relations with siblings (ruled by Mercury naturally), in personal attitudes toward eighth house affairs (Mercury is placed in the eighth house), in second (Gemini on the cusp) and fifth (Virgo intercepted) house affairs. This quincunx has little significance unless other Mercury aspects or related factors give added weight.

Through rulerships, dispositorships and aspects, the first house is linked to every other house in Susan's horoscope, pointing to personal motivations as strong

factors in all activities. The circle of dispositors shown in her horoscope supports interrelatedness since all planets, energizers of house affairs, are linked in a continuous chain.

Examination of the first house indicates that Susan projects determination, responsibility and appreciation for beauty and comfort in life. Her Taurus Ascendant and related factors give practical direction to the initiative and action expressed by fire qualities in her nature. Susan is portrayed as candid, friendly, ambitious, energetic, dependable, innovative, somewhat willful and highly individualistic. Further evaluation of the Sun and the Moon is necessary to gain full insight into her personality.

It is evident that emotional dissatisfaction motivates some of her actions and decisions. The psychological implications of intra-personal conflicts are unclear at this point as is the emotional impact associated with personal relationships and public interaction.

As each house, planet and sign is studied in detail, some modifications to deductions based on first house factors may be required. It is impossible to obtain a well-rounded view from one or even several factors of a horoscope. However, upon examination and evaluation of all factors, a clearer picture of Susan's nature and potentials should emerge.

In her thirties at the time of this writing, Susan, after experiencing career disappointments, an unhappy marriage and subsequent divorce, is a well-adjusted young woman who, through self-understanding, recognizes her weaknesses and capitalizes on her strengths. At present, she holds a responsible and well-paying position (Taurus and Capricorn) with an advertising agency (Sagittarius), which produces commercials for television and radio (Aquarius). Spare time outlets include working with children (Leo and fifth house) and handcrafts (Venus).

Final analysis reveals that although Susan tends to look on the brighter side of things (she is a very positive personality), she is realistic about herself and practical in her attitudes toward life. For this reason, a practical, realistic approach was taken in discussing astrological potentials with her, an approach that she understood and appreciated.

An astrologer who establishes a good rapport with clients and earns their trust will find that clients return again and again for consultations, for astrology does not stop with the natal chart; that is merely the

beginning. Potentials in the natal chart are brought to life when they are activated by progressed and transiting planets. The dynamics of the natal chart in relation to progressed indications are discussed in Chapter 27.

## *Counseling*

Astrology reveals a person's strengths, weaknesses and potentials. It points out the mode of approach or focus best suited to the individual as the means of overcoming obstacles and making the best possible use of his or her potentials in each area of life. It neither condemns nor sanctions a particular way of life. In translating the symbolism of the horoscope into language meaningful to the client, the astrologer deals with astrological facts. It is not the function of the astrologer to make moral judgments; personal views and standards are not acceptable in delineation.

Many clients tend to develop close ties with their astrologers, whom they regard as confidants and friends. It is difficult at times for an astrologer not to exert personal influence, unwittingly perhaps, when a troubled client inquires about a specific course of action. However, an astrologer's advice is correctly limited to pointing out all ramifications evident in the horoscope that pertain to the inquiry. The choice to act or not and in what direction rests with the client. The astrologer is ethically bound to protect confidences revealed in consultations, to honor the client's trust and to counsel as objectively and honestly as humanly possible.



# 16 *Sun Aspects*

The interpretation of a particular aspect depends upon the basic significance of the aspect, the nature of the planets that form the aspect, the signs that these planets occupy, and the houses and affairs that come under the influence of the planets in aspect. The interpretations given in the text must be modified according to sign expression and adapted to the affairs governed by the planets in aspect. An aspect's influence may be qualified by other aspects to the same planet; however, one aspect does not cancel out another aspect. For example, a trine or sextile to an afflicted planet may ease the discomfort associated with difficulties or enable one to cope more readily with difficulties, but it will not prevent difficulties from arising.

## *Sun Conjunctions*

A person's life force and the drive for self-expression are brought into focus by the energies of planets in conjunction with the Sun. In the final analysis, the effect of a conjunction depends largely upon the aspects made to the conjunction by other planets. A conjunction which has an orb of 30' or less is termed *cazimi*. The energy of a planet which lies so close to the Sun is thought to be "burnt up" by the heat of the Sun. A planet which forms a *cazimi* conjunction with the Sun has no identity of its own; its principles are engulfed by the ego. A conjunction whose orb is between 31' and 3° is called *combust*. A combusted planet does not operate independently of the Sun; its energy is integrated with that of the Sun. Except when it forms a *cazimi* or *combust* conjunction, the Sun

vitalizes any planet it aspects. A *cazimi* or *combust* conjunction weakens a planet, but it gives greater force to the Sun's drives.

*Sun Conjunction Moon*: This aspect unites the ego and the emotions. The drive for achievement is closely allied with instinctual urges. Self-satisfaction is increased because the drive for self-expression is in harmony with the emotions. Whether or not one's actions are correct, the individual suffers little guilt or remorse unless other factors in the horoscope indicate differently; this person feels that what he or she does is right. The new Moon (Sun/Moon conjunction) strengthens self-motivation directed toward the affairs ruled by the Sun and Moon within the context of sign expression. The individual identifies with the home and views the parents as a unit. If the conjunction is afflicted, tendencies toward self-centeredness and lack of conscience are intensified. Emotional disturbances, if they occur, deplete vitality and can, therefore, adversely affect physical well-being.

*Sun Conjunction Mercury*: Since Mercury is never more than 28° apart from the Sun, the conjunction is the only major zodiacal aspect that can occur between these two planets. This conjunction strengthens the will to act on ideas. The individual does not merely think over or talk about plans, but gives concrete expression to ideas through action. This aspect restricts self-objectivity; one fails to recognize shortcomings and character flaws because the ego influences thought patterns. If the conjunction is afflicted, willfulness and egotism are increased. The individual is inclined to be nervous and may lack good motor coordination.

*Sun Conjunct Venus:* The conjunction is the only major zodiacal aspect the Sun can form with Venus because these two planets are never more than 48° apart in the zodiac. It denotes charm, good looks and popularity. The individual is affectionate, companionable and socially active. In a male horoscope this aspect can indicate effeminacy unless it is in a masculine (positive) sign or Mars is strong in the chart. This conjunction fosters aesthetic leanings and even if actual talent is not indicated elsewhere in the horoscope, appreciation of the arts, beauty and culture is signified. Financial drives are strong motivating factors. If the conjunction is afflicted, laziness, self-indulgence, procrastination, hedonism, vanity, and/or materialism are possible depending upon the nature of the afflicting planets and the sign the conjunction occupies.

*Sun Conjunct Mars:* This aspect signifies boldness and self-assertiveness within the limits of sign expression. Initiative is combined with willpower to produce forceful and courageous action. This aspect fosters heroism and valor. Much physical activity is directed toward the affairs these planets influence in the horoscope. If the conjunction is afflicted, aggressive tendencies manifest as combativeness and belligerence; vital energies are burned up through physical overexertion. If Uranus is the afflicting planet, the individual is prone to accidental mishaps.

*Sun Conjunct Jupiter:* This conjunction protects the vital life forces and enriches creative self-expression. Jupiter increases the willpower and confidence of the Sun; the individual is high-spirited, optimistic and self-assured. Jupiter introduces an element of good fortune into the affairs ruled by the Sun and Jupiter. Afflictions to the conjunction generate improvidence, wastefulness, extravagance and too much reliance on luck. One tends to overestimate personal abilities and to inflate self-importance. The inclination to indulge in excesses, which cause obesity or are otherwise detrimental to health, is present.

*Sun Conjunct Saturn:* In this aspect Saturn restricts the vitality and disciplines the self-expression of the Sun. A strong sense of duty is instilled. The individual must work diligently to achieve objectives. If the conjunction is well aspected, constructive self-restraint, focus, and responsible action are signified; solar energies can be channeled productively, though

painstaking effort is required. If the conjunction is afflicted, continual frustrations and setbacks may induce discouragement and despair. Self-confidence is reduced; natural self-expression is inhibited by an inferior self-opinion.

*Sun Conjunct Uranus:* This conjunction indicates sparkling vitality and adds to personal magnetism. Creative self-expression is original, individualistic, innovative, inventive, uninhibited and unconventional. The individual is highly intuitive and may possess occult abilities. If the conjunction is afflicted, the individual is prone to actions that are contradictory, precipitous, radical, rebellious, eccentric, erratic and unpredictable.

*Sun Conjunct Neptune:* This aspect generates strong spiritual and inspirational tendencies. If other factors in the horoscope confirm, the ego is expressed through the intangible; this is the aspect of the mystic and the visionary. If the conjunction is afflicted, self-delusion, escapism, confusion and self-destructive leanings are indicated. Physical vitality is low unless a favorable aspect from Mars increases energy.

*Sun Conjunct Pluto:* This conjunction unites the power of Pluto with the vital life force of the Sun, a potent combination. The Plutonian potential for good or ill cannot be ignored, for it is linked irrevocably to the ego, the self. This aspect gives vast powers to the individual, powers that can be used constructively or destructively. Here lies the opportunity for self-regeneration and massive influence of the highest order in the area of chart activation; a power-hungry, ruthless drive for domination is also possible. The choice is one the individual must face. In this aspect Pluto demands a commitment from the Sun.

*Sun Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* The Sun in conjunction with the North Node simultaneously forms an opposition with the South Node; both aspects are considered in the interpretation. This configuration suggests that a solar or lunar eclipse occurred near the date of birth. If this eclipse is a natal or prenatal eclipse, these aspects are emphasized accordingly. These aspects direct one's attention toward avenues that permit extensive self-development in accordance with the influence of the conjunction. Willpower is the key with which to overcome restrictive habit patterns as indicated by the South Node.

*Sun Conjunct Part of Fortune:* This aspect shows that self-directed efforts in the area of horoscope activation are fruitful and materially rewarding. Afflictions to the conjunction do not necessarily deny success, but achievement is made more difficult.

*Sun Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* The interpretation for a Sun/Ascendant conjunction automatically includes the Sun/Descendant opposition. These aspects enhance vitality, willpower and self-confidence. One is extremely conscious of his or her individuality, abilities and ambitions. This person strives to achieve distinction through personal efforts rather than rely on circumstances or the help of other people. If the conjunction is afflicted, the individual is inclined to be conceited and given to self-aggrandizement.

*Sun Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* These aspects rivet one's attention on career and professional status and urge one to seek public acclaim; they are indicative of the individual who sacrifices family interests for the sake of worldly attainments unless other factors in the horoscope emphasize family affairs. Afflictions to the conjunction suggest misdirected or futile career endeavors, the pursuit of vocational goals for which the individual is unsuited and perhaps family obligations that interfere with career ambitions.

## Sun Sextiles

Sun sextiles indicate opportune avenues of self-expression; they point out those lines of endeavor to which one's abilities can be advantageously applied. They enable one to bypass, overcome or find the means to deal with adversities that are generated by afflictions to the Sun.

*Sun Sextile Moon:* This aspect fosters success because the drive for significance is in harmony with emotional drives. These people feel confident and secure about themselves. Self-expression is not hindered by the need to justify personal actions. This sextile enables one to establish a comfortable rapport with the public. It also lends to domestic accord because the individual wants to create a home life that is similar to the harmonious family environment remembered as a major influence in childhood.

*Sun Sextile Mars:* This sextile strengthens the vital life forces and adds to natural incentive and enthusiasm. The individual is confident and decisive within the dictates of sign characteristics. Fruitful opportunities for constructive self-expression and productive use of physical energies are indicated in the affairs influenced by the Sun and Mars.

*Sun Sextile Jupiter:* With this aspect the fortunate properties of Jupiter manifest as profuse and rewarding opportunities for self-expression in the areas of horoscope influence. Jupiter tends to bring out benevolence, integrity and the more positive Sun sign attributes. The individual has high ideals and unselfish motives.

*Sun Sextile Saturn:* This sextile enables the individual to structure endeavors around concrete objectives in such a manner that position and success can be attained through personal efforts. Progress is made in a gradual, steady climb to the top. This aspect denotes industriousness, perseverance and prudence. The serious, conservative side of one's nature is emphasized.

*Sun Sextile Uranus:* This aspect enhances personal charisma. The individual is forceful, magnetic and intuitive. Leadership ability is supplemented by a dramatic style of expression and an accurate sense of timing. Occult leanings, which frequently manifest as an interest in astrology, are indicated.

*Sun Sextile Neptune:* This sextile inspires creative self-expression. Hopes and dreams make up a large part of life and one has the drive to transform those dreams into reality. This aspect stirs spiritual and psychic tendencies, aesthetic leanings, sensitivity and compassion. If artistic talent is shown elsewhere in the horoscope, this aspect generates creative inspiration and confirms such ability.

*Sun Sextile Pluto:* This aspect regenerates willpower and the vital life forces. The individual is able to renew self-confidence, determination and physical stamina through the restorative powers of inner resources. This sextile signifies development of creative abilities and evolution through self-expression. It indicates opportunities that permit the individual to master the affairs ruled by the Sun and Pluto.

*Sun Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* The Sun in sextile to the North Node is also trine the South

Node; both aspects are included in the interpretation. These aspects create conditions that are helpful to the individual's growth, conditions that foster acceptance of the individual as a person, conditions that produce recognition of one's abilities. The individual has the ability to conquer the restrictive attitudes or habits represented by the South Node.

*Sun Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile indicates rewarding opportunities for successful self-expression in the affairs that are influenced by the Sun and Part of Fortune.

*Sun Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* These aspects insure opportunities for self-expression on a personal and individual level. They also encourage cooperation and harmonious relations with society. This person is able to function equally well as an independent individual or as a member of a partnership or team.

*Sun Sextile MC Trine IC:* These aspects promote opportunities for career and professional advancement; they open up areas of business and political activity if such interests are confirmed by other factors in the horoscope. Domestic affairs run smoothly for the individual. Home-related responsibilities do not interfere with career aspirations unless conflicting indications are present in the horoscope because this person tries to maintain a family life that supports worldly ambitions.

## *Sun Squares*

Sun squares block creative self-expression in the areas of horoscope influence and create obstacles that hinder the individual's drive to achieve. They indicate ego-frustrating experiences and produce stress, which can be harmful to one's health.

*Sun Square Moon:* This square generates much inner tension. The individual derives little emotional satisfaction from personal achievements. Discontentment and emotional frustration hinder natural self-expression. Self-consciousness creates strained relations with the public in general and with members of the opposite sex in particular. Parental conflicts during childhood color the individual's adult attitudes toward home and family.

*Sun Square Mars:* This aspect unleashes the passion of Mars and the vitality of the Sun. Much hardship is created through impulsive actions, many of which are motivated by arrogance or anger. A favorable aspect to Saturn from either the Sun or Mars will do much to stabilize the unrestrained energy and ambition that is generated by this square. This aspect denotes a hot temper, pugnacity, argumentativeness, extreme competitiveness and, if other aspects confirm, an inclination toward cruelty and violence.

*Sun Square Jupiter:* This square produces conceit, self-indulgence, overbearing self-pride, an exaggerated self-image and excessive optimism. These characteristics create problems for the individual, which stand in the way of acceptance and success. Tendencies toward pomposity, extravagance and ostentation block natural self-expression. Immoderation and intemperance may present a threat to health.

*Sun Square Saturn:* This aspect severely restricts the warmth and vitality of the Sun. The individual tends to be selfish, cold, aloof and extremely reserved. Self-expression is thwarted by the failure to reach out. Trying circumstances and heavy responsibilities represent handicaps to success; with this square, one can achieve ambitions only through hard work and dedicated effort. The father or a child may become a burden to the individual. Recuperative powers and resistance to disease are impaired.

*Sun Square Uranus:* This aspect brings out rebellious tendencies. Willful actions and erratic behavior generate disruptive conditions, which create obstacles to one's ambitions. Self-expression is awkward. Sporadic endeavors that lack sustaining force hinder progress in the affairs ruled by the Sun and Uranus. Lack of caution and disregard for standard procedures can cause mishaps that endanger the health and safety of the individual and imperil the physical well-being of colleagues.

*Sun Square Neptune:* In this square, Neptune weakens basic Sun-sign characteristics and saps the vitality. This aspect produces self-delusion and an unrealistic self-image. The individual is a dreamer; pronounced escapist tendencies exist. The possibility of being deceived or of intentionally deceiving others is indicated. The affairs ruled by the Sun and Neptune

are conducted in a secretive manner; depending upon the tenor of the horoscope, these affairs may or may not be tainted by unscrupulous or fraudulent activities.

*Sun Square Pluto:* With this aspect, Plutonian power is extremely coercive. The urge to achieve is overwhelming and one is inclined to utilize any means available to attain ambitions. Ruthless tactics may be employed to overcome barriers that hinder the drive for power, for the ego demands complete domination in the area of horoscope activation. If confirming factors are present in the horoscope, tendencies that are brutal, corrupt or criminal in nature can emerge.

*Sun Square North Node Square South Node:* These aspects form a T-square configuration. They indicate that the inability to adjust to current trends causes frustrations and creates stumbling blocks. The individual tends to cling to outdated methods or restrictive attitudes (as indicated by the South Node) that restrain self-expression; this person fails to keep pace with the times. In order to overcome these blocks, the individual must direct attention to the areas influenced by the Sun and try to develop positive Sun-sign attributes.

*Sun Square Part of Fortune:* This square describes obstacles that, although they may not frustrate self-expression, hamper the attainment of related objectives. Self-directed activities bear less fruit than might otherwise be expected in the affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune.

*Sun Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* The mutual squares formed by these aspects indicate that the individual does not project a favorable image. This person is at odds with him- or herself and, therefore, at odds with society. In this configuration, the Sun represents the focal point of a T-square; thus it is in those directions, which come under the Sun's influence, that the individual must apply constructive efforts.

*Sun Square MC Square IC:* These aspects denote conflicts between worldly ambitions and family interests. The individual must pursue the avenues indicated by the Sun in order to surmount barriers that interfere with career success and domestic harmony.

## *Sun Trines*

Sun trines supplement the leadership potential signified by the Sun. They facilitate self-expression and imply ease and good fortune connected with the affairs governed by the Sun and the planets in trine with the Sun.

*Sun Trine Moon:* This trine produces inner harmony, which in turn enables the individual to function smoothly. Because the individual relates well to other people, he or she can gain acceptance and achieve success in the affairs influenced by the Sun and Moon. This aspect mitigates the effects of adverse aspects to either the Sun or Moon and reduces the emotional frustration that might otherwise accompany afflictions to the luminaries. This trine signifies a happy childhood and promotes a harmonious family life in adulthood.

*Sun Trine Mars:* This aspect produces much vitality, ambition and daring. The individual is enthusiastic, energetic, confident, decisive and competitive. This trine generates spontaneous self-expression and sparks self-motivation. Natural leadership qualities are brought to the fore. It fosters interest and/or ability in sports and promotes physical fitness.

*Sun Trine Jupiter:* This trine gives abundant self-confidence without conceit; it grants self-satisfaction without complacency. A great deal of personal pride and integrity are possessed. This person strives to perfect natural abilities and to utilize talent in a worthy manner. This aspect promotes ease of self-expression and good luck in the affairs governed by the Sun and Jupiter. It encourages interest in religion or philosophy. The vital life forces are safeguarded and one is protected against the debilitating effects of disease.

*Sun Trine Saturn:* This aspect is indicative of success and status. It induces realistic goals and constructive use of abilities. There is respect for authority, convention and tradition. The individual is patient, conservative, diligent and prudent. Self-expression is serious and practical. This aspect indicates longevity if contrary factors are not present in the horoscope.

*Sun Trine Uranus:* This trine generates ingenuity and originality in self-expression. The individual is resourceful, innovative and inventive; he or she has a unique way of doing things. This aspect denotes one who is willing to try that which is new or different; it is the aspect of the experimentalist.

*Sun Trine Neptune:* This trine fosters empathy and compassion; the person truly walks in the shoes of those with whom he or she comes in contact. This aspect fosters spiritual inspiration and psychic ability; it is the aspect of the transcendentalist, the clairvoyant and the medium.

*Sun Trine Pluto:* This aspect creates tremendous will-power and vitality; it produces a sense of self-power or self-destiny. Self-expression is authoritative and masterful. The individual wields much influence and control in the affairs governed by the Sun and Pluto.

*Sun Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* These aspects denote the opportunity and capacity to overcome personal limitations. They reduce the restrictions imposed by the South Node and enable the individual to develop through creative self-expression.

*Sun Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine indicates that the self can be successfully expressed in the affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune.

*Sun Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* These aspects tend to bring out positive personality characteristics. The individual projects a confident, optimistic image. One is able to obtain cooperation and support and to establish harmonious relationships.

*Sun Trine MC Sextile IC:* These aspects describe occupational advantages and family support. They generate a productive and happy home life in combination with career success and status.

## *Sun Oppositions*

Sun oppositions bring conflicts of will into play. Interests that are influenced by a Sun opposition are thrown into prominence. The individual is challenged to take action in the affairs and conditions that are ruled by the Sun and the opposing planet.

*Sun Opposite Moon:* This opposition creates emotional stress and dissatisfaction, which drain vitality. The affairs governed by the Sun and Moon are intensified; they demand the personal attention of the individual. This opposition places stress on the individual's relationships; this person fails to identify with people in a general sense. One tends to categorize men and women separately and is tense around members of the opposite sex. The individual views the mother and father as separate entities, not as a parental unit; because of this, it is difficult for this person to maintain family unity in adult life. The signs of the opposition describe contrasting characteristics in one's nature; inner responses do not coincide with the conscious will. The individual derives little ego satisfaction or emotional pride from creative self-expression in the areas influenced by the opposition. A trine or sextile to the luminaries can provide an avenue for self-expression through which one can constructively channel the energy generated by the opposition.

*Sun Opposite Mars:* This aspect generates animosity and hostility. The affairs that are influenced by the opposition produce sharp disagreements and much strife. These people are aggressive and antagonistic toward those who oppose them or compete against them. This aspect signifies physical strength and indicates a tendency to use physical force as a means of self-expression, especially in a male horoscope. It is characteristic of a bully who browbeats rivals or one who resorts to physical coercion.

*Sun Opposite Jupiter:* This aspect fosters self-aggrandizement and personal extravagance. Self-expression reflects an inflated ego and grandiose ideas. The individual tends to overestimate personal influence or ability and to underestimate opposing forces or conditions. Ostentatious displays of religion or philosophy and presumptuous or pretentious behavior often accompany this opposition unless strong conservative tendencies appear elsewhere in the horoscope. Much vital energy is wasted through excessive practices. Obesity or liver damage can stem from over-indulgence.

*Sun Opposite Saturn:* This opposition stirs conflict between the individual and those who have influence over the pursuit of worldly ambitions. The affairs affected by the opposition produce unwanted obligations

and extensive responsibilities which induce discouragement. One's prestige and status in these affairs is diminished. Self-expression lacks warmth, enthusiasm and vitality. The individual is cold, insecure, withdrawn and ultra-conservative. Low self-esteem and lack of physical vigor are typical of this aspect.

*Sun Opposite Uranus:* This aspect indicates sudden breaks and unexpected disruptions in the affairs influenced by the Sun and Uranus. The individual is willful, independent and insistent. Dictatorial inclinations evoke much opposition and controversy. Self-expression is abrupt, uncoordinated and incongruous. This opposition generates much nervous tension; the individual is high-strung and excitable.

*Sun Opposite Neptune:* This opposition introduces confusion and chaos into the areas governed by the Sun and Neptune. Many of these people are deluded by a false sense of well-being and misplaced trust; they may be the victims or the perpetrators of subterfuge and deceit. Self-expression is unrealistic and muddled. This aspect generates negative psychic energy and warns against contact with the spiritual world as well as misuse of drugs or alcohol.

*Sun Opposite Pluto:* This aspect produces an unrelentless drive for power. The individual strives for absolute domination and control in the affairs influenced by the Sun and Pluto. Self-expression is forceful, coercive and demanding. The tension generated by this aspect creates an invisible aura of formidable force, an aura that inexplicably frightens or intimidates many of the people who come into contact with the individual. This aspect is associated with the autocrat or despot.

*Sun Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* These aspects emphasize the need to overcome selfish tendencies and egocentric attitudes, which inhibit growth. Self-development depends largely upon the individual's capacity to reach out and cooperate with others in areas indicated by the North Node. Eclipse action near the birthdate is suggested by this configuration; such action should be verified and interpreted if applicable to the horoscope.

*Sun Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition indicates self-interests, which hinder the success promised by the Part of Fortune. It places the indi-

vidual at a disadvantage in the affairs influenced by the opposition.

*Sun Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* These aspects emphasize marriage, partnerships and coordinated activities over those endeavors that are primarily self-oriented. These people exert leadership and influence in their associations.

*Sun Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* These aspects imply that a harmonious and productive family life is essential to the individual's progress in the world. Without a satisfying home life, this person does not function at full capability. The extent of worldly attainments hinges upon one's capacity to establish the kind of home life that fulfills individual needs.

## *Sun Parallels*

Parallels that occur between planets that also form a zodiacal aspect assume the tenor of the zodiacal aspect; these parallels strengthen the influence of the zodiacal aspect. For example, a parallel acts in a manner similar to that of a conjunction and when formed between two planets in trine gives added force to the trine. If a parallel occurs between two planets in square, the stress induced by the square is greatly magnified by the parallel. A parallel that occurs between two planets that simultaneously form a minor zodiacal aspect elevates the minor aspect to the status of a major aspect.

Parallels that are unaccompanied by a zodiacal aspect are given the same general meaning as that of a conjunction. However, because parallels can occur between planets that are widely separated by sign and house, the influence of a parallel that stands alone is not as focused as that of a conjunction. An unaccompanied parallel exerts less impact and is interpreted more broadly than a conjunction.

The meaning of a conjunction may be modified, as it applies to an unaccompanied parallel, by the signs that the planets in parallel occupy. Planets that are mutually friendly form a harmonious parallel regardless of sign position. Planets in parallel that are naturally neutral or antagonistic toward each other operate smoothly when they occupy different signs of the same triplicity. Neutral or antagonistic planets in parallel react favorably if one is in an air sign and the other is in a fire sign, if these signs do not oppose;

the same is true if one planet occupies an earth sign and the other a water sign, if the signs are not in polarity. The effect is discordant when neutral or antagonistic planets, which occupy different signs of the same quadruplicity, form a parallel. If planets in parallel occupy the same sign but are not within orb of a conjunction, the parallel takes on the full character and influence of a conjunction.

Sun parallels unify the creative life force of the Sun with the drives that are basic to the planet(s) in parallel. If a zodiacal aspect exists between the Sun and a planet in parallel with the Sun, strong willpower and ambition are expressed according to the influence of the zodiacal aspect. The interpretation for this parallel corresponds to the meaning of the zodiacal aspect; the combined aspects are given greater weight in the horoscope than single aspects of the same type.

If no zodiacal aspect is formed between the Sun and a planet in parallel with the Sun, the parallel is interpreted as a Sun conjunction with some modifications. Except for parallels with Mercury or Venus, the effect of a Sun parallel is milder than that of any major zodiacal aspect the Sun forms. As with all aspects, the influence extends to the houses and affairs governed by both planets. The natural emphasis of a corresponding Sun conjunction may be qualified by the relationship (harmonious or discordant) that exists between the Sun sign and the sign occupied by a planet in parallel. In addition, the following ideas are to be considered when adapting the interpretation of a Sun conjunction to a Sun parallel that stands alone.

*Sun Parallel Moon:* This parallel permits emotional drives to constructively support creative self-expression. It does not give the emotional harmony and self-satisfaction that a Sun/Moon conjunction describes unless the luminaries occupy compatible signs.

*Sun Parallel Mercury:* This aspect merges willpower and mental energy; it bears equal strength with that of a Sun/Mercury conjunction regardless of sign positions.

*Sun Parallel Venus:* This parallel is given the same meaning and power as a Sun/Venus conjunction except that it does not carry the connotation of possible male effeminacy.

*Sun Parallel Mars:* This aspect takes on the emphasis of an unafflicted conjunction when the Sun and Mars are in harmonious signs. If neither planet is afflicted, the parallel is interpreted as a mildly favorable conjunction even if the planets occupy uncongenial signs. If either the Sun or Mars forms major adverse aspects with other planets, and they are in discordant signs, the parallel is interpreted as an afflicted conjunction.

*Sun Parallel Jupiter:* This aspect has the same significance as a favorable Sun/Jupiter conjunction except the effect is milder.

*Sun Parallel Saturn:* The emphasis of this parallel depends upon whether or not the signs occupied by the Sun and Saturn are harmonious.

*Sun Parallel Uranus:* In this aspect the energies of the Sun and Uranus do not blend compatibly unless the planets occupy harmonious signs.

*Sun Parallel Neptune:* This parallel carries a positive or negative influence according to sign harmony or discord.

*Sun Parallel Pluto:* This aspect is not as potent as a Sun/Pluto conjunction; nevertheless, it increases the power potential of the individual, and, if sign placements agree, gives greater capacity to control that power.

*Sun Parallel North Node:* This parallel has a slightly different orientation than a Sun/North Node conjunction. Although the individual's attention is directed toward channels of self-development as with the conjunction, this person may not recognize or want to improve restrictive habits, which hinder growth.

*Sun Parallel Part of Fortune:* This aspect is as favorable as a Sun/Part of Fortune conjunction. Sign relationships have no bearing on the emphasis of this parallel.

*Sun Parallel Ascendant:* This aspect has a very personal connotation. It is harmonious and constructive regardless of the signs involved.

*Sun Parallel MC:* This parallel intensifies one's worldly ambitions and promotes the desire to succeed; it



provides a direct link between creative self-expression and achievement.

### *Sun Contraparallels*

Except for contraparallels formed with Mercury or Venus, Sun contraparallels carry less weight in the horoscope than the major zodiacal aspects; they are equal to Sun parallels in strength. A Sun contraparallel generates conflict between the drives of the Sun and the energies of the planet in aspect. The Sun and a contraparalleled planet operate at cross-purposes. The meaning of a Sun contraparallel formed with the Ascendant or MC corresponds to that of an afflicted conjunction. Other Sun contraparallels are treated as Sun oppositions; however, Sun contraparallels are not as challenging as oppositions and create slightly less tension.

A Sun contraparallel that occurs with Mercury or Venus is as influential as a Sun/Mercury or Sun/Venus conjunction, but the influence is separative in nature rather than unifying.

*Sun Contraparallel Mercury:* This contraparallel fosters ill-planned actions in relation to the affairs ruled by the Sun and Mercury. Depending upon the nature of the signs that the Sun and Mercury occupy, the individual may implement plans without adequate forethought, or may hesitate so long that action comes too late. Fire and air signs indicate haste; earth and water signs denote slower action.

*Sun Contraparallel Venus:* This aspect encourages self-gratification and preoccupation with creature comforts. The individual is inclined to be lax about the affairs influenced by the Sun and Venus. The desire for luxurious living is in conflict with the urge to achieve. If other astrological factors confirm, pleasure-seeking can become a way of life.

### *Minor Sun Aspects*

It is customary to include the semi-sextile, semi-square, sesquiquadrate and the quincunx in the interpretation of a natal horoscope. The use of other minor aspects is a matter of the astrologer's choice.

The semi-square, sesquiquadrate and quincunx, all minor hard aspects, are considered stronger than the semi-sextile, a minor easy aspect.

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by the Sun:* A minor easy aspect, which is formed between the Sun and another planet, supports positive characteristics of both planets. These qualities blend in a harmonious fashion in accordance with the aspect's basic significance (Chapter 14) and supplement the creative self-expression and vitality of the Sun. Make a determination based on the nature of the Sun and the planet in aspect, the signs these planets occupy and the meaning of the aspect. Apply these findings to the houses and affairs influenced by the Sun and the planet in aspect. Consider the comparatively weak influence the minor aspect bears in relation to other astrological factors in the horoscope. As a guide to interpreting a minor easy Sun aspect, read the meaning for a Sun sextile and a Sun trine. A minor easy aspect does not confer the easy flow of expression that is associated with a trine nor does it denote the opportunities and advantages signified by a sextile. However, a minor easy aspect does generate other similar favorable characteristics, although the effect is much less pronounced.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by the Sun:* A minor hard aspect, which occurs between the Sun and another planet, brings out minor discordancies in the natures of the two planets. Such an aspect indicates friction, which irritates self-expression. To interpret a minor hard Sun aspect, consider discordant characteristics of the two planets in aspect and the basic significance of the aspect. Determine the manner in which friction is produced and decide to what extent irritation or stress is generated. Include the Sun sign and the sign the planet in aspect occupies in the determination. Friction and irritation will manifest in the houses and affairs governed by the Sun and the planet in aspect.

# 17 Moon Aspects

The Moon is receptive; it assumes characteristics of the sign it occupies and of the planets it aspects. Moon aspects have a decided bearing upon one's emotional nature and instinctive responses. How a person reacts to situations and conditions encountered is described by the Moon aspects. They also indicate how one relates to other people, women in particular.

## *Moon Conjunctions*

Moon conjunctions have a strong impact on the emotions. Emotional considerations have a pronounced influence in the affairs governed by the Moon and a planet it conjuncts.

*Moon Conjunct Mercury:* This conjunction unites two receptive planets; neither acts without the other. Feelings color reason, and logic influences the emotions. If the conjunction is in a water sign, one's moods and emotions tend to override intellectual considerations; if the conjunction is in an air sign and not severely afflicted, the individual retains objectivity; a fire sign indicates impulsive emotions and impetuous decisions; an earth sign gives more stability to emotional and intellectual expression. A mixed conjunction permits a broader scope of emotional and mental expression because each sign introduces a different mode of expression. The conjunction describes a person who is extremely sensitive because the subconscious and conscious minds function as one. If unafflicted, it indicates a good memory and strong powers of recall. If the conjunction is afflicted, the individual is restless,

overly sensitive to criticism, tends to talk excessively and to gossip.

*Moon Conjunct Venus:* This aspect, if unafflicted, brings out the pleasing qualities in one's personality; it denotes charm, grace and sociability. This person is an affectionate individual who feels emotionally unfulfilled without love. He or she gets along well with other people and especially enjoys the company of women. A love of beauty and material comforts is fostered by this conjunction. It indicates refined tastes and artistic instincts. Memories of childhood and the parental home are pleasant; family ties are affectionate. If the conjunction is afflicted, narcissism, sensuality, voluptuousness and eroticism are implied.

*Moon Conjunct Mars:* This conjunction energizes the emotions. Emotional expression is characterized by Martian qualities. This aspect produces aggressiveness, masculinity, courage and intense feelings. Much energy is directed toward the home and family and the affairs influenced by the conjunction. If the conjunction is afflicted, an uncontrollable temper, vindictive anger and explosive emotions are indicated. Quarrels and strife disrupt domestic life and the affairs governed by the Moon and Mars.

*Moon Conjunct Jupiter:* This aspect gives positive emotional expression as signified by sign position. The individual is good-natured, jocular, sympathetic and generous. One benefits from contacts with the public and is protected from public censure. Women are helpful to the individual and vice versa. Domestic interests are safeguarded as are the other interests

affected by the conjunction. If the conjunction is afflicted, the individual is inclined to be overly generous and vulnerable to emotional pleas. Digestive disturbances and stomach ailments can occur as a result of dietary excesses.

*Moon Conjunct Saturn:* This conjunction controls and suppresses the emotions. Emotional expression is inhibited and restrained. The individual feels aloof from the public. Relations with women lack warmth. Home life is disciplined as are other affairs influenced by the conjunction. If the conjunction is afflicted, the individual tends to be morose, melancholy, austere and lonely. This aspect needs many helpful indications to overcome emotional depression. Because the rates of motion of the progressed Moon and transiting Saturn coincide, this aspect is reinforced throughout the life of the individual.

*Moon Conjunct Uranus:* This aspect prompts abrupt changes in moods; emotional reactions are unpredictable and erratic. The individual craves emotional excitement. If it is unafflicted, this conjunction confers intuitive foresight and a good sense of timing. This person shows an aversion for conformity, which is manifested in the affairs governed by the Moon and Uranus. Domestic arrangements are suited to the individual's unique lifestyle and tastes. If the conjunction is afflicted, emotional instability and nervous disorders may occur.

*Moon Conjunct Neptune:* This conjunction implies spiritual attunement; it heightens emotional sensitivity and psychic awareness. The individual tends to pick up the emotional coloring of the environment and is receptive to the moods and feelings of others. Sympathetic and self-sacrificing, one is deeply touched by the sorrows others experience. The aspect also fosters an active imagination, an instinctive sense of rhythm and mediumistic tendencies. The individual is very intuitive about the affairs influenced by the Moon and Neptune. If the conjunction is afflicted, the inclination to withdraw from the world is present; escapism can take the form of isolation, fantasy or the use of drugs or alcohol.

*Moon Conjunct Pluto:* This aspect generates powerful emotions. The individual instinctively senses weakness in another and subconsciously brings emotional pressure to bear as a means of attaining control. This

person desires to dominate the home and the affairs influenced by the conjunction. In a male horoscope this aspect indicates domination of women. If the conjunction is afflicted and other factors in the horoscope confirm, sadistic tendencies can manifest.

*Moon Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* These aspects show that a lunar or solar eclipse occurred near the birthdate. If the eclipse is a natal or prenatal eclipse, the interpretation is emphasized accordingly. These aspects enable one to instinctively adapt to trends associated with the affairs influenced by the Moon and North Node. Even if the Moon and North Node occupy a fixed sign, this person is subconsciously aware of prevailing conditions and has the capacity to utilize those conditions advantageously; it is through such action that the individual can outgrow the limitations signified by the South Node.

*Moon Conjunct Part of Fortune:* This conjunction describes an individual who derives much emotional satisfaction from the successes achieved in the affairs influenced by the conjunction.

*Moon Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* These aspects give the ability to project the personality in a manner that is pleasing to the public if the Moon/Ascendant conjunction is not afflicted. Unless contrary factors indicate otherwise, the individual is receptive and responsive. This person is changeable and moody. Appearance and mannerisms reflect lunar characteristics.

*Moon Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* These aspects indicate an aptitude for public life. The individual instinctively senses public opinion and has the ability to use this gift. Women may be helpful in advancing the career. This person attracts favorable publicity unless the Moon is badly afflicted.

## *Moon Sextiles*

Moon sextiles point out those areas that offer the greatest opportunity for constructive emotional expression. One's subconscious is active in the affairs ruled by the Moon and a planet in sextile. The individual is sensitive to the conditions affected by the sextile and responsive to associated opportunities. Moon sextiles also describe a pleasant childhood and a happy relationship with the mother, a relationship

that reflects favorably on adult attitudes toward women and the home.

*Moon Sextile Mercury:* This sextile produces intelligence, a good memory, common sense, and intellectual perceptivity. Because it fosters fluent communicative skills, it is an asset to the linguist, the lecturer and the writer. The affairs influenced by the Moon and Mercury are handled in an intelligent manner. This aspect helps prevent psychological problems because the emotions and mind are in harmony. These people are usually happy with the decisions they make.

*Moon Sextile Venus:* This aspect indicates personal charm and popularity. These people are kind, gracious, amiable and loving. Because they instinctively know how to put others at ease, they are in demand socially. Most are artistically inclined. This aspect produces a happy marriage and a fulfilling home life unless strong contradictions are present in the horoscope. In a woman's horoscope, this sextile is one indication of fertility if neither planet is in a barren sign. The affairs ruled by the Moon and Venus usually prosper financially unless these planets are heavily afflicted. With afflictions, prosperous developments are possible, but attendant expenses can reduce the overall benefit.

*Moon Sextile Mars:* This sextile gives much emotional force with the control necessary to direct this energy productively. These people are resolute, vigorous and energetic. They take an active interest in the affairs governed by the Moon and Mars. Because action is quick and direct, these people lose few of the opportunities generated by this sextile.

*Moon Sextile Jupiter:* This is a good luck aspect. These people possess sound instincts about the affairs ruled by the Moon and Jupiter; they frequently profit from action based on a lucky hunch. This sextile indicates a happy, healthy emotional nature. It fosters optimism, magnanimity, benevolence and high principles.

*Moon Sextile Saturn:* Any aspect between the Moon and Saturn restrains emotional expression to some degree. This aspect produces good emotional control and efficient use of emotional energies. The individual is patient, prudent and provident. The affairs influenced by the Moon and Saturn are handled in a responsible fashion. This sextile induces introversion and subdued emotional reactions.

*Moon Sextile Uranus:* This sextile adds sparkle to the personality. These people come across as vivacious and exciting. They are intuitive, progressive and individualistic. They respond swiftly to the opportunities associated with this sextile. They are able to take advantage of changing conditions that influence the affairs governed by the Moon and Uranus; they benefit from the original and timely manner in which they conduct these affairs.

*Moon Sextile Neptune:* This aspect fosters spiritual inspiration. The subconscious and unconscious minds are mutually supportive. Highly intuitive and extremely psychic, these people are drawn toward the mystic arts. They are imaginative; many possess a photographic memory. These people are sensitive to conditions influenced by the Moon and Neptune and are responsive to the opportunities produced by this aspect.

*Moon Sextile Pluto:* This aspect permits regeneration of emotional energies; these people are never completely drained emotionally. This intense emotional strength generates a powerful sense of purpose. In addition, these people are able to transform emotional energy into physical energy. They exert tremendous energy into the affairs ruled by the Moon and Pluto. This aspect also promises opportunities that can lead to Plutonian involvement on the highest level.

*Moon Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* These aspects enable the individual to advance in the areas described by the Moon and North Node because this person is aware of public opinion and helpful trends. One is able to shed outmoded ways as indicated by the South Node, ways that might otherwise restrain progress and hinder development.

*Moon Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile alerts one to advantages that arise in the areas influenced by the Moon and Part of Fortune. One's instincts play a large part in related successes.

*Moon Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* These aspects denote harmonious relationships with the general public and with close associates. This person is able to create a receptive emotional climate under most conditions unless the Moon is badly afflicted or in its detriment.

*Moon Sextile MC Trine IC:* This combination of aspects indicates the ability to get along well with job superiors and professional associates. Good relations with the right people, especially women of influence, are helpful in advancing one's career. Home life is easy; family relationships are harmonious.

## *Moon Squares*

Squares formed between the Moon and other planets are indicative of subconscious blocks and inner frustrations, which obstruct emotional expression. Subconscious inhibitions or prejudices that are hereditary and environmental in nature can retard the progress of affairs influenced by the Moon and a planet in square. Frustrating experiences stand in the way of emotional fulfillment. The individual must develop a constructive approach in order to overcome the obstacles generated by Moon squares.

*Moon Square Mercury:* This aspect indicates a restless mind and changeable moods. It shows a lack of continuity of thought; the mind is easily distracted. These people are seldom happy with their decisions; they tend to rethink past decisions over and over again. Emotional impulses block clear judgment in matters ruled by the Moon and Mercury. These people are inclined to be irritable, moody, critical and loquacious. This aspect supports any other factors in the horoscope that point to possible psychological problems.

*Moon Square Venus:* This square blocks feelings of affection. Depending upon the quality of the signs involved, romantic expression may be hesitant, fickle, maudlin or too intense. Family interests and relationships with women provide little happiness or emotional satisfaction. Sentimentality and extravagance create setbacks which impede the affairs governed by the Moon and Venus.

*Moon Square Mars:* Hostile feelings and violent emotional reactions are characteristic of this aspect. These people are quick to take offense at petty remarks and trivial criticisms; they resent interference of any kind. They encounter many obstacles of their own making because they have little regard for the consequences of their actions. The affairs influenced by this square are beset by arguments and quarrels; the domestic sphere is discordant.

*Moon Square Jupiter:* This square induces profuse emotional expression. These people are overly indulgent with loved ones, overly generous to the disadvantaged, overly sympathetic with the downtrodden; they are too liberal in their reactions to anything or anyone that appeals to the emotions. Unless good aspects offset this square, these people are vulnerable to a sob story. The affairs governed by the Moon and Jupiter suffer as a result of action that is motivated by misplaced sympathy.

*Moon Square Saturn:* This aspect severely inhibits emotional warmth. It generates despondency, self-pity, gloominess, unhappiness, discouragement, fear and anxiety. These people tend to draw into a shell. It is imperative for their emotional well-being that they learn to be more optimistic and outgoing. Because the approach is narrow and lackluster, affairs ruled by the Moon and Saturn develop slowly. This square creates the tendency to accept hardships as necessary burdens, an attitude that reduces the capacity to overcome obstacles. The home environment is cold and somewhat depressing.

*Moon Square Uranus:* This aspect generates an emotional need for change and excitement. Restless and discontented, these people turn from one interest to another in the search for increasingly greater thrills. They are seldom satisfied with the course of events influenced by this square; their actions in these areas reflect a radical departure from the norm. Home life and family relationships are generally disruptive.

*Moon Square Neptune:* This square creates a chaotic emotional state. These people are confused about their feelings, unable to sort out inner frustrations. They tend to fantasize; many have difficulty in distinguishing between fantasy and reality. They cling to childhood illusions; they delude themselves about family relationships and domestic interests. These people suffer disappointments because of the impractical and muddled way they handle the affairs governed by the Moon and Neptune.

*Moon Square Pluto:* This square signifies forceful and intense emotional expression. These people refuse to be dominated emotionally; they can be abusive. The lust for power is directed toward the affairs influenced by the square. If other factors in the horoscope confirm, these people can gain control of large

segments of the public. Their power lies in compelling emotional force that is menacing in nature. This aspect is one indication of the labor leader, the monopolist or the mobster.

*Moon Square North Node Square South Node:* This aspect combination places the Moon at the focal point of a T-square configuration. The individual is insensitive to public opinion and prevailing trends. One must eliminate emotional bias, which retards progress, and channel lunar drives productively in order to develop adequately in areas indicated by the Nodes.

*Moon Square Part of Fortune:* This square produces emotionally frustrating experiences, which detract from achievements associated with the Part of Fortune.

*Moon Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* These aspects suggest the inability to project emotionally in a pleasing manner. The failure to relate on an emotional level can cause family problems, marital difficulties and partnership conflicts.

*Moon Square MC Square IC:* This combination of aspects denotes an emotionally frustrating atmosphere at home and in career. Emotional stress manifests as job dissatisfaction and domestic discontent.

## Moon Trines

A trine formed by the Moon enables one to express emotional energy in a positive way. The individual is sensitive to the feelings of others. This person instinctively strikes a harmonious rapport with the people encountered in the course of affairs ruled by the Moon and a planet in trine. The individual derives much emotional fulfillment and happiness from the success attained in the areas influenced by a Moon trine. A Moon trine also indicates by sign placement, house position and rulership that part of childhood that makes a favorable impression and is reflected in relations with women and in adult family life.

*Moon Trine Mercury:* This trine gives intellectual expression to the emotions and adds emotional coloring to the mental processes. These people express their ideas and feelings fluently and tactfully, without embarrassment or misunderstanding. They instinctively sense another person's response and thus are able to phrase ideas in a way that is acceptable. Energy flows

freely between the subconscious and conscious minds. These people possess more than adequate learning ability; they readily assimilate and retain the knowledge to which they are exposed. A good memory, common sense and eloquent expression of ideas are characteristic of this trine. These people are witty, mentally alert and intellectually versatile. They treat domestic affairs and those interests governed by the Moon and Mercury with perceptivity, feeling and good sense. They communicate well with their families.

*Moon Trine Venus:* This aspect denotes good taste, gentility and charm. These people are kind, sympathetic, affectionate and sociable. Both sexes get along well with women, and most enjoy a happy, fulfilling domestic life. Because of their sweet and thoughtful ways, they encounter much good fortune in the areas influenced by the Moon and Venus. This trine attracts material benefits and prosperity. It generates interest in the arts and a desire for the finer things in life.

*Moon Trine Mars:* This trine activates emotional energy, which can be channeled constructively into the affairs governed by the Moon and Mars. These people feel strongly about what they do; therefore, action is backed up by emotional force. They achieve success because they are ambitious, purposeful and aggressive. They are active in family life and in the affairs influenced by the trine; in related matters, they take the initiative. If a family inheritance is suggested elsewhere in the horoscope, this trine confirms a substantial legacy.

*Moon Trine Jupiter:* This trine indicates good fortune in the affairs ruled by the Moon and Jupiter. It provides a natural outlet for emotional frustrations, which are caused by afflictions to the Moon if present. These people hold high ideals and are devoted to the causes or principles that they support. Although spiritual rewards are part of the promise of this trine, material abundance also manifests in the areas influenced by the trine. Family life is pleasant and usually financially beneficial.

*Moon Trine Saturn:* This aspect stabilizes the emotional nature. It inspires caution, conservatism and efficiency. Steady, well-planned efforts represent the key to success in the affairs governed by the Moon and Saturn. Because these people are realistic and

practical in their approach to these affairs, success is more easily achieved than with other Moon/Saturn aspects. Emotional expression is disciplined and controlled, but these people are not necessarily cold or unfeeling unless other factors in the horoscope indicate emotional insensitivity. This aspect creates loyal family ties; however, unless other factors contradict, family loyalties are based on a sense of duty rather than on affection or love.

*Moon Trine Uranus:* This aspect permits free emotional expression. Emotional reactions may be unpredictable, but these people cannot be termed erratic or eccentric. Rather, they are colorful and interesting. They look forward to and frequently initiate changes in the affairs ruled by the Moon and Uranus. They are not bound by tradition or subconscious ties. They possess unusually keen instincts about public opinion and current trends; action is seldom too early or too late to be effective. Friendly, they derive much emotional satisfaction from companionship and group associations. Most of these people are interested in metaphysics and positive occultism; many are drawn to astrology.

*Moon Trine Neptune:* This aspect brings out the spiritual qualities in one's nature. Many of these people are divinely inspired; some attain a state of sublime ecstasy. The subconscious and unconscious minds function in harmony. This trine offers a constructive outlet for repressed desires and subconscious drives. Gentle, sympathetic, imaginative, impressionable, intuitive, psychic and emotionally responsive, these people benefit spiritually through the affairs governed by the Moon and Neptune. If talent is indicated elsewhere in the horoscope, this trine confirms the ability to express the emotions through music, dance or other art forms.

*Moon Trine Pluto:* This trine gives great emotional strength with the power to control and direct this energy constructively. These people exert vast influence in the affairs ruled by the Moon and Pluto. They do not have to resort to coercion in order to achieve their aims; the powerful emotional appeal they possess attracts the benefits promised by the trine. This trine adds emotional depth even if the signs involved or other aspects indicate shallowness. It produces sharp insight into the inner nature of things and does

much to counteract any factors that suggest a lack of perceptivity. This aspect also paves the way to complete Plutonian evolution.

*Moon Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* This combination of aspects indicates that one's instincts are in tune with the times. This person is able to discard subconscious attitudes that are restrictive in nature. The capacity to overcome the limitations described by the South Node leaves one free to achieve emotionally satisfying experiences.

*Moon Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine promises benefits and success in the area indicated by the placement of the Part of Fortune. This success is achieved through utilization of lunar drives; resultant benefits are emotionally gratifying.

*Moon Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* These aspects promote harmony in most relationships unless the Moon or the horizontal angles are badly afflicted. These people are sensitive to the feelings and needs of others; they respond instinctively in a manner designed to please.

*Moon Trine MC Sextile IC:* This aspect combination is one indication of professional success unless the Moon or MC is severely afflicted. These people know the value of maintaining good relations with superiors and are able to do so. Home life reflects the happiness and success that is achieved in worldly pursuits.

## *Moon Oppositions*

Moon oppositions point out contradictions in one's emotional nature. The individual does not relate well on an emotional level to the people and affairs represented by the opposing planet. One is acutely aware of the need to develop in the areas influenced by a Moon opposition. These interests cannot be ignored despite the antagonism, repugnance or distaste generated by the opposition.

*Moon Opposite Mercury:* This opposition hinders the ability to express thoughts and feelings adequately. These people are often misunderstood because they cannot relate to others on an emotional or an intellectual level. They may chatter incessantly about nothing in particular, or they may refuse to volunteer

any information, depending upon the quality of expression described by the signs these planets occupy. Most of them show little perceptivity or sensitivity to the affairs governed by the Moon and Mercury; they lack objectivity in these matters. The conflict that exists between emotional desires and intellectual considerations gives rise to indecisiveness and vacillation. These people are unsure about their decisions and uncertain about their feelings. They have difficulty dealing with their frustrations. This aspect is one indication of possible psychological difficulties. A trine or sextile to either planet can provide a constructive outlet for emotional or mental problems. A minor easy aspect here is also of some benefit.

*Moon Opposite Venus:* This aspect denotes a rift in family life and in those affairs ruled by the Moon and Venus. These people feel emotionally separated from their mothers; many feel unloved or unappreciated. Often they are ill at ease with women. Depending upon the signs these two planets occupy and the influence of other related factors in the horoscope, these people may subconsciously withhold affection as a means of protecting emotional vulnerability, or they may flit from one romance to another in search of affection and emotional fulfillment. Many try to buy love with money or expensive gifts. This aspect also brings out extravagance, which causes financial setbacks in the affairs affected by the opposition.

*Moon Opposite Mars:* This aspect produces impulsive emotions and volatile emotional reactions. These people are impatient and quarrelsome. Quick to anger, they can work themselves into violent rages when they are displeased. Many harbor subconscious dislike for the feminine sex in general. Males express this aversion outwardly by treating women as inferiors or chattel; females tend to be pushy and overbearing with other women. These people exercise little restraint in the affairs influenced by the Moon and Mars; they encounter many difficulties as a result of headstrong actions and the antagonism such actions create.

*Moon Opposite Jupiter:* This opposition generates emotional excesses. These people overreact to common occurrences. Religion and morality are of deep emotional concern. They may be rigid and unbending in their beliefs, or they may be too liberal, depending upon the signs and other aspects that influence the

opposition. Many of them subconsciously identify with the underdog; they tend to get involved in lost causes and movements that appeal to the emotions, even though these activities may be of little real value in terms of human welfare. The affairs governed by the Moon and Jupiter falter because of the extreme emotionalism these people project into these areas.

*Moon Opposite Saturn:* This aspect indicates rigorous emotional restraint. These people instinctively withdraw from other persons and situations that affect them emotionally. They fail to reach out in the areas influenced by the Moon and Saturn; they lack the imagination to broaden the scope of these activities. Subconscious inhibitions place severe restrictions on the development of Moon/Saturn interests. These people are serious, stern, austere and unemotional. Materialism and worldly ambition are strong motivating factors.

*Moon Opposite Uranus:* This aspect shows a lack of emotional discipline and a subconscious aversion to restrictive ties. The impersonal qualities of Uranus demand emotional freedom in relationships. These people are quick to sever any association in which they find themselves becoming personally involved on an emotional level. The irresponsibility shown by them in the affairs governed by the Moon and Uranus prohibits satisfactory development. These interests reflect sporadic activity, erratic conditions and ill-timed changes. The pattern of instability suggested by this aspect is hard to break because it stems from a disruptive and insecure childhood.

*Moon Opposite Neptune:* This aspect obscures reality in the affairs influenced by the Moon and Neptune. These people are very psychic; however, inner promptings are often inaccurate or wrongly interpreted. They should not engage in occult activities for they are extremely vulnerable to negative psychic forces. They are dreamers but most fail to realize their dreams unless other factors in the horoscope provide practical direction. A well-placed Saturn or a favorable Saturn aspect with the Moon or Neptune is helpful. This opposition opens the door to subconscious escapist tendencies. Without easy aspects to either the Moon or Neptune, drugs, alcohol and hallucinations can become a real danger.



*Moon Opposite Pluto:* This opposition directs the destructive drives of Pluto toward the emotions. Enormous emotional energy is generated, energy that cannot be contained. The individual must find a suitable release; if one fails to do so, an emotional explosion is inevitable. Dormant tendencies toward corruption, violence and cruelty can erupt without warning. This aspect calls for strict emotional control on the part of the individual. Easy aspects to the Moon or Pluto permit satisfactory expression of the high energy created by the opposition. If neither planet forms an easy aspect, look for harmonious aspects to planets that occupy the houses and signs ruled by the Moon and Pluto. The planet that bears an association with the Moon or Pluto through sign, house or aspect and has the largest number of favorable aspects or has the highest standing in the horoscope will provide an acceptable outlet for the Moon/Pluto energy.

*Moon Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* These aspects indicate that restrictive habit patterns are deeply imbedded in the subconscious. Any attempt to break these habits will cause great emotional distress. However, the individual is aware of the potential to develop fully in the areas described by the North Node; it is this awareness that provides the incentive to overcome limitations denoted by the South Node. These aspects indicate the occurrence of a solar or lunar eclipse near the birthdate. If the eclipse is a natal or prenatal eclipse, consider the effects of eclipse action in the horoscope.

*Moon Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition does not interfere with the success promised by the Part of Fortune; it does create emotional tension and inner dissatisfaction associated with these achievements.

*Moon Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* This aspect combination shows emotional perceptivity to the wants and needs of the public. Instincts play a major role in maintaining good public relations. These people can become emotionally dependent upon their spouses, partners or other close associates. They do not like to be alone; they find emotional fulfillment with and through other people.

*Moon Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* This combination of aspects denotes emotional family ties and a

subconscious desire to remain in the childhood home. These aspects imply extensive trauma over the loss of parents, especially the mother. These people are unhappy without a satisfying home life; many refuse to pursue careers which require that they be away from home for long periods of time.

## *Moon Parallels*

One's emotional expression and natural instincts are linked to the energies and drives represented by a planet with which the Moon forms a parallel. A Moon parallel can produce a harmonious or a discordant merging of planetary energies. The presence or absence of a zodiacal aspect between the Moon and a planet in parallel, the natural relationship between the two planets and the signs the two planets occupy, all have a bearing on the influence of a parallel.

A parallel that occurs between the Moon and another planet with which the Moon also forms a zodiacal aspect reinforces the zodiacal aspect. This kind of parallel is interpreted according to the meaning of the zodiacal aspect it supplements. Such a parallel plays a supportive role to a major zodiacal aspect; it gives the strength of a major aspect to a minor zodiacal aspect.

Moon parallels that are formed with planets that do not form a zodiacal aspect with the Moon are interpreted as Moon conjunctions. A Moon parallel is not as powerful as the corresponding conjunction unless the Moon and the planet in parallel occupy the same sign.

The Moon forms naturally harmonious parallels with Venus and Jupiter. Any other Moon parallel that stands alone takes on the positive characteristics of the corresponding Moon conjunction if the Moon and the planet in parallel occupy compatible signs. A Moon parallel formed with any planet other than Venus or Jupiter is discordant if the Moon and the planet in parallel occupy different signs of the same quadruplicity. A Moon parallel is adversely affected by afflictions to either the Moon or the planet it parallels.

When interpreting a Moon/Saturn parallel, disregard the reference to the Moon/Saturn cycle given in the interpretation for a Moon/Saturn conjunction. This cycle is based upon zodiacal motion; it does not affect parallels or contraparallels.

## *Moon Contraparallels*

Moon contraparallels create emotional conflicts. The houses and affairs ruled by the Moon and a planet in contraparallel are sources of emotional distress. Related activities provide little emotional satisfaction. A trine or sextile between the Moon and a planet in contraparallel permits a large measure of satisfaction, but neither of these helpful aspects can give complete emotional fulfillment in combination with a contraparallel.

A contraparallel that the Moon forms with the Ascendant or MC is treated as an afflicted conjunction. All other Moon contraparallels are interpreted as corresponding Moon oppositions. These aspects are given less weight than oppositions except in those instances when the Moon and a planet forming a contraparallel occupy opposing signs in the zodiac.

## *Minor Moon Aspects*

Minor Moon aspects describe something about one's emotional nature and subconscious drives. To interpret a minor Moon aspect, consider the principles of the Moon and the planet it aspects, the nature of the signs involved, and the houses ruled and occupied by the two planets. Decide how these factors merge in accordance with the basic significance of the aspect as given in Chapter 14. Weigh these findings against all other aspects that affect either the Moon or the planet in question to determine the relative strength of the minor aspect. The characteristics shown by minor Moon aspects are less pronounced and less influential than those indicated by major Moon aspects.

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by the Moon:* The semi-sextile is the most important minor easy aspect the Moon forms. This aspect allows a harmonious flow of energy between the Moon and the planet in semi-sextile with the Moon. Moon semi-sextiles also point out secondary avenues that can be utilized as constructive outlets for frustrations created by afflictions to the Moon.

All minor easy aspects formed by the Moon permit favorable emotional expression through the activities and affairs ruled by the planet that the Moon aspects. The effect is mild but, nevertheless, beneficial. Although

these aspects (including the semi-sextile) are not strong enough to overcome afflictions to the Moon, they help offset adverse effects by indicating areas that provide some measure of emotional satisfaction.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by the Moon:* Minor hard aspects formed by the Moon signify mild emotional stress and negative subconscious drives. The emotions are disturbed by the affairs and interests associated with a planet that forms a minor hard aspect with the Moon. These aspects can create a subconscious dislike or distaste for the activities and people represented by the Moon and the aspected planet.

# 18 Mercury Aspects

Mercury assumes characteristics of the planets with which it forms aspects. Its aspects influence intellectual development and mental expression. They describe learning aptitude, reasoning ability, mental tendencies, the formulating of ideas, the expression of thought through speech and writing, and intellectual interests.

## *Mercury Conjunctions*

Mercury conjunctions energize the mind. A planet with which Mercury forms a conjunction influences the intellectual processes. Mental energy is channeled into the houses and affairs ruled by Mercury and the conjoined planet according to the modes of expression associated with the sign(s) the two planets occupy.

*Mercury Conjunct Venus:* Mercury and Venus are never separated by more than  $76^\circ$  in the zodiac. The only major zodiacal aspects that occur between these two planets are the conjunction and the sextile. These two planets can also form either a parallel or a contraparallel. A Mercury/Venus conjunction gives a pleasing voice that can best be described as melodious, mellow or dulcet-toned. People with this aspect are gifted conversationalists. Tactful and persuasive, they express their ideas with grace and charm and are usually amiable and good-natured. Sociable and friendly, most are popular. Intellectual interests gravitate toward the arts and moneymaking activities. However, if the conjunction is afflicted they tend to put on social airs. The women are coquettish, and the men foppish. Speech is flattering; mannerisms, artificial.

*Mercury Conjunct Mars:* This aspect indicates a lively, aggressive mind. These people are mentally active and quick-witted. Intellectually competitive, they are always ready to accept the challenge of argument or debate. They come straight to the point without apology or excuse regardless of what anyone else thinks. Most of them possess a satirical sense of humor and are quick to comment on human foibles and shortcomings. If the conjunction is afflicted, these people can be viciously sarcastic; they make malicious comments and caustic remarks. Speech is abrupt, abrasive and quarrelsome.

*Mercury Conjunct Jupiter:* This aspect combines the concrete and abstract thought processes; mental capacity and reasoning ability are broadened. These people are as comfortable with theoretical concepts as they are with factual topics. Avid students, most seek some form of higher education. This conjunction indicates intellectual integrity. If the conjunction is afflicted, these people tend to think of themselves as authorities on almost any subject. They insist on promoting their ideas and many get carried away with the sound of their own voices.

*Mercury Conjunct Saturn:* In this conjunction Saturn disciplines the mind and produces strong powers of mental concentration. These people are able to block out extraneous thoughts and focus on a particular idea. Mental interests are of a practical nature. These people tend to study subjects that can be applied to career or business pursuits. Although they may not learn quickly, they remember and utilize what they do learn.

They are not especially talkative; speech is deliberate. If the conjunction is afflicted, narrow-mindedness, pessimism and taciturnity are indicated.

*Mercury Conjunct Uranus:* This conjunction is associated with foresight, mental resourcefulness and intellectual genius. It encourages an original trend of thought and describes a skeptical individual who accepts no idea as valid until he or she proves it or reasons it out independently. Intellectually, these people are progressive, inventive and intuitive. Unorthodox thinkers, they are the intellectual forerunners of tomorrow's society. Science, the humanities, astrology and other occult topics are among the many mental interests they enjoy. Provocative conversationalists full of progressive, new and unusual ideas, they express their thoughts in a unique style that is free of clichés and time-worn phrases. Afflictions to this conjunction produce intellectual obstinacy, sporadic study habits and eccentric ideas.

*Mercury Conjunct Neptune:* This aspect produces a colorful imagination rich in imagery. These people can create word pictures as vivid and beautiful as the concepts they visualize mentally. They tell picturesque tales, tales that may be far removed from truth or reality. Soft-spoken and subtle, they are poets, romantics, dreamers. This aspect confirms clairvoyant ability or literary talent if similar indications are present elsewhere in the horoscope. If the conjunction is afflicted, reasoning is distorted by the inability to distinguish between truth and fallacy. Severe afflictions are characteristic of the habitual liar if other factors support the tendency.

*Mercury Conjunct Pluto:* This conjunction gives deep intellectual insight and broadens the scope of intellectual awareness. The potential for extensive mental development is strengthened. The mind is shrewd, probing, penetrating and powerful. These people understand fundamentals and underlying truths, yet they can also comprehend broad concepts. They are capable of devising large-scale operations that require strategic planning and secrecy. Afflictions to the conjunction create the tendency to use intellectual abilities as a weapon to achieve power.

*Mercury Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* These aspects denote one who is intellectually

perceptive to modern trends. This person embraces and profits from new ideas. Mental development helps one outgrow South Node habit patterns.

*Mercury Conjunct Part of Fortune:* This conjunction indicates that effective planning and the promotion of good ideas enable one to achieve success in the affairs associated with the Part of Fortune.

*Mercury Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* This combination of aspects describes an intellectually motivated person. The sign(s) in which the conjunction occurs shows the mode of mental expression; the conjunction enhances this expression and enables one to project ideas through speech and/or writing. The individual is inclined to be nervous, restless, fidgety and talkative; these characteristics are emphasized if the Ascendant or Mercury is severely afflicted. These people make frequent telephone calls to friends and acquaintances.

*Mercury Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* This aspect combination indicates that one's ideas center around career and business interests; much planning goes into the pursuit of worldly ambitions. The ability to communicate effectively with superiors is an asset unless Mercury is heavily afflicted. If Mercury is adversely aspected, the inability to clearly express ideas presents a serious setback to one's ambitions.

## *Mercury Sextiles*

Mercury sextiles are associated with opportunities for intellectual development. One's mental prowess and communicative skills play a major part in the advancement of the affairs influenced by Mercury and a planet in sextile. The signs and houses involved in a Mercury sextile describe helpful mental interests and point out areas in which effective planning attracts opportune conditions. Mercury sextiles enhance literary expression and conversational style; these aspects are extremely helpful to the professional writer or speaker.

*Mercury Sextile Venus:* This sextile produces charming wit and tactful speech. These people are genial and diplomatic; they know how to phrase ideas in a manner that will please others. The voice is well-modulated and expressive. Because they are gracious and refined, these people are popular. This aspect

generates interest in literature, music and other art forms; it can confirm talent and indicate the opportunity to develop this talent into a moneymaking skill. This aspect is especially helpful to those who depend upon the voice, language or writing as a vehicle for creative expression—vocalists, composers, diplomats, novelists.

*Mercury Sextile Mars:* This aspect supplies forceful mental energy. These people voice their convictions firmly and without hesitation. They are observant, perceptive, decisive and adroit. Conversation is animated and enthusiastic; language is clear and direct. Many are excellent sales people. They can enthusiastically promote a product and demonstrate its use as well. This sextile enhances motor coordination and manual dexterity. Most of these people combine intellectual and physical interests; they may map out exercise programs or plan strategy in sports or the military. The capacity to formulate constructive plans and to successfully execute them is reflected in the affairs governed by Mercury and Mars.

*Mercury Sextile Jupiter:* This sextile broadens one's intellectual horizons. It indicates abundant opportunities to develop the mind through advanced studies connected with the affairs ruled by Mercury and Jupiter. These people harbor neither intellectual bias nor religious prejudice. They are interested in truth, intellectual honesty and philosophical purity. Most of them are witty and jovial, yet very sincere. This aspect is of particular benefit to persons associated with writing, publishing, universities or religious institutions.

*Mercury Sextile Saturn:* This aspect fosters mental discipline and well-structured thought patterns. It introduces opportunities that can be advanced most successfully by careful planning and systematic follow-up procedures. These people organize the affairs influenced by the sextile around practical plans of actions. Studious and introspective, they seldom engage in light repartee or small talk. Intellectual inclinations are mainly those associated with professional and business interests.

*Mercury Sextile Uranus:* This aspect denotes all the positive qualities of a Mercury/Uranus conjunction and more. If neither Mercury nor Uranus is afflicted, this sextile indicates intellectual brilliance. The areas

governed by Mercury and Uranus present opportunities for the advancement of timely ideas and the utilization of progressive methods. Success comes to these people because they are able to adapt futuristic ideas to the needs of the present. Moreover, they manage to obtain support for innovative ideas. They can convince others of the validity of their plans, for they are magnetic speakers who are masters at elocution and oratory.

*Mercury Sextile Neptune:* This sextile blends intuitive perception with intellectual sensitivity. These people are imaginative and often psychic. Many possess photographic memories. They are spiritually and mentally attuned to the affairs and conditions influenced by the sextile. They are dreamers and idealists, but this aspect fosters practical dreams and gives the opportunity to realize them. Enchanting conversationalists and fascinating speakers, these people are not aggressive. Instead they captivate an audience with the magic of words. Most of them display interest in esoteric subjects. Ability in the mystic arts is indicated if Neptune is unafflicted.

*Mercury Sextile Pluto:* This aspect denotes tremendous intellectual resources. Words are powerful tools to these people. Skilled in the use of language, they know how to choose words for impact. Speech is forceful and compelling. As orators, these people attract massive audiences. This sextile gives penetrating insight into the affairs governed by Mercury and Pluto. Associated activities are well planned and purposeful. These people are capable of regenerating the affairs influenced by the sextile and are able to transform negative conditions into positive factors.

*Mercury Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* This combination of aspects increases awareness of current trends. These people formulate ideas that are acceptable to society. They present their ideas in a manner that elicits agreement and support.

*Mercury Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile indicates success through the utilization of intellectual abilities. The ability to communicate with persons involved in the affairs influenced by the sextile opens the doors to opportunities in those areas.

*Mercury Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* These aspects help keep the channels of communication free

of misunderstandings and misconceptions. People with this aspect are able to get their ideas across to the public. They communicate easily with their spouses, business partners and other close associates. If the signs occupied by Mercury and the Ascendant permit and other factors agree, these people can view personal matters from an objective standpoint.

*Mercury Sextile MC Trine IC:* This combination provides opportunities for intellectual expression and mental development through professional interests. The proper education can ensure career advancement. Communication within the family is easy; these people consult other family members on matters that pertain to home life and the operation of the household.

### *Mercury Squares*

Mercury squares create nervous tension and learning difficulties. Intellectual expression and communication are inadequate in the areas governed by Mercury and a planet squaring it. Mental blocks and poor planning hinder the proper development of the affairs influenced by a Mercury square. These aspects do not indicate lack of intelligence; they show by sign position, house placement and rulership how and in which areas the individual does not use natural mental abilities to the best advantage.

*Mercury Square Mars:* This square energizes the intellect, but mental energy is difficult to control and channel productively. Through impulsiveness and insufficient planning, these people create problems for themselves in the areas influenced by the square. Brusque to the point of rudeness, they frequently antagonize the very persons whose support would be helpful in developing the affairs governed by Mercury and Mars. Impatience, argumentativeness and anger are characteristic of this square. Coarseness of speech is common. One may risk physical safety performing dangerous, daredevil feats. Health difficulties can also occur as a result of the extreme nervous tension this aspect generates.

*Mercury Square Jupiter:* This aspect promotes improvident schemes and excessive talk. Although these people have fertile minds, they think in terms that are too grandiose to be practical. They are absent-minded about details and exercise poor judgment in

the affairs ruled by Mercury and Jupiter. Overly optimistic about these matters, they frequently overlook negative potentialities. Tendencies to exaggerate and boast are common. Many of these people are conversational bores who do not know how to listen. This square can indicate an aversion or mental block toward organized religion.

*Mercury Square Saturn:* This square indicates a serious mind and conservative mental attitudes. Often intellectual development is hindered by narrow ideas and prejudicial views. These people cling to traditional thought and the refusal to break with established methods is a major obstacle to the advancement of the affairs affected by the aspect. They hold negative outlooks toward the interests ruled by Mercury and Saturn; dwelling on related problems may cause much unnecessary mental anguish. Introspective and reticent to express their opinions, many find casual conversation awkward.

*Mercury Square Uranus:* This aspect denotes a rebellious mind and radical ideas. These people are intellectual nonconformists who frequently disagree with current thought just to be different. They may come up with unprecedented ideas, but few of these ideas have any practical value. Because of the bizarre manner in which they conduct the affairs governed by Mercury and Uranus, many create awkward predicaments for themselves. In attempting to resolve one difficulty, they usually stir up even greater problems. They tend to talk in disjointed phrases and conversation is generally erratic. If Mercury is badly afflicted, this aspect can produce stuttering.

*Mercury Square Neptune:* This square induces forgetfulness, mental confusion and illogical thinking. Impressionable, these people tend to believe everything they read and most of what they hear. They are bewildered by conflicting ideas and controversial theories. Indecisiveness and the failure to form practical plans retard the development of the affairs influenced by the square. During conversation these people wander from one topic to another without making a point. They give evasive answers to pointed questions; many lie outright if backed into a corner.

*Mercury Square Pluto:* This aspect produces an intent, secretive, suspicious mind. These people are close-mouthed about their plans. Regardless of how voluble

they may seem to be, they never unintentionally reveal any information. They tend to suspect the most innocent statements or actions and remain unsatisfied until they prove the truth for themselves. They are too intense about the affairs ruled by Mercury and Pluto. Hardheaded and opinionated, refusing to alter their views, many try to force their ideas on others.

*Mercury Square North Node Square South Node:* These aspects place the individual at an intellectual disadvantage in the areas activated by Mercury, the North Node and the South Node. Ideas are either ahead of or behind the times. Misconceptions arise because of the inability to correctly phrase thoughts.

*Mercury Square Part of Fortune:* This square shows that insufficient planning can reduce the advantages associated with the Part of Fortune. Lack of understanding about the affairs influenced by the square stands in the way of success in these areas.

*Mercury Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* This combination of aspects indicates problems in expressing ideas verbally or in writing. These people are unable to communicate easily with the public or with close associates. Marital relations and partnerships may suffer as a result of breakdowns in communication.

*Mercury Square MC Square IC:* This combination points to inadequate communication and poor planning in relation to fourth and tenth house affairs. Consequently, the home atmosphere is uncomfortable, serious family misunderstandings arise, community standing is jeopardized and career ambitions falter.

## Mercury Trines

Mercury trines show those areas that spark intellectual interest according to the signs involved, the houses occupied by the planets in aspect and the houses ruled by these planets. These aspects foster good study habits and enhance one's learning aptitude. One can acquire a thorough understanding of the affairs governed by Mercury and a planet in trine. The individual is able to converse easily about affairs influenced by a Mercury trine.

*Mercury Trine Mars:* This trine produces an astute, alert mind. These people are quick to comprehend the

subtleties of the situations they encounter. They display insight and understanding in the conduct of the affairs influenced by the trine. Their speech is forceful and competitive. Witty conversationalists, they have snappy comebacks for almost any comment. Many develop speaking and writing skills of professional quality. This aspect denotes good physical coordination as well as mental agility and most of these people show interest in physical fitness.

*Mercury Trine Jupiter:* This aspect indicates scholastic interest, intelligence, sagacity and wisdom. These people are often the intellectuals in their circles. Concerned with truth and justice, many are the philosophers and teachers of the times. The affairs ruled by Mercury and Jupiter flourish because of the sound judgment these people exercise in related matters. They are broadminded and benevolent, and seldom make spiteful remarks or derogatory comments. Unless contrary factors indicate otherwise, they are optimistic, even-tempered, good-natured individuals who possess a lively sense of humor.

*Mercury Trine Saturn:* This trine improves logic and mental objectivity. Reasoning is structured around well-organized facts. These people are efficient planners; all details are accounted for and put into proper sequence, leaving no loose ends to chance. The affairs affected by this trine easily fall into place as a result of sensible judgment, sound management and practical direction. These people discipline themselves to sustain deep mental concentration for long periods of time. What they learn, they learn well. Serious-minded individuals, they show little interest in frivolous reading material or idle chatter.

*Mercury Trine Uranus:* This aspect denotes mental ingenuity and resourcefulness. Advanced thinkers, these people are not swayed intellectually by convention or popular thought. They reach conclusions that are original and often brilliant. In the treatment of affairs ruled by Mercury and Uranus they apply innovative methods and are quick to come up with alternate courses of action as circumstances change. Intuitive and witty, they express ideas in a manner designed to whet interest and to gain approval. They think and speak quickly and are never at a loss for words. When excited, many speak in a staccato-like fashion.

*Mercury Trine Neptune:* This trine gives a deep understanding of the spiritual and psychic aspects of one's nature. These people are drawn toward the intangibles in life. They benefit from the intuitive promptings and visions they receive, for they can correctly interpret the meaning of mystical happenings. Because they possess sharp instincts about conditions affected by the trine, these people are able to avoid mistakes in those affairs. They are expressive speakers who convey ideas in a manner that arouses sympathy in the listener. They seldom make obvious demands; instead, they rely on understatement and suggestion to persuade others to their causes. Some of them are inspired poets, choreographers or composers.

*Mercury Trine Pluto:* This aspect generates intellectual interest in the affairs ruled by Pluto and permits regeneration of mental resources. An uninterrupted flow of energy between Mercury and Pluto renews and strengthens the mental powers. These people are shrewd. They can accurately judge the outcome of actions directed toward the affairs influenced by the trine and seldom make mistakes in those areas. Through intelligent assessment of conditions and proper execution of plans, these people are able to master the conditions affected by the trine and thereby achieve outstanding success. They are impressive speakers, forceful and convincing.

*Mercury Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* These aspects ensure a clear conception of the social and cultural trends that influence an individual. Ideas are in harmony with prevailing thought. One recognizes and understands South Node tendencies and is thus able to overcome restrictive attitudes.

*Mercury Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine enables one to successfully utilize intellectual and communicative skills in the areas influenced by the Part of Fortune.

*Mercury Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* This combination of aspects permits clear expression of ideas. Other people understand and appreciate this person's ideas. The ability to communicate with one's spouse, partners and other associates promotes mental understanding and harmony in relationships.

*Mercury Trine MC Sextile IC:* These aspects emphasize the importance of education to one's career. The individual has the ability to learn the skills needed to

advance professional and business ambitions. This person communicates on the same level as job superiors and others who hold prominent positions. The home and family life present opportunities for learning and the individual may regard the home as a place of education. Family communication is active and friendly.

## *Mercury Oppositions*

Mercury oppositions produce sharp disagreements. The individual may not understand the affairs influenced by a Mercury opposition, or this person may harbor mental attitudes which give rise to conflict. An inability to fully develop the affairs governed by Mercury and a planet in opposition is a result of the individual's failure to become well informed about these matters. Insufficient planning and inadequate communications in these areas are also indicated.

*Mercury Opposite Mars:* This opposition brings out mental aggressiveness and contrariness. These people argue over anything and everything. If they are unable to win arguments with words they try to outshout opponents. Disrespectful of ideas that are not their own, they are harsh, insolent and loud in speech, and often evoke much hostility. The affairs ruled by Mercury and Mars reflect the consequences of ill-considered actions based on snap judgments and impulsiveness.

*Mercury Opposite Jupiter:* This aspect generates exaggerated plans and inflates the expression of ideas. These people tend to talk good ideas to death. They overestimate their intellectual abilities and misjudge the soundness of their plans. Rather than admit to poor planning, they frequently blame their failures on others. The affairs governed by Mercury and Jupiter are adversely affected by the unrealistic decisions they act on in connection with these matters. Many of these people are at odds with the religious and philosophical views held by the majority of their contemporaries.

*Mercury Opposite Saturn:* This opposition fosters negative mental attitudes and restricts the spontaneous flow of ideas. Intellectual responses and nervous reflexes are slow. These people may be highly intelligent; however, they express ideas in such a prosaic manner that others may think them dull. They have somber, pessimistic mental outlooks and tend to



worry too much. They treat the affairs influenced by the opposition with excessive caution and prudence. Because they are closed to new ideas and techniques that might improve these matters, affairs stagnate. Contemplative, they are not fluent conversationalists although they are good listeners. Their conversation is usually of a serious nature.

*Mercury Opposite Uranus:* This aspect can indicate genius, but unless Mercury and Uranus are otherwise well aspected, it promotes inconsistent ideas and eccentric opinions. Because of their radical views, these people are often found in the center of controversy. This opposition creates nervous tension and dislike for routine. These people institute frequent changes out of sheer boredom. They display sporadic interest in the affairs ruled by Mercury and Uranus; attention alternates between fanatical zeal and indifference. Unconcerned with the opinions of others, they have a knack for saying the wrong thing at the wrong time.

*Mercury Opposite Neptune:* This opposition generates absent-mindedness, wavering opinions and vague ideas. These people are elusive; they can be sly, cunning and conniving. They refuse to be pinned down to a decision, commitment or promise. Often it is difficult for them to express their thoughts clearly. They spend more time day-dreaming about the affairs influenced by the opposition than they do putting their plans into action. As a result, these interests are muddled, chaotic and unproductive. These people can get too deeply involved with the mystical, so much so that they lose touch with reality.

*Mercury Opposite Pluto:* Acute awareness and deep comprehension of conflicting ideas are produced by this aspect. These people understand opposing views and the premises on which these views are based. They formulate secret plans, which they execute carefully. Intent about the affairs governed by Mercury and Pluto, they seldom lose sight of these objectives. They are powerful speakers. They may antagonize others with their use of obscene language and overly explicit gestures. At times their language and gestures may become especially offensive.

*Mercury Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* This combination of aspects induces mental laziness. These people are content with the knowledge they acquire in the natural course of events and often fail to explore

timely ideas that could promote intellectual growth and enable them to conquer South Node limitations.

*Mercury Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition indicates intellectual disinterest in the affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune. The individual is inclined to ignore the mental challenges presented by this aspect.

*Mercury Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* These aspects enable one to establish a good intellectual rapport with the general public and with partners. Common mental interests provide the basis for marriage and other close associations. Many of these people attract younger mates.

*Mercury Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* This combination denotes intelligent conversational interchange with family members. The home reflects one's mental interests and intellectual tastes; it is well stocked with books, magazines and educational material.

## Mercury Parallels

A planet that forms a parallel with Mercury influences the mental processes and communicative ability. The signs that Mercury and a planet in parallel occupy color one's intellectual expression. The houses that the two planets occupy and rule give direction to mental interests and communication.

A Mercury parallel acts to reinforce any zodiacal aspect that exists between the same two planets. If Mercury and a planet in parallel do not also form a zodiacal aspect, the parallel is interpreted as a corresponding conjunction. A parallel that occurs between Mercury and a planet that occupies the same sign as Mercury carries as much weight in the horoscope as a conjunction. If Mercury and a planet in parallel are placed in different signs, the parallel is given less strength than a conjunction.

Mercury forms harmonious parallels with all benefic planets, the Ascendant and the Midheaven (MC). The harmony or disharmony exhibited by a Mercury parallel that is formed with a malefic planet or the North Node depends upon the nature of the signs involved. A discordant parallel is formed if Mercury and the aspected malefic or node occupy different signs of the same quadruplicity. A parallel between Mercury and the Part of Fortune indicates mental interest in the affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune; however,

the capacity to direct this interest productively depends upon the strength Mercury exerts in the horoscope.

### *Mercury Contraparallels*

Mercury contraparallels produce misunderstandings and mental tensions. The individual has little understanding of the affairs that are influenced by the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Mercury and a planet in contraparallel. Misconceptions and faulty communications contribute to problems that arise in areas affected by a Mercury contraparallel. These affairs fail to develop fully because the individual is ill-informed about these matters. This person may have an aversion to learning about related topics.

Mercury contraparallels formed with the Ascendant and MC are interpreted as afflicted conjunctions. Except for a Mercury/Venus contraparallel, all other Mercury contraparallels are interpreted as slightly less challenging oppositions. Contraparallels that involve opposite signs of the zodiac bear the same influence as corresponding oppositions; other Mercury contraparallels are accorded less weight than oppositions.

*Mercury Contraparallel Venus:* This aspect is not seriously antagonistic though it brings out negative tendencies of both planets and detracts from the quality of expression described by the signs they occupy. People with this aspect talk effusively about affairs governed by Mercury and Venus. They formulate plans that sound good in theory but are imprudent in practice. Unless other factors in the horoscope indicate differently, communicative skills are inadequate, social aplomb lacking. Conversational comments are frequently out of place or ill-timed. These people do not know when to talk or when to listen.

### *Minor Mercury Aspects*

The minor aspects formed by Mercury provide weak links between the intellect and the drives associated with planets in aspect. A minor Mercury aspect influences intellectual expression and communication in accordance with the nature of the aspect, the aspected planet and the signs and houses involved. These aspects describe mild mental interests, intellectual disinterest, conversational ease or

discomfort, or nervous agitation, depending upon the basic significance of the particular aspect formed.

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by Mercury:* The minor easy aspects that Mercury forms indicate mental agreement and pleasant conversation in connection with the affairs influenced by these aspects. A minor easy aspect softens the harshness of Mercury afflictions; it serves as a partial outlet for nervous tension and mental stress. The individual is intellectually at ease with the activities influenced by the minor easy aspects formed by Mercury. However, these effects are of lesser importance than the major aspects of the horoscope.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by Mercury:* A planet that forms a minor hard aspect with Mercury represents a source of mental aggravation. With the semi-square, irritating conversational habits manifest; these mannerisms are described by the nature of the aspected planet and the signs and houses involved. The sesquiquadrate indicates disagreeable mental attitudes, which are displayed in the affairs affected by the aspect. A Mercury quincunx implies nervous strain induced by the planet in aspect and intellectual disinterest in the affairs influenced by the quincunx. A Mercury quincunx calls for one to adjust negative mental attitudes that hinder mental development and interfere with the progress of interests that are influenced by Mercury and the planet in aspect.

# 19 *Venus Aspects*

Venus aspects deal with social behavior, companionship, affection, romance and sexual love. They influence one's intimate relationships; they show the kind of people one attracts and how one relates to others on a personal basis. One's aesthetic tastes, artistic inclinations and material preferences are also described by these aspects. The signs in which Venus and a planet in aspect are placed and the houses the two planets occupy and rule indicate how and in what areas of life one expresses love, beauty and harmony. In addition, the stressful aspects indicate difficulties that interfere with social interaction, partnerships, marriage, financial development, and one's capacity to express affection and attract love.

## *Venus Conjunctions*

A planet that forms a conjunction with Venus wields strong influence on one's social behavior, romantic inclinations, aesthetic expression and artistic sensitivity. The sign(s) in which a Venus conjunction occurs and the houses occupied and ruled by Venus and the conjuncted planet describe activities one enjoys, the possessions one desires, the people one attracts and the attachments one forms. Afflictions to the conjunction detract from the beauty and harmony that is associated with Venus.

*Venus Conjunct Mars:* This conjunction emphasizes the sexual nature; it unites the receptive and aggressive sexual drives. These people are acutely aware of their sexuality. They are passionate and amorous, highly attractive and attracted to the opposite sex. Sexual

expression depends upon the signs involved and aspects made to the conjunction. If the conjunction is afflicted, preoccupation with sex and promiscuity are possible. If other factors agree and the conjunction is heavily afflicted, prostitution or procuring may be indicated. In extreme cases this conjunction may indicate involvement in violent crimes of sexual assault or rape. The negative tendencies of an afflicted conjunction are more pronounced if the conjunction occurs in Taurus or Scorpio. This conjunction also promotes extravagant spending of personal monies and impractical handling of jointly-owned resources. These people are socially aggressive in the affairs influenced by the conjunction and in the activities governed by planets that aspect the conjunction.

*Venus Conjunct Jupiter:* This aspect is associated with personal happiness and some good fortune. These people are gracious, generous and extremely well liked. They do not exercise much restraint in the area of entertainment and social pleasures. They donate to philanthropic and religious causes. Artistic interests reflect exceptionally fine aesthetic taste. Considerations of beauty, pleasure and physical comfort underlie materialistic values. These people like elegant things; they do not hesitate to spend money to obtain the possessions they desire. Most are fortunate in love and lucky in money matters. The affairs ruled by Venus and Jupiter provide enjoyment as well as ample material benefits. If the conjunction is afflicted, laziness, moral weakness and extravagance are indicated.

*Venus Conjunct Saturn:* Relationships that endure are characteristic of this conjunction. These people are

serious about love. They do not give affection easily; however, they are devoted to those they do love. Social and friendly involvements must appeal to their sense of duty or social responsibility. This aspect strengthens marriage, although it also produces the tendency to marry for reasons of financial status or social prestige. If artistic talent is present in the horoscope and the conjunction is well aspected, these people are able to give concrete expression to artistic leanings; they create objects of lasting beauty and value. They manage money prudently. Miserliness, romantic disappointments, frigidity and/or impotence are indicated if the conjunction is afflicted and other factors concur.

*Venus Conjunct Uranus:* This aspect indicates social and romantic behavior that is unconventional and changeable. These people experiment with love; they form spur-of-the-moment attachments and dissolve relationships just as suddenly. Friendly and group oriented, they pursue social interests that offer thrills and excitement. Most prefer modernistic art forms. The signs, houses and affairs influenced by the conjunction reflect changing conditions and unexpected circumstances; however, unless the conjunction is afflicted, changes bring pleasure and financial benefits. These people earn and spend money erratically. An afflicted conjunction indicates irresponsibility with money and love. These people tend to resist partnership ties and many rebel against the institution of marriage.

*Venus Conjunct Neptune:* This conjunction denotes ethereal beauty and delicate charm. These people possess an elusive spiritual quality that is impossible to define. They are more romantic than sensual in love and tend to idealize romantic and marriage partners. Mystical art, music and the ballet hold aesthetic appeal. Because of their gentleness and sensitivity, these people are well liked. Their friends are usually refined and sympathetic. They do not view the affairs ruled by Venus and Neptune from a practical standpoint, but these affairs can prosper if the conjunction is unafflicted. If the conjunction is afflicted, these people may be forced to make heart-rending sacrifices in love and in connection with the interests influenced by the conjunction and the aspecting planets. An afflicted conjunction indicates disappointment and disillusionment in romance and

marriage; these people frequently get involved with persons who are unreliable or deceitful.

*Venus Conjunct Pluto:* This aspect generates enormous sexual magnetism. The emphasis of this conjunction depends upon the nature of aspects to the conjunction, the signs, other planets and all astrological factors that influence Venus and Pluto. These people are desirable to the opposite sex, not so much because of physical beauty or personal appeal, but because of the tremendous physical magnetism they possess. They are intensely aware of the power of sex. They dominate the social scene and the people with whom they are involved. This conjunction produces lusty women and virile men. If the conjunction is unafflicted and well placed by sign and house, the evolvment associated with Pluto can be advanced through the correct stewardship of financial resources and the transforming of base physical desires to the highest form of spiritual love. If the conjunction is afflicted and other factors agree, women tend to exploit the male sexual appetites for profit; men regard women as objects of sexual gratification. A heavily afflicted Venus/Pluto conjunction may be associated with sadism, debauchery and sexual orgies.

*Venus Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* These aspects indicate that the affairs influenced by Venus and the North Node are benefited by one's social conduct and friendly behavior. These affairs can be furthered through social contacts. By developing socially-acceptable behavior patterns, the individual can master undesirable habits denoted by the South Node and grow in the areas specified by the North Node.

*Venus Conjunct Part of Fortune:* This conjunction indicates material rewards and pleasure in connection with the affairs influenced by Venus and the Part of Fortune. These interests benefit extensively from the help of the business or marriage partner if the conjunction is unafflicted. Unless contrary factors in the horoscope indicate otherwise, partnerships are advantageous to the individual.

*Venus Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* This combination of aspects denotes physical beauty and personal charm. These people are gracious, courteous, refined and stylishly groomed. They dress in becoming fashions; many develop a taste for expensive clothes

and jewelry. If Venus is heavily afflicted, vanity and affected social mannerisms are present.

*Venus Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* This aspect combination links social charm (or the lack of it) and the ability to establish friendly relationships to career interests and worldly status. Relationships can be helpful in promoting professional advancement and social prestige and some of these people marry for similar reasons. They become involved socially and romantically with persons of stature and influence; many are social climbers.

### *Venus Sextiles*

Venus sextiles denote opportunities that are advantageous socially and financially. Because of Venus' natural rulership of Taurus and the second house, a Venus sextile reveals moneymaking avenues. Activities that offer satisfying aesthetic and artistic expression are also described by the signs and houses influenced by Venus and a planet in sextile. Love and companionship play important roles in the development of the affairs affected by a Venus sextile. These aspects are helpful to marital interests.

*Venus Sextile Mars:* This aspect gives a warm and affectionate love nature; it promotes a harmonious sex life and happiness in marriage. These people relate easily to the opposite sex. They take the initiative in pursuing romance but are not necessarily aggressive; this depends upon the signs and other factors involved. An active social life is indicated. Artistic interests might include sculpture, woodcarving and physical art forms created from metal or produced by the use of metal tools. The affairs ruled by Venus and Mars prosper under the individual's direction and with the help of partners or other associates.

*Venus Sextile Jupiter:* This sextile is a most fortunate aspect. It is one indication of prosperity. If creative talent is present in the horoscope, this aspect confirms artistic ability and contributes to the success and recognition of the artist. Immensely popular, these people are admired by their associates, and this admiration is usually well deserved. They are generous in expressing affection, and in return receive abundant affection from others. They may engage in numerous romances; at least, ample opportunities for romance exist. The affairs governed

by these two planets benefit from the protection and abundance promised by Jupiter and from the harmony and balance associated with Venus. Often these people attract affluent companions and form advantageous marriages and partnerships.

*Venus Sextile Saturn:* This sextile strengthens and steadies the affections; it promotes stable relationships and a lasting marriage. These people are not outgoing socially unless strong factors indicate otherwise; they tend to engage in social activities that are linked to business or professional interests. Social frivolities hold little appeal. These people attract persons who are serious and sincere; they limit personal relationships to those that are meaningful. They are thrifty but not stingy, acquisitive but not grasping. The affairs influenced by the sextile present opportunities that lead to the accumulation of money or other valuable assets. If artistic ability is indicated elsewhere in the horoscope, this aspect enables one to develop this ability along constructive lines.

*Venus Sextile Uranus:* This aspect creates a refreshing social outlook and a lively romantic life. Many of these people fall in love at first sight. Love relationships are not lasting unless other factors in the horoscope produce stability and endurance; however, Uranian romances seldom end on a sour note. These people attract persons who are progressive and stimulating. They enjoy the companionship of numerous acquaintances from all walks of life. They benefit emotionally and financially through social and fraternal organizations. Friends are a major influence in the development of the affairs ruled by Venus and Uranus. These people are quick to realize and utilize the opportunities that arise in these affairs and their interests prosper as a result of timely action. Most of them like contemporary music and modern art.

*Venus Sextile Neptune:* This sextile is associated with creative inspiration and artistic expression. These people derive much enjoyment from music, painting and other art forms and may possess talent in these areas. They are compassionate, companionable, amiable, affectionate and loving. Idealistic and sensitive in romance, they attract lovers who are gentle and refined. The affairs governed by Venus and Neptune provide opportunities for spiritual development as well as those directed toward financial

improvement. These people spend money on interests that are spiritually satisfying and on objects that have aesthetic value. Some of them contract secret marriages; others act as silent partners in business deals that are influenced by the sextile.

*Venus Sextile Pluto:* This aspect indicates a powerful love nature; however, it also gives control and direction to the passions. Women with this aspect attract men who are strong and virile as romantic partners; men with this aspect attract sensuous women. They are dynamic marriage and business partners. Many are social leaders. Through the opportunities generated by this sextile, they are able to transform liabilities into assets. This aspect helps alleviate difficulties connected with eighth house affairs. It is one indication of an inheritance if neither planet is afflicted.

*Venus Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* This combination of aspects produces opportunities to form harmonious and prosperous alliances. These people are aware of economic trends; they adjust easily to social customs and readily discard socially-unacceptable attitudes. Marriage, partnerships and social involvements aid the individual's growth in the areas influenced by these aspects.

*Venus Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile increases opportunities to develop the affairs influenced by Venus and the Part of Fortune. It indicates success and ample remuneration in connection with related endeavors.

*Venus Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* These aspects create opportunities in which personal charm and refined social behavior can be exercised advantageously. These people project likeable images and get along well with partners and society in general. If other factors concur, these aspects indicate a happy marriage.

*Venus Sextile MC Trine IC:* This aspect combination prompts career and business opportunities that are financially worthwhile. Most of these people are well paid for their services. Always conscious of social amenities, they are tactful and pleasant with superiors and business associates. A peaceful home atmosphere and affectionate family ties are indicated. Home decor reflects beauty and good taste.

## *Venus Squares*

Planets that form squares with Venus block the graceful, refined qualities that are natural to Venus and interfere with romantic and aesthetic expression. Social interaction in the areas influenced by Venus squares is difficult. These aspects represent obstacles to happiness in marriage; they disrupt harmony in partnerships and generate financial problems.

*Venus Square Mars:* This square creates strong attraction between the sexes. These people are passionate and demanding in love but may be insensitive to the sexual needs and romantic desires of their partners. Romance, sexual involvements and marriage are turbulent; intimate relationships are fraught with arguments. Because of extravagance or mismanagement of funds, the affairs ruled by Venus and Mars are largely unprofitable. Social behavior is often crude; aesthetic taste, undeveloped; partnerships, difficult.

*Venus Square Jupiter:* This aspect overemphasizes social amenities and induces an elaborate display of good manners and gentility. These people are excessive in their expression of affection, sometimes becoming flattering and ingratiating. Both men and women with this aspect tend to be vain about their looks; they value physical beauty in themselves and in their companions. Men see themselves as Adonis-like figures and have delusions about their popularity. Extravagant and careless with money, they are concerned with the comforts, luxuries and pleasures of life. The affairs governed by Venus and Jupiter usually fail to prosper because of excessive expenditures and distorted values. If other factors agree, these people do not like to be alone; however, the companionship they seek through social interaction, marriage or partnership lacks depth and meaning.

*Venus Square Saturn:* This square inhibits social and romantic expression. These people are shy and embarrassed by overt displays of affection. They are not physically demonstrative people, at least not in public. More impressed with utilitarian values than with those of aesthetics or sentiment, they tend to view social interests, marriage and partnerships from a pragmatic standpoint. Intimate relationships produce little happiness or pleasure and often lack the sense

of togetherness that bonds two people in love. Social interaction is stiff and limited primarily to necessary or expedient activities. These people conduct the affairs influenced by the square in a cold and calculating manner that is designed to provide financial security and community status. If either Venus or Saturn is afflicted by other planets, they are inclined to be stingy and exacting with their marriage partners.

*Venus Square Uranus:* This aspect produces a hectic love life. A continuous sequence of exciting but ill-fated and short-lived love affairs is characteristic of this square. Romance and marriage are beset by misunderstandings and sudden changes of heart. If other factors in the horoscope agree and the general tenor of the horoscope suggests misdirection of sexual energies, this square can distort sexual identity; in some cases homosexuality may result. It is difficult for these people to draw the line between friendship and romantic love. Most refuse to conform to social standards that infringe upon their independence and are adverse to the responsibilities that partnerships entail. These people adopt unconventional attitudes toward marriage and money. The development of the affairs governed by Venus and Uranus is thwarted by unstable conditions, inconsistency and erratic actions.

*Venus Square Neptune:* This square is associated with clandestine romance and sexual seduction. Fascinated with the intrigue of forbidden romance, some of these people get involved in scandalous love affairs. They view love unrealistically; most are blind to the faults of their lovers. This aspect is sometimes found in the horoscopes of bisexuals and transvestites. These people are naive about money matters and careless with valuables. Unless the second house and its ruling planet(s) are strong and well aspected they do not fully develop their resources. This aspect is one indication of possible involvement in embezzlement, bribery or graft. The affairs governed by Venus and Neptune may suffer losses as a result of theft, underhanded dealings and misplaced trust. These people are artistic; favorable aspects to Venus or Neptune provide constructive outlets for creative abilities.

*Venus Square Pluto:* This aspect creates intense sexual desires. Control of the passions is a must, for lack of control can lead to sexual excesses. This aspect is often associated with prostitution and sex-oriented magic. Unless other factors support high ethical standards, these

people have few morals where money or sex is concerned. In extreme instances, this aspect can indicate involvement in sex-related crimes if other factors in the horoscope strongly indicate similar criminal tendencies. These people become involved socially or financially with racketeers and persons who have unsavory reputations. Some of the intense sexual energy created by this square can be diverted into creative activities denoted by harmonious aspects to either Venus or Pluto. These people tend to dominate marriage and the affairs influenced by the square. Many upheavals and much contention occur in these areas.

*Venus Square North Node Square South Node:* These aspects indicate lack of social poise and a tendency to ignore social customs. Lack of economic awareness leads them to spend money when they should save and vice versa. It is important that they learn to observe social niceties and to recognize financial trends in order to adequately develop their resources.

*Venus Square Part of Fortune:* Depending upon the signs and houses involved, this square points to setbacks caused by romantic indiscretions or financial mismanagement. Romantic interests and pleasurable pursuits can interfere with the progress of affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune.

*Venus Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* This combination of aspects describes a dissatisfied person who, as a result of personal conflicts, is not pleased with the marriage partner and other close associates. These people have difficulty in understanding themselves and in relating to society in general.

*Venus Square MC Square IC:* This aspect combination suggests the inability to establish a profitable social rapport with superiors. It is difficult for these people to sustain family ties or maintain domestic harmony. They tend to resent parents and those professional associates who are more successful than they.

## Venus Trines

The trines that Venus forms give easy expression to social inclinations, artistic interests, romantic tendencies and material desires. A Venus trine promotes beneficial contacts in the affairs influenced by the aspect; related activities are both enjoyable and profitable. Venus rules

music and art; a Venus trine can indicate ability along these lines according to the nature of the aspecting planet and the signs and houses involved.

*Venus Trine Mars:* An easy-going and comfortable relationship between the sexes is fostered by this trine. These people enjoy the company of the opposite sex. They are not embarrassed by their sexuality and accept sex as a natural part of life. This aspect is indicative of marital harmony. The affairs ruled by Venus and Mars prosper under the direction of these people. However, they like to spend money, and unless balancing factors are present, save very little for a rainy day. Much personal initiative is directed into social activities, partnerships and other associations.

*Venus Trine Jupiter:* This aspect does much to create prosperity. Most of these people seem to attract wealth and the good things of life. The affairs governed by Venus and Jupiter flow smoothly and profitably with little help from the individual. This is a "good luck" aspect, which promotes good fortune in connection with related interests. These people derive benefits through marriage and partnerships. Artistic ability may be present, but the trine gives little ambition to pursue these inclinations for reasons other than enjoyment. However, a trine or sextile from Saturn or any other stabilizing factor can crystalize talent. If other factors give direction and purpose to artistic ability, the trine promises success and recognition.

*Venus Trine Saturn:* This trine produces enduring marriages and stable partnerships. These people do not rush into marriage or other close relationships. When they make commitments, however, they take their obligations seriously. They are loyal to those they love, although not particularly demonstrative. They are practical with money and other resources and realistic about the affairs governed by Venus and Saturn. Because of prudent management, these interests develop successfully. If artistic ability is indicated in the horoscope, this aspect gives structure and direction to creative inspiration; these people focus their talents constructively.

*Venus Trine Uranus:* This aspect generates lively romances and spontaneous friendships. Vivacious, fun-loving and stimulating, these people are recognized as the trend-setters in social circles and fraternal societies. Most of them form partnerships and

friendships that are unusual by popular standards. They are romantically appealing and very attractive to the opposite sex. Marriage is never dull for these people or their spouses. Unexpected financial windfalls frequently manifest in connection with the affairs ruled by Venus and Uranus. This trine produces a distinctive artistic style that is unique to the individual.

*Venus Trine Neptune:* Gentleness, compassion and refined aesthetic taste are characteristic of this trine. These people arouse sympathy in others and attract friends who are kind and thoughtful. They are usually more interested in the spiritual qualities of their relationships than in material prospects. Although they look for spiritual beauty in their companions, the kind of beauty they possess can be best described as alluring, glamorous, enchanting, seductive, fascinating and enticing. This aspect carries a karmic connotation in regard to marriage and the affairs governed by Venus and Neptune. Despite the individual's somewhat lackadaisical attitude toward financial matters, these interests usually prosper.

*Venus Trine Pluto:* This aspect gives strong sexual drives, but it also elevates love to the highest form of expression. These people enjoy love to the fullest. Love relationships are meaningful and frequently inspirational. Spiritual evolution is linked to marriage and to the associations these people form in the course of affairs influenced by the trine. Constructive social relationships and material benefits are also associated with this trine. These people enrich themselves spiritually and financially; they better the lives of their friends and loved ones. This aspect is one indication of a generous inheritance.

*Venus Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* This aspect combination shows awareness of social and economic trends. These people relate comfortably on a social level. They benefit from timely financial action. Opportunities that enable them to overcome restrictive attitudes are made available through social contacts.

*Venus Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine assures material rewards as a result of the development of affairs influenced by Venus and the Part of Fortune. These interests prosper and bring to the individual some measure of financial success and social acceptance.

*Venus Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* These aspects indicate refined manners and an attractive



appearance. These people project grace and personal charm. Most have good taste in clothes and art. They attract mates and social acquaintances who are congenial and compatible. Marriage is usually happy and advantageous.

*Venus Trine MC Sextile IC:* This combination of aspects supports career success and social recognition. These people are well liked by their superiors; they gain favor with persons who can and do influence career advancement. Family ties open the doors to valuable professional opportunities. These people share their fame and good fortune with their families.

### *Venus Oppositions*

Venus oppositions indicate romantic and social conflicts. The affairs ruled by Venus and a planet in opposition are mutually antagonistic. These aspects create rifts in marriage, partnerships and other close associations in accordance with the planets, signs and houses involved. They also detract from the harmony and artistic expression that is associated with Venus. A Venus opposition may produce financial discrepancies and economic failures in relation to the interests influenced by the aspect.

*Venus Opposite Mars:* This aspect arouses forceful sexual desires. Sexual conquests are more important than romantic love or feelings of affection, and sex can become a goal in itself. If Venus, which represents the receptive side of sexuality, is the stronger of the two planets by sign position and/or aspects, the individual may be subject to sexual abuse. If Mars, which expresses aggressive sexual urges, is more powerful in the horoscope, the individual may be obsessed with the desire for sexual gratification. Despite strong sexual passions, these people do not relate well to the opposite sex. Intimate relationships are marred by jealousy. Sexual attraction is often the primary basis for marriage. Contention and hostility disrupt the affairs ruled by Venus and Mars. These people tend to quarrel with friends, spouses and partners. Extravagance is likely unless other factors indicate financial prudence. Favorable aspects to Venus or Mars are helpful in reducing the selfish qualities of the opposition and in softening the harshness of sexual expression.

*Venus Opposite Jupiter:* This opposition fosters exaggerated social mannerisms and flowery romantic expression. It also induces vanity, laziness and self-indulgence. These people adopt extravagant social affectations. They greet comparative strangers with effusive familiarity and shower loved ones with flattering words and sentimental gifts. However, much of this attention is insincere and their relationships are largely superficial. Spiritual and material values are in conflict and frequently distorted. Many of these people are spendthrifts who live far beyond their means. The affairs influenced by this opposition lack balance; it is difficult for one to establish proper priorities in relation to the interests ruled by Venus and Jupiter.

*Venus Opposite Saturn:* This aspect places the sociability and affection of Venus in conflict with the aloofness and severity of Saturn. It is hard for these people to reach out in love; inhibited and shy with the opposite sex, they suffer romantic disappointments. Marriage promises little emotional fulfillment; the marriage partner may seem cold and uncaring. Many of these people are extremely antisocial; some develop strong reclusive tendencies if other factors concur. Economic setbacks and hardships afflict the affairs governed by Venus and Saturn, causing unhappiness and displeasure. Because materialistic considerations outweigh sentiment, this aspect can induce miserliness, greed and avarice.

*Venus Opposite Uranus:* This opposition denotes inconsistency in friendship, romance and marriage. These people fall in and out of love with alarming abruptness. They are attracted to exotic types and persons who can be classed as "different." Few derive lasting satisfaction from their relationships, and there is a possibility of marital separation or divorce. Some of these people marry several times in search of an exciting partner. Uncooperative and independent, they do not like to be bound by commitments of any sort. The desire for companionship is in direct conflict with the urge for freedom. If other factors in the horoscope support these findings, this aspect is linked to sexual aberrations and homosexuality. The affairs ruled by Venus and Uranus are unstable; these interests seldom develop fully unless both Venus and Uranus are otherwise well aspected. This opposition also fosters erratic spending habits and sudden financial reversals.

*Venus Opposite Neptune:* This aspect blurs aesthetic, social, romantic and sexual perceptions. These people idealize lovers and marriage partners. They are vulnerable to romantic disillusionment and sexual seduction. Many have confused or unrealistic conceptions of their sexual identities. Some associate sex with spiritual sublimation. This opposition produces erotic sensitivity. If other astrological factors agree, it may be linked to drug-related sex cults. Bisexual tendencies or confused sexual behavior may also be indicated. Social relationships are subtly undermined and economic structures weakened by this aspect. These people are gullible in marriage, partnerships, finances and the affairs in the horoscope ruled by Venus and Neptune. They are secretive about Venus/Neptune interests and involvement in clandestine relationships is possible. Those who engage in fraudulent activities attract scandal and may be ostracized.

*Venus Opposite Pluto:* This opposition produces overwhelming passions and sexually-rooted conflicts. Aesthetic instincts may be warped by physical urges and material drives. Elements of coercion and cruelty can enter into social, romantic and sexual relationships. This opposition is one indication of a stormy marriage and perhaps separation, divorce, or the abrupt departure of the marriage partner. Underworld involvements can be part of this aspect if other factors in the horoscope reveal similar indications. If illicit activities are suggested, they center around the affairs governed by Venus and Pluto. These people are challenged by this opposition to enlarge the scope of Venus/Pluto activity and influence; these interests represent a power base to be expanded and exploited by any available means.

*Venus Opposite Node Conjunct South Node:* These aspects denote social, romantic and economic disadvantages. The negative tendencies described by the South Node are difficult to overcome because the individual derives pleasure and comfort from the practice of these habits.

*Venus Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition interferes with the material and social benefits associated with Venus and the Part of Fortune. Related interests are distasteful to the individual and frequently are unpleasant.

*Venus Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* This combination of aspects contributes to happiness in marriage and cooperation in partnerships unless Venus is heavily afflicted. These people relate compatibly to society in general and form alliances that are socially and economically advantageous.

*Venus Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* This aspect combination indicates loving family ties and a harmonious home life. These people are generous with their families. Unless other factors elevate the importance of the tenth house, they derive more happiness through family interests than from worldly success. Designed for easy living and entertaining guests, their homes are models of beauty and comfort.

### *Venus Parallels*

Venus parallels influence artistic inclinations, social interaction, romance, marriage, partnerships and financial interests in accordance with the nature of the planet in parallel and the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Venus and the aspected planet. Venusian qualities combine with the energies of a planet in parallel in a manner similar to that characterized by a Venus conjunction. The effect of a Venus parallel is not as powerful as that of a Venus conjunction except in those instances when Venus and the planet in parallel occupy the same sign of the zodiac.

If Venus and a planet with which Venus forms a zodiacal aspect also form a parallel, the parallel strengthens the zodiacal aspect; this parallel is given the same meaning as the zodiacal aspect it supports.

A Venus parallel that is not accompanied by a zodiacal aspect between Venus and the paralleled planet is interpreted as a modified conjunction when the two planets occupy different signs of the zodiac. An unaccompanied parallel that occurs between Venus and a planet that occupies the same sign as Venus takes on the full character of a corresponding Venus conjunction. A Venus parallel that is formed with Mars, Saturn or Pluto assumes the negative characteristics of the corresponding conjunction if the planet in parallel occupies a sign that is incompatible with the sign in which Venus is posited. All other unaccompanied Venus parallels are naturally harmonious and are interpreted as favorable conjunctions.

## *Venus Contraparallels*

A Venus contraparallel generates discord, disharmony and stress in connection with affairs governed by Venus and the aspected planet. A Venus contraparallel formed with the Ascendant or MC is treated as an afflicted conjunction; other Venus contraparallels are interpreted as mild oppositions. In adapting the meaning of an opposition to the interpretation of a corresponding contraparallel, the antagonistic and separative qualities of the opposition are modified. Dislike is created by a contraparallel instead of the animosity produced by an opposition; distaste is denoted by a contraparallel rather than hostility; annoying social mannerisms replace socially offensive practices; disagreements are indicated but not separations. The negative sexual implications that are characteristic of some Venus oppositions do not apply to Venus contraparallels.

## *Minor Venus Aspects*

Minor Venus aspects channel artistic, social and romantic interests through the energies of the planets in aspect with Venus according to the signs and houses involved. The affairs influenced by a minor Venus aspect create enjoyment or displeasure, depending upon the nature of the aspect. Minor Venus aspects bear weak influence on the marriage relationship and finances.

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by Venus:* Minor easy aspects formed by Venus describe secondary interests that are enjoyable, and in the case of the semi-sextile, slightly profitable. They reduce discord and create some measure of harmony in the affairs and relationships that are influenced by Venus and the planet in aspect. These aspects also modify negative sexual tendencies shown by Venus afflictions by providing weak but constructive outlets for sexual energies.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by Venus:* The minor hard aspects that Venus forms detract from artistic taste, social expression and marital harmony. These aspects are more annoying than actually troublesome. They point out irritating social mannerisms or lack of refinement and suggest little extravagances or miserly tendencies depending upon the natures of the planets and signs involved. These are limited to areas influenced by the aspects.

# 20 Mars Aspects

Mars aspects give direction to physical energy and sex drive. They influence stamina, aggressiveness, temper, initiative and enthusiasm. Favorable aspects to Mars produce constructive action in the houses ruled and occupied by Mars and the aspecting planets. These aspects enable one to properly utilize strength so that energy is conserved and vigor is maintained. Difficult Mars aspects produce dissipation of energy and destructive action; they bring out the rash, inconsiderate, angry, harsh and sometimes cruel qualities of Mars. As natural ruler of the first house and Aries, Mars influences the personality; as co-ruler (with Pluto) of the eighth house and Scorpio, it also has some bearing on joint financial interests, marital resources, partnership finances, tax concerns and other eighth house affairs.

## *Mars Conjunctions*

Mars conjunctions induce incentive and generate activity. Initiative and aggressive action are directed toward the interests influenced by a Mars conjunction. A Mars conjunction funnels physical energy into the affairs described by the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Mars and the conjuncted planet. The productivity of endeavors prompted by a Mars conjunction depends upon the type of aspects made to the conjunction and the nature of the planets that aspect the conjunction.

*Mars Conjunct Jupiter:* This conjunction generates energy, enthusiasm, ambition and ample sex drive. These people are physically active, enterprising,

courageous and adventurous. They are go-getters who expect to succeed, and many do. They make worthwhile contributions in the areas governed by Mars and Jupiter. Unless the conjunction is badly afflicted, the affairs influenced by this aspect develop fully and prosperously. Adverse aspects to the conjunction encourage impatience, belligerence, argumentativeness, recklessness and extreme action.

*Mars Conjunct Saturn:* This aspect controls the use of energy and strengthens physical endurance. These people are industrious, willing workers. Action is disciplined; sex drive is partially diverted into work-related activities. The affairs ruled by Mars and Saturn are well organized if the conjunction is unafflicted. Afflictions to the conjunction make it difficult for the individual to handle Saturn-induced frustrations. Saturn limits the enthusiasm of Mars and restricts Martian initiative. If the conjunction is afflicted, suppressed anger can build into resentment that may be expressed in vindictive acts. Adverse aspects to the conjunction generate fear of failure, cowardice and dislike for competitive activities.

*Mars Conjunct Uranus:* This aspect increases energy, initiative, courage and daring, but unless the conjunction is well aspected, control and constructive direction of energies are lacking. This aspect is indicative of the daredevil, the thrill-seeker, the extremist, the rebel and the revolutionary. These people crave freedom and excitement. Unafraid in the face of danger, many engage in jobs or sports that are hazardous. If nothing in the horoscope indicates stable relationships, sporadic sexual impulses can lead to

fleeting sexual encounters and exotic amorous adventures. These people show dynamic interest in the affairs influenced by the conjunction; they force developments along unconventional and often original lines. If the conjunction is afflicted, these people are accident-prone and foolhardy.

*Mars Conjunct Neptune:* This conjunction unites physical and spiritual energies. The emphasis of this conjunction depends upon the relative strength of the two planets in the horoscope, the signs and houses involved, and the aspects other planets make to the conjunction. If Mars is stronger than Neptune by sign placement and house position, physical desires override spiritual considerations; if Neptune is the stronger of the two planets, physical energy and sex drive contribute to spiritual development. Mystery and secrecy shroud the affairs governed by Mars and Neptune. Physical lethargy and muscle weakness are indicated if the conjunction occurs in a weak sign or debilitating factors affect either planet. If the conjunction is afflicted, these people can be the victims or perpetrators of fraud, deceit and subterfuge as described by the afflicting planets.

*Mars Conjunct Pluto:* This aspect generates driving ambition and almost superhuman strength. Even if the conjunction is placed in a weak sign, physical energy is greatly reinforced by this aspect. These people are fearless, bold and powerful. By governing the affairs ruled by Mars and Pluto with an iron hand, they exert tremendous influence in the areas activated by the conjunction. Magnetic physical attraction and strong sexual energies are indicated by this aspect. If the conjunction is afflicted, the tendency to use physical force or personal influence as a means of intimidating others is evident. Afflictions can indicate uncontrollable passions, violence, cruelty, immorality and/or criminal inclinations, if other factors in the horoscope support such findings.

*Mars Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* These aspects induce action that is timely and acceptable in light of prevailing trends. The tension generated by the opposition challenges the individual to deal with the limitations described by the South Node, and unless Mars is heavily afflicted, this person has the incentive and desire necessary to overcome these restrictions.

*Mars Conjunct Part of Fortune:* This conjunction signifies that much energy is directed into the affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune. The interests governed by Mars benefit from the advantages associated with the Part of Fortune.

*Mars Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* This combination of aspects energizes the personality. The individual is impulsive, impetuous, aggressive, competitive, bold and quick-tempered within the context of sign expression. Physical strength, motivation and leadership are indicated. If Mars is afflicted, anger, impatience, recklessness and boisterousness are produced; the individual is accident-prone and subject to high fevers.

*Mars Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* This aspect combination focuses the energy and passion of Mars on worldly ambition and career achievements. Much action in professional and business affairs is guaranteed, although these aspects do not ensure success unless Mars is well aspected. Good aspects from Jupiter, Saturn or the planetary ruler of the sign on the cusp of the tenth house are especially helpful. Unless Mars is heavily afflicted, these people are not easily discouraged by career setbacks. They are quick to act in all matters that pertain to professional interests.

## *Mars Sextiles*

Mars sextiles promote positive expression of the dynamism, courage, forcefulness and initiative that is characteristic of Mars. They support constructive development of the affairs governed by Mars and the planets in aspect and point out areas of potential achievement according to the signs and houses involved. These aspects help alleviate adverse effects of difficulties and obstacles imposed by afflictions to Mars; they enable the individual to handle Mars-related frustrations in a positive manner.

*Mars Sextile Jupiter:* This aspect denotes honesty, generosity, and respect for the laws and ethics of society. Optimistic, energetic and ambitious, these people show enthusiasm for their work. Most of them are athletically inclined; many engage in outdoor sports of some sort. This aspect increases stamina and muscular strength and indicates vigorous but controlled sex drive. Abundant opportunities and

outstanding achievements are associated with the affairs and activities influenced by Mars and Jupiter.

*Mars Sextile Saturn:* This sextile curbs the recklessness of Mars; valor replaces audacity; self-discipline restrains brashness. Initiative, ambition and endurance are strengthened. Opportunities to advance the affairs ruled by Mars and Saturn, though not necessarily abundant, are worthwhile. Unless strong contrary factors are present in the horoscope, these people are achievers because they make efficient use of their abilities and are not easily discouraged by life's hardships. The ability to act quickly and effectively in emergency situations is evident. Sexual expression is somewhat subdued.

*Mars Sextile Uranus:* This aspect brings out daring, fearlessness and adventurousness. These people are brave, courageous and individualistic, but they are not foolhardy. They possess amazing foresight about the affairs influenced by the sextile and are able to act quickly and decisively when opportunities arise. Few are satisfied to rest on their achievements; as soon as one goal is reached, most strive for greater attainments. Because they are sure of themselves and unafraid to venture into unknown areas, many of these people open the gates to new and uncharted fields. They are the experimenters, the explorers and the discoverers. These people sparkle with sexual magnetism.

*Mars Sextile Neptune:* This sextile modifies the overtness and abrasiveness of Mars. These people are forceful but not pushy. They are honest though not especially open. They conduct the affairs governed by Mars and Neptune secretly, and jealously guard the privacy of these interests. Many of these people are psychic. Alert to subtle developments, they make shrewd moves based on intuitive awareness. Often they are interested in meditative spiritual exercises and yoga-type body-building practices. This aspect occurs in the horoscopes of good dancers, championship swimmers and able water skiers. Sexual expression is gentle, loving.

*Mars Sextile Pluto:* This aspect reinforces ambition, leadership, muscular strength and sexual energy. The drive for power is channeled into the affairs influenced by the sextile as shown by the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Mars and Pluto. These people have the potential to reach the highest level of Plutonian involvement and opportunities to do so.

They possess a sense of destiny that gives purpose to life. They are vigorous physically and sexually. Most engage in some form of body-building exercises.

*Mars Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* This combination of aspects indicates action that is in tune with prevailing trends and customs. These people direct their energies toward productive ends. They are able to master the hindering attitudes denoted by the South Node and to pursue opportunities for growth designated by the Mars/North Node sextile.

*Mars Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile gives forceful direction to the development of affairs influenced by the aspect. It also indicates those advantages derived through muscular strength and physical well-being.

*Mars Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* These aspects indicate outgoing personal expression and forthright action. In marriage and partnerships these people are forceful, but not exacting. They obtain cooperation because they are direct, energetic and willing to work with others.

*Mars Sextile MC Trine IC:* This aspect combination generates professional opportunities and increases the potential for success. Sharply aware of worldly goals, these people energetically pursue their ambitions. They are active in family affairs as well and take great interest in home-related activities.

## Mars Squares

Mars squares create obstacles that are caused by rash or inappropriate actions. They also stir ambition and activity. These squares appear frequently in the horoscopes of successful people; the key to success lies in harnessing the energy of Mars and channeling this energy productively. The areas associated with the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Mars and a planet in square represent sources of frustration, trouble and tension. Favorable aspects to Mars or to a planet that squares Mars indicate the means with which to overcome or deal with difficulties produced by Mars squares.

*Mars Square Jupiter:* This square produces excesses in the activities and interests influenced by the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Mars and Jupiter. It indicates wastefulness, recklessness, foolhardiness,

impetuousness and disrespect for the law. These people tend to overestimate their potentials in the affairs affected by the square and to underestimate the consequences of extreme actions. They are fearless to the point of foolhardiness. To prove their daring, they risk money and safety and eagerly accept any challenge. Most seem to have energy to burn, but dissipate it through excessive activity. Many suffer hernias, injuries or muscular ailments caused by physical strain. The need for sexual gratification is emphasized, but satisfaction rarely gives inner fulfillment.

*Mars Square Saturn:* In this aspect the frustrating action of Saturn places strong restraints on the ardor and courage of Mars. This square produces fear of danger and dislike for war and the military. If other afflictions to Mars and Saturn are present, cowardice is indicated. Anguish and despair undermine self-confidence. If these people fail to successfully develop the affairs ruled by Mars and Saturn it is because they yield to defeat when setbacks are encountered. They tend to blame failures on adverse conditions and persons who block their efforts. They stoically endure hardships, but they harbor angry resentment against the conditions or persons whom they hold responsible for their problems. Sex drive is limited. If other factors agree, this aspect is one indication of impotence in a man's horoscope or frigidity in a woman's.

*Mars Square Uranus:* This square causes overstimulation of physical energy and sex drive and produces a state of constant agitation. These people possess voracious appetites for action and excitement. They court danger and seek thrills in the activities influenced by the square. They are impatient, impulsive, willful, reckless and resent interference. This square generates hectic conditions in the affairs governed by Mars and Uranus. These people implement hasty changes without regard for the consequences of their actions. The desire for freedom breeds discontent, rebellion and explosive temper. Patience and caution are much needed. Violence and accidents associated with dangerous sports, high-speed driving, guns, knives, explosives and electrical equipment are possible. Unusual sexual tendencies can develop if other factors in the horoscope suggest sexual aberrations.

*Mars Square Neptune:* This aspect stimulates psychic energy and arouses spiritual interest. Caution should be exercised, however, in occult activity. The signs and

houses associated with this square show areas of incompetence and illusion. Imaginative but inappropriate actions produce chaos and confusion in the affairs governed by Mars and Neptune; these interests are influenced by hidden motivations and covert activities. The physical drive of Mars is weakened by the escapist tendencies of Neptune. Alcoholism, drug addiction and sexual perversion are possible if other factors in the horoscope agree. If Neptune is stronger in the horoscope than Mars, escapism may be expressed in the form of spiritual delusion or cultism.

*Mars Square Pluto:* This aspect increases aggressiveness and gives added force to physical and sexual drives. These people tend to intimidate others through the use of physical coercion. Indomitable in the affairs ruled by Mars and Pluto, they refuse to bend under difficult circumstances or to yield to pressures generated by this square. If either of these two planets form additional adverse aspects, violence, brutality or criminal tendencies may exist. This square produces a powerful sex drive and can be an indicator of sexual abuse, debauchery, manipulation and exploitation.

*Mars Square North Node Square South Node:* This aspect combination shows disregard for prevailing customs in the affairs influenced by Mars and the North Node; headstrong actions create difficulties and hardships in these areas. Anger and hostility impede the capacity to overcome faults described by the South Node.

*Mars Square Part of Fortune:* This square denotes difficulties that are created by rash actions. This individual must master hasty impulses, which cause setbacks, in order to obtain the benefits associated with the Part of Fortune.

*Mars Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* These aspects indicate personal and marital problems. Friction exists in partnerships because the individual is belligerent, domineering and uncooperative in accordance with the signs involved.

*Mars Square MC Square IC:* This combination of aspects produces hostility, friction and disputes that affect domestic and professional interests. Anger is directed toward job superiors and family members. Some of these people are agitators who deliberately aggravate officials and provoke domestic quarrels.

## Mars Trines

Mars trines permit natural expression and uninterrupted flow of Martian energy; they point out potentially fruitful areas of development. Constructive action is directed into the affairs governed by Mars and a planet in trine. A Mars trine influences productivity according to the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Mars and the trined planet. Because Mars trines give positive direction to aggressive sexual drives, these aspects counteract negative sexual connotations found elsewhere in the horoscope.

*Mars Trine Jupiter:* This trine produces abundant energy, ambition and enthusiasm and gives positive direction to actions. It combines motivation, initiative and action with integrity, wisdom and good fortune, thus promoting success in the affairs ruled by Mars and Jupiter. Unless strong contradictory factors are present in the horoscope, these people are high-principled, honest and forthright. This aspect indicates physical strength and muscularity; it also increases sexual vigor and gives positive expression to sexual drives. The protective qualities of Jupiter act as safeguards against bodily harm.

*Mars Trine Saturn:* This aspect is extremely helpful, for it stabilizes Martian energy and gives structure to the activities influenced by the trine. It offsets careless and reckless tendencies if such inclinations appear in the horoscope and fosters action that is orderly, efficient, practical and conservative. These people demonstrate courage, determination, responsibility and drive; they willingly undertake hard work. They cope ably with emergencies; few fall apart in stressful situations. Sex drive is controlled; sexual expression is somewhat restrained but not prudish.

*Mars Trine Uranus:* This aspect indicates decisive, timely actions. The affairs governed by Mars and Uranus succeed as a result of resourceful, innovative treatment. These people do not hesitate to try advanced or unconventional methods to improve or hasten the operation of activities influenced by the trine. They are inventive, daring, enterprising and venturesome. Active, animated and lively, they seem to have endless supplies of energy. Most enjoy the thrills associated with racing fast cars, stunt flying and other exciting or dangerous sports. They are easily aroused sexually; sexual expression is spontaneous, uninhibited.

*Mars Trine Neptune:* This trine strengthens spiritual resources and generates constructive psychic energy. Intuitive and imaginative, these people are inspired by the dreams they visualize. Their inspirations stimulate action to give their dreams form and expression. These people handle the affairs ruled by Mars and Neptune with sensitivity and as much delicacy as is possible within the context of sign expression. They value privacy and tend to shield those activities affected by the trine from outside scrutiny. A fascinating quality that is sensed rather than observed and that produces sexual allure is associated with this aspect. Sex drive is sometimes diverted into spiritual channels.

*Mars Trine Pluto:* This aspect produces physical energy, strength, boldness, courage and constructive activity. These people do not know the meaning of defeat. They neither back away from danger nor bend to threats. Forceful and dynamic, they are active and aggressive in the affairs influenced by the trine. These interests may hold the key to Plutonian involvement if conflicting factors are not present. This aspect also generates a charismatic quality that attracts power and sexual interest.

*Mars Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* This combination of aspects encourages action that is acceptable to and merits the approval of society. Energy is constructively utilized. The desire and capacity to overcome South Node limitations is present; therefore, inhibiting factors represented by the South Node are largely ineffective.

*Mars Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine denotes success and affirmative action in the affairs influenced by Mars and the Part of Fortune. Physical benefits and worthwhile legacies are part of the promise of this aspect.

*Mars Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* This aspect combination increases assertiveness and strength. These people come across as forceful, direct and decisive within the context of sign expression. Active in personal affairs and in society, refusing to be bystanders, they form part of the mainstream of life. Most benefit from opportunities that stem from marriage or partnerships.

*Mars Trine MC Sextile IC:* These aspects channel constructive action into domestic affairs and



professional pursuits; they strongly indicate career success. Ambitious to succeed, these people are conscious of career goals and willing to work to attain those goals. Family ties sometimes provide vocational opportunities. Many of these people like to putter around the house; their homes are well maintained and yards well kept.

### *Mars Oppositions*

Mars oppositions generate competitiveness, aggressiveness and anger. They are associated with verbal and/or physical confrontations as indicated by the nature of the opposing planets, the signs involved, and other factors that bear upon the oppositions. A Mars opposition gives rise to destructive belligerence, hostility and strife if neither Mars nor the opposing planet forms easy or stabilizing aspects with other planets to restrain the violence that is associated with Mars oppositions. The individual is quick to rise to the challenges evoked by a Mars opposition, but action is impulsive, rash, and often foolhardy, until this person learns to channel Mars energy productively. Without constructive direction, energy is misspent in fruitless activity, pointless arguments or senseless physical combat. The affairs influenced by the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Mars and a planet in opposition produce conflict and antagonism. Mars oppositions indicate willfulness and foolish daring; they are associated with risky acts that cause accidents and endanger physical safety.

*Mars Opposite Jupiter:* This aspect dissipates energy through excessive physical activity. These people cannot pace themselves. They tend to take on more than they can possibly accomplish and push themselves to the point of physical exhaustion. Extravagant and reckless, they misjudge the effectiveness of their actions in the affairs governed by Mars and Jupiter. This aspect creates foolhardy daring, many of these people risk physical safety to prove fearlessness. It encourages gambling tendencies, and these people may speculate with others' funds as well as their own. In sexual matters they are usually the aggressors.

*Mars Opposite Saturn:* This opposition pits the impatience, rashness and haste of Mars against the patience, caution and deliberateness characterized by Saturn. The individual is torn between the impulse to

act and fear of consequences if the action is carried out. Resultant frustrations breed resentment and hostility. This aspect fosters bravado, but courage and defiance break down when the individual is backed into a corner. At times, aggressive and decisive action is taken in the affairs governed by Mars and Saturn; at other times, inhibitions and fears retard progress. Sexual drives alternate between intense passion and frigidity. If other factors in the horoscope confirm, this aspect can indicate impotence.

*Mars Opposite Uranus:* This aspect prompts precipitous actions; it engenders impetuosity, recklessness, insolence, rebelliousness and radicalism. In the activities influenced by the opposition these people demand complete freedom of action. They institute drastic changes without considering the full implications of their actions. External circumstances that affect the affairs ruled by Mars and Uranus cause instability and turbulence. This aspect is associated with violence, accidents, riots, death-defying exploits and military dangers. Sexual expression is erratic and unconventional. Some of these people engage in promiscuous sexual relations or bizarre forms of sexual expression if confirming factors are present in the horoscope.

*Mars Opposite Neptune:* This aspect weakens physical energy and reduces muscularity. Unless the Sun is strong by sign and aspect, vitality and recuperative powers are undermined. The affairs influenced by this opposition denote areas of ambiguity, ineptitude, delusion and gullibility. This aspect can foster fraud and scandal in the affected areas and these people may engage in clandestine activities in connection with the affairs ruled by Mars and Neptune. Conflict between physical urges and spiritual drives is created by this opposition. It is associated with sexual beguilement, seduction, sexual intrigue and drug-related sex cults.

*Mars Opposite Pluto:* This opposition fosters violence, brutality, sexual abuse and criminal tendencies. Favorable aspects to either Mars or Pluto help counteract negative tendencies generated by the opposition and provide constructive outlets for the powerful physical drives. This aspect produces enormous physical strength. These people seem to attract antagonism and conflict in the affairs governed by Mars and Pluto and tend to rely on physical force as the means of dealing with opposition. Some of these people resort to psychic control to obtain power in

the areas influenced by the opposition and to achieve sexual conquests. On the positive side, this aspect creates an awareness of the potential for regeneration and the need to overcome base physical desires in order to attain spiritual evolution.

*Mars Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* These aspects motivate willful actions that defy socially accepted standards. These people deliberately flaunt the rules of society; in so doing they stir resistance and animosity that hinders development in the areas influenced by Mars and the Nodes.

*Mars Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition describes challenges with which the individual must deal if the success promised by the Part of Fortune is to be achieved. It also confirms other indications of energy dissipation and accidents.

*Mars Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* This combination of aspects focuses initiative and activity in marital relations and partnerships. These people are assertive and attract aggressive, dynamic partners unless sign indications and other factors show otherwise. The harmony of relationships depends upon the aspects Mars forms with other planets.

*Mars Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* This aspect combination implies aggressiveness in home and family matters. If Mars is afflicted, violent domestic quarrels and a strife-ridden family life are indicated. These people want to run the household. Family responsibilities or parental objections often interfere with career interests.

## Mars Parallels

Initiative and aggressiveness are activated and energy is directed into the affairs ruled by the signs and houses governed and occupied by Mars and the planet(s) that form parallels with Mars. A parallel that occurs between Mars and a planet with which Mars also forms a zodiacal aspect is given the same meaning as that aspect and, therefore, supplements and strengthens it.

A parallel that is formed by Mars and a planet that does not aspect Mars zodiacally is interpreted as a mild conjunction with certain modifications. A parallel that occurs between Mars and Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune or Pluto is interpreted as an afflicted

conjunction if the two planets in aspect occupy different signs of the same quadruplicity or if either planet is heavily afflicted. However, these parallels do not carry the negative sexual implications associated with corresponding conjunctions. An unaccompanied parallel, which Mars forms with the North Node, Part of Fortune, Ascendant or Midheaven, takes on the positive attributes of the corresponding conjunction regardless of the signs or other aspects involved.

## Mars Contraparallels

A Mars contraparallel generates conflict in the areas influenced by the aspect. Discord is evident in the affairs described by the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Mars and a planet in contraparallel. Mars contraparallels indicate areas in which action is impulsive, headstrong and rash. A contraparallel that occurs between Mars and the Ascendant or MC acts as an afflicted conjunction. All other Mars contraparallels are interpreted as corresponding oppositions, omitting negative sexual tendencies if such are shown by the opposition. Mars contraparallels do not distort sexual drives.

## Minor Mars Aspects

The minor aspects that Mars forms exert mild influence in accordance with the significance of the aspects and the natures of the aspecting planets. This influence manifests in the affairs ruled by Mars and the planets in aspect.

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by Mars:* Minor easy aspects formed by Mars indicate constructive channels for Mars action. They point out secondary avenues for release of frustrations induced by adverse aspects to Mars.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by Mars:* Minor hard aspects formed by Mars indicate impatience, aggravation and anger. Mild agitation is evident in the affairs governed by Mars and the aspected planets. These aspects do not encourage violence, sexual aberrations or other strongly negative Martian tendencies.

# 21 *Jupiter Aspects*

Jupiter aspects describe religious, ethical, moral and philosophical values. They influence wisdom, judgment, abstract thought and higher education. Favorable Jupiter aspects give direction to the expansive and protective properties of this planet; adverse aspects detract from the beneficial qualities of Jupiter and often encourage excesses.

The aspects Jupiter forms with Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto are interpreted more broadly than aspects that occur between Jupiter and the personal planets. Aspects between Jupiter and heavy planets remain in orb for much longer periods of time than aspects formed with the faster-moving planets. Heavy Jupiter aspects can be in effect for several months when motion is *slow of course* or retrograde; therefore, the same aspect can appear in the horoscopes of many people in the same age group. House placement and other aspects that influence a common Jupiter aspect will differ in horoscopes that contain the same heavy aspect. The houses occupied and ruled by Jupiter and a heavy planet in aspect and the other aspects these two planets form show how the heavy Jupiter aspect affects the individual.

If Jupiter is placed in the first house of a horoscope, is the chart ruler or disposes the chart ruler, the Sun, or the Moon, the aspects Jupiter forms with heavy planets have a more personal connotation.

## *Jupiter Conjunctions*

The influence of a conjunction that occurs between Jupiter and a heavy planet is felt primarily in the house in which the conjunction takes place and in the houses

of the horoscope that are ruled by Jupiter and the conjuncted planet according to the sign on the cusp. This influence extends to the affairs governed by planets that aspect the conjunction. The influence of the conjunction in the natural houses of Jupiter (ninth and twelfth) and the natural house(s) of the conjuncted planet is general, for it concerns a large number of horoscopes.

The emphasis of a Jupiter conjunction depends upon aspects made to the conjunction by other planets. If the conjunction is favorably aspected, the finer qualities of Jupiter manifest. If the conjunction is afflicted, excesses, extravagances and poor judgment are shown in regard to the affairs described by the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Jupiter, the conjuncted planet and the afflicting planet(s).

*Jupiter Conjunct Saturn:* This aspect occurs about every twenty years. It restrains potential excesses in the affairs influenced by Jupiter and Saturn. It fosters reliability, sincerity, rather narrow ethical standards and realistic values. If it is well aspected, this conjunction is a strong indication of success, for it links the opportunities and prosperity associated with Jupiter to the diligence and persistence attributed to Saturn. If the conjunction is afflicted, Saturn imposes severe limitation on Jupiterian expansiveness and good fortune. With an applying conjunction, hopeful opportunities can turn sour as Saturn imposes hard work, heavy responsibilities and slow progress. A separating conjunction indicates that hard work and dedicated effort will be eventually rewarded; the narrower the orb, the longer it takes to gain success and the greater the effort required to attain the benefits promised by Jupiter.

*Jupiter Conjunct Uranus:* This conjunction occurs about every fourteen years. It awakens the higher mind to advanced trends of thought, which are unhampered by traditional logic or conventional philosophies. The affairs governed by Jupiter and Uranus are furthered through progressive methods and modern techniques. Religious views are unorthodox and frequently originate in the mind of the individual. Many of these people are fascinated by faraway places, but the extent of travel depends largely upon the sign in which the conjunction is placed and other factors in the horoscope. If the conjunction is afflicted, logic may be distorted and ideas too abstract or far-out to be useful; some of these people twist the law to serve selfish purposes. This conjunction, if favorably aspected, is especially helpful to those who are engaged in advertising, publicity and promotion, for these people are quick to adopt fresh outlooks as situations and conditions change.

*Jupiter Conjunct Neptune:* This aspect occurs approximately every thirteen years. It supports spiritual qualities shown elsewhere in the horoscope. Most of these people are idealistic, philanthropic and deeply religious. Mystical forms of religion appeal to many. These people are intuitive to the conditions associated with the affairs ruled by Jupiter and Neptune; they are particularly sensitive to the interests of the house in which the conjunction takes place. If the conjunction is afflicted, the affairs directly influenced by the aspect fail to develop properly because of impractical treatment based upon unrealistic ideals. This conjunction, if favorably aspected, is a good luck aspect, but it often proves disadvantageous because these people tend to rely too much on luck in situations that require common sense and practical action.

*Jupiter Conjunct Pluto:* This aspect occurs about every twelve years. It supports spiritual regeneration and the highest form of Plutonian evolvement as described by the horoscope. This conjunction is a power aspect, the potential of which is concentrated primarily in the houses ruled and occupied by Jupiter and Pluto. If the conjunction is heavily afflicted, philanthropic qualities are overshadowed by intense Plutonian drives. This aspect can then indicate the power-hungry opportunist if other factors in the horoscope concur.

*Jupiter Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* These aspects indicate that the individual's philosophies and values conform to contemporary standards. These people attract advantages because they are in tune with current trends. The capacity to overcome South Node limitations is expressed in the house occupied by Jupiter and the North Node.

*Jupiter Conjunct Part of Fortune:* This conjunction increases the benefits associated with Jupiter and the Part of Fortune. The affairs influenced by this aspect develop abundantly and profitably; good fortune can be expected in connection with these interests.

*Jupiter Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* This aspect combination shows optimism and joviality; it brings out the best personality traits as described by the Ascendant unless Jupiter is severely afflicted. If Jupiter or the Ascendant is badly afflicted, personal expression is exaggerated and superfluous. These aspects can indicate obesity.

*Jupiter Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* This combination of aspects denotes career success, high standing in the community, and a reputation for integrity and sincerity. If Jupiter is afflicted, business ethics may be questionable and principles sacrificed in the interests of professional advancement.

## *Jupiter Sextiles*

Jupiter sextiles describe opportunities that manifest in the houses occupied and ruled by Jupiter and planets in sextile. They imply success and prosperity in related affairs and foster sound judgment, integrity and ethical action in the areas of horoscope influence.

*Jupiter Sextile Saturn:* This sextile promotes professional and business success; it produces prosperity in the affairs governed by Jupiter and Saturn and indicates integrity, high principles and practical interest in advanced education. Most of these people respect the law; many engage in professions related to the courts of jurisprudence. Unless contrary factors indicate otherwise, these people gravitate toward traditional religions and conservative philosophies.

*Jupiter Sextile Uranus:* This aspect encourages humanitarian and philanthropic principles. It gives

opportunities for humane action and endeavors that improve conditions in areas ruled by Jupiter and Uranus. Most of these people are interested in progressive philosophies and contemporary religions. This aspect is found in the horoscopes of many astrologers and others who share a constructive interest in the occult, for it links the abstract mind with occult faculties.

*Jupiter Sextile Neptune:* This sextile directs compassion and benevolence into the houses occupied and ruled by Jupiter and Neptune. These people reap the rewards of considerate actions. Judgment is tempered by sympathy and sensitivity to the needs of the less fortunate. Most of these people are "do-gooders" in the highest sense of the word. Drawn toward mystical religions, many engage in meditation and other forms of spiritual development.

*Jupiter Sextile Pluto:* This aspect brings out positive Plutonian qualities and increases the potential for spiritual regeneration. Opportunities to eliminate negative conditions and to rejuvenate stagnant situations manifest abundantly in the houses ruled and occupied by Jupiter and Pluto. This aspect clearly describes the path of evolution if contradictory factors are not present.

*Jupiter Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* This combination of aspects indicates that associated opportunities can be utilized successfully because the individual is in agreement with and observes prevailing legal, moral and religious customs.

*Jupiter Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile promises opportunity, success and material rewards associated with the signs and houses involved. Spiritual benefits are also indicated if sign and house placement agree or if other factors in the horoscope support positive spiritual inclinations.

*Jupiter Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* These aspects enhance personal expression and generate popularity. These people express themselves with enthusiasm and good humor within the dictates of the sign on the Ascendant. Usually they attract good luck, good health and fortunate marriages.

*Jupiter Sextile MC Trine IC:* This aspect combination produces fertile career opportunities and outstanding

professional advantages. Success, prominence and a productive, supportive home life are indicated.

### *Jupiter Squares*

Jupiter squares obstruct Jupiterian good fortune and thwart the protective influence of Jupiter. They create obstacles to higher education and can indicate legal difficulties in the areas of horoscope activation. They also interfere with sound judgment. Depending upon the natures of the afflicting planets, Jupiter squares can imply dishonesty, questionable ethics or faulty religious concepts.

*Jupiter Square Saturn:* This aspect does not deny success, but it inflicts heavy responsibilities and demands hard work if success is to be achieved in the activities influenced by Jupiter and Saturn. Some of these people are discouraged by the setbacks and disappointments generated by this square and, therefore, fail to succeed; others overcome the obstacles they encounter and forge ahead despite difficulties. The individual's reaction to this aspect depends upon personal characteristics and other factors in the horoscope that strengthen or weaken the capacity to deal with hardships and problems in a positive manner. In this aspect Saturn represses the natural optimism attributed to Jupiter and restricts Jupiterian expansiveness. Morally upright and law-abiding, most of these people embrace very narrow religious views and strict ethical standards.

*Jupiter Square Uranus:* This square prompts hasty, ill-considered decisions in connection with the affairs governed by Jupiter and Uranus; as a result, heavy financial losses can be incurred. Speculation is risky for anyone in whose horoscope this aspect appears; yet, this square encourages gambling tendencies. Enticed by the lure of adventure in strange lands, these people may encounter dangerous situations during their travels if Jupiter is additionally afflicted. They promote unsound humanitarian causes that may be worthy in principle but not in fact. Many of them are attracted by exotic religions, and some engage in bizarre religious practices. The difficulties indicated by this square are almost entirely rooted in impulsive judgment and distorted logic.

*Jupiter Square Neptune:* This aspect clouds judgment

and compromises integrity. Few of these people are intentionally dishonest. If they engage in deceptive or questionable practices, most blindly believe they are doing the right thing and are unaware of the fallacy of their values. Idealistic, they are easily misled in the affairs ruled by Jupiter and Neptune. They are too trusting in these matters and vulnerable to manipulation by persons of dubious character. Many of these people base their hopes for financial success on unrealistic get-rich-quick schemes; some suffer losses as a result of litigation. Most are fascinated by the mystery religions; many join cults that are based on Eastern religious principles.

*Jupiter Square Pluto:* This square produces lust for power, which is expressed in the affairs influenced by the aspect. These people justify their actions in terms of the magnitude of achievement and financial success gained. Most of these people are inflexible in their beliefs and are intolerant of persons who adhere to contradictory principles. Some have complete disregard for the law or accepted ethical practices. If other factors in the horoscope agree, sexual excesses are indicated.

*Jupiter Square North Node Square South Node:* This aspect combination indicates that the individual's values conflict with the social values of the times. This person must learn to appreciate and adjust to prevailing customs and beliefs if South Node restrictions are to be overcome and social acceptance is to be attained.

*Jupiter Square Part of Fortune:* This square leads one to overestimate the advantages associated with Jupiter and the Part of Fortune and to rely almost entirely on luck in order to obtain those advantages. Practical evaluation of the situations and conditions activated by this aspect is the key to surmounting barriers produced by the square.

*Jupiter Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* This combination of aspects magnifies personal characteristics described by the Ascending sign. These people adopt exaggerated mannerisms. Marital and partnership difficulties stem from personal excesses and failure to cooperate.

*Jupiter Square MC Square IC:* These aspects show lack of perspective in career and domestic affairs. These people overestimate professional standing and worldly status. They often create financial burdens by trying

to maintain lavish homes. Most of them are overly generous with their families.

### *Jupiter Trines*

Jupiter trines afford good luck and prosperity. The affairs influenced by a Jupiter trine flourish and prosper in the natural course of events. A Jupiter trine safeguards the interests associated with the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Jupiter and the aspected planet. It is also extremely helpful in offsetting the effects of afflictions to Jupiter and the trined planet.

*Jupiter Trine Saturn:* This trine enables one to accept the responsibilities described by Saturn and to cope with difficulties imposed by afflictions to either Jupiter or Saturn. The affairs governed by Jupiter and Saturn develop successfully and produce material benefits. These people are blessed with wisdom, integrity and high community standing. They uphold high principles and observe practical values. Idealism is tempered by logic; philanthropic interest is directed toward utilitarian avenues. This aspect is especially helpful to educators, clergymen, jurists and public servants.

*Jupiter Trine Uranus:* This aspect promotes interest in humanitarian causes; the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Jupiter and Uranus indicate the directions in which humanitarian interest can be most successfully expressed. These people understand human needs in terms of contemporary conditions. They have the capacity to effect progressive changes in education, the law, and the affairs governed by Jupiter and Uranus. This trine shows a desire to induce changes that alter and improve the lot of humankind. Most of these people find travel enjoyable, enlightening and beneficial. This aspect is found in the horoscopes of many astrologers, contemporary philosophers, modern religionists, psychics and philanthropists.

*Jupiter Trine Neptune:* This trine permits constructive expression of the highest spiritual ideals. Religious truths are often revealed under the influence of this aspect, for it encourages contemplation and spiritual development. It is the aspect of the evangelist or guru rather than the spiritual recluse, for the expansive properties of Jupiter dictate that spiritual knowledge be shared. These people are intuitive about matters concerning the affairs ruled by Jupiter and Neptune and these interests advance as if guided by an unseen hand. Values are based on

compassion rather than material considerations. These people are more concerned with the spirit of the law than with the letter of the law.

*Jupiter Trine Pluto:* This aspect gives insight into the mysteries of life and the spiritual realities of death. It shows a profound sense of truth and promotes spiritual and religious leadership. Spiritual development is associated with the affairs governed by Jupiter and Pluto. These people are firm in expressing faith; they act on their spiritual convictions. Many contribute to changes that affect masses of people. They work to change laws with which they cannot live and strive to uplift the spiritual nature of humankind.

*Jupiter Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* These aspects show that one's values correspond to those accepted by society. Productive growth patterns are indicated in areas influenced by Jupiter and the North Node. The individual is able to recognize and discard the restrictive habits or attitudes described by the South Node.

*Jupiter Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine is a fortunate aspect. It promises progress in the areas of horoscope influence and assures some measure of success and affluence even if Jupiter and the Part of Fortune are afflicted. If afflictions exist, this trine enables one to surmount difficulties. The individual can constructively utilize conditions associated with the trine whether or not these circumstances are entirely favorable.

*Jupiter Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* This aspect combination brings out positive attributes of the Ascendant. These people express goodwill and thereby attract the goodwill of others. These aspects promote happy marriages and profitable partnerships.

*Jupiter Trine MC Sextile IC:* This combination of aspects generates conditions that are conducive to career and business success. These people are considered honest and trustworthy unless Jupiter is heavily afflicted or other factors in the horoscope detract from their reputations. Opportunities for advancement frequently stem from family connections.

## *Jupiter Oppositions*

Jupiter oppositions generate immoderation in the affairs governed by Jupiter and opposing planets. Positive

planetary expression is distorted by overemphasis or magnification of the principles represented by a planet that opposes Jupiter. Jupiter oppositions describe areas in which legal, philosophical and religious differences arise. These aspects influence developments that interfere with higher education.

*Jupiter Opposite Saturn:* This aspect creates conflict between the principle of expansion, represented by Jupiter, and the principle of contraction, characterized by Saturn. The individual is forced to take a hard view of conditions generated by the opposition. If the individual is pessimistically inclined or lacks determination, a defeatist attitude is apt to develop. If courage and persistence are shown in the horoscope, the individual is better able to maintain a balanced, realistic perspective. This aspect does not preclude success, but progress tends to be gradual. Development of affairs governed by Jupiter and Saturn is restrained by heavy responsibilities, hardships and extreme conservatism. Many of these people are strict conformists who are afraid to break with tradition. This aspect fosters religious bias and prejudicial attitudes.

*Jupiter Opposite Uranus:* This opposition forces awareness of the importance of freedom and magnifies the need for it in both thought and action. These people balk at laws and traditions that restrict individual liberties or impinge upon civil rights. Efforts toward reform are directed at the affairs influenced by the houses ruled and occupied by Jupiter and Uranus. The influence of this aspect depends upon the overall tenor of the horoscope. In a strong horoscope that lends to constructive action, progressive changes, which benefit all of humanity, are indicated. If common sense and direction are lacking, the individual may do little more than arouse religious controversy or incite civil disobedience. This aspect is found in horoscopes of rabble-rousing radicals as well as in horoscopes of great humanitarians.

*Jupiter Opposite Neptune.* This aspect produces religious and spiritual conflicts. These people are spiritually idealistic and may blindly follow religious charlatans. They are inept in conducting the affairs governed by Jupiter and Neptune unless other factors in the horoscope provide practical direction in these matters. This aspect encourages wishful thinking, illusory ideals and utopian dreams, which are out of place in the real world. Favorable aspects to Jupiter

and Neptune are helpful in reducing the confusion associated with the opposition. Saturn trines and sextiles are especially beneficial, for these aspects produce realism and structure. This opposition fosters unreliability and deceit and confirms dishonest tendencies found elsewhere in the horoscope.

*Jupiter Opposite Pluto:* Religious purges and atrocities that are committed under the protection of religious leaders are associated with this opposition. On a more personal level, this aspect generates strong religious and philosophical convictions, which represent sources of conflict, contention and controversy. These people promote their beliefs forcefully and try to win converts. This aspect can produce lawlessness in the affairs ruled by Jupiter and Pluto. Some of these people are unprincipled in terms of society's values and ethics; they regard the law with utter contempt and abide by their own codes of conduct.

*Jupiter Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* People in whose horoscopes these aspects appear are given to extravagant habits and excesses that hinder growth and development. These people derive some security from their habits and, therefore, hesitate to break them. They are opposed to generally accepted religious beliefs and social standards.

*Jupiter Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition indicates that lack of education can interfere with the development of affairs influenced by Jupiter and the Part of Fortune. Failure to conduct these affairs in an ethical manner can arouse active antagonism. This, in turn, creates conditions that stand in the way of success.

*Jupiter Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* These aspects produce benefits through marriage, partnerships and public interests. These people gain the cooperation of others. They form associations that are both profitable and socially advantageous. Sometimes the marriage partner supports the individual's college education.

*Jupiter Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* This combination of aspects denotes a fortunate home life and an advantageous heritage. Family background has a strong influence on religious beliefs, education and social values. These people benefit from parental generosity; consequently, they are generous with their own families.

## *Jupiter Parallels*

Jupiter parallels influence one's values and beliefs. These aspects, if unafflicted, denote good fortune and success. If Jupiter and a planet in parallel also form a zodiacal aspect, the parallel assumes the nature of the zodiacal aspect and thereby strengthens it. A parallel that occurs between Jupiter and a planet not in zodiacal aspect with Jupiter is treated as a moderately forceful conjunction. The effect of an unaccompanied Jupiter parallel is milder than that of a corresponding conjunction, although the tenor is the same. Unaccompanied Jupiter parallels indicate successful development of affairs that come under the influence of the planets, signs and houses involved; associated interests are safeguarded unless afflictions are present.

## *Jupiter Contraparallels*

Jupiter contraparallels formed with the Ascendant and MC are interpreted as afflicted conjunctions. Other Jupiter contraparallels act as weak oppositions. Contraparallels do not produce the sharp conflict associated with oppositions. The energies of Jupiter and a planet in contraparallel are disparate; action is discordant. Conditions of disharmony manifest in affairs associated with the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Jupiter and planets in contraparallel.

With the exception of a contraparallel formed with Saturn, Jupiter contraparallels bring excesses and extravagances into play. The properties of a planet that forms a contraparallel with Jupiter are magnified; these energies lack constructive direction and adequate restraint. The prolific action of Jupiter produces over-expansion in the affairs influenced by a contraparallel.

A contraparallel between Jupiter and Saturn inhibits expansion; interests governed by these two planets develop slowly when under the influence of a contraparallel. A Jupiter/Saturn contraparallel contributes to prejudicial beliefs.

## *Minor Jupiter Aspects*

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by Jupiter:* Minor easy aspects that Jupiter forms describe modest benefits. The signs and houses that are occupied and ruled by



Jupiter and a planet that forms a minor easy aspect denote activities that are moderately successful. Although the influence of these aspects is weak, minor easy aspects give expression to the protective qualities of Jupiter and help to preserve corresponding interests. These aspects partially mitigate the negative effects of Jupiter afflictions.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by Jupiter:* Minor hard aspects formed by Jupiter do not generate serious difficulties or hardships; instead they create annoyances, friction and disagreement. These aspects indicate religious quirks, trivial prejudices or unpopular beliefs, which stir controversy. Minor hard aspects that Jupiter forms also produce petty extravagances in the areas of horoscope activation and generate minor excesses that are described by the planets in aspect with Jupiter.

# 22 *Saturn Aspects*

Saturn aspects point to areas in the horoscope in which responsibility and discipline manifest. The energies of planets that form easy aspects with Saturn can be channeled constructively into the houses ruled and occupied by Saturn and the aspecting planets, for Saturn lends structure to related endeavors. Adverse Saturn aspects discipline harshly; they generate frustrating conditions that restrict the free flow of planetary energies.

Aspects that occur between Saturn and Uranus, Neptune or Pluto have general influence on many people because the same aspect appears in numerous horoscopes. They are interpreted broadly unless one of the planets forming the aspect of interest is of particular importance or strength in the individual's horoscope. The significance of a common Saturn aspect is emphasized mainly in the houses occupied and ruled by Saturn and the aspected planet. The influence exerted in the natural houses of the aspecting planets and in the signs these planets occupy and rule is secondary; it depends upon the strength of other aspects of these planets and the overall tenor of the horoscope.

## *Saturn Conjunctions*

A Saturn conjunction forces serious, mature, responsible action in the affairs governed by Saturn and the planet it conjuncts. If the conjunction is favorably aspected, discipline takes the form of practical restraints that foster singleness of purpose, conservative action and systematic procedures in the activities influenced by the conjunction. Hard work and perseverance are rewarded eventually. If the

conjunction is afflicted, discipline is restrictive; rigid conditions and setbacks generate discouragement and frequently produce failure.

*Saturn Conjunct Uranus:* This conjunction occurs about every ninety-one years. This aspect restrains excessive radicalism and modifies extreme conservatism. Inventiveness is directed toward practical ends. Prudence and foresight combine to produce constructive action. These people carefully consider potential risks before they implement changes in affairs governed by Saturn and Uranus. They are not overly cautious but they do not take foolish chances either. If the conjunction is afflicted, development of related interests is erratic. The tendency to push too far ahead at times and lag behind at others generates unstable conditions. The lack of consistent effort hinders progress in the areas of horoscope activation.

*Saturn Conjunct Neptune:* This aspect forms approximately every thirty-five years. If unafflicted, this conjunction gives concrete expression to creative and artistic abilities. These people differentiate between the real and unreal and are able to give practical application to their dreams. The combination of inspiration and dedicated effort represented by this aspect fosters remarkable development in the affairs ruled by Saturn and Neptune. If the conjunction is seriously afflicted, discouragement, anxiety and apprehension obstruct progress. Some of these people cannot face the harshness of life; they become despondent and withdraw from reality.

*Saturn Conjunct Pluto:* This conjunction harnesses intense Plutonian energy and focuses it into the affairs

governed by Saturn and Pluto. Power and ambition are directed constructively. Great accomplishments are possible if neither planet is badly afflicted. If the conjunction is afflicted, the individual may employ methods that are harsh, ruthless and cruel in order to attain ambitions.

*Saturn Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* These aspects indicate that the individual accepts traditional values and conservative social trends. If this person is born into an unstructured or extremely avant-garde society, he or she may be a misfit. It is difficult for this individual to overcome biased attitudes and to adopt new social concepts.

*Saturn Conjunct Part of Fortune:* This aspect delays benefits associated with the Part of Fortune, but it does not deny these rewards unless the conjunction is severely afflicted. Successful development of the affairs influenced by the conjunction depends upon disciplined action and constructive endeavor.

*Saturn Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* A serious, conservative and austere approach to life, and particularly relationships, is characteristic of this combination of aspects as Saturn restrains the expression of the personality. These people are reliable, conscientious and self-disciplined. If Saturn and the Ascendant are afflicted, pessimistic attitudes and personal insecurities manifest. This aspect is also associated with congenital birth defects.

*Saturn Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* The drive for career success and worldly status is stressed by this aspect combination. If Saturn and the MC are favorably aspected, recognition and prestige are probable. If Saturn and the MC are afflicted, integrity may be sacrificed in the pursuit of worldly ambitions.

## *Saturn Sextiles*

Saturn sextiles are associated with disciplined, responsible endeavors. These aspects bring stability to the activities of the houses and planets involved. Saturn sextiles show how and in what areas the individual's organizing ability is best applied. A Saturn sextile denotes opportunity for development and steady progress in the affairs influenced by the aspect.

*Saturn Sextile Uranus:* This aspect combines the urge

for freedom with the need for discipline. These contrasting qualities do not conflict when Saturn and Uranus form a sextile; rather, the urge for freedom is directed constructively into affairs governed by the two planets. These people respect tradition; however, they are not bound by conventions. This sextile produces opportunities that enable one to be innovative within the framework of traditional concepts. Old ways are updated and adapted to modern needs. Changes induced by this aspect are both practical and timely.

*Saturn Sextile Neptune:* This sextile brings visionary powers down to earth. Saturn, the realist, forces Neptune, the dreamer, to be practical and definitive. Saturn permits no ambiguities or illusions. This aspect does, however, shield from public scrutiny the activities ruled by Saturn and Neptune. These people exert considerable background influence in affairs affected by the sextile. Opportunities that permit constructive, behind-the-scenes action are generated by this sextile.

*Saturn Sextile Pluto:* This aspect disciplines the power of Pluto. It gives opportunities for regeneration that can be developed by structured, responsible action. Through hard work and intense effort, the affairs influenced by this sextile can be transformed and upgraded. These people frequently attain positions of authority in areas activated by the sextile, though many remain anonymous to the public despite the enormous power they wield.

*Saturn Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* This aspect combination shows that the individual respects the traditions of society. Experiences induced by the North Node have a maturing effect. This person has the discipline and restraint required to overcome South Node limitations.

*Saturn Sextile Part of Fortune:* Benefits derived from opportunities generated by this sextile have lasting impact upon the individual. Substantial advantages stem from interests that are influenced by Saturn and the Part of Fortune.

*Saturn Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* These aspects contribute to serious attitudes, personal reserve, reticence and reliability. Unless contradictory factors appear in the horoscope, a lasting marriage and stable partnerships are indicated.

*Saturn Sextile MC Trine IC:* This combination of aspects produces worthwhile career opportunities, opportunities that usually lead to success and recognition. These aspects also foster domestic security and family stability.

### *Saturn Squares*

Saturn squares give rise to severe difficulties. These aspects teach patience and perseverance but often produce discouragement and pessimism as well. A Saturn square forces the individual to deal with major obstacles and to work diligently in order to successfully develop affairs governed by Saturn and the squared planet. The way a person responds to a Saturn square depends upon personal characteristics and other factors in the horoscope that affect one's capacity to handle frustrations and misfortunes. One person may bear Saturn-induced burdens in abject resignation; another may surmount handicaps and rise to success. Saturn demands disciplined action. This planet, when squared, punishes sternly if discipline is lacking; the punishment is failure.

*Saturn Square Uranus:* This square poses a dilemma. The individual is at once faced with the need for discipline and the desire for freedom. Situations arise which demand circumspect and cautious action; yet, this person rebels at restraint. Precipitate action creates severe setbacks in the affairs ruled by Saturn and Uranus; ultraconservative treatment impedes progress. In this square, Saturn chastens Uranian waywardness. The tension and frustration produced by this aspect can cause accidental injury or illness. Reinforced by other afflictions, the aspect may attract violence.

*Saturn Square Neptune:* This square generates fear, anxiety and insecurity. Saturn forces the individual to face reality; Neptune deceives and confuses. Attempts to evade difficulties associated with the affairs governed by Saturn and Neptune create greater problems. Frequently, these people fail to recognize the true nature of the problems they encounter; consequently, remedial action is ineffective. Many of these people are lonely; some turn to drugs or alcohol for solace; others become recluses. This square warns against devious practices, for deceit can bring about one's downfall.

*Saturn Square Pluto:* This aspect sometimes restrains the higher evolutionary principles of Pluto. Affairs ruled by Saturn and Pluto are often plagued with calamities, disasters and other misfortunes that retard progress. This aspect encourages greed and avarice; it is associated with brutal power plays and criminal activity.

*Saturn Square North Node Square South Node:* These aspects promote prejudices that inhibit development in areas influenced by Saturn and the Nodes. These people tend to cling to selfish attitudes described by the South Node.

*Saturn Square Part of Fortune:* This square produces barriers to benefits associated with the Part of Fortune. Misfortune rather than success is indicated.

*Saturn Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* This aspect combination fosters negative attitudes. Remote and cynical, these people are distant with marriage partners and mistrustful of business partners.

*Saturn Square MC Square IC:* This combination of aspects describes reversals that hinder one's career. Rigid parental discipline in childhood and heavy family responsibilities in adult life are also indicated.

### *Saturn Trines*

A Saturn trine enables one to structure the affairs governed by Saturn and the trined planet around realistic goals. Saturn trines are associated with practical developments and concrete rewards. Saturn, in itself, does not signify abstract benefits. If spiritual benefits are promised by the planet, signs or houses involved in a Saturn trine, substantive results are produced in addition to any abstract blessings that manifest.

*Saturn Trine Uranus:* Under the influence of this aspect traditional concepts can be expanded and adapted to modern modes of life. These people utilize contemporary practices in developing the affairs ruled by Saturn and Uranus without destroying the essence of associated traditions. This trine gives practical expression to inventive abilities. It brings scientific research into the realm of applied technology. This aspect also provides constructive avenues for humanitarian expression.

*Saturn Trine Neptune:* This trine combines the tangible and the intangible; it instills a sense of spiritual responsibility that demands faith be exemplified by good works. These people are not utopian dreamers. They try to ease the plight of the needy through practical means. They support self-help movements such as those that teach the handicapped to take care of themselves. Interests influenced by this trine benefit from action that is imaginative, constructive and purposeful.

*Saturn Trine Pluto:* This aspect gives structure to the principle of regeneration. These people follow paths that lead to secure and often powerful stations in life. Nevertheless, the spiritual development associated with Pluto is not neglected. Spiritual growth and worldly progress are mutually supportive. This aspect has profound influence on the activities ruled by Saturn and Pluto. It is sometimes associated with predestination if other factors in the horoscope agree.

*Saturn Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* This combination of aspects enables one to reach out to and benefit from experiential areas activated by the North Node. These aspects produce the responsibility and self-discipline to overcome biased attitudes and the maturity to recognize the value of experience.

*Saturn Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine brings lasting benefits through developments linked to Saturn and the Part of Fortune. Status in affairs influenced by this aspect is included among the advantages promised by the Part of Fortune.

*Saturn Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* This combination of aspects fosters personal reticence and quiet dignity. Partnerships are, for the most part, advantageous. These aspects add to the endurance of marriage, although marital opportunities may not appear until late in life.

*Saturn Trine MC Sextile IC:* These aspects are conducive to professional success. Career progress is gradual, for Saturn cannot be hurried. With hard work and dedication, one can eventually reach the top. Most of these people uphold the traditions passed on by their parents. Home life is sedate and disciplined.

## *Saturn Oppositions*

Planets that oppose Saturn defy tradition, discipline, conservatism and other Saturn qualities. Saturn

oppositions reveal conflicting attitudes that affect the houses ruled and occupied by Saturn and the opposing planets. It is up to the individual to balance these conflicts and to utilize positive traits of Saturn and the planets in opposition.

*Saturn Opposite Uranus:* This opposition pits conservatism against radicalism, discipline against independence. These people tolerate no interference in the activities governed by Saturn and Uranus. They demand complete freedom of action in these matters; yet, their behavior toward others concerned is repressive and dictatorial. The interests influenced by this aspect develop erratically and are subject to sudden breaks, unexpected reversals and misfortunes caused by external crises.

*Saturn Opposite Neptune:* This aspect seriously undermines one's sense of reality. Constructive action in areas governed by the opposing planets is weakened by inefficiency, unreliability and lack of organized endeavor. These affairs may be breeding grounds for treachery and scandal. Some of these people are untrustworthy. These people seldom openly confront the conflicts produced by this opposition; instead, they employ subterfuge to get around problems. This aspect generates mistrust, suspicion and remorse.

*Saturn Opposite Pluto:* This opposition indicates that diligence and discipline can open the door to Plutonian evolution. The outcome of affairs influenced by this aspect depends upon the individual's capacity for hard work and disciplined effort. Action can be constructive or destructive. This aspect fosters cupidity and ruthless ambition. If criminal tendencies are strong in the horoscope, this aspect can motivate lawless activity.

*Saturn Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* This combination of aspects restricts the capacity to develop adequately in areas influenced by either Node. These people are afraid to reach out to new experiences described by the North Node; they find security in tradition. The South Node points to rigid prejudices and selfish practices, which inhibit growth.

*Saturn Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition alerts one to the need for disciplined action and controlled endeavor if areas influenced by the Part of Fortune are to develop successfully. Heavy afflictions to Saturn or the Part of Fortune increase the severity of handicaps that restrain development in affairs affected by the opposition.

*Saturn Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* These aspects foster enduring marriages and practical partnerships. Some of these people choose older marriage partners; many marry late in life. These people have mature attitudes toward marriage and partnerships; they assume much responsibility in these relationships. If Saturn or the Descendant is afflicted, partners are often cold and calculating. Partnerships may be burdensome; marriage may lack warmth.

*Saturn Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* This aspect combination denotes strict childhood discipline, burdensome parental obligations and weighty family responsibilities. Enduring family ties are forged out of a strong sense of duty, but family relationships are cold unless other factors in the horoscope provide emotional warmth.

### *Saturn Parallels*

Saturn parallels imply responsible action and constructive effort in affairs governed by Saturn and planets in parallel. A parallel that occurs between Saturn and a planet in zodiacal aspect with Saturn reinforces the aspect and is interpreted accordingly. Other Saturn parallels compare with Saturn conjunctions, but parallel influence is milder. If Saturn or the planet in parallel is heavily afflicted, the parallel assumes negative characteristics of the corresponding conjunction. Parallels formed between Saturn and Uranus, Neptune or Pluto have little personal significance; the influence of these aspects is general unless other factors support narrower interpretation.

### *Saturn Contraparallels*

Saturn contraparallels describe hardship and misfortunes that afflict affairs ruled by Saturn and the aspected planet(s). These aspects are restrictive and oppressive. A contraparallel that occurs between Saturn and the Ascendant or MC is treated as an afflicted conjunction. Other Saturn contraparallels are interpreted as mild oppositions; however, contraparallels do not produce the awareness associated with oppositions. Contraparallels that occur between Saturn and Uranus, Neptune or Pluto are interpreted broadly unless other factors indicate personal significance.

## *Minor Saturn Aspects*

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by Saturn:* Minor easy aspects that Saturn forms are of secondary importance. These aspects channel planetary energies into the houses and affairs influenced by Saturn and the aspected planets. Although these aspects provide for constructive utilization of planetary energies, resultant achievements are less significant than those produced by the major aspects. Minor easy aspects that occur between Saturn and Uranus, Neptune or Pluto carry little weight in a natal horoscope.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by Saturn:* Minor hard aspects formed by Saturn describe frustrations and aggravations that impede developments in affairs governed by Saturn and the aspected planets. These aspects do not create severe hardships; they produce friction and stress and give rise to situations that hamper progress. Minor hard aspects that Saturn forms with Uranus, Neptune or Pluto exert little influence in a natal horoscope.

# 23 *Uranus Aspects*

Uranian aspects produce changes in areas influenced by Uranus and the aspected planets. Favorable Uranian aspects bring about progressive changes that facilitate the advancement of affairs. Adverse Uranian aspects encourage radical action; these aspects foster irretrievable breaks, sudden catastrophes and major crises.

Aspects that occur between Uranus and Neptune or Pluto have little personal impact unless one of the planets in aspect occupies the first house, rules the horoscope or disposes the horoscope ruler, the Sun or the Moon. The main emphasis of these aspects is directed toward the houses the aspecting planets occupy and the houses these planets rule (according to the signs on the cusps). The signs these heavy planets occupy and the houses they naturally rule represent common factors that influence many people whose horoscopes contain the same aspect.

Due to the eccentric orbits of Uranus and Pluto and the lengthy retrograde periods of the three outer planets, the same Uranus/Neptune or Uranus/Pluto aspect may reform during two or more consecutive years. Partile years are given for each aspect; however, its influence, active while the aspect is in allowable orb, extends over a much longer period of time.

## *Uranus Conjunctions*

Uranus brings originality and progress to the planets it conjuncts and to the affairs governed by these planets. Uranus conjunctions merge humanitarian drives with the energies of the aspected planets. When unafflicted they produce free and uninhibited planetary expression. Afflicted Uranus conjunctions generate resistance, rebellion and revolt.

*Uranus Conjunct Neptune (1820, 1993):* This aspect, which last occurred in 1820, recurs about every one hundred seventy-one years. This conjunction has a generational effect on psychic and spiritual development. If Uranus or Neptune bears personal influence in the individual horoscope, interest is created in spiritualism, mediumship, astrology, science and related fields. It also encourages scientific research. These people are imaginative and innovative, and employ experimental methods in the affairs activated by the conjunction. Many devise ingenious gadgets and labor-saving devices. If the conjunction is afflicted, inventive ideas are impractical; matters controlled by Uranus and Neptune suffer from internal confusion and external misfortunes. Some of these people follow false prophets or support unworthy humanitarian causes.

*Uranus Conjunct Pluto (1965/66):* This conjunction takes place about every one hundred fifteen years. It is the major force behind revolutionary developments that alter the modes of life of the generation it affects. An era of progressive reform is signaled. If Uranus or Pluto has personal significance in the horoscope, change, innovation and reform are major factors in the development of affairs influenced by the conjunction. These people show deep interest in the occult; many are talented occultists. If the conjunction is afflicted, magical powers are often diverted toward base and selfish purposes. Sexual deviations are possible if confirming factors exist in the horoscope.

*Uranus Conjunct North Node Opposite South Node:* This aspect combination shows an affinity for modern trends. These people keep in step with the times. They are neither intimidated by changing conditions nor

afraid of the future. However, many refuse to discipline themselves in order to reform negative tendencies denoted by the South Node; such rebellious attitudes add to South Node disadvantages.

*Uranus Conjoint Part of Fortune:* This conjunction can hasten development of affairs influenced by Uranus and the Part of Fortune. However, unless the conjunction is well aspected, it usually fosters premature endeavors, ill-conceived changes and erratic conditions that interrupt normal progress.

*Uranus Conjoint Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* These aspects have an animating effect. Much personal magnetism is possessed by these people. They are independent, rebellious and somewhat dictatorial. They do not willingly take orders or obey the rules set forth by society. They advocate total freedom for themselves. If Uranus or the Ascendant is badly afflicted, these people are extremely unpredictable and eccentric; some are irrational in their insistence on personal liberty. They can be virtual despots. Sweeping changes frequently shatter personal interests.

*Uranus Conjoint MC Opposite IC:* This combination of aspects indicates extremes regarding worldly fortunes. Overnight success is possible as are sudden downfalls, especially if Uranus or the MC is afflicted. Many of these people go into unique or unusual professions; those that do not add something original to the professions they enter. These people are known for their ingenuity, originality, unpredictability and humanitarianism.

## *Uranus Sextiles*

Uranus sextiles present unusual opportunities, which arise unexpectedly. The individual who is unprepared cannot fully utilize these opportunities, for they appear suddenly and are withdrawn abruptly. The individual who prepares in expectation of the chance to get ahead has a distinct advantage when Uranian opportunities manifest; this person is able to act quickly before desirable opportunities are snatched away.

*Uranus Sextile Neptune (1966–68):* This aspect appears in the horoscopes of multitudes of people since it stays in orb for more than three years each time it occurs. It signals an opportune period for psychic, spiritual, scientific and social development. Many of these

people are born during times when humanitarian causes and social reform are key issues. As growing youngsters they are conscious of social needs and ideals; they carry these attitudes into adult life. Only if Uranus or Neptune bears personal significance in the horoscope, however, are these attitudes prime motivating factors in the life of the individual. If one of these planets is prominent in the horoscope, the individual centers efforts directed toward social progress around activities connected with the houses ruled and occupied by Uranus and Neptune and affairs governed by other planets that aspect these two.

*Uranus Sextile Pluto (1943/44; 1995–97):* This sextile awakens interest in metaphysics and science. It is closely associated with atomic, nuclear and space physics. It affects generations of people on a broad level and few people on a personal level. If this aspect is of particular significance in a natal horoscope, it indicates that opportunities for spiritual and intellectual development arise in connection with the affairs the two planets govern.

*Uranus Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* These aspects provide opportunities that enable the individual to influence society's attitudes. This person is aware of the need for change and may affect progressive reforms. These aspects also make it easy for the individual to shed restrictive habits described by the South Node.

*Uranus Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile permits free access to opportunities associated with the Part of Fortune. Progressive ideas and innovative methods play large parts in developing the affairs influenced by this aspect.

*Uranus Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* This combination of aspects fosters uninhibited personal expression. Magnetic and animated, these people act without pretense. They choose unusual marriage partners. For most, marriage is exciting and in many ways a unique experience.

*Uranus Sextile MC Trine IC:* This aspect combination is indicative of unique career opportunities, which occur when least expected. These people advance rapidly in their professions. They have unusual homes that are always open to their friends. Family life is never dull.



## Uranus Squares

Uranus squares provoke rebellion, sudden disasters and unpredictable events. Development of affairs governed by Uranus and planets in square is blocked by external misfortunes, abrupt changes and eccentric treatment.

*Uranus Square Neptune (1954/55):* This square is associated with major disasters such as those caused by earthquakes, tornados, severe lightning storms, flash floods, airplane crashes and ship sinkings. Nations may be misled by false social doctrines and unrealistic utopian causes while under the influence of this aspect. On a personal level, this aspect creates peculiar conditions, chaos and panic in affairs ruled by Uranus and Neptune. Development of related interests is often interrupted by tragic circumstances over which the individual has no control. These interests may fail to progress properly because the individual is unable to cope with the confusion and instability that the square generates.

*Uranus Square Pluto (1932–34):* This aspect indicates extremism, fanaticism and terrorism on a world-wide scale. It is connected with massive destruction, particularly that brought about by volcanic eruption, major earthquakes, widespread lawlessness, or the misuse of atomic or nuclear power. This aspect is thought to foster political upheaval, anarchy and revolt. If it has personal significance in the horoscope, tumultuous and often violent conditions tend to disrupt the affairs governed by Uranus and Pluto. Life-shattering experiences may occur as a result of natural disasters, political insurrections, military atrocities or global wars. The individual may be swept into radical causes or become involved in terrorist activities. Sexual abuse is possible if other factors in the horoscope agree.

*Uranus Square North Node Square South Node:* This combination of aspects indicates disrespect for traditions of society. Many of these people deliberately scorn accepted social customs in order to assert individualism and independence. In so doing, they attract the radical elements of society and sudden reversals of fortune.

*Uranus Square Part of Fortune:* This square describes sporadic action and unfortunate circumstances that interrupt progress. Lack of sustained endeavor and

unstable conditions thwart the development of affairs influenced by Uranus and the Part of Fortune.

*Uranus Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* This aspect combination generates disobedience, rebelliousness, unpredictable behavior, radical attitudes and personal eccentricities. Marital separations, divorce and serious rifts with partners are attributed to these aspects. Most of these people are uncooperative and demanding.

*Uranus Square MC Square IC:* These aspects create career disruptions and family instability. Inconsistency is evident in professional and domestic affairs. Frequent job changes are probable. Some of these people lose positions because they refuse to conform to company rules and procedures. Many quit jobs and uproot their families because of the compelling need for change and freedom.

## Uranus Trines

Uranus trines create fortunate conditions associated with the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Uranus and trined planets. Unusual circumstances arise that benefit the individual and promote extensive progress in affairs influenced by Uranus trines.

*Uranus Trine Neptune (1921/22; 1939–1943):* This aspect creates a climate that is conducive to psychic and occult development; it heightens general interest in the supernatural and the spiritual side of humankind. Generations born under this aspect are spiritually aware. Occult movements and those that promote spiritual growth develop more fully when this aspect operates. As a generation, these people are idealistic and humanitarian. The few people in whose horoscopes this aspect is personally significant are spiritually gifted. Many are spiritualists, mystics or psychics. These people are sensitive to and idealistic about the affairs influenced by this trine. Unless Uranus or Neptune is seriously afflicted, these interests develop fully and easily.

*Uranus Trine Pluto (1921/22):* This trine produces major changes and reforms that alter the lives of millions of people. It is associated with constructive utilization of atomic and nuclear power. Space exploration and scientific developments that improve the quality of life are attributed in part to this aspect. If influence is exerted in the individual horoscope, this trine increases interest

in the occult and in spiritual regeneration; if other factors concur, occult ability is indicated. This trine denotes conditions of good fortune and ease in the houses occupied and ruled by Uranus and Pluto; changes that occur in these affairs usually benefit the individual spiritually or materially. Dramatic strides are possible during the individual's lifetime because Uranus adds impetus to Plutonian involvement.

*Uranus Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* This aspect combination shows that the individual is receptive to progressive trends and responsive to social needs. Some of these people play major roles in changing prevailing attitudes and in modernizing outdated social concepts. These people are able to rid themselves of negative habit patterns associated with the South Node, which might otherwise hinder progress.

*Uranus Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine fosters fortunate conditions and progressive changes, which enable one to fully develop areas influenced by the aspect. Unexpected rewards and benefits of an unusual nature are associated with this trine.

*Uranus Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* These aspects bring out personal magnetism and original behavior patterns. These people are not crowd-followers; they are trend-setters. Numerous marital and partnership opportunities manifest. Marriage may occur quite suddenly. Unusual circumstances and extraordinary events favorably influence both individual endeavors and partnership efforts.

*Uranus Trine MC Sextile IC:* This combination of aspects facilitates career progress. Sudden rise to fame is possible. Professional interests are advanced by innovative methods and modern procedures. Frequent opportunities spring from family connections. Home life is harmonious but irregular; these people do not conform to standard family practices.

## *Uranus Oppositions*

Uranus oppositions are especially difficult to handle. The opposition is basically a separative aspect; Uranus is disruptive by nature and fosters breaks. Affairs governed by Uranus and a planet in opposition can be so shattered by misfortune and disaster that few pieces remain with which to rebuild. Uranus forces change and does not mend the breaches it provokes.

After a Uranian break, the individual is presented with an entirely different set of circumstances than existed before, and there is no way to completely restore former conditions. Conditions may be improved or not depending upon how the individual deals with Uranian experiences.

*Uranus Opposite Neptune (1906-1910):* This aspect has influence over natural disasters and other misfortunes similar to those associated with the Uranus/Neptune square; however, opposition-induced calamities are more cataclysmic in nature than those generated by the square. This opposition may be involved in major hurricanes, typhoons and tidal waves of the sort that cause widespread destruction and irreparable damage. This aspect indicates a generation that is beset with social upheaval and confused by erratic social conditions. If Uranus or Neptune is strong in the personal horoscope, misfortunes and breaks in the affairs ruled by the two planets often catch the individual completely off guard. Neptune deludes and deceives; it blinds one to impending disaster. This aspect also attracts disturbing, negative psychic experiences that can be dangerous.

*Uranus Opposite Pluto (1901/02):* This aspect incites riots and mob violence. Tremendous and often destructive changes are forced upon people born during the period that the opposition is in effect. This aspect creates conditions similar to but more drastic and turbulent than those generated by the Uranus/Pluto square. If one of these two planets is personally significant in the horoscope, threatening conditions and crushing circumstances can cause violent conflicts and serious breaks in the affairs influenced by the opposition. This aspect represents illegitimate activities and criminal action. If confirming factors are present in the horoscope, it sometimes fosters sexual perversion and abuse.

*Uranus Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* These aspects are indicative of the extreme nonconformist who automatically resists prevailing social trends and insists on personal liberty and social freedom. Erratic habits and eccentric attitudes hinder growth.

*Uranus Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition produces extremes of action, unstable conditions and disastrous disruptions that interfere with the development of affairs influenced by the aspect. Progress is sporadic.

*Uranus Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* This combination of aspects indicates exciting marriages and novel partnerships. Many of these people rush into impetuous marriages. If Uranus or the Descendant is afflicted, divorce is likely. These people resist confining ties; they break involvements that restrain freedom and individuality. Partnerships are unstable.

*Uranus Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* This aspect combination indicates an unstable home life that is upset by frequent moves and family rifts. These people rebel against parental authority. As adults, they want to be free to come and go as they please in their own homes. Many home activities center around friends and group interests. If Uranus is afflicted, some of these people grow increasingly eccentric in late years.

### *Uranus Parallels*

Parallels that Uranus forms with the inner planets are interpreted as weak conjunctions. The emphasis of these Uranus parallels depends upon aspects that other planets form with Uranus and the paralleled planets. Influence extends to the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Uranus and planets in parallel and the affairs governed by planets that aspect the paralleled planets.

Parallels that occur between Uranus and the other outer planets are insignificant in the natal horoscope unless Uranus or the paralleled planet is strong in the horoscope. These parallels, if personally significant, indicate erratic conditions and changing situations in accordance with the nature of the paralleled planets. Unpredictable circumstances affect the stability of affairs governed by Uranus and outer planets in parallel with Uranus. If afflicted, these parallels do not exert the destructive impact associated with some afflicted Uranian conjunctions; they do not imply sexual aberrations. Under affliction, these parallels strengthen adversities indicated by the afflicting planets.

A parallel that occurs between Uranus and the North Node, Part of Fortune, Ascendant or MC acts as a mild conjunction.

### *Uranus Contraparallels*

Contraparallels that are formed between Uranus and the inner planets, the North Node and the Part of Fortune assume the nature of corresponding oppositions, but they carry much less impact than oppositions.

Contraparallels that Uranus forms with other outer planets are interpreted as mild oppositions. These aspects have general application to the generation born during the time the aspects remain in orb. They do not connote the major disasters, extreme violence or sexual deviations that are associated with some Uranian oppositions.

A contraparallel that occurs between Uranus and the Ascendant or MC bears the influence of an afflicted conjunction. A Uranus/Ascendant contraparallel influences the personality and first house affairs. These people are magnetic, individualistic, extremist, radical, unpredictable, rebellious and eccentric. Personal interests are unstable. Things suddenly go awry for these people. A Uranus/MC contraparallel adversely affects one's career and other tenth house interests. It is indicative of sudden career or business reversals and frequent job changes.

### *Minor Uranus Aspects*

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by Uranus:* Minor easy aspects that Uranus forms indicate minor innovations and refreshing changes in accordance with the nature of the aspects and the influence of the planets, signs and houses involved. These aspects are of little importance in the natal horoscope.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by Uranus:* Minor hard aspects formed by Uranus describe inconsistencies that create minor setbacks and stressful conditions in the affairs influenced by the aspects. These aspects do not generate serious rifts or drastic changes. The influence of minor hard aspects that occur between Uranus and other outer planets is negligible in a natal horoscope.

# 24 *Neptune Aspects*

Neptune aspects bring intangible forces into play. They influence imagination, inspiration, intuition, psychic receptivity and spiritual development. Favorable Neptune aspects foster sympathy, sensitivity, psychism and spiritual idealism. They support artistic ability and produce imagery and creative inspiration. Adverse Neptune aspects induce illusions, delusions, hallucinations, obscurities and fallacies. An afflicted Neptune beguiles and bewilders and thus creates confusion and chaos in the affairs governed by Neptune and the afflicting planet(s). Neptune afflictions generate superstition, escapism, hypocrisy, treachery and deceit. The influence of a Neptune conjunction depends upon the nature of aspects made to the conjunction.

The aspects Neptune forms with other outer planets do not occur often; when they do form, they remain in orb for lengthy time periods. These aspects have a generational effect and do not exert much influence on a particular individual unless Neptune or the aspected planet bears personal significance in the horoscope.

## *Neptune Conjunctions*

*Neptune Conjunction Pluto:* This aspect last reached partile in 1891 and will not recur until the twenty-fourth century. It denotes an era of spiritual revival and rebirth. The influence of this conjunction can be uplifting or degrading. If the conjunction is well aspected, the highest level of spiritual growth and psychic development is indicated. If the conjunction is afflicted, spiritual degeneration and depravity are possible. If Neptune or Pluto is strong in the horoscope

and favorably aspected, this conjunction gives inner strength and spiritual power that reinforces action of the aspecting planets. Mystery and secrecy are associated with affairs governed by Neptune and Pluto. Underhandedness and corruption are indicated if the conjunction is afflicted. This aspect, when afflicted and in combination with other factors that support sexual confusion or lack of sexual identity, is sometimes found in the horoscopes of bisexuals and transvestites.

*Neptune Conjunction North Node Opposite South Node:* People in whose horoscopes these aspects appear are intuitive to and receptive to prevailing attitudes. They are easily influenced by the opinions and customs of society and tend to drift with popular trends.

*Neptune Conjunction Part of Fortune:* This conjunction misleads and obscures. The individual may be unaware of or overlook advantageous possibilities associated with the Part of Fortune and therefore fail to properly develop these areas.

*Neptune Conjunction Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* These aspects are associated with illusive personal qualities. These people are alluring, glamorous and seductive. Sensitive and intuitive, many are mystically inclined. If Neptune or the Ascendant is afflicted, these people may be unreliable, unrealistic individuals who fail to recognize personal shortcomings and underestimate their abilities. Drug or alcohol abuse is possible.

*Neptune Conjunction MC Opposite IC:* This combination of aspects undermines worldly ambition. Career efforts are often feeble, unrealistic or impractical. Many of

these people pursue careers for which they are unsuited. These aspects may attract scandal. If Neptune or the MC is badly afflicted, one's reputation and community standing are impaired. If Neptune and the MC are favorably aspected, success can be achieved in a Neptune-related profession.

### *Neptune Sextiles*

*Neptune Sextile Pluto:* This sextile, the only major aspect formed between these two planets in the twentieth century (partile 1950–56 and 1976–86), concerns the spiritual development of the generation born while it is in effect. It represents opportunities that, if utilized by society, can produce the highest level of spiritual development. Under the influence of this aspect, high-minded concepts transcend base human desires. If Neptune or Pluto occupies the first house, rules the Ascending sign or disposes the chart ruler, the Sun or the Moon, this sextile has personal significance in the natal horoscope. Activities that are influenced by this aspect provide opportunities for personal spiritual development. These people are able to promote idealistic movements through the affairs governed by Neptune and Pluto. If other factors in the horoscope confirm, this aspect generates interest and some ability in science, metaphysics and the occult.

*Neptune Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* These aspects enable one to sense prevailing trends and to utilize these trends advantageously. If Neptune is unafflicted, this individual possesses uncanny instincts with which to effectively guide the affairs influenced by these aspects.

*Neptune Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile enables one to recognize obscure opportunities that might otherwise be overlooked. Intuition is a major factor in the successful development of affairs influenced by Neptune and the Part of Fortune.

*Neptune Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* This combination of aspects generates much personal appeal. These people come across as sensitive, sympathetic, elusive and somewhat mysterious. They attract opportunities that provide personal benefits as well as other advantages described by the signs and houses occupied and ruled by Neptune and planets that favorably aspect Neptune. These people are idealistic

about marriage. Many feel psychically or emotionally attuned to their marriage partners. Hidden benefits are associated with marriage and partnerships.

*Neptune Sextile MC Trine IC:* This aspect combination indicates that good career opportunities often arise in mysterious ways. These people benefit from behind-the-scenes connections and family affiliations. They possess unerring instincts about professional and business affairs. Most feel emotionally close to their families. Many are spiritually inspired by their parents or vice versa.

### *Neptune Squares*

*Neptune Square Pluto:* This aspect occurred early in the nineteenth century and will re-form in the twenty-first. It indicates an era of spiritual bankruptcy and social corruption. Psychic and spiritual forces may be used for coercive and degrading purposes. The general tenor of the period during which this aspect operates reflects debauchery, decay and dissolution. If Neptune or Pluto is important in a horoscope that contains this square, the affairs governed by the two planets can show tendencies to crime, corruption, treachery and nefarious plots. If other factors in the horoscope agree, pornographic interest, moral depravity or sexual perversion are possible.

*Neptune Square North Node Square South Node:* This aspect combination creates an idealistic and highly unrealistic concept of prevailing attitudes. Many of these people are drifters. They tend to attract the rootless segment of society. Some are drawn into the drug culture.

*Neptune Square Part of Fortune:* This square generates confusion and subterfuge in affairs influenced by Neptune and the Part of Fortune. Muddled conditions, deceptive circumstances and the individual's ineptness in related matters block progress. Obscure developments tend to undermine benefits associated with the Part of Fortune.

*Neptune Square Ascendant Square Descendant:* Unreliability, deceptiveness and elusiveness are fostered by this combination. These people tend to misrepresent themselves, masking faults and concealing personal attitudes. Some attract irresponsible

marriage and business partners; many are unreliable and deceitful as partners themselves.

*Neptune Square MC Square IC:* This combination of aspects indicates developments that undermine one's career, reputation and home life. Unless other factors contradict, these people are vague about career goals. They tend to evade family problems and responsibilities.

## Neptune Trines

*Neptune Trine Pluto:* This trine, active in the eighteenth century, will recur late in the twenty-first. It creates a climate that attracts positive occult forces. It indicates a generation that is receptive to positive occult and psychic influences. This generation reflects an inborn understanding of the supernatural. If Neptune or Pluto is important in an individual's horoscope, this aspect gives spiritual insight and instinctive understanding of the unknown. It fosters interest in atomic and nuclear science, metaphysics, and the mysteries of life and death. Conditions influenced by this aspect clear the path to Plutonian evolution.

*Neptune Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* This combination of aspects generates spiritually uplifting conditions. This person has the advantage of being sensitive to and in harmony with prevailing trends and popular attitudes.

*Neptune Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine indicates smooth-flowing developments that contribute to the success promised by the Part of Fortune. These people are intuitively aware of obscure conditions that affect interests influenced by Neptune and the Part of Fortune.

*Neptune Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant.* This aspect combination brings out beguiling personal qualities. These people are bewitching and fascinating. They attract partnership and marital opportunities that are secret, covert or in some way mysterious. Because people with these aspects are sensitive and sympathetic to the needs of their partners, their marriages are usually harmonious.

*Neptune Trine MC Sextile IC:* These aspects create background conditions that aid career development. These people are intuitive to hidden factors that concern their careers. With their winning ways they gain the support of persons who can help them

advance professionally. Opportunities frequently stem from family connections. If contradictory factors are not present in the horoscope, these people form close emotional ties with their families.

## Neptune Oppositions

*Neptune Opposite Pluto:* This opposition marks an era of conflict between forces of good and evil. It last occurred in the seventeenth century, and will re-form in the twenty-first. If heavy malefics afflict Neptune and Pluto while they remain in opposition, godlessness, moral decay and corruption take over during the period of affliction. A Jupiter sextile or trine to the opposing planets provides temporary respite from corrupt influences while the Jupiter aspect remains in orb and promotes morality and spiritual growth. If Neptune or Pluto is influential in the natal horoscope, the individual is tormented by moral and spiritual conflicts. Affairs governed by the two planets are subject to duplicity, subterfuge, vice and crime. This opposition can encourage suicidal or homicidal tendencies. If confirming factors exist in the horoscope, sexual perversion is possible.

*Neptune Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* These aspects give rise to insidious habit patterns that are extremely hard to overcome. These habits are so much a part of the individual that he or she frequently fails to recognize them for what they are. If confirming factors exist, these aspects can contribute to psychological escapism, alcohol or drug abuse.

*Neptune Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition brings surreptitious activities into play. The individual may be tricked or cheated out of benefits associated with the Part of Fortune.

*Neptune Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* This combination of aspects introduces intrigue into marriage and partnerships. These people form secret pacts and covert alliances. Ties with the marriage partner may be karmic in nature. If Neptune is afflicted, infidelity in marriage and fraud in partnerships is possible. These aspects are sometimes found in the horoscopes of bigamists.

*Neptune Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* If Neptune is well aspected, this configuration indicates deep spirituality

and sensitivity in home life; if Neptune is afflicted, the home atmosphere may be uneasy, family ties weakened by deception, and old age spent in seclusion.

### *Neptune Parallels*

Parallels that occur between Neptune and inner planets, the North Node, Part of Fortune, Ascendant or the MC are interpreted as mildly forceful conjunctions. Other planets that aspect Neptune and planets in parallel with Neptune influence the parallels. Parallels that are favorably aspected assume positive characteristics of corresponding conjunctions. Parallels that are adversely aspected act as afflicted conjunctions.

Parallels that Neptune forms with other outer planets have little influence in a natal horoscope unless Neptune or the planet in parallel is influential in the horoscope.

### *Neptune Contraparallels*

Neptune contraparallels, except for those formed with the Ascendant and MC, are interpreted as weak oppositions. Contraparallels between Neptune and outer planets are insignificant in a natal horoscope unless Neptune or the aspected planet is strong.

A contraparallel that occurs between Neptune and the Ascendant or the MC is treated as an afflicted conjunction.

### *Minor Neptune Aspects*

*Minor Easy Aspects Formed by Neptune:* Minor easy aspects formed by Neptune indicate psychic and spiritual interests that manifest in affairs associated with the signs and houses ruled and occupied by Neptune and the planets in aspect. These aspects do not give ability in art or occult sciences, although interest is evident. Neptune formed a semi-sextile with Pluto in 1916.

*Minor Hard Aspects Formed by Neptune:* Minor hard aspects that Neptune forms generate reveries and fantasies. They do not foster drug or alcohol abuse or other harmful forms of escapism that are associated with major hard Neptunian aspects. These minor hard aspects create illusions, confusion and vagueness. A Neptune/Pluto semi-square was active in 1931 and 1932.

# 25 *Pluto Aspects*

Pluto aspects bring about transformation for better or worse. This process is a gradual one that develops slowly throughout the individual's lifetime. Favorable Pluto aspects induce spiritual, mental, emotional, physical or material regeneration in accordance with the planets, signs and houses involved. Adverse Pluto aspects are associated with degeneration. The emphasis of a Pluto conjunction depends upon the nature of aspects made to the conjunction. A favorably aspected Pluto conjunction elevates Plutonian qualities; an afflicted conjunction emphasizes base characteristics of Pluto.

In interpreting Pluto aspects, Pluto's strength in the horoscope and its influence on the individual must be carefully considered. Many people do not seem to react individually to the influence of this planet unless Pluto rules the Ascendant, rules a sign (Scorpio) intercepted within the first house, occupies the first house, or disposes or forms major aspects with the chart ruler, planets co-ruling or occupying the first house, the Sun or the Moon.

Aspects that Pluto forms with outer planets are indicative of mass movements and worldwide trends that are part of the history of the generation the Pluto aspect influences. These aspects may affect the individual on a personal level, but if so, Pluto must exert strong personal influence in the natal horoscope.

Because Pluto is the slowest moving planet, it cannot act as significator in any aspect it forms with another planet unless the motion of the planet in aspect is *slow of course* or stationary. The interpretations for aspects that occur between Pluto and other planets are listed under the aspects of the planet that normally acts as

significator as all planetary aspects are listed except those formed by the Sun.

## *Pluto Conjunctions*

*Pluto Conjunction North Node Opposite South Node:* This combination of aspects enables the individual to penetrate basic causes behind prevailing trends and attitudes. If Pluto is favorably aspected, this person may be able to transform negative conditions that exist in the houses ruled and occupied by Pluto into a better way of life. If Pluto is afflicted, experiences associated with interests Pluto governs can have a degrading effect.

*Pluto Conjunction Part of Fortune:* This conjunction centers Plutonian power in the area in which most successful development is promised by the Part of Fortune. The affairs influenced by this aspect bring enormous rewards in one form or another if the conjunction is favorably aspected. If the conjunction is afflicted, turmoil and destruction can ensue.

*Pluto Conjunction Ascendant Opposite Descendant:* This aspect combination represents the power for good and evil that is part of every individual. The power of Pluto is placed at the disposal of the individual. The potential for regeneration or degeneration clearly rests with the individual. In this configuration, Pluto strengthens personal qualities described by the Ascendant and first house. Physical stamina and recuperative powers are increased. If Pluto is afflicted, the individual tends to promote self-interests ruthlessly. The personal safety of the individual is threatened.



*Pluto Conjunct MC Opposite IC:* These aspects can indicate greatness or corruptness depending upon whether Pluto and the MC are favorably aspected or afflicted. Most of these people attain positions of power within the context of their spheres of existence and experience. For example, these aspects may be found in the horoscope of a world leader who dominates global affairs; they may appear in the horoscope of a crime chieftan who controls a large segment of the criminal element; or they may be found in the horoscope of a tribal medicine man who exerts more influence in the daily lives of the tribe members than does the chief. The emphasis of these aspects is not so much on renown or public dishonor, although either is possible, as it is on the massive influence these people wield. Many of these people choose to remain anonymous to the public in order to protect the power they achieve.

### *Pluto Sextiles*

*Pluto Sextile North Node Trine South Node:* Penetrating insight into prevailing attitudes is produced by this combination. These people comprehend the underlying causes behind popular trends and are thus able to take full advantage of the swing of the times. They seem to attract opportunities that enable them to upgrade the affairs and conditions influenced by Pluto and the Nodes.

*Pluto Sextile Part of Fortune:* This sextile creates opportunities that permit the individual to regenerate stagnant developments and uplift negative conditions associated with Pluto and the Part of Fortune. If the signs, houses and other aspects involved agree, spiritual benefits and material rewards may be derived through interests influenced by this aspect.

*Pluto Sextile Ascendant Trine Descendant:* This combination of aspects denotes a special kind of personal charisma that is sensed by others rather than observed. These people project intense inner power that draws others to them if Pluto is unafflicted; if Pluto is afflicted, others may feel uneasy or inadequate in their presence. These people attract opportunities that enable them to gain personal power and influence in the affairs governed by Pluto. They tend to dominate marriage and partnerships in ways that prove advantageous to all concerned.

*Pluto Sextile MC Trine IC:* These aspects generate career opportunities that help one gain tremendous

professional influence. These people control the direction of their careers, and often have a compelling sense of destiny and power. They master domestic affairs and overcome family drawbacks.

### *Pluto Squares*

*Pluto Square North Node Square South Node:* This combination of aspects can indicate difficult experiences in the areas influenced by Pluto and the Nodes. These people do not hesitate to avail themselves of North Node developmental experiences. However, they frequently incur enmity and hardships because they refuse to go along with popular attitudes and methods with which they disagree. Some of these people are coercive and abusive in their attempts to overcome obstacles generated by these squares.

*Pluto Square Part of Fortune:* This aspect describes baffling conditions and traumatic experiences with which the individual must deal effectively in order to successfully develop the affairs influenced by the square. These difficulties manifest in the houses ruled and occupied by Pluto and in the house occupied by the Part of Fortune. The signs involved and other afflictions to Pluto and the Part of Fortune are descriptive of specific difficulties that hinder success.

*Pluto Square Ascendant Square MC:* These aspects encourage destructive behavior and callous attitudes. Many of these people regard marriage and business partners with contempt or vice versa. They tend to dominate by force rather than by persuasion.

*Pluto Square MC Square IC:* This aspect combination contributes to career difficulties and domestic problems. It produces intense lust for power, which sometimes leads to infamy and public disgrace. In extreme cases, the home may be desecrated by vandals, looters, rapists or other criminals. Family tragedy may wreck the life of the individual, especially if Saturn, Uranus or Neptune afflicts Pluto, the fourth house or the fourth house ruler.

### *Pluto Trines*

*Pluto Trine North Node Sextile South Node:* The signs and houses involved in these aspects indicate those areas in which the individual exerts the greatest influence on common attitudes of society. If Pluto is

heavily afflicted, the individual may exploit popular trends for selfish purposes.

*Pluto Trine Part of Fortune:* This trine links the regenerative power of Pluto with affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune. Spiritual and/or material interests develop fully in areas affected by this aspect. The nature of developments depends upon the signs and houses involved.

*Pluto Trine Ascendant Sextile Descendant:* This aspect combination enables one to easily master personal situations that arise in the course of experience. Plutonian evolvment may depend upon one's interaction with society, for opportunities for development rest with seventh house affairs.

*Pluto Trine MC Sextile IC:* This combination of aspects eases potential career difficulties. These people wield considerable influence in their careers; many achieve positions of power and authority. Family heritage in some way advances worldly interests.

## Pluto Oppositions

*Pluto Opposite North Node Conjunct South Node:* This combination of aspects indicates karmic debts that must be paid before areas influenced by Pluto and the Nodes can be fully developed. The sign and house occupied by Pluto and the South Node are descriptive of karmic handicaps. The sign and house position of the North Node offer release.

*Pluto Opposite Part of Fortune:* This opposition alerts one to advantages associated with the Part of Fortune; it also creates revulsion toward the affairs influenced by the Part of Fortune. How one deals with this conflict depends upon aspects made to Pluto and the Part of Fortune by other planets.

*Pluto Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* These aspects emphasize social interaction as the basis for regeneration or, if Pluto is heavily afflicted, degeneration. These people dominate marriage and partnerships. Depending upon whether Pluto is favorably aspected or afflicted, these relationships may be uplifting or debasing.

*Pluto Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* These aspects indicate that family heritage and childhood

environment are part of Plutonian evolvment. Evolvment is the birthright of these people. Afflictions to Pluto represent temptations that lure one on a downward path, but the choice always belongs to the individual. This configuration also indicates tyranny in the home.

## Other Pluto Aspects

*Pluto Parallels:* Parallels that Pluto forms with the North Node, Part of Fortune, Ascendant and MC are treated as corresponding conjunctions. The strength of these parallels depends upon Pluto's strength in the horoscope. Pluto parallels do not carry as much weight as conjunctions, but if Pluto is influential in the natal horoscope these aspects exert moderate influence in the houses involved according to sign expression.

*Pluto Contraparallels:* A contraparallel that occurs between Pluto and the Ascendant or MC is interpreted as an afflicted conjunction. A contraparallel formed between Pluto and the North Node or Part of Fortune corresponds to a weak opposition.

*Minor Pluto Aspects:* Minor aspects that occur between Pluto and the Nodes, Part of Fortune and the angles are of no significance in the natal horoscope. These aspects are not usually calculated or listed in the aspectarian.

# 26 *Aspects of the Moon's Nodes and Part of Fortune*

Aspects formed between the Moon's Nodes and Part of Fortune, and aspects that the Nodes and Part of Fortune form with the Ascendant and MC are unimportant unless a planet aspects the Nodes or Part of Fortune. Planets energize the horoscope; the Nodes and Part of Fortune do not.

Conjunctions and oppositions that occur between these points are more significant than other mutual aspects. An opposition is automatically formed by the opposite Node or angle if a Node or angle forms a mutual conjunction or conjuncts the Part of Fortune. If a planet aspects the conjunction, energy is focused in the house in which the conjunction occurs.

Other major aspects that occur between the Nodes, Part of Fortune and angles link the interests of the houses involved. Interpretation depends upon the natures of planets that aspect these points and the type of planetary aspects formed. Minor aspects are meaningless.

Mutual aspects between the Ascendant and MC are not interpreted as such. The orientation between the angles as it varies from the norm (square) distorts the size of the houses and quadrants, placing emphasis on the larger portions.

## *North Node and Part of Fortune Conjunctions (South Node Oppositions)*

*North Node Conjunct Part of Fortune (South Node Opposite Part of Fortune)*: This is a beneficial configuration that indicates successful developments

in the house occupied by the North Node and Part of Fortune if the conjunction is favorably aspected. If the Nodes or Part of Fortune are adversely aspected, difficulties ensue as described by the afflictions.

*North Node Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant (South Node Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant)*: This aspect combination aids personal growth and development unless the Ascendant is heavily afflicted. Marital and partnership relations may be strained. The individual finds it difficult to cooperate or to obtain cooperation.

*Part of Fortune Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant*: This combination of aspects denotes personal advantages and general success in life if the Ascendant and Part of Fortune are well aspected; if afflicted, misfortunes and health problems are indicated.

*North Node Conjunct MC Opposite IC (South Node Opposite MC Conjunct IC)*: This configuration is helpful to professional advancement if the North Node and MC are unafflicted. These people get along well with job superiors and others who exert influence in their careers. Family life is unpleasant in ways described by aspects to the fourth house and its rulers. Relations with parents are apt to be unhappy.

*Part of Fortune Conjunct MC Opposite IC*: Unless the Part of Fortune or MC is heavily afflicted, this aspect combination is a strong indication of career success and recognition.

### *North Node and Part of Fortune Oppositions (South Node Conjunctions)*

*North Node Opposite Part of Fortune (South Node Conjunct Part of Fortune):* In this combination of aspects the Part of Fortune is disadvantaged. If the Nodes and Part of Fortune are affected, misfortunes and handicaps as denoted by the afflicting planets hinder success in the house occupied by the South Node and Part of Fortune.

*North Node Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant (South Node Conjunct Ascendant Opposite Descendant):* This configuration and planets that favorably aspect the North Node describe beneficial growth experiences that stem from social interaction, marriage and partnerships. However, many of these people fail to reach out because of inner inhibitions or self-centered tendencies denoted by afflictions to the South Node and Ascendant.

*Part of Fortune Opposite Ascendant Conjunct Descendant:* This aspect combination implies successful partnerships and benefits derived through the marriage partner if planets do not afflict the Part of Fortune.

*North Node Opposite MC Conjunct IC (South Node Conjunct MC Opposite IC):* These aspects and planets that favorably aspect the North Node describe those facets of one's family heritage and domestic life that are beneficial to the individual. Career interests may be underdeveloped unless the South Node and MC are very well aspected, for the individual does not relate well to superiors and does not respond properly to prevailing trends that influence the career.

*Part of Fortune Opposite MC Conjunct IC:* These aspects indicate family advantages and successful development of property and real estate interests if the Part of Fortune is favorably aspected by planets. If the Part of Fortune is afflicted, family background is more apt to be a hindrance than an asset; losses can be incurred through improper management of real estate.

# 27 *Astrological Guidance in Planning for the Future*

Various techniques are available by which one can obtain greater insight into the potentials indicated in the natal chart and developments that take place during a lifetime. They help the individual achieve greater self-understanding, improve relationships and know the time of life when certain courses of action are most apt to be beneficial. More importantly, through these studies one becomes increasingly aware that the direction a natal potential takes is in his or her hands. When personal decisions and actions are based on the proper utilization of astrological influences, a person gains greater control over the cause and effect of life.

## *Progressions and Transits*

A progressed horoscope updates a natal horoscope; it reveals developmental patterns and emerging trends as they unfold according to the promise of the natal chart. A natal horoscope never loses its initial character, but it is no more static than life itself, for it describes an ongoing growth process. For example, when a person's natal Sun progresses into the next sign, that person does not lose original Sun-sign characteristics; he or she gains added perspective through new Sun-sign qualities. One can most successfully fulfill certain potentials and realize particular goals when the flow of creative energies shown by the progressed horoscope harmonizes with and centers on associated areas. For instance, when planets progress to the tenth house or aspect the MC or its planetary ruler, career development is emphasized.

The most common method of progressing a horoscope, the "day for a year" method, relates each

successive day after birth to one year of life. Beginning with the GMT birthdate and counting it zero, the number of days that corresponds to one's age in years is counted forward in the ephemeris to obtain the progressed ephemeris date (PED). The progressed horoscope is calculated in the same manner as the natal chart (Chapters 12 and 13) using the time and location of birth but substituting astrological data (sidereal time, planetary positions, etc.) listed in the ephemeris on the PED for that given on the birthdate.

For example, to progress Susan's horoscope to age eighteen, one would use the data given in the ephemeris for December 17, 1950, eighteen days after her GMT birthdate, November 29, 1950. Refer to Chapter 12, Example 2, for Susan's birth data. House cusps and planetary positions are corrected as for the natal chart. The horoscope erected for this date, the PED for Susan's eighteenth year, is exact on her eighteenth birthday, November 29, 1968.

The progressed horoscope may be drawn up on a separate chart form, but it is easier to see how the progressed chart relates to the natal horoscope by marking progressed positions outside the natal wheel. Special chart forms that contain an outer wheel designed for progressed planets are available. When using this type of form, it is customary to insert the progressed planets, Ascendant and MC, but not other house cusps.

The "solar-arc" method is used by some to advance the house cusps for a progressed horoscope. With this procedure, the Sun's travel between the birthdate and the PED is calculated; the result (in degrees and minutes) is added to the natal MC to determine the progressed MC. The Ascendant and other house cusps listed in the Table of Houses at the birth latitude that

correspond to the progressed MC become the progressed house cusps.

Instead of correcting progressed planets to the GMT birthtime, positions listed on the PED may be entered in the progressed horoscope. These positions are exact on the Adjusted Calculation Date (ACD), a date different from the birthday. To find the ACD, add the GMT interval (Chapter 12) as calculated for the natal horoscope to the sidereal time listed in a noon ephemeris on the GMT birthdate if the GMT birthtime is A.M. (opposite procedure than when calculating the local sidereal time of birth); leaf forward in the ephemeris to find this sidereal time; the corresponding date is the ACD. For an afternoon birth (GMT), subtract the GMT interval from the ST listed on the birthdate (noon ephemeris); leaf back in the ephemeris to find the date which corresponds to the calculated ST. If a zero hour ephemeris is used, the GMT interval is always subtracted from the ST listed on the birthdate, and the ACD always occurs on a date prior to birth. The ACD and birthdate coincide only if the GMT birthtime is the same as the ephemeris reference time (noon or midnight). The ACD is a constant date that applies to any given year.

To calculate the ACD for Susan's chart, the GMT interval, 9:05 (GMT birthtime is 9:05 P.M.), is subtracted from 16:30:13, the ST listed in a noon ephemeris on her birthdate. (Refer to Chapter 11, Figure 16.) The result, 7:26:13, is unlisted. The date on which the closest ST, 7:27:08, is entered and on which the calculated ST does occur, July 14, is selected as her ACD.

The ACD is a constant that applies to any given year. The planetary positions listed on December 17, 1950 (PED for Susan's eighteenth year), uncorrected, are the progressed positions exact on July 14, 1968, the ACD for the eighteenth year after birth. If the positions listed on the PED are corrected to the GMT birth interval, they are exact on the birthday of the year that corresponds to the PED.

Planetary positions are corrected or, alternatively, the ACD used so that one can determine by interpolation the date on which a progressed aspect is exact, the time when its influence is strongest. The orb for a progressed aspect is 1°. The progressed Moon moves about 1° each month, so its position is interpolated for each month. Its aspects are influential for about two months, one month applying and one month separating. A progressed aspect may be in orb

for two or three years, or for a lifetime, depending upon the rate of planetary travel. Heavier planets progress so slowly that the only changes likely are those associated with closing (reaching partile) or separating from (going beyond orb limits) a natal aspect. The progressed influence of these planets is more psychological than physical unless natal or other progressed indications support physical manifestation. If an outer planet occupies the first or last degrees of a sign, it may progress into the next sign or retrograde into the previous one. House changes are also possible for these planets if they are placed natively near a cusp. Such changes alter planetary expression and activity according to progressed sign and house positions.

A progressed horoscope is read in conjunction with the natal horoscope. Progressed indications that are not confirmed natively are meaningless and inapplicable to that individual. In order that an aspect between two progressed planets or a progressed and natal planet relate to the individual, the two planets must relate to each other in the natal chart, although they do not have to be in aspect natively. For example, Susan's progressed horoscope for 1968 showed that Mars had progressed into Aquarius and into the natal tenth house, forming a trine with progressed Saturn. These two planets form no natal aspect, but Saturn disposes Mars natively and therefore influences its action. Saturn, natural ruler of the tenth house, also co-rules the natal tenth and is co-dispositor (with Uranus) of progressed Mars. The progressed trine, significant because it is a major aspect and because Mars and Saturn are related natively and associated with the tenth house (natal Mars in Capricorn, the natural sign of the tenth house), indicates conditions favorable to career interests and other tenth house affairs. It also influences other interests ruled in the natal horoscope by Mars and Saturn.

Aspects formed between progressed planets and angles are not as influential as progressed/natal aspects, but if a natal relationship exists between the aspected planets, the progressed aspect activates natal indications. For example, the Mars/Saturn trine in Susan's progressed horoscope, a progressed/progressed aspect, energizes the natal Saturn/MC trine that is present in her natal horoscope (both planets have tenth house influence). More importantly, it extends and reinforces the influence of a trine between progressed Mars and natal Saturn that occurred during

Susan's sixteenth year and was still effective when the progressed/progressed trine reached beginning orb limits. However, at that time, Mars remained in the ninth house, which Saturn rules natively, placing emphasis on education and linking educational and career interests. In retrospect, it appears that the time was ripe for Susan to seriously prepare for her career or for advanced studies in connection with her profession.

The Ascendant and MC, key points in a horoscope, externalize indications shown in a natal horoscope when aspected by progressed planets. Hard aspects, especially the conjunction, formed by progressed planets to natal angles or by progressed angles to natal planets, describe significant events in the life of an individual. Aspects involving the Ascendant are associated with happenings of a personal nature, inner changes, and events that affect the body. Midheaven events deal with external conditions and activities.

A progressed horoscope shows the major influences that operate during a given year. Transits, the movements of planets on a particular day identified by planetary positions listed in the ephemeris for that date, describe astrological influences operating on the day of interest. Hard aspects to natal or progressed planets formed by fast-moving transiting planets frequently trigger or time events indicated in the horoscope. Transiting aspects (hard) to the angles also time events as do conjunctions to cusps of houses that rule affairs activated by progressed aspects. The transiting Moon, which moves about  $1^\circ$  every two hours, frequently times events almost to the minute if the birthtime and horoscope are accurate. If the horoscope is inexact, timing of events is unpredictable. The progressed Moon, when it conjuncts a planet, angle or house cusp of interest, indicates the time of an event to the day or even closer if calculations are correct.

Easy progressed aspects describe conditions and circumstances that affect related affairs; hard progressed and transiting aspects are associated with specific events such as marriage, surgery, childbirth or a career change. The progressed Mars/Saturn trine (an easy aspect) in Susan's horoscope described conditions that could be helpful to career advancement during 1968; it did not signify a specific event. However, during the same period, progressed Mars conjuncted her natal MC, an aspect associated with

external events. Transiting Mars conjuncted natal Saturn effective November 9, 10 (exact) and 11 ( $1^\circ$  orb) and conjuncted progressed Saturn on November 10, 11, 12 (exact) and 13, indicating the possible manifestation of a tenth house event associated with favorable conditions denoted by the trine. The transiting Moon exactly opposed the natal MC (conjunct an angle, the IC) and squared progressed Saturn on November 11 when she was given a promotion. The potential for the event stemmed from the progressed Mars/MC conjunction; the progressed Mars/Saturn trine set the stage with helpful conditions; the transiting Mars/Saturn conjunctions triggered the promotion; the transiting Moon/MC opposition timed the action.

A transiting planet cannot time an event that is not indicated in the horoscope. Bear in mind that the transiting Moon completes a circuit of the horoscope every month and forms every possible aspect with every planet and angle each month. When they aspect the natal horoscope, fast moving transits indicate daily activities such as shopping (Venus), visiting (Mercury), etc.

Heavy transiting planets give general indications of current trends shown by the houses and signs they occupy and the aspects they form with natal or progressed planets. The duration of their aspects varies from ten days to several months depending upon their rates of motion at the time.

The impact of progressed and transiting planets depends largely upon their significance in the natal chart. A person reacts more pronouncedly to influences generated by progressed and transiting planets that are strong natively and to the chart ruler than to influences generated by planets weak in the natal chart.

In assessing predominant influences for a given year, eclipse events that occur during that year are considered. The affairs of a house in which a transiting solar eclipse falls are emphasized until the next eclipse occurs, usually about six months later. If the eclipse aspects natal planets or angles, its influence is directed according to aspect and natal indications. A transiting lunar eclipse supports and clarifies the solar eclipse that it accompanies.

Each month, the natal house and sign in which the lunation (new Moon) occurs give clues to the type of activities and events that can be successfully initiated or changed unless the new Moon afflicts planets in the

natal chart; then a steady policy is best, and all but absolutely necessary changes are inadvisable.

### *Converse Directions*

Converse directions progress a horoscope "backwards." Procedure to erect a converse chart is the same as the "day for a year" method of progressing a horoscope except that one counts backward in time from the birthdate the number of years of interest to find the converse ephemeris date (CED) for which the converse horoscope is cast.

A converse horoscope gives insight into innate behavior patterns and karma. To more fully understand the potentials that appear in a horoscope progressed to a given year after birth, one studies a converse chart erected for the same number of years before birth. Astrological factors that link the natal, progressed and converse charts give clues to karmic problems as described by natal and converse ties and point out the means by which karmic relationships can be best worked out as shown by corresponding progressed indications.

Converse charts reveal hidden aspects of the personality such as latent talent and deep-seated psychological motivations. They are helpful in uncovering the root causes of emotional or psychological conflicts and in resolving problems.

### *Solar and Lunar Returns*

Solar and lunar returns provide information that elaborates on that found in the natal and progressed horoscopes. A solar return, erected according to the date and time in a given year that the Sun returns to the zodiacal position it occupies in the natal horoscope and the location in which the individual resides on that date, indicates by the Sun's house position the main emphasis of interest for that year. Influences operative during that year based on the solar return as a whole (planets, signs, houses and aspects) corroborate information found in the progressed horoscope and give additional details concerning progressed general trends. For example, a progressed Uranus aspect is in force for several years; a solar return may contain supplementary information that clarifies the progressed Uranian influence and further defines potential Uranian events.

A lunar return, based on the date and time each month that the Moon returns to its natal zodiacal position and the individual's place of residence on that date, gives a view of developments that occur from the time of the chart to the time of the Moon's next return the following month. The Moon's position and aspects describe activities and interests that influence the individual on a personal level and often affect the emotions. By providing a monthly outlook a lunar return pinpoints more closely events and situations described in the solar return and progressed horoscope.

### *Synastry*

No one person reacts to any two other people in the same way. Lack of understanding can undermine relationships that might otherwise be productive. Through synastry techniques, valuable insights into the marital or love relationships, the parent/child relationship, friendships, business affiliations and other associations can be gained, insights that enable people to recognize and understand each other's needs and to identify those factors upon which the success of a relationship depends. Comparison and composite charts are the two most useful tools available to the astrologer for determining strengths and weaknesses inherent in relationships.

### *Comparison Charts*

The basis for a relationship, potential problem areas and strong points can be determined by comparing the natal potentials of the persons involved, noting similarities and differences in the charts and aspects between the planets and angles of one chart and those of the other. Findings are assessed on the basis of compatibility and mutual ties (aspects). Differences are not necessarily incompatible; they may be complementary. For instance, what one person lacks the other may contribute to balance relationship needs.

To analyze a relationship involving two people, two comparison charts, often referred to as compatibility charts, are erected. To do this, the planets and angles from one partner's horoscope are inserted into the natal chart of the other and vice versa. A balance of elements and modes in the two charts is desirable although not essential to sustaining the relationship. Imbalance adds a narrow perspective. For example, if the combined charts show a predominance of water



signs and lack of earth, these people react to each other emotionally with little concern for practical aspects of the relationship. If fixed signs predominate and mutable are lacking, the relationship is rigid. Such imbalance may not harm the relationship; in fact, it might be appropriate to the association and to the individuals involved. Examination of the natal charts indicates each person's needs as individuals and as participants in a relationship; comparison charts show how each responds to the other's needs and what each contributes to and gains from the relationship.

The house that a partner's planets occupy in one's natal chart describe the role the partner plays. The main concept in role playing is indicated by the Sun, for the position of a partner's Sun in one's natal chart shows how the individual relates to the partner's personality. For example, if a woman's Sun occupies the fourth house in a man's natal chart, he sees her as someone to look after his needs much as his mother did when he was a child; if a man's Sun appears in a woman's fourth house, she relates to him as a father-figure. The position of the Moon describes the emotional response, Mercury the intellectual, Venus the affectional and Mars the sexual. Jupiter indicates areas in which one partner benefits the other. Saturn points out areas of restriction, indicating one's responsibility to the partner within the framework of the relationship.

Aspects (use one-half natal orb) indicate specific potentials and qualities of the relationship. Afflictions indicate potential problems; easy aspects describe helpful bonds based on common interests or characteristics according to the natures of the planets forming the aspects.

A relationship may be fruitful for a limited time period only. A conjunction to one of the angles in a natal horoscope by a partner's natal planet yields clues to the durability of the association; progressed indications describe its future and probable duration.

If several persons are involved, which is often the case in business associations, each natal chart is compared with every other. Utilization of a composite chart, which incorporates all relationship potentials into a single horoscope, reduces to one the number of charts needed to assess a relationship.

### Composite Charts

A composite chart is one that describes a relationship as an entity. It is erected by plotting the midpoints

between like planets and angles of one natal chart with that of the partner(s). It reveals the combined potentials of the persons involved in terms of their association, not in terms of individual needs and contributions. Some astrologers prefer composite techniques, others comparison, but most utilize both methods when applicable to gain a clearer picture of a relationship and the role each member plays.

To delineate a composite chart, natal interpretations are adapted to relationship symbolism. Signs and planets associated with the houses give a general view of relationship potentials and areas of primary interest; aspects (natal orbs applicable) point to particulars. For example, a well-aspected Jupiter in the tenth house of a composite chart suggests that members of the association can, working together, accomplish goals of the relationship; in the second house, it suggests that financial benefits can accrue as a result of combined activities. Jupiter afflictions bring out extravagances and excesses associated with the planet.

The Sun represents the lifeline of a relationship. Well aspected, it indicates a vital, viable association. Sun afflictions drain and endanger a relationship, although accompanying easy solar aspects reinforce Sun energies and revitalize the association.

Composite charts are especially helpful in assessing associations that involve large numbers of people such as corporation boards and organizational committees.

### *Astrological Techniques Designed for Specialized Needs*

Refined methods, developed to enlighten the individual in order that he or she can make correct decisions and act to best advantage on matters of specific interest, give guidance concerning current everyday affairs as well as once-in-a-lifetime activities.

#### Relocation Charts

Contemplating a move? Erect a relocation chart to determine the area that is most advantageous in relation to your natal potentials. A relocation chart is calculated for the time and date of birth and longitude and latitude of the contemplated site. If the distance between the new location and the place of birth is small, only negligible differences may exist between the relocation and natal charts. If a large distance is involved, the zodiacal positions of the planets remain the same as in the natal chart, but house

cusps and the house positions of planets change in the relocation chart. It is desirable to choose a location that produces a horoscope that places planetary emphasis in the houses of one's main interests. For example, if natal Jupiter is in the first or third house, a different location might shift it to the second house, thus improving moneymaking potentials.

### **Election Charts**

Election charts are erected to find the best time to implement specific plans. For example, if one is planning to embark on a business venture, a day within the tentative time frame (on which transiting planets, especially those which bear upon the business, are making favorable aspects) is chosen as the beginning date. The time that corresponds to the Midheaven or Ascendant, which most closely relates to the nature of the business and ties in with relevant houses or planets in the natal chart, is selected as a possible opening or beginning time, and a chart is erected for the tentative time, date and site of the opening. The time and house cusps are adjusted to place planets of significance where their influence will be most beneficial, and malefics in houses that are not directly connected with the business, its finances, customers, etc. The application of election charts is almost unlimited; they are helpful in determining when to get married, travel, seek promotion or apply for a job, sign important papers, purchase or sell property, invest, make changes, or to begin activities of any nature.

### **Horary Charts**

Horary charts, closely allied to election charts, are designed to answer specific questions of interest. They are constructed according to the date and time the question is first proposed (mentally or verbally) and the location of the querent, the person who asks the question. If the initial time is unknown, the time at which the client first approaches the astrologer with the question (by mail, telephone or in person) is used.

Information about lost articles, missing persons, contemplated actions or decisions (Is it to my advantage to accept the job offer? Is the partnership opportunity with Mr. Jones beneficial to me? Is it wise to invest in U.S. Steel shares at the present time?) is contained in horary charts. The first house of a horary chart rules the querent (questioner); the house that is naturally associated with the matter of interest rules the query (the matter inquired about). Study of the

planetary rulers of the houses of the querent and the query and the Moon, which describes by its aspects the dynamics of the chart (action or lack of it), reveals the answer to the question; irrelevant elements of the horary chart are disregarded. For example, if one wishes to locate a misplaced sum of personal cash, the sign and house positions and aspects of the planetary rulers of the Ascendant (querent) and the second house (query, personal money) and the Moon and the interrelationships that exist among these three planets describe if, where and when the money can be found. Astrological factors that have no bearing on the question are not considered.

### *Medical Astrology*

Medical astrology is a highly specialized field that requires knowledge of the functioning of the human body and psyche as well as relationships of planets and signs to minerals, vitamins, enzymes, bacteria and other disease-producing agents, all parts of the body and body systems. It is limited by law to diagnostic procedures unless the astrologer is also licensed to practice medicine. A skilled astrologer can identify from the natal chart deficiencies that cause disease and then suggest medical tests to confirm the diagnosis. Few physicians and psychiatrists are willing to work with an astrologer; those who do find the service invaluable, especially for cases in which causative factors are hidden or disguised.

The medical astrologer works from the premise that illness is a result of the misuse or misdirection of planetary energies and that the square, quincunx and opposition describe deficiencies in the human body that may leave one vulnerable to disease. An illness indicated in the birth chart manifests when progressed and/or transiting planets trigger the natal potential. Once inherent lacks are identified, treatment is directed toward cause rather than symptoms.

The techniques of medical astrology can also be successfully applied to preventive medicine. Helpful immunization or prophylactic procedures can be instituted to overcome body weaknesses described in the natal chart. Also, some herbalists rely upon an astrological assessment of body needs when recommending natural remedies to combat disease or to build up the body.

Modern medical astrology, still in its infancy, demands a sophisticated approach. Studies conducted

in earlier years by Cornell, Heindel, Sepharial and others are being re-evaluated in light of current medical and astrological thought. Much new research centers around the nodal chart, midpoints, Uranian planets and polarities in terms of medical correspondence. For the interested astrologer who is willing to devote years to advanced study, the field is wide open.

### *Mundane Astrology*

Mundane astrology, unlike natal astrology, deals with the world rather than the individual. Matters of political significance to a particular nation or to the world as a whole are part of this branch as are the weather, revolutions, universal philosophical trends and current events. The technical knowledge and advanced techniques required in this highly specialized craft can be found in literature devoted to the subject. However, something can be learned about national political and philosophical developments by studying a horoscope based on the "birthdate" of a country and adapting natal symbolism to the nation instead of the individual.

# 28 *Astrological Development: Microcosm and Macrocosm*

Astrological factors influence various phases of individual human development, common generational attributes and conditions that prevail over thousands of years. They describe the psychological emphasis of the particular period in life, generation or astrological era with which they are associated. Although personal growth (psychological, emotional, physical and spiritual) varies with each individual, human development follows a general pattern from birth onward that is described by planets, which govern each period of life.

## *Planetary Ages: Keys to Human Development*

Analysis of the planetary rulers of each period in life according to strength or weakness by sign, house and aspect in the natal chart indicates the ease or difficulty with which an individual can successfully complete each stage of development. Some people seem to be “stuck” in a phase long after the corresponding planetary age has ended; others advance much faster. Knowledge of a client’s developmental process enables the astrologer to gear counseling within the frame of current development and to help that person advance to the next stage.

Traditionally, human life was thought to consist of seven stages. However, in view of current longevity and recognition of the spiritual aspects of human nature as opposed to the purely physical (mental, emotional and material body), Uranus, Neptune and Pluto, which are not included in the traditional “seven ages of man,” are given rulership over specific periods

in life and afterlife along with the other seven planets as noted in Chapter 3.

One cannot gain proper perspective by studying only the planet associated with the year of interest. A person’s growth in each phase of life influences development in following periods. For example, the first seven years of life, ruled by the Moon, indicate development of instinctive reactions. Reasoning is not yet a tool available to the individual; the child learns by copying the actions of other persons. If the Moon is very strong natively by sign, house and aspect, this person, as an adult, will tend to revert to action without thought; reaction is emotional and instinctive rather than logical. One may teach himself or herself to stop and think in adult years, but the first and strongest instinct will be to respond emotionally.

Mercury, ruler of years seven to fifteen, brings into play the ability to think and plan action through rational thought. This period, one of primary learning, focuses on education and communication with others. A strong natal Mercury indicates that the individual will be guided in later years by rational thought rather than emotions. Mercury retrograde in the natal chart shows a tendency to internalize intellectual processes. Since Mercury’s retrograde period averages about three weeks, progressed Mercury will go direct within the first twenty-one years of life. At this juncture, great change in the use of communicative and thought processes occurs as intellectual development becomes externalized. An afflicted Mercury does not necessarily indicate difficulty in grasping ideas, but it can mean the individual has trouble communicating them and moving into the next stage of development.

Attracting others, love, art and beauty are important during adolescence and early adulthood (ages fifteen to twenty-four), the period ruled by Venus. Personal possessions and relationships become meaningful. The strength or weakness of natal Venus indicates how the individual will incorporate Venus principles in succeeding periods of life. With positive development during this stage, art, love and beauty can become primary motivations throughout life. If negative attributes develop, the individual may never be satisfied with relationships or material assets; the inner need for beauty and art may be stifled or unfulfilled.

The years of self-discovery, creativity and parenthood (ages twenty-four to thirty-four), governed by the Sun, describe the unfolding of the budding self into full flower, the development of the ego. Positive growth promotes confidence in the self and creative abilities. If the Sun is afflicted natively or by progression at this time of life, self-centeredness can develop. This is a crucial period in psychological and personal growth, for it represents the "I of life," the development of the true self.

The energy years, from ages thirty-four to forty-five, are ruled by Mars. During this period one asserts himself or herself in the world in an attempt to find a direction to life and career. Mars rules desires, and the Mars years are dedicated to fulfilling desires. Positive development indicates commitment to goals and facilitates success. Negative expression manifests in frustration, anger, and in some cases, violence. Mars energy, if not developed constructively, becomes self-destructive.

Jupiter governs ages forty-five to fifty-seven, the natural years for expanding the efforts and actions expressed during the Mars phase of development. The Jupiter years can be disappointing if one failed to find direction during the previous period or did not develop adequately in earlier stages, for Jupiter expands whatever is there at the time, good or ill. Many people "expand" by gaining weight during this period in life if the tendency toward obesity is present in the natal chart.

Opportunities, usually most abundant at this stage, can be lost through overly optimistic or self-indulgent actions, especially if the Sun years failed to produce positive development. However, rewards are commensurate with efforts, both past and present, during the Jupiter period. If lacks are apparent, one can backtrack, so to speak, and redevelop or further develop

stages that reflect inadequate growth. This phase is also associated with spiritual growth if positively utilized; loss of interest in all things spiritual is possible if development is stalled or follows negative lines.

Saturn, traditionally associated with the final stage of life, rules the years of full maturity, ages fifty-seven to seventy. Saturn's period is one of responsibility and reckoning. The rewards and recognition one has earned now manifest. If previous phases have not been utilized in a positive way, recognition and acclaim may elude the individual.

Uranus years, ages seventy to eighty-four, are years of change, change that can manifest in an unexpected and often erratic manner. Some people adjust well to this period during which responsibilities of former years no longer exist and develop more fully along spiritual and creative lines; others do not. These years can mark a period of inner awakening, spiritual growth and purpose, a time when one utilizes life's experiences and directs knowledge and energy toward making the world a better place in which to live. For those who fail to respond to higher Uranian vibrations, growth may be interrupted or distorted. Unpredictable actions and purposefully erratic habits motivated by contrariness and irresponsibility often manifest if previous stages of development are incomplete.

Neptune rules ages eighty-four to ninety-nine when the aging process depletes body strength and, if the horoscope is weak, undermines the will. These years can bring about a spirituality that was not evident prior to this period of development. If Neptune is strong in the natal chart, spiritual tendencies will have been evident in all previous stages and become more prominent at this time. If Neptune is afflicted, self-delusion and drug or alcohol dependency can develop as the body weakens; suicide is a possibility because the will to die often manifests strongly during this stage, especially if spiritual development is lacking.

Pluto, associated with the period from one hundred years after birth to the next rebirth, prepares one for transformation on a spiritual level through death and reincarnation. At this stage of development, the body is no longer a prime focus; the responsibilities and experiences of life have been accomplished or at least encountered. This period, about which so little is known, is devoted to the spirit or the soul, whatever defines the true essence and immortality of humankind. Growth at this stage and in the next life

depends upon development during the nine previous stages, for it is at this point in the eternal cycle that one comes to terms with his or her total developmental progress and needs.

By comparing the progressed chart and transits with the natal chart and noting the strength of the planetary ruler of an age in relation to other planets (natal, progressed and transiting), one can determine past and present developmental progress and future needs. One's growth pattern is not fatalistic; it can be changed by the individual who recognizes developmental needs. For example, if the natal chart indicates that the first stage of development is correlated to a later age, the individual will probably have trouble adjusting during early life because the tendency is to skip fundamentals, wanting to run before learning to crawl. Future development may be hindered if the individual continues on this path; the choice to change the pattern rests with the individual's decision to develop the stage required.

Because humans are complex beings, all facets of a developmental stage do not necessarily progress at the same rate; a person may complete a particular stage as it applies to one area of life while still developing in another area. For example, even though intellectual growth is advanced, lack of understanding (on an intellectual plane) of financial principles may be evident if emotional development (as it relates to the second house) is not sufficient to discipline the mind about these matters. It is helpful to consider planetary ages in conjunction with the developmental focus of quadrant houses (Chapter 5) in order to determine one's stage of development in a specific area of life during a given time period.

### *Generational Similarities and Differences Influenced by the Outermost Planets*

Due to the length of time each of the three outermost planets (Uranus, Neptune and Pluto) spend in a sign, their influence is reflected in world trends and generational developments. As one or another of these planets changes sign, differences within the same generation become apparent and misunderstandings between the young and the old are created. Motivation and action of a generation differ according to changes in the mode and element of predominating signs. For example, a shift from a cardinal to a fixed sign (mode)

or fire to earth (element) brings about a corresponding shift in generational emphasis.

The twentieth century opened with Uranus in Sagittarius (1898–1904), Neptune in Gemini (1888–1901/02), and Pluto in Gemini (1884–1913/14). Although Pluto was undiscovered at the time, its influence can be seen in generations that fostered advances in education, communication and transportation. Those born early in this century or late in the nineteenth were intellectually intuitive to the times and particularly aware of spiritual needs. They felt the need to communicate their beliefs and brought new concepts to religion and philosophy by educating themselves in foreign cultures. Travel, study and communication were prime motivations of this period (Gemini and Sagittarius). Norman Vincent Peale, Adlai Stevenson, Thomas Wolfe and Charles Lindbergh were part of this generation.

Born under one fire and two air signs, this generation was well able to put intellectual ideas into action, especially since Uranus, the innovator, was placed in a fire sign. These people were adaptable to their environments and flexible enough (mutable emphasis) to find new answers and new ways of developing the awareness created by the opposing signs, Gemini and Sagittarius.

Neptune's entrance into Cancer (1902–1914/15), in which it is exalted, did not alter the main emphasis of the times, but greater empathy and sensitivity were experienced. Both domestic (Cancer) and foreign (Sagittarius) affairs were treated with greater sensitivity. The water/fire (Cancer/Sagittarius) orientation combined with the Gemini/Sagittarius opposition gave rise to sharp differences in philosophy. The Cancer influence was reflected in the philosophies this generation developed concerning their homelands, philosophies that incorporated utopian ideals (Neptune). Henry Cabot Lodge II, Eric Hoffer, Mike Mansfield and Alexei Kosygin were among those born during this period.

Uranus' move into Capricorn (1905–1912) ushered in a generation motivated by ambition and drive to succeed. Capricornian influence, evident in business and science, was also apparent in lifestyles that bespoke dignity. There was need to communicate with (Pluto in Gemini) and to organize (Uranus in Capricorn) the masses (Neptune in Cancer). Much was accomplished along those lines by this generation, which operated under earth/water/air as well as

cardinal/mutable/cardinal influence. James Fulbright, Dag Hammarskjold, Howard Hughes, Leonid Brezhnev, Walter Reuther, Lyndon Johnson and Ronald Reagan, all authority figures with immense drive, are among the greats of this generation.

With Neptune still in Cancer and Pluto in Gemini, Uranus proceeded into Aquarius (1912-1919/20) influencing new concepts and humanitarian movements. Positive developments were evidenced by advances in science and thought; negative reactions gave momentum to the concept that the ends justify the means. Perhaps, with the air/water/air combination, the intellect became more important than common sense and feelings. Those who responded to mutable influence adapted to the ways and pace set by those who reacted more strongly to the fixed/cardinal influence, persons sure of themselves and their causes. Richard Nixon, James Hoffa and John Mitchell were born during this period as was Howard K. Smith.

Generational differences changed within a few years as Pluto moved into Cancer in 1914 (1914-1939) and Neptune into Leo (1915-1929) in 1915. Actually Pluto appeared briefly in Cancer during late September and early October of 1912 and moved back and forth between Gemini and Cancer until it entered Cancer to stay in June, 1914, a month that marked the assassination of Archduke Francis Ferdinand, the act credited with touching off World War I. Storm clouds continued to gather in Europe until people were forced to go to war to protect their homelands (Pluto in Cancer). World War I began and ended with Uranus in Aquarius, Neptune in Leo and Pluto in Cancer.

The years between 1915 and 1920 produced many Hollywood stars, indicating that the Leonine Neptune was being used positively on stage and screen. Uranus, remaining in Aquarius until 1920, contributed to the unique individuality of these stars; Pluto in Cancer gave depth to the emotions they portrayed on stage and screen. This generation boasted of Hedy Lamarr, Dylan Thomas, Olivia de Havilland, Van Johnson and Kirk Douglas as well as John F. Kennedy and Spiro Agnew.

The emphasis on stage and screen described by Neptune in Leo and Pluto in Cancer continued, but the focus on music and art became more personal and emotional during the next seven or eight years with Uranus in Pisces (1920-1927/28). In the United States, rebellion against the Volstead Act, enacted in 1919,

made prohibition a farce. Water/fire/water emphasis combined with mixed modes (mutable/ fixed/cardinal) drew many to seek spiritual freedom and to experiment with the occult. Part of this generation sought to express talent, achieve freedom and attain mystical heights through narcotics, long before such drugs were available to the masses. This generation displayed many facets linked, perhaps, by common inner or spiritual needs in contrast to the individualism shown by the previous generation with Uranus in Aquarius. Liberace, Margot Fonteyn, Robert Merrill, Robert Kennedy, Timothy Leary, Hans Holzer and Judy Garland all belonged to this generation.

In 1927 Uranus entered Aries (1927/28-1934/35) influencing a generation that was outspoken, dynamic and action-oriented. With the planet of change in the fire/cardinal sign that rules the self (Aries, first house), rebellion against traditional standards surfaced; new social structures reflected immoderation and extremism. Until Neptune entered Virgo in late 1928, a fire/fire/water and cardinal/fixed/cardinal configuration supported the need for pioneering change as reflected in the lives of Fidel Castro, George C. Scott, John Chancellor and Frank Borman.

Neptune's entry into Virgo (1928/29-1942/43), its sign of detriment, signaled the end of the flamboyant Leo period and gave rise to widespread unemployment. While Uranus remained in Aries squaring Pluto in Cancer, concerns of the home and the homeland predominated. The search was on for new ways to meet dietary needs as food became scarce and people became nutrition-conscious. Until 1934, when Uranus moved into Taurus, a sense of urgency prevailed as many people were barely able to obtain the basic necessities of life. Martin Luther King, Jr., Jacqueline Kennedy Onassis, John Updike and Ralph Nader are products of this period.

Uranus' transit of Taurus (1934/35-1942) coincided with many New Deal programs designed to ease the economic plight of the people in the United States. While Pluto remained in Cancer, emphasis was on domestic reforms and basic needs (Neptune in Virgo). Uranus, in its fall in Taurus, gave expression to practical developments that perhaps were restrained by material considerations that overshadowed Uranian freedom but not originality. Françoise Sagan, Bill Cosby, Rudolf Nureyev and David Frost are of this generation.

Pluto's move into Leo (1938/39–1956/57) put renewed emphasis on leadership, which resulted in World War II and a continuing power struggle between dictatorship and self-rule. As financial strain eased, entertainment again became important and lifestyles grew more extravagant but not excessive with both Uranus and Neptune in earth signs until 1942. Julian Bond, Ringo Starr, John Lennon and Muhammad Ali are among this generation.

War years in the United States were influenced by Uranus in Gemini (1942–1948/49), Neptune in Libra (1942/43–1956/57) and Pluto in Leo. The double air emphasis prompted new ways of thinking, which brought new techniques to the arts and literature and opened up new waves of scientific technology. This generation was on the move; marriages were disrupted and traditional marital values questioned. Even after the war restlessness was apparent as the countries of the world began the process of rebuilding and trying to re-establish a stable way of life.

The years 1948/49–1956/57 brought many changes in family lifestyles and child discipline (Uranus in Cancer, Neptune in Libra, Pluto in Leo). This generation sought emotional freedom, and to some any type of family restraint was unbearable. Permissiveness became popular and philosophies reflected the desire for freedom, peace and harmony.

Dramatic changes were in the making in 1956 and 1957 as all three outer planets changed signs at about the same time: Uranus entered Leo (1955/56–1961/62), Neptune moved into Scorpio (1956/57–1971), and Pluto advanced to Virgo (1956/57–1971/72). Creativity expanded at all levels as new standards developed in all things creative. New ideas of sexual freedom and original lifestyles in love and romance were tested as the sexual revolution began to take root. With Neptune in Scorpio, drugs added to the confusion surrounding sexual identity. Difficulty was experienced in adapting the new to the world, or perhaps, in the world adjusting to the new, for Uranus in Leo is in detriment. Pluto in Virgo brought advances in medicine and industry and consciousness of healthfoods and fad diets. Public health became important, and the discovery and use of miracle drugs became commonplace. The ego-centeredness of fixed/fire Uranus combined with fixed/water Neptune and mutable/earth Pluto influenced a generation that found compromise extremely difficult if not impossible.

The double Virgo influence that prevailed as Uranus joined Pluto in that sign (1961/62–1968) brought

unique answers in the fields of science and medicine, and with Neptune in Scorpio came an awareness of the effects of pollution and waste. The sexual revolution continued as did the drug culture, but much Neptunian influence is evidenced in research. If the positive attributes of Virgo and Scorpio are used by the generation born at this time, it could hold the key to problems caused by pollution and industrial waste; if negative characteristics are emphasized, research could get so bogged down in scientific details that little of value will be accomplished.

The late sixties and early seventies, with Uranus in Libra (1968–1974/75) and Neptune in Scorpio until 1971, brought the sexual revolution to a head and introduced new concepts in marriage, living arrangements and social relationships. The changes in social values that had been going on during the postwar years began to take shape. Concern for justice was reflected universally. With Pluto yet in Virgo, world health and food problems were of major concern. People became more interested in organic foods and natural vitamins.

With Neptune's move into Sagittarius (1971–1984/85) and Pluto's into Libra (1971/72–1983/84), concern for the human spirit and social justice was emphasized. The double Libra emphasis, which lasted until Uranus entered Scorpio (1974/75), was apparent in changing moral values and a growing sense of responsibility in marriage and other relationships. A generation was born that in all probability will introduce unique criteria in music and the arts. When Uranus was last in Libra, approximately 1855–1890, Marc Chagall, Irving Berlin and Artur Rubinstein were among those born who later contributed to changes in art and music. These people had Pluto in Gemini and Neptune in Taurus, a different orientation than that present in the current "Uranus in Libra" generation, but double Venus influence, which gives expression to art, affects both generations (Taurus/Libra and Libra/Libra).

A revival of the occult and interest in life after death and reincarnation reflected the influence of Uranus exalted in Scorpio (1974/75–1981). People started taking a more intellectual approach to mystical matters and many began serious study of related subjects (Libra and Sagittarius). As the generation born during this period matures, a more scientific approach toward the occult will probably develop, and many are likely to take part in research geared to exploring the



mysteries of life. Paramahansa Yogananda (Yogi), J.B. Rhine (parapsychologist), Dane Rudhyar and Paul Ciancy (both astrologers) were born late in the nineteenth century when Uranus was in Scorpio; at that time, both Neptune and Pluto occupied the mutable/air sign, Gemini. The twentieth century generation with Uranus in Scorpio has Neptune in Sagittarius, a sign associated with the search for truth, and Pluto in Libra, an air sign that puts emphasis on relationships, love and harmony rather than on communication as Gemini does.

During this same period, commitment between sexual partners was emphasized in contrast to the free love and personal gratification so important previously, although sexual freedom continued to be an accepted part of life by modernists.

Uranus' transit in Sagittarius (1981-1988) will probably produce sharp changes in higher education, philosophical thought and religious concepts, especially during the first few years while Neptune is also in Sagittarius and Pluto in Libra. Reforms in laws and changes in foreign relations are also likely. Because the combination of double fire/double mutable (Sagittarius/Sagittarius) with cardinal/air (Libra) generates a climate of enthusiasm and optimism, which urges immediate action, there is danger that ideas will be adopted without the forethought and detailed planning necessary to transform a theoretically sound idea into a workable activity.

The advancement of Neptune into Capricorn (1984/85-1998/99) will permit a more thoughtful and organized approach to Uranian-inspired changes. Pluto's entrance into the fixed/water sign, Scorpio (1983/84-1995), its sign of dignity, will probably bring about more careful scrutiny of existing institutions, laws and standards and proposed changes. The cardinal/fixed/mutable and earth/fire/water emphasis lends perspective and sensitivity to inspiration and encourages stable action.

Many changes in government and authority are apt to occur during the period 1988-1995/96 with Uranus and Neptune transiting Capricorn and Pluto in Scorpio. Ambitious, action-oriented and practical in working toward goals, this generation will come up with unique aspirations and will demand the freedom to choose their goals. With Pluto in Scorpio, choices must be made and fulfilled, especially in the areas of waste products and pollution. This generation controls

a "do-or-die" situation. In order to preserve the world as we now know it, drastic steps will probably be undertaken. If action is geared to positive planetary and sign influence, useful government reforms can be instituted, nuclear hazards controlled and pollution problems resolved. If negative action predominates, nuclear accidents and pollution poisoning on a world-wide scale could cause mass destruction. That these years mark a turning point in world history is evident with two planets operating in Capricorn, the sign associated with governments and their activities, and Pluto, the planet that rules evolution and transformation, operating in its own sign, Scorpio.

A world-wide spiritual regeneration will probably follow on the heels of the governmental shake-up that may occur in the nineties as Pluto enters Sagittarius in 1995. This century closes and a new age begins with both Uranus (1995/96) and Neptune (1998/99) in Aquarius. Humanitarian causes and philosophies based on compassion will be the driving force for this generation interested in improving the quality of life for all humankind. Fittingly, Uranus, which rules astrology, begins the twenty-first century, which marks the start of the age of Aquarius. With Neptune, co-ruler of the occult in Aquarius, and Pluto, also associated with the occult in Sagittarius, ruler of the higher mind and abstract thought, the new era promises learning, discovery and expansion associated with astrology.

### *Astrological Eras: The Great Year*

The emphasis of an astrological era, a period of approximately two thousand years equal to one Great Year month, is reflected in characteristics common to different cultures during the period. The duration of a Great Year depends upon the motion of Earth's pole. Uneven effects of the gravitational pull of the Sun and Moon on Earth's equator create nutation (from the Latin *nutare*, to nod), a small nodding motion or wobble in Earth's axis. As a result, the poles of Earth's axis slowly revolve around the pole of the ecliptic, taking approximately 25,800 calendar years to complete a circle (cycle), one Great Year.

This complex motion influences the direction in which Earth's pole points (now toward Polaris, the North Star, in a few thousand years toward Alpha Cephei, the future Polestar) and Precession of the

Equinoxes (refer to Chapter 1). The vernal equinoctial point (0° Aries) moves such that a different constellation appears as its celestial backdrop every two thousand years or so depending upon the size of the constellation since some are larger than others. Relative motion between the equinoctial point and the constellations is backward, proceeding from the end to the beginning of a constellation, so changing background constellations appear in reverse zodiacal order. A Great Year is divided into twelve "months" (astrological eras), each ruled by the sign that corresponds to the constellation forming the backdrop for 0° Aries during that period.

The sign associated with an astrological era and its planetary ruler exert broad influence on world affairs and cultures during the period. It is difficult to determine exact significance in early eras before history was recorded; however, artifacts and religious legends associated with various historical periods do relate to corresponding astrological eras.

During the early Mesolithic Period (Pre-Neolithic), which began ca. 12,000 B.C., primitives started to domesticate animals and build crude shelters, both Virgo functions. In about two thousand years, these peoples had progressed to the point that religion became more complex and they developed elaborate burial rites, an attribute of Leo. In some regions, cremation of the dead (Leo is a fire sign) was practiced. Further evidence that Leo and its ruler, the Sun, played a large part in history at that time is shown by the discovery of religious artifacts believed to be symbols of the Sun.

The great floods that appeared in all parts of Earth are associated with the age of Cancer (ca. 8,000 B.C.). A flood legend is part of the tradition of most early cultures, and various written sources, including the *Epic of Gilgamesh* from the ancient Babylonians and the *Old Testament*, refer to a great deluge that destroyed all living things not protected by their god. This period also gave rise to Moon worship, cults devoted to goddesses and fertility rites.

At about the time the Neolithic Period opened, the age of Gemini (ca. 6,000 B.C.) began. It was during this age that the Babylonians developed cuneiform, the earliest known form of writing. History tells us this occurred around 3,500 B.C., which is not too far removed from the probable time of the Gemini age, 6,000 to 4,000 B.C., give or take a thousand years or

so. This age also brought about dual god forms, twin gods worshipped in pairs.

The Neolithic Period, the final phase of the Stone Age, ended sometime during the age of Taurus (ca. 4,000 B.C.). Before 3,100 B.C., the Egyptians learned to smelt copper (ruled by Venus and Taurus) marking the beginning of the Bronze Age. Artifacts from several regions testify that the bull, (Taurus' symbol), was part of worship in a number of cultures. A winged bull, a religious symbol sculpted in stone by ancient Assyrians (date unknown), can be seen in the Metropolitan Museum of Art. The great pyramids of Egypt were built during the Taurus age, an appropriate development at a time when a fixed/earth sign was dominant.

People became more militant under the influence of Aries, ca. 2,000 B.C., ruled by the war planet, Mars. Many cultures adopted warlike gods, heroes for whom they fought and conquered. This was the age of the warrior, personified by Alexander the Great and the gladiators of Rome. In some cultures, the burnt offering and the lamb (ruled by Aries) replaced worship of the bull (ruled by Taurus); in others, various forms of fire worship developed. Aries introduced the Iron Age about 1,100 B.C., and the widespread use of iron (and later, steel) tools and weapons began.

The present astrological era, the age of Pisces, began around 1 A.D., probably shortly before the birth of Christ. Pisces' symbol, the fish, became the symbol for early Christians. This is a spiritual age that gave birth to many religious leaders: Buddha, Zoroaster, Confucius, Lao-tse and, more recently, Martin Luther, Paramahansa Yogananda, Mohandas Gandhi and Mary Baker Eddy among them. It is also an age of martyrdom that produced stoning, crucifixion, immolation, starvation, torture and confinement. Even in this century, many have been called upon to sacrifice their freedom and sometimes their lives for their beliefs, if not for their religions.

The initial stirrings of the new era that is about to begin, the age of Aquarius (ca. 2,000 A.D.), are observable in the great technological strides made in the twentieth century, the current growing concern for human rights and welfare, and an almost universal interest in astrology. The next two thousand years can bring about inventions greater than any yet conceived by mortals. A new society based on humanitarian principles could develop on Earth; further space

exploration could lead to the colonization of space, and astrology could gain its rightful place in the behavioral and social sciences. All this and much more is possible if humanity utilizes the positive traits of Uranus, ruler of Aquarius.

Negative Uranian expression could prompt insurrection and uproot society. Will the Aquarian age go down in history as the age of the humanitarian or the anarchist? the genius or the fanatic? the liberated or the libertine? It is certain that a new society and advanced culture, sharply different from anything known today, will develop during the Aquarian age.

# APPENDIXES

# A *Planetary Nodes and Solstice Points*

Planetary nodes and solstice points, sensitive points in a horoscope once disregarded by many natal astrologers, are fast becoming topics of concentrated study and discussion. That they are significant to astrology is generally accepted, but their exact meaning and influence are still matters of conjecture and controversy.

## *Planetary Nodes*

The nodes of a planet are points in space at which the plane of the planet's orbit intersects the plane of the ecliptic. The zodiacal degree occupied by a planet when its path crosses the ecliptic from south to north marks the position of its north node (ascending node); the position of its south node (descending node) depends on its zodiacal position when it crosses the ecliptic from north to south. A planet's crossing of the ecliptic is indicated when its celestial latitude, the distance it lies north or south of the ecliptic, is zero. The ecliptic is defined by the Sun's apparent path; therefore, the Sun cannot travel north or south relative to the ecliptic and has no nodal points (refer to Chapter 1).

The Moon's Nodes are an important part of astrological theory and delineation. According to sign and house, the position of the Moon's North Node in the horoscope points out attitudes, actions and interests that promote an individual's development; its South Node is associated with tendencies that inhibit growth (see Chapters 3, 4 and 7). The Moon's Nodes also have a role in eclipses, the significance of which is discussed in Chapter 10.

Because they are not so well understood, planetary nodes are not given as much consideration as lunar nodes. (It is customary to reserve the term *planetary nodes* for nodes other than those of the Moon.) Planetary nodes are listed in most astronomical tables according to their heliocentric positions. Most horoscopes are based on the geocentric positions of planets and the Moon's Nodes (Chapter 1). It is perplexing and somewhat absurd to relate a heliocentric factor to a geocentric horoscope, so for years planetary nodes have been ignored by many astrologers.

It is not necessary to master intricate calculations in order to determine the geocentric position of a node if geocentric tables are unavailable. Many heliocentric tables list the date on which a planet reaches its nodal point; one can look up the planet's zodiacal position in an ephemeris on that date to find the approximate position of the node in geocentric terms. Alternatively, one can determine from the ephemeris the time and date on which a planet's celestial latitude is 0°, note whether the planet is moving from south to north or vice versa and record its zodiacal position, which is the nodal position at that time.

The north and south nodes of planets, excluding the Moon, do not necessarily lie opposite each other geocentrically, although they do when measured in the heliocentric system. The fundamental meaning of nodes is based upon the polarity of the north and south node and the axis that connects them. Traditionally, the functions of a planet's north and south node are interdependent. The north node is described as a positive pole with a conscious function and the south

node as a negative pole with a subconscious function. It is believed that the north node represents a point of intake at which energy is focused and the south node a point of release for that energy. Another view attributes strength to a planet when it is at its north node and weakness to its position at the south node. However, if a geocentric pair of nodes are not in polarity, traditional meanings are not applicable.

Perhaps the problem lies not in lack of polarity but in failure to recognize that planetary nodes (as distinguished from lunar nodes) do not bear the same relationship to Earth as do the Moon's Nodes. The solar orbit of the Moon, Earth's satellite, depends upon Earth's orbit. This cannot be said of the planets. (Interplanetary gravitational forces are not considered here.) Is it possible that the point opposite a planet's geocentric north node, designated here as the theoretical south node, indicates a balance point through which the real south node must operate in order for the full potential of the north node to be realized? Accordingly, the natural tendency lies with the real south node, which signifies a source of disharmony or inherent weakness; correction of these deficiencies rests with the theoretical south node. This then suggests that the individual strive to achieve balance by utilizing south node (real) lessons in the manner and area indicated by the theoretical south node thus establishing effective polarity, which permits the theoretical south node to act as the channel for release and dispersion of energies introduced at the north node.

A more logical assumption makes it unnecessary to devise an imaginary node. The fact that a pair of planetary nodes does not lie in exact opposition may be a fundamental factor that has been overlooked in interpreting nodes. Perhaps planetary nodes are not analogous to lunar nodes. The distortion of the nodal axis may be meaningful in itself. If a planet's nodes do not lie at opposite poles of a nodal axis, polarity and complementarity are destroyed. Input at the north node fails to be released or utilized at the south node. The south node then takes on the character of an obstruction (psychological or physical) that interferes with planetary action as well as receptivity of the north node. The "kink" in the nodal axis is descriptive of a perturbation that creates turmoil (eased or reinforced by aspects to the nodes) in areas of nodal and planetary influence, turmoil that is "circular" in nature. Thus a planet's influence is felt at its nodal points; the nodal points and aspects to them affect planetary development.

For instance, psychologically-based fears or prejudices, or material circumstances as described by Mercury's south node, might explain interruptions in intellectual development that are apparent in the individual but not otherwise accounted for in the birth chart. The key to reaching mental potentials indicated by Mercury rest with recognizing and overcoming south node obstructions. However, Mercury and its nodes are interrelated in such a way that action at either nodal point or by Mercury influences areas designated by the other two points. Therefore, improvement in areas governed by Mercury or sensitized by its north node is helpful in dealing with south node problems.

For example, assume that Mercury is in Capricorn in the tenth house, its north node in Aquarius in the eleventh house and its south node in Sagittarius in the ninth house (a real geocentric possibility). Narrow religious views or lack of higher education (south node in Sagittarius in the ninth house) might interfere with intellectual development (Mercury), career advancement, one's position in society (Mercury in Capricorn in the tenth house), humanitarian understanding and interaction in social groups (north node in Aquarius in the eleventh house). The key to advancement intellectually, professionally and socially lies in higher education or religious tolerance. Since action is circular, improvement in any one area will have a positive effect on the other two. That is, educational advancement can help career standing and community position, give insight into humanitarian causes and permit freer social relationships. Conversely, education may be advanced through professional interests (on-the-job training or education at company expense) or through the organizations to which one belongs.

The exact significance of planetary nodes will not be determined until lengthy and detailed studies of case histories are completed. However, at this point, it seems probable that an approach that views the three factors, a planet and both its nodes, as three components of a single element, is valid.

### *Solstice Points*

Although solstice points (antiscian or mirror points) are more commonly used in horary than in natal astrology, they are worth calculating and studying. It is believed that they indicate turning points in life

that manifest when they are aspected by progressed or transiting planets. It has been shown that a progressed or transiting aspect to a solstice point activates the planet to which that point relates. For example, if progressed Sun conjuncts natal Mars' solstice point, Sun/Mars activity manifests according to a Sun/Mars conjunction even though progressed Sun does not actually aspect natal Mars.

Solstice points are based on the fact that the Sun occupies the same degree of declination at points equidistant from 0° Cancer (summer solstice point) and 0° Capricorn (winter solstice point). For instance, the Sun's declination when it is at 15° Taurus and at 15° Leo is the same; both zodiacal points are 45° from 0° Cancer and 135° from 0° Capricorn. Therefore, the equidistant points share a common relationship in respect to the celestial equator on which declination is based.

To calculate the solstice point of a planet or angle, subtract the degrees and minutes of its zodiacal position from 29° 60'; find the proper sign in the table below.

IF THE SIGN POSITION OF THE PLANET OR ANGLE IS:	THE SIGN FOR THE SOLSTICE POINT IS:
Aries	Virgo
Taurus	Leo
Gemini	Cancer
Cancer	Gemini
Leo	Taurus
Virgo	Aries
Libra	Pisces
Scorpio	Aquarius
Sagittarius	Capricorn
Capricorn	Sagittarius
Aquarius	Scorpio
Pisces	Libra

A planet's nodes and solstice point have a common point of focus in the planet with which they are associated. It seems logical that these points provide more detailed information about planetary activity and influence than that indicated by obvious factors that relate directly to the planet.

# B Fixed Stars

A planet or angle that falls within 1° orb of the position of a fixed star is emphasized in the horoscope. The strength a fixed star exerts in the horoscope depends upon that star's magnitude or degree of brightness with reference to Polaris (the polestar), a star of the second magnitude. The brightest and most influential stars are classed as first magnitude stars.

Thousands of stars are visible. The following list contains twenty-six fixed stars commonly used in astrology. The positions of the stars listed were correct for 1980. To find the zodiacal longitude for any other year, multiply the number of years between 1980 and the year of interest by 50.25. The result is the required correction in seconds of longitude. If the year of interest is earlier than 1980, subtract the correction from the 1980 position. If the given year is later than 1980, add the correction to the listed position. For example, to find the position of a fixed star in 1945, multiply 35 (1980 – 1945 = 35) by 50.25. The result is 1,759 seconds of longitude, which converts to 29' 19". Subtract this correction from the 1980 position.

Astrologers are not in agreement as to the significance of fixed stars in a natal horoscope. Some astrologers do not consider fixed star influence in their analyses. Each fixed star is thought to express attributes similar to those of one or more of the planets. Some fixed stars carry negative connotations, others positive. A few display both benefic and malefic properties. As a general rule a fixed star reinforces those qualities of the planet or angle it conjuncts that most closely match its own nature and those of the planet(s) that it resembles.

FIXED STAR	MAGNITUDE	ZODIACAL LONGITUDE
Alpheratz	2	14° 01' 48" Aries
Baten Kaitos	3½	21° 40' 12" Aries
Sharatan	3	3° 41' 24" Taurus
Algol	2-3	25° 53' 18" Taurus
Alcyone	3	29° 42' 48" Taurus
Aldebaran	1	9° 30' 36" Gemini
Rigel	1	16° 33' 00" Gemini
Sirius	1	13° 38' 24" Cancer
Castor	2	19° 57' 42" Cancer
Pollux	1	22° 56' 24" Cancer
Procyon	1	25° 30' 36" Cancer
North Asellus	5	7° 15' 36" Leo
South Asellus	4	8° 26' 30" Leo
Regulus	1	29° 33' 06" Leo
Zosma	2	11° 02' 06" Virgo
Vindemiatrix	3	9° 39' 42" Libra
Spica	1	23° 33' 42" Libra
Arcturus	1	23° 57' 18" Libra
Bungula	1	29° 13' 42" Scorpio
Antares	1	9° 29' 00" Sagittarius
Wega (Vega)	1	15° 02' 06" Capricorn
Altair	1	1° 29' 36" Aquarius
Deneb Algedi	3	23° 15' 42" Aquarius
Fomalhaut	1	3° 34' 42" Pisces
Markab	2	23° 12' 24" Pisces
Scheat	2	20° 05' 42" Pisces

In assessing fixed star influence, the nature of the star as described by the planet(s) with which it is



associated is considered in relation to aspects and other astrological factors that influence the planet or angle that occupies the fixed star position. The influence is felt most strongly in the house that contains the fixed star degree and in the houses ruled by planets that conjunct the fixed star.

The following keywords describe general characteristics of fixed stars. These words are to be used as guidelines, not as specific interpretations. The keywords must be adapted appropriately to the affairs influenced by fixed stars.

FIXED STAR	PLANETARY NATURE	DESCRIPTIVE KEYWORDS
Alpheratz	Venus/Jupiter	Honor, providence, wealth
Baten Kaitos	Saturn	Accidents, danger, isolation
Sharatan	Mars/Saturn	Defeat, homicide, violence
Algol	Saturn	Destruction, evil, tragedy
Alcyone	Moon/Mars	Karma, sorrow, tragic fate
Aldebran	Mars	Opposition, strength, success
Rigel	Mars/Jupiter	Energy, fortune, power
Sirius	Mars/Jupiter	Danger, fame, honors
Castor	Mercury	Disgrace, eminence, renown
Pollux	Mars	Cruelty, injury, violence
Procyon	Mercury/Mars	Afflictions, haste, misfortune
North Asellus	Sun/Mars	Courage, fame, heroism
South Asellus	Sun/Mars	Danger, tragedy, violence
Regulus	Mars/Jupiter	Position, power, riches
Zosma	Venus/Saturn	Disease, fear, immorality
Vindemiatrix	Mercury/Saturn	Depression, loss, widowhood
Spica	Venus/Mars/Jupiter	Protection, riches, renown
Arcturus	Mars/Jupiter	Belligerence, enterprise, prosperity
Bungula	Venus/Jupiter	Fatalism, indolence, success
Antares	Mars/Jupiter	Malevolence, pugnacity, stress
Wega (Vega)	Mercury/Venus	Lasciviousness, talent, wealth
Altair	Mars/Jupiter	Boldness, heroism, willfulness
Deneb Agedi	Jupiter/Saturn	Distinction, integrity, justice
Fomalhaut	Mercury/Venus	Advantages, fortune, malevolence
Markab	Mercury/Mars	Danger, esteem, mental alacrity
Scheat	Mercury/Mars	Catastrophe, homicide, misfortune

# C Arabian Parts

Other than the Part of Fortune (Chapter 13), Arabian Parts (or Points) are not much used in modern astrology. The system of combining three points of a horoscope to form a particular "part" regarded as a sensitive point was developed in Arabia during the Middle Ages. Since then, additional "Arabian" Parts have been devised.

Certain of the parts show by house placement in the natal chart the house a related planet occupies in a solar chart, a chart whose first house cusp is at the Sun's zodiacal position (Chapter 12). Thus, by using these parts, one can compare solar house emphasis with natal house emphasis without erecting a solar chart.

For example, if the Part of Fortune, which is calculated by adding the positions of the Ascendant and Moon and subtracting the Sun's position from the sum, is in the ninth house of a natal chart, the Moon occupies the ninth house in that person's solar chart.

Other parts that relate similarly to a solar chart are calculated as follows:

*Part of Commerce (Caduceus):* Ascendant plus Mercury minus the Sun. The Caduceus indicates the solar house of Mercury.

*Part of Love (Heart):* Ascendant plus Venus minus the Sun. The heart indicates the solar house of Venus.

*Part of Passion (Sword):* Ascendant plus Mars minus the Sun. The Sword indicates the solar house of Mars.

*Part of Increase (Pomegranate):* Ascendant plus Jupiter minus the Sun. The Pomegranate indicates the solar house of Jupiter.

*Part of Fate (Hourglass):* Ascendant plus Saturn minus the Sun. The Hourglass indicates the solar house of Saturn. It is sometimes called the Part of Responsibility.

*Part of Catastrophe (Lightning Flash):* Ascendant plus Uranus minus the Sun. The Lightning Flash indicates the solar house of Uranus.

*Part of Treachery (Trident):* Ascendant plus Neptune minus the Sun. The trident indicates the solar house of Neptune.

*Part of Organization (Gavel):* Ascendant plus Pluto minus the Sun. The Gavel indicates Pluto's solar house position.

The names of the parts are symbolic of their meanings. When aspected natively or by progression, the parts illuminate conditions with which they are associated. For instance, aspects to the Heart (Part of Love) describe conditions that affect love and affectional relationships in context with the rest of the horoscope. Parts that do not relate to the solar chart in the same manner as the above include the following:

*Part of Spirit:* Ascendant plus Sun minus the Moon.

*Part of Faith:* Ascendant plus Mercury minus the Moon.

*Part of Female Children:* Ascendant plus Venus minus the Moon.

*Part of Male Children:* Ascendant plus Jupiter minus the Moon.

*Part of Death:* Ascendant plus cusp of the eighth house minus the Moon. This part is read in conjunction with the Anareta.

*Part of Life:* Ascendant plus Moon minus the new or full moon immediately prior to birth. This part is read in conjunction with the Hyleg.

*Part of Bondage:* Ascendant plus Moon minus the Moon's dispositor.

*Part of Servants:* Ascendant plus Moon minus Mercury.

*Part of Understanding:* Ascendant plus Mars minus Mercury.

*Part of the Mother:* Ascendant plus Moon minus Venus.

*Part of Fortune of Husbandry* (management of resources): Ascendant plus Saturn minus Venus.

*Part of Marriage:* Ascendant plus cusp of the seventh house minus Venus.

*Part of Drama (Plays):* Ascendant plus Venus minus Mars.

*Part of Discord:* Ascendant plus Jupiter minus Mars.

*Part of Inheritance:* Ascendant plus Moon minus Saturn.

*Part of the Father, Part of Profession:* Ascendant plus Sun minus Saturn.

*Part of Sickness:* Ascendant plus Mars minus Saturn.

*Part of Brothers and Sisters (Brethren):* Ascendant plus Jupiter minus Saturn for a day birth (natal Sun above the horizon); Ascendant plus Saturn minus Jupiter for a night birth (Sun below the horizon).

*Part of Sudden Advancement:* Ascendant plus Part of Fortune minus Saturn; if Saturn is combust the Sun, use Jupiter instead.

*Part of Peril:* Ascendant plus the planetary ruler of the eighth cusp minus Saturn.

*Part of Journeys by Water:* Ascendant plus 15° Cancer minus Saturn.

*Part of Friends:* Ascendant plus Moon minus Uranus. Some sources substitute Venus for Uranus.

*Part of Imprisonment (or Confinement) and Sorrow:* Ascendant plus Part of Fortune minus Neptune.

*Part of Goods (Possessions):* Ascendant plus cusp of the second house minus the planetary ruler of the second house (cusp ruler).

*Part of Divorce:* Ascendant plus cusp of the seventh house minus Uranus.

*Part of Travel by Land:* Ascendant plus cusp of the ninth house minus the planetary ruler of the ninth cusp.

*Part of Private Enemies:* Ascendant plus cusp of the twelfth house minus the planetary ruler of the twelfth cusp.

*Part of Honorable and Illustrious Acquaintances:* Ascendant plus Sun minus the Part of Fortune for a day birth; Ascendant plus Part of Fortune minus the Sun for a night birth.

*Part of Merchandise:* Ascendant plus Part of Fortune minus the Part of Spirit.

# GLOSSARY

- abscission** From the Latin *abscissio*, cut off. Used in horary astrology to describe the interruption or cutting off of an incomplete aspect between two planets by a faster-moving third planet, which aspects either of the first two planets before their aspect reaches partile. For example, assume that Mars is in 20° Cancer applying to a trine with Uranus in 26° Scorpio, and the Moon in 3° Leo. Before Mars can close its aspect with Uranus, the faster-moving Moon will exactly square Uranus, thus effectively cutting off the potential of the trine. Synonymous with hindrance and frustration.
- accidental Ascendant** From Evangeline Adams' horary technique in which an Ascendant is determined according to the time and date of the questions, and the querent's natal horoscope is rotated according to this new or accidental Ascendant in order to make horary deductions from the natal chart.
- accidental dignity** A planet that occupies its house of natural rulership or falls within 5° of an angle is said to be accidentally dignified. The term is also applied to planets in angular houses and to the most elevated planet in a horoscope. *See also* elevated planet.
- acronical place** From the Greek *akronychos*, at sunset. The position occupied by a planet when it is opposite the Sun.
- Admetos** Sixth symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.
- advantage, line of** An imaginary axis that connects the third decan of the third and ninth houses. The Moon's North Node east of this axis (line) is thought to be in a favorable or advantageous position.
- affliction** A term from traditional astrology used to describe adverse aspects, especially those formed by malefics.
- air signs** Gemini, Libra and Aquarius, traditionally associated with the air element and members of the air triplicity. These signs indicate free-flowing expression in areas of communication and the intellect.
- Allen, William Frederick (1860–1917)** Known professionally as Alan Leo, a dedicated English astrologer and prolific writer who is credited as the father of modern astrology.
- Anareta** From the Greek, literally *destroyer*. Applied to a malefic that occupies an anaretic place and afflicts the Hyleg; believed by ancients to be life-destructive. *See also* Apheta, Hyleg.
- anaretic degrees** The final degree (between 29° and 30°) of any sign, also called the degree of fate. Planets and house cusps that occupy anaretic degrees indicate fundamental issues with which one must deal.
- anaretic place** The horoscope position of the malefic that rules or occupies the fourth, sixth, eighth or twelfth house of a horoscope and is designated the Anareta.
- angles** The Ascendant, Descendant, Midheaven and Imum Coeli; the four cardinal points in a horoscope.
- angular houses** The first, fourth, seventh and tenth houses. In a quadrant system (unequal house), the angles form the cusps of these houses. The experiential focus of these houses is initiatory and dynamic. They are also referred to as cardinal houses because they are ruled naturally by cardinal signs and express cardinal qualities.
- antiscia** From the Greek, literally *shadows on the other side, opposite shadows*; mirror or reflection points. A degree and its antiscion are equidistant from a particular reference point such as the MC-IC or summer-winter solstice axis. The use of antiscia is common to Uranian Astrology. *See also* solstice points.
- aphelion** The point in a planet's orbit that is most distant from the Sun.
- Apheta, also Alpheta** Literally, the giver of life. A well aspected benefic that occupies an aphetic (hylegiacal) place in a horoscope, said to have life-preserving qualities. Afflictions to the Apheta were believed by ancients to reduce vitality and endanger life. Synonymous with Hyleg. Apheta was called Almochoden or Alcohoden by ancient Arabic astrologers.
- aphetic places, alphetical places** Those parts of a horoscope from 5° above the Ascendant to 25° below, from 5° below the Descendant to 25° above and from 5° preceding the ninth house cusp to the middle of the eleventh house. Benefics that occupy these areas are said to be life-supportive. Also called hylegiacal places.

- apogee** The point in a planet's orbit that is most distant from Earth.
- Apollon** The fifth symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.
- applying aspect** One in which the significator (the faster moving of the two planets involved) is moving toward partile (exactness) as opposed to a separating aspect in which the significator is moving away from partile.
- approaching aspect** An aspect in which the significator is moving toward the promittor in natural order of the zodiac (direction from significator to promittor is counterclockwise in a natal horoscope). An approaching aspect is thought to have an outward, socially-oriented significance as opposed to a departing aspect. *See also* departing aspect.
- Aquarian Age** The Great Year that begins around the turn of the twenty-first century and lasts for two thousand years. Universal developments of an Aquarian nature are expected to take place during this era.
- Arabian Parts** Developed during the Middle Ages in Arabia, each part derived from three points in a horoscope, indicates a sensitive point that relates the three factors involved.
- arc** In astrology, the curved path of a stellar body and the angular measurement of this path.
- articulate signs** Signs that symbolize speaking facility, namely Gemini, Virgo, Libra, Sagittarius and Aquarius. *See also* human signs.
- Ascendant** The degree of the zodiac rising over the eastern horizon of the birthplace at the moment of birth. This degree forms the first house cusp of a horoscope and is of great personal significance in the character and life of the individual.
- ascending node** The zodiacal point at which a planet crosses the ecliptic from south to north. Also called the north node.
- ascending planet** Any planet in the eastern section of a horoscope is ascending, i.e., moving toward the Midheaven. The term is usually reserved for those planets in the fourth quadrant (rising from Ascendant to Midheaven).
- aspect** The angular relationship between two planets or a planet and angle or sensitive point. Zodiacal aspects are based upon zodiacal longitude; parallels and contraparallels are based on declination, the positions of points of interest relative to the celestial equator. Zodiacal aspects are also called harmonics. *See also* harmonics.
- aspect pattern** Particular combinations of aspects that form special planetary configurations. *See also* grand cross, T-square, grand square, grand trine, stellium, yod.
- asteroids** Small planets (planetoids) or pieces of planets, most of which are found in the Asteroid Belt, that part of space between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. Astrological researchers are currently interested in five asteroids: Ceres, Juno, Pallas (Pallas Athena), Vesta and the recently discovered (1977) Chiron.
- astral twins** Two persons who may be unrelated and born at different times and in different places whose horoscopes are very nearly alike. This term is sometimes applied to persons whose Sun, Moon and Ascendant coincide zodiacally even though other planets occupy different positions in the two horoscopes.
- astrologer** One who practices astrology; a professional.
- astrologian** One who teaches astrology.
- astrologist** A nonprofessional who believes in or studies but does not necessarily practice astrology.
- athazer** A term applied by the ancients to the Moon when it forms an exact conjunction, semi-square, square, quincunx or opposition with the Sun or is separated from the Sun by 12° or 160°.
- ayanamsa** From the Hindu *ayana*, the arc that describes the increasing gap between the tropical and sidereal zodiacs. The *ayanamsa*, which changes continually at the rate of approximately 50" a year, is currently about 24°. To convert tropical measurements (based upon the Sun's Aries ingress) to sidereal measurements (based upon constellations, fixed stars) the appropriate ayanamsa is subtracted from the tropical position.
- balsamic Moon** The Moon less than 45° behind the natal Sun according to natural zodiacal order. A natal balsamic Moon is associated with one's commitment to destiny.
- barren signs** Gemini, Leo and Virgo, traditionally associated with infertility.
- benefic** Said of planets and aspects considered to be positive or helpful influences. Traditionally, Jupiter

- is the Greater Benefic and Venus the Lesser Benefic; the Sun, Moon and Mercury are moderately benefic. All harmonious aspects are benefic.
- beseiged** Said of a planet placed between two malefics. Energies of a beseiged planet are thought to be restricted.
- bestial signs** Aries, Taurus, Leo and Capricorn; so designated because they are symbolized traditionally as animals. Also called quadrupedian (four-footed) and inarticulate (animals have voices but lack power of speech). Speech impediments and superfluous body hair are associated with these signs.
- bicorporeal signs** Gemini, Sagittarius and Pisces. Also called double-bodied and double signs, they are associated with twins and dual experiences.
- bi-quintile** A minor benefic aspect, separating distance  $144^\circ$ , based on the fifth harmonic (multiples of  $72^\circ$ , a quintile, which is  $\frac{1}{5}$  of  $360^\circ$ )
- bi-septile** A minor hard aspect, separating distance roughly  $103^\circ$  ( $102^\circ 51' 26''$ ), based on the seventh harmonic (multiples of a septile,  $51 \frac{1}{7}^\circ$ , which is  $\frac{1}{7}$  of  $360^\circ$ ).
- Bowl** One of the seven horoscope patterns identified by the late Marc Edmund Jones according to the picture formed by planetary distribution in a horoscope. All ten planets placed in approximately one-half of a horoscope indicate the Bowl. Interpretation focuses on self-containment directed toward the area of horoscope placement.
- Bucket** The planetary arrangement formed by nine planets occupying approximately one-half of a horoscope with one planet roughly opposing the group that is a focal point of action (bucket handle) for planetary energies. Identified by the late Marc Edmund Jones.
- Bundle** According to the late Marc Edmund Jones, a tightly-packed planetary arrangement in which all ten planets are confined in a horoscope to the space of a trine ( $120^\circ$ ). The Bundle is descriptive of narrowness, uniqueness, specialization in the area of horoscope occupation.
- cadent houses** From the Latin *cadere*, to fall; houses three, six, nine and twelve fall behind angular houses. Ruled naturally by mutable signs (Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces respectively), they are also called mutable houses. The experiential mode of activity of these houses is naturally dispersive, adaptive and versatile, which may not be the reality depending upon the signs and planets in the horoscope that influence them.
- Campanus** Thirteenth century astrologer and mathematician who devised the house system that bears his name, which divides the prime vertical into equal  $30^\circ$  arcs.
- Caput Draconis** From the Latin, literally *dragon's head*; an older term for the Moon's North Node.
- cardinal signs** Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn, which fall naturally at the cardinal points in a horoscope: east, north, west and south respectively, points indicated by the angles. Cardinal signs are associated naturally with the angular (cardinal) houses: the first, fourth, seventh and tenth. Interpretation focuses on initiatory, active, dynamic qualities. Less commonly referred to as movable signs.
- cataclysmic planet** Uranus, which combines both magnetic and electric qualities and thus produces sudden upheavals.
- Cauda Draconis** From the Latin, literally *dragon's tail*; synonymous with the Moon's South Node.
- cazimi**, also **casimi** From the Arabic *center of the solar disc*. A planet that forms a conjunction with the Sun within  $30'$  of partile is said to be cazimi, literally "burnt up" by the Sun. The Sun, representing the ego, engulfs the energies of a cazimi planet.
- celestial equator** The extension of Earth's equator into space, perpendicular to Earth's axis.
- celestial sphere** The conceptualization of the infinite heavens as a sphere revolving around Earth, based upon the part of the skies visible from a point on Earth.
- Ceres** The first asteroid to be discovered (1801), named after the Roman goddess of agriculture. Ceres is thought to indicate productive areas in a natal horoscope.
- Chiron** The most recently discovered asteroid of astrological interest, discovered by astronomer Charles Kowal, Hale Observatories, in 1977.
- climacterial periods** Years in life, which are multiples of seven or nine based on the Moon's progressed and Saturn's transiting cycles. The progressed Moon squares its natal position approximately every seven years and trines it every nine. Transiting Saturn follows a similar cycle relative

to its natal position. Thus, climacterial periods are ages seven, nine, fourteen, eighteen, etc. Primary climacterial periods are the forty-ninth, sixty-third and eighty-first years (doubly climacterial:  $7 \times 7$ ,  $7 \times 9$ ,  $9 \times 9$ ). The sixty-third year is known as the Grand Climacteric and, if aspects in the natal horoscope confirm, is considered a year when life may be endangered.

**combust** A planet that forms a conjunction with the Sun within orb of between  $31'$  to  $3^\circ$  is said to be combust. The energy of a combust planet is integrated with that of the Sun in such a way that the planet does not operate independently.

**comet** From the Latin *cometa*, literally *hair of the head*, figuratively, *tail of a comet*. A bright starlike heavenly body, composed of masses of tiny particles and gases, which follows an eccentric orbit of the Sun that for some comets can take thousands of years to complete. Most comets form luminous "tails" when they near the Sun, bits of meteoric material and gases that stream off into space.

**common signs** Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces, synonymous with mutable signs. *See also* mutable signs.

**composite chart** A single horoscope made up from two or more natal charts by averaging house cusps and planetary positions of the natal charts. A composite chart gives insight into the relationship that exists between the persons whose natal charts are combined.

**conjunction** The aspect formed when two planets occupy positions close together in the zodiac, usually within  $8^\circ$  orb; the first harmonic.

**constellation** From the Latin *constellatio*, set with stars. A group of fixed stars.

**contraparallel** The angular relationship between two planets that occupy the same degree (within  $1^\circ$  orb) and opposite direction of declination, one north of the celestial equator and the other south. Interpretational focus is similar to that of an opposition but less forceful. *See also* declination.

**converse** Measurements, which follow the reverse order of the natural zodiac, used primarily to direct or progress a horoscope backward in time. Converse directions are interpreted by some astrologers as relating to the year after birth that corresponds to the year before birth for which they are calculated. Others believe that converse

directions reveal karmic and inherited psychological needs that relate to the corresponding progressed horoscope.

**Copernicus** An astronomer born in Polish Prussia credited with developing the theory (sixteenth century) that Earth is a moving planet that revolves around the Sun, a contradiction to Ptolemy's theory (second century) that Earth is the center of the universe and fixed in space. In his book, *Concerning the Revolutions of the Celestial Sphere* (1543), Copernicus discussed apparent motions of heavenly bodies as observed from Earth in relation to actual celestial motions.

**co-ruler** Prior to the discovery of Uranus, the Sun and Moon were believed to rule one sign each and the other five planets then known to humankind (Mercury through Saturn) to rule two signs each. When the three outermost planets were discovered, they became co-rulers of the signs Aquarius (Uranus), Pisces (Neptune) and Scorpio (Pluto), along with the traditional rulers Saturn, Jupiter and Mars respectively. Modern studies seem to indicate that the new co-rulers are primary rulers of the signs with which they are associated and may be sole rulers, in which case, two other planets, one linked to Libra (or Taurus) and the other to Virgo, may await discovery, thus eliminating dual rulership.

Co-rulership of a house is shared by planets that rule the sign on the cusp and any sign intercepted within the house and planets occupying that house.

**cosmic cross** An old term for a T-square, sometimes applied to a grand square (grand cross).

**cosmobiology** An astrological system developed by Reinhold Ebertin (Germany, twentieth century) that emphasizes midpoints and the following hard aspects: semi-square, square, sesquiquadrate and opposition. The angles are inserted in a cosmogram (Ebertin's term for his type of horoscope), to show the quadrature of the chart; houses are not used.

**critical degrees**  $0^\circ$ ,  $13^\circ$  and  $26^\circ$  in cardinal signs (Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn),  $9^\circ$  and  $21^\circ$  in fixed signs (Taurus, Leo, Scorpio and Aquarius),  $4^\circ$  and  $17^\circ$  in mutable signs (Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces). These degrees, based on the Hindu



- technique of Lunar Mansions (subdivisions of the zodiac according to the Moon's average daily motion, approximately 13°), are thought to strengthen the influence of planets, angles or sensitive points that occupy them.
- culmination** A term used to describe a planet's arrival at the Midheaven (naturally or by progression or transit); also used to indicate the completion of an aspect by progression, i.e., when a planetary aspect reaches partile, it culminates.
- Cupido** The first symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.
- cusps, cusp line** The line that separates the houses and indicates the beginning of a house. *See also* house cusp.
- cycle** A planet's zodiacal period; the time it takes a planet to make one complete transit (revolution) of a horoscope.
- debilitated** A term applied to a planet that occupies its sign of detriment or fall.
- decan, decanate** Based on the subdivision of a sign into three parts of 10° each. Each decan of a sign expresses subtle differences that distinguish it from the other two decans as described by its planetary sub-ruler, which operates in conjunction with the natural planetary ruler of the sign. The first decan of a sign (0°–10°) is sub-ruled by the natural ruler of the sign; the second decan (10°–20°) is sub-ruled by the ruler of the next sign in the zodiac that belongs to the same triplicity; the third decan (20°–30°) is sub-ruled by the ruler of the remaining sign in that triplicity.
- An older (Chaldean) method of assigning decan sub-rulers is based upon the rulers of Planetary Hours beginning with Mars as ruler and sub-ruler of the first decan of Aries and continuing the natural order of Planetary Hours' rulers through each successive decan, repeating as necessary until the zodiac is completed.
- decile** A mildly benefic aspect with a separation of 36°, also called a semi-quintile; the tenth harmonic.
- declination** The term that describes the distance in degrees a planet lies north or south of the celestial equator. The maximum declination of the Sun is reached at the Tropic of Cancer (north declination) and Tropic of Capricorn (south), 23° 27'. Planets that occupy the same degree and direction of declination are parallel; those that occupy the same numerical degree but lie in opposite directions relative to the celestial equator are in contraparallel.
- decreasing in light** Term applied to the waning Moon as its image (as observed from Earth) decreases from the full to the new Moon.
- departing aspect** An aspect in which the direction from significator to promittor is backward in the zodiac (clockwise in a horoscope). A departing aspect is given a subjective and, esoterically, a fatalistic connotation.
- derivative houses** A system that describes the affairs of a house as they relate to another, assuming that one of the houses of interest is the first. For example, the second house to the third, actually the fourth house in a natal chart, describes financial affairs (a second house matter) of brothers and sisters (a third house matter). The fourth house, which rules family interests, also represents the partner's career and reputation since it is the tenth from the seventh, which is associated with one's business or marital partners.
- Descendant** Point opposite the Ascendant and cusp of the seventh house; it describes one's interaction with others.
- detriment** Said of a planet that occupies the sign opposite its sign of natural rulership (dignity). A planet in detriment is thought to be at disadvantage.
- dexter aspect** From the Latin *to the right*. An old term now replaced by approaching aspect. *See also* approaching aspect.
- dignity** The sign that a planet rules naturally is its sign of dignity. A planet is essentially dignified when it occupies its natural sign of dignity or its sign of exaltation; it is accidentally dignified when placed in its natural house.
- direct motion** Motion that follows the natural order of signs.
- directions** A term synonymous with progression. *See* progressions.
- dispositor** The planet that rules the sign another planet occupies. For example, Mercury in Taurus is disposed by Venus, the natural planetary ruler of Taurus. A dispositor influences the action of the planet it disposes.
- dissociate aspect** An aspect within orb but out of sign. For example, a conjunction between a planet in

- 29° Capricorn and one in 0° Aquarius is within 1° orb but not in the same sign; therefore, it is a dissociate conjunction. A trine between a planet in 27° Aries and one in 2° Virgo is within 5° orb but the two planets are not in the same triplicity; the trine is dissociate. Dissociation disperses and thus weakens the strength or focus of an aspect.
- diurnal** From the Latin *diurnus*, daily. Refers to the southern (upper) hemisphere of a horoscope, the "day" section of a horoscope, that part of the heavens that appears above Earth's horizon.
- diurnal arc** The time expressed in right ascension that it takes a planet or degree of the zodiac to move from its rising point on the horizon to its setting point.
- diurnal signs** Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces, signs whose natural positions are in the diurnal or southern hemisphere of a horoscope.
- double signs, double-bodied signs** Synonymous with bicorporeal signs: Gemini, Sagittarius and Pisces. *See also* bicorporeal signs.
- dragon's head** An ancient term for the Moon's North Node, derived from the Latin *caput draconis*.
- dragon's tail** An ancient term for the Moon's South Node, derived from the Latin *cauda draconis*.
- duad, dwadasama, also dwadachamsha** A twelve-fold subdivision of the signs (each composed of 2½°) developed by Hindu astrologers. The first duad of each sign is sub-ruled by the natural planetary ruler of the sign; the second duad is sub-ruled by the ruler of next sign in the zodiac and so on. These "signs within a sign," by virtue of their planetary rulers, account for subtle shadings of expression found in different degrees of the same sign.
- earth signs** Taurus, Virgo and Capricorn, which belong to the earth triplicity, symbolizing "earthy" qualities such as stability, solidarity and practicality.
- East Point** The equatorial Ascendant; i.e., the sign and degree rising over the eastern horizon at Earth's equator at any given time; the point at which Earth's equator intersects the ecliptic.
- easy aspects** *See* harmonious aspects.
- eclipse** An occultation, commonly used in reference to a darkening of the Sun or Moon. Solar eclipses occur at the times of those new Moons when the Moon, Sun and Earth are aligned so that the Moon blocks the Sun (totally or partially) from Earth's view. Lunar eclipses occur at certain full Moons during which the Sun, Earth and Moon are so aligned that Earth blocks the Sun's light from the Moon, and the Moon is invisible to earthlings.
- ecliptic** The apparent path of the Sun as it "travels" around Earth during the course of a year; actually, Earth's orbit around the Sun.
- electional astrology, elections** A system by which one determines the most advantageous time to carry out a specific action (marriage, travel, business) by first erecting a suitable horoscope and working "backward" to calculate the time that is appropriate to the chosen horoscope.
- elements** Ancients believed that the universe consisted of four primary elements, air, earth, fire and water from which the triplicities (also called elements), a four-fold division of the zodiac, are derived. Signs belonging to the same triplicity exhibit similar qualities symbolized by the element with which they are associated.
- elevated planet** A planet placed high in a horoscope. The most elevated is the planet closest to the Midheaven; it is considered strong by position and accidentally dignified.
- embolism lunation** The Moon's position when the natal lunar phase angle (relative position between Moon and Sun in a natal horoscope) is repeated. It is believed that women can conceive during the time each month that the natal lunar phase angle recurs.
- ephemeris** (plural: ephemerides) An almanac that lists the zodiacal positions of the planets and other astronomical data.
- Equal House horoscope** One in which twelve equal houses are derived by taking successive arcs of 30° each, beginning with the Ascendant and completing the zodiac circle. An alternate method bases the house cusps on the Midheaven rather than the Ascendant.
- equator** The plane perpendicular to Earth's polar axis, which divides Earth into two hemispheres, north and south. The extension of this plane into space forms the celestial equator.
- equatorial arcs** A method of progressing house cusps, based upon the Earth's rotation, in which one

- year of life corresponds to the passage of 1° right ascension over the meridian, approximately four minutes of time. This method, little used in modern times, is called primary directions (progressions) to distinguish it from secondary progressions, the "day for a year" system of progressing a natal horoscope.
- equinox** From the Latin *aequinoctium*, equal night; occurs when the center of the Sun is directly over Earth's equator. The sun crosses the equator twice each year, once at the vernal equinox when it enters 0° Aries and again at the autumnal equinox when it enters 0° Libra. The days and nights are of equal duration all over the world on equinoctial dates. The vernal equinox occurs on the first day of spring, the autumnal equinox on the first day of autumn.
- esoteric astrology** A study that deals with the human spirit and hidden nature as opposed to exoteric astrology, which deals with human characteristics and life on Earth. Reincarnation, karma, the aura, one's reason for being and the part human life plays in the ultimate scheme of the cosmic, universal or spiritual are among topics investigated in terms of astrological symbolism.
- essential dignity** A planet's sign of natural rulership or exaltation. *See also* dignity, exalted.
- event chart** A horoscope drawn up according to the date, time and location of a particular happening, interpreted to gain insight into influences surrounding the event and an outlook for possible developments stemming from that event.
- exalted** The term used to describe a planet that is placed in its sign of exaltation, the sign, other than its one of dignity (natural rulership), in which it functions most smoothly because of the harmonious relationship between planet and sign.
- exoteric astrology** Any branch of astrology that studies observable events and characteristics such as natal astrology, mundane astrology, etc., as distinguished from esoteric astrology, which studies the unknown or occult aspects of humanity.
- fall** The sign opposite a planet's sign of exaltation; a planet in "fall" is debilitated or weakened.
- feminine signs** Earth and water signs. Feminine characteristics do not refer to sex or gender; they are associated with receptivity. Synonymous with negative signs.
- Finger of God** An ambiguous term used variously to indicate the handle in a bucket formation or the yod, a configuration consisting of two planets in sextile and each quincunx to the same third planet. The yod is associated with karma. *See also* shaping, yod.
- fire signs** Aries, Leo and Sagittarius, signs which belong to the fire triplicity, associated with the element, fire. Fire signs symbolize fiery characteristics (ardor, spirit, spontaneity).
- fixed signs** Taurus, Leo, Scorpio and Aquarius, which are related to a fixed or stable mode of expression. Fixed signs are associated naturally with succedent houses: the second, fifth, eighth and eleventh respectively.
- fixed stars** Stars which, because of their great distance from Earth, appear to be motionless or fixed in space although in actuality they are not.
- flat chart** Alternate term for natural chart. *See* natural chart.
- focal point** Any point in a horoscope where several influences converge or disperse, such as the position of the squared planet in a T-square formation, the action point in a yod, the handle of a bucket, etc. *See also* T-square.
- Fortuna** From the Latin *fortuna*, fortune. Interchangeable with Part of Fortune.
- fruitful signs** The water signs: Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces, which are associated with fertility.
- frustration** An alternate term for abscission. *See* abscission.
- full Moon** That point in the lunar cycle when the Moon exactly opposes the Sun; begins the waning phase.
- galaxy** One of the billions of huge cosmic systems, each composed of innumerable stars, planets, etc. Members of a galaxy revolve as a unit around a common point in space. Our solar system is part of the Milky Way galaxy.
- genethliacal astrology** An old term for natal astrology.
- geniture** From the Latin, *birth or origin*; used in astrology to refer to a birth or a natal horoscope.
- geocentric** Measured or viewed in relation to Earth as the reference or observation point; Earth-centered measurements.
- gibbous Moon** The Moon approaching the full Moon, more than 135° and less than 180° ahead of the Sun. A natal gibbous Moon indicates that self-analysis is an important factor in motivation.

- grand cross, grand square** An aspect configuration in which four planets, each in a different sign of the same quadruplicity, form mutual squares. Much tension is generated among planets forming this pattern. If signs are mixed (aspects within orb but not in signs of the same quadruplicity), the impact associated with a grand square is somewhat diminished.
- grand trine** The aspect pattern formed when three planets, each in a different sign of the same triplicity (air, earth, fire or water), trine each other. A grand trine permits smooth flow of energies among the planets involved in accordance with the triplicity occupied. A dissociate grand trine, one in which the three planets fall within orb to form mutual trines but do not occupy the same triplicity, supplements ease of planetary expression but lacks the cohesiveness of a grand trine formed between planets occupying one triplicity.
- great circle** A circle described on the surface of a sphere (Earth, for example) so that its plane passes through the center of the sphere.
- Great Year** The astrological era based on the time it takes Earth's axis to complete one revolution around the pole of the ecliptic, about twenty-five thousand years. A Great Year is divided into twelve "months" of about two thousand years duration. *See also* precession.
- Greater Benefic** A term reserved for the planet Jupiter which, according to ancient beliefs, was responsible for life's greatest blessings.
- Greater Malefic** A term applied to Saturn, the planet ancients believed to generate the evils in life.
- Gregorian calendar** The calendar now used internationally, devised by Pope Gregory in the 1580s to replace the Julian calendar, which by then had accumulated a ten-day discrepancy with the solar year. Most, but not all, countries accepted the Pope's calendar by the 1700s (Great Britain, 1752). Russia did not change until 1918 and Turkey in 1928. Astrologers working with older dates should determine whether they are based on the Julian calendar, designated Old Style or OS, or on the Gregorian calendar, designated New Style or NS.
- Hades** The second symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.
- Halley's Comet** Named for the English astronomer, Edmund Halley, who correctly predicted, in 1682, the comet's return in 1759. One of the most brilliant comets viewed from Earth, it reappears approximately every seventy-seven years.
- half-sum** An alternate term for midpoint, the point in the zodiac that lies exactly midway between two planets.
- hard aspects** Aspects that stimulate action or tension and induce motivation. All hard aspects are disharmonious to some extent except the conjunction and parallel, whose influence depends largely upon the natures of the planets involved; that is, planetary energies do not merge smoothly when two planets form a hard aspect such as the semi-square, square, opposition or sesquiquadrate.
- harmonics** The term for zodiacal aspects that describes the energy levels or vibrational frequencies associated with aspects. An aspect, derived from the division of a circle (360°) by a whole number, and its multiples share the same frequency and therefore operate at similar energy levels. For example, division of 360° by four yields 90°, a square. The square is a fourth harmonic aspect as are its multiples, 180° (opposition) and 270°. Several harmonics may merge in a single aspect. The square is a multiple of the semisquare (45°), an eighth harmonic aspect; the square's primary harmonic is four (sometimes written 1/4) and its sub-harmonic is eight (2/8, second of the eighth harmonic). The opposition's primary harmonic is two (1/2 × 360° = 180°); its sub-harmonics are four (2/4, second in the series of fourth harmonics), six (3/6, third of the sixth harmonic), eight (4/8, fourth of the eighth harmonic), etc.
- harmonious aspects** Aspects in which the planets involved are mutually supportive; their energies operate together comfortably and productively. The sextile and trine are major harmonious aspects; also called easy aspects.
- heliocentric** Measurements based upon the Sun as the central point of reference or observation; Sun-centered.
- Herschel** The original name for the planet Uranus, which was discovered in 1781 by the British astronomer Sir William Herschel.

- higher octave planets** The three outermost planets, which symbolize the higher or spiritual level of expression in contrast to the lower or physical level symbolized by the inner planets with which they are linked. Uranus, the higher octave of Mercury, symbolizes spiritual intellectuality; Mercury, objective intellectualism. Neptune, linked to Venus, expresses spiritual love; Venus, physical love. Pluto, the higher octave of Mars, is associated with spiritual evolvment; Mars with physical development.
- horary astrology** Derived from the Latin *hora*, hour. The branch of astrology devoted to answering specific questions by means of a horoscope drawn up for the time a question is asked.
- horizon** The visible juncture of Earth and the sky, represented in a horoscope by the Ascendant-Descendant axis.
- house** One of the twelve mathematically derived sections (houses) of a horoscope, each of which represents a particular area of life. The size of a house and the zodiacal degree that appears on its cusp depend upon the house system used.
- house cusp** The zodiacal degree at which a house begins.
- Houses, Table of** A reference book that lists house cusps according to the local sidereal time and location of birth. A table is applicable to the particular house system for which it is devised.
- human signs** Signs that exhibit human qualities such as sparse body hair: Gemini, Virgo, the first 15° of Sagittarius and Aquarius. Some authorities include Libra and all of Sagittarius in this group, thereby equating articulate with human signs. *See also* articulate signs.
- humanistic astrology** Person-centered astrology as opposed to event-oriented.
- Hyleg** Interchangeable with Apheta. *See* Apheta.
- hylegiacal places** Synonymous with aphetic places. *See* aphetic places.
- Imum Coeli** From the Latin, literally *bottom of the heavens*; the zodiacal point opposite the Medium Coeli (Midheaven, MC). The Imum Coeli is one of the angles and forms the fourth house cusp in an unequal house system. Abbreviated IC.
- inarticulate signs** Aries, Taurus, Leo and Capricorn, signs pictured as animals that have voices but lack the power of speech, symbolizing an inability to communicate. *See also* bestial signs, quadrupedian signs.
- inconjunct** A minor hard aspect, 150°, synonymous with quincunx. *See* quincunx.
- increasing in light** Term applied to the waxing Moon as it moves from the position of new Moon to full Moon and the visible portion grows larger.
- individual houses** Houses one, five and nine, all ruled naturally by fire signs. The common function of these houses is oriented toward the self. As a group, they form the Trinity of Life.
- inferior planets** Venus and Mercury, so called because their orbits are smaller (closer to the Sun) than Earth's.
- ingress** From the Latin *ingressio*, entered in; the entry of a planet into a sign. The Sun's ingress into cardinal signs begins the different seasons of the year.
- ingress signs** The equinoctial (Aries and Libra) and solstitial signs (Cancer and Capricorn), the cardinal signs that coincide with the beginning of the seasons each year. These signs symbolize beginnings and initiatory action in a horoscope. *See also* cardinal signs.
- inharmonious aspects** Aspects in which planetary energies do not combine smoothly, mainly the semi-square, square, sesquiquadrate, quincunx and opposition; also called difficult aspects. *See also* hard aspects.
- inner planets** The Sun and those planets whose orbits lie between the Sun and Asteroid Belt, namely Mercury, Venus, Moon and Mars. Alternatively termed minor planets.
- intercepted sign** A sign that does not appear on a house cusp but is wholly contained within a house.
- Juno** The third asteroid discovered in the early 1800s, named after the Roman goddess, Juno, wife of Jupiter; associated with marriage.
- karma** The end result of the law of cause and effect in relation to the totality of one's actions in one of the successive states of existence, viewed as a preparatory phase for the next state.
- Kepler, Johannes** One of the founders of modern astronomy who discovered the three basic laws of planetary motion, among them that planetary orbits are elliptical. He introduced several minor aspects including the bi-quintile (144°), tredecile

(108°), quintile (fifth harmonic, 72°), decile or semi-quintile (36°), quindecile (24°) and the semidecile or vigintile (18°).

**Key Cycle** Sidney K. Bennett's system of solar returns, published under the pseudonym of Wynn; his system accounts for the one-quarter-day difference between a calendar year and a natural year.

**Koch, Dr. Walter** The German astrologer who developed the Koch or Birthplace system of houses.

**Kronos** The fourth symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.

**lame degrees** *See* mutilated degrees.

**latitude, celestial** Angular distance measured north or south of the plane of the ecliptic.

**latitude, geographic** Angular distance measured on Earth north or south of the equator.

**light collection** A term used in horary astrology to describe developments when two planets not in aspect (strangers) both apply to a third, slower planet that "collects their light" (unites their energies), symbolically establishing a relationship between the two.

**lights** An old term for the Sun and Moon; the Sun is the Greater Light, the Moon the Lesser Light.

**Lilith** Believed to be Earth's second satellite, the dark Moon, Lilith symbolizes the mysterious, seductive, sinister side of woman's nature in contrast to the nurturing, caring, sensitive feminine qualities associated with the Moon. Although actual sightings have not taken place, observers claim that Lilith's shadow can be noted at six-month intervals, and ephemerides for this satellite have been constructed. Its mean daily motion is 3° 2'; its position on January 1, 1980 was listed as 20° 33' Capricorn.

**Local Mean Time** The actual time in a given location based upon the Sun's position at the Midheaven (noon) of the place. Abbreviated LMT; also called True Local Time (TLT).

**Locomotive** One of the seven shaping arrangements identified by Marc Edmund Jones consisting of all ten planets placed within the space of two consecutive trines (240°). The planet that leads the group clockwise symbolizes motivation; the house it occupies shows direction of motivation.

**logarithm** From the Latin *logarithmus*, literally *mathematical proportion or ratio*. First devised

in 1614 by the Scottish mathematician John Napier who reduced complicated multiplication and division of numbers to the simpler operations of adding or subtracting their exponents (logarithms, abbreviated *logs*). Diurnal proportional logs, used in astrological calculations, are based upon the ratio between hours or degrees and minutes (1/60) and can be adapted to problems involving minutes and seconds of time or arc because the same ratio exists between the two smaller units as between the larger units (hours to minutes of time or degrees to minutes of arc display the same ratio as minutes to seconds of arc or minutes to seconds of time).

**long ascension** A term applied to Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio and Sagittarius because they take longer to rise over the horizon than do the other six signs due to Earth's tilt relative to the ecliptic. *See also* short ascension.

**longitude, celestial** The distance in degrees (arc) from 0° Aries eastward to any given point that intersects the ecliptic. Celestial longitude is measured from 0° to 360°. For example, 10° Taurus is expressed astronomically as longitude 40°.

**longitude, geographical or terrestrial** The distance in arc a given point on Earth lies east or west of the prime meridian, which passes through Greenwich, England (0° longitude). Geographical longitude is measured from 0° to 180°. *See also* prime meridian.

**longitude, zodiacal** The position of a given point along the ecliptic expressed in terms of the zodiac.

**lord** An antiquated term synonymous with planetary ruler.

**lower octave planets** Mercury, whose higher octave is Uranus; Venus, whose higher octave is Neptune; and Mars, whose higher octave is Pluto. Lower octave planets are associated with a lower or physical level or expression; higher octave planets symbolize a higher or spiritual level of expression. *See also* higher octave planets.

**luminary** The Sun or Moon, called *lights* traditionally. *See also* lights.

**lunar** From the Latin, *luna*, the Moon; descriptive of or relating to the Moon.

**lunation** New Moon; Moon conjunct Sun.

**Lunar Mansions** From Hindu astrology, a twenty-eight-fold division of a horoscope (twenty-eight

- mansions or houses) based upon the Moon's average daily motion. Critical degrees are derived from a similar division of the zodiac. *See also* critical degrees.
- lunar period** The time it takes the Moon to return to a particular point in the zodiac; the Moon's zodiacal period, a little less than twenty-seven days, eight hours. Also called a sidereal month and periodical lunation.
- lunation cycle** The Moon's phases relative to the Sun as it moves from one new Moon (Moon/Sun conjunction) to the next; the time interval between two successive lunations (new Moons), approximately twenty-nine and one-half days, a lunar month.
- major planets** Those whose orbits lie outside the Asteroid Belt: Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto. Also referred to as outer and event planets.
- malefic** An archaic term applied to planets and aspects whose influence was thought to be negative or destructive. Traditionally, Saturn is the Greater Malefic; Mars, the Lesser Malefic. Uranus, Neptune and Pluto were also classed as malefics. The square, opposition and other disharmonious aspects were once considered malefic aspects.
- Mansions of the Moon, Moon Mansions** Synonymous with Lunar Mansions. *See* Lunar Mansions.
- masculine degrees** Degrees that foster masculine attributes in both males and females when occupied by the Ascendant or chart ruler. H.L. Cornell, M.D., specifies the following as masculine degrees: 8°, 15° and 30° in Aries; 11°, 21° and 30° in Taurus; 16° and 26° in Gemini; 2°, 10°, 23° and 30° in Cancer; 5°, 15° and 30° in Leo; 12° and 30° in Virgo; 5°, 20° and 30° in Libra; 4°, 17° and 30° in Scorpio; 2°, 12° and 30° in Sagittarius; 11° and 30° in Capricorn; 5°, 21° and 27° in Aquarius; 10°, 23° and 30° in Pisces.
- masculine signs** The fire and air signs, Aries, Gemini, Leo, Libra, Sagittarius and Aquarius. They are suggestive of aggressiveness in contrast with the receptivity expressed in feminine signs. Also called positive signs.
- mean motion** Average motion or rate of travel within a specified time period.
- medical astrology** The branch of astrology devoted to the study of the human body, disease and health according to astrological symbolism portrayed in a horoscope.
- Medium Coeli** From the Latin, literally *middle of the heavens*; the culminating degree of the ecliptic, commonly called midheaven, abbreviated MC. In an unequal house system the MC, one of the angles of a horoscope, forms the cusp of the tenth house.
- meridian** A great circle, encircling Earth, that passes through the North and South Poles. A line of longitude.
- Metonic Cycle** The nineteen-year cycle named for the Athenian astronomer Meton who discovered (ca. 432 B.C.) that the new Moon occurs on the same day of the year at approximate nineteen-year intervals.
- Midheaven** The most commonly used term for Medium Coeli, usually designated by the initials MC. *See also* Medium Coeli.
- midnight ephemeris** An ephemeris that lists astrological data exact at the beginning of the day, 12:00 A.M. Also called zero hour ephemeris (12:00 A.M. = 00:00:00). *See also* ephemeris.
- midpoint** A zodiacal point in a horoscope that is equidistant from two planets. Two midpoints exist for each pair of planets. Aspects to a midpoint activate the two planets involved. Interchangeable with half-sum. Midpoints are largely used by cosmobiologists. *See also* cosmobiology.
- Milky Way** The galaxy of which our solar system is a part. *See also* galaxy.
- minor planets** Synonymous with inner planets; those planets whose orbits lie between the Sun and Asteroid Belt. *See* inner planets.
- movable signs** An alternate term for cardinal signs. *See* cardinal signs.
- multiple conjunction** A planetary arrangement in which three or more planets form a series of conjunctions that may extend from one sign into another. A member of a multiple conjunction is influenced by aspects to other members (aspect by association) even if the orb is too wide to normally include that planet. Also called a stellium. *See also* stellium.
- mundane aspects** Aspects by house rather than by degree. For example, a mundane sextile from a planet on the cusp of the second house to one on the cusp of the fourth might be less or more

than the 60° required for a zodiacal sextile depending upon the size of the houses.

**mundane astrology** That branch of astrology that deals with world events and universal trends rather than the individual.

**mutable signs** Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces, all of which express adaptability and flexibility to some degree. They are associated naturally with cadent houses: the third, sixth, ninth and twelfth, respectively. Synonymous with common signs.

**mute signs** The water signs: Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces, so-called because they are traditionally depicted as mute creatures: the crab, the scorpion and the fish, respectively. They are often associated with communication difficulties.

**mutilated degrees** So designated because of the ancient belief that if the Ascendant, chart ruler or Moon occupied any of these degrees, lameness was indicated. Sometimes referred to as lame degrees, they are: 6°–10° Taurus, 9°–15° Cancer, 18°–28° Leo, 18°–19° Scorpio, 1°, 7°, 8°, 18° and 19° in Sagittarius, 26°–29° Capricorn and 18°–19° Aquarius.

**mutual application** Said of two planets moving toward each other, one direct and the other retrograde.

**mutual reception** Two planets placed in each other's sign of essential dignity are in mutual reception, "*en rapport*." Mutual reception provides a harmonious link between planets not in aspect and strengthens the aspect if one exists.

**nadir** The point in the celestial sphere directly opposite the zenith; the point directly beneath an observer on Earth; the low point.

**Naibod arc** Mean daily motion of the Sun, 59' 08"; used to progress a natal horoscope by assuming one Naibod arc equals one year of life, according to the method introduced by Johann Naibod, sixteenth century astrologer and mathematician. *See also* solar arc.

**native** A traditional term that refers to a person for whom a horoscope is erected.

**nativity** A natal horoscope.

**natural chart** A chart with 0° Aries on the cusp of the first house that shows the natural horoscope positions of signs. Also called a flat chart.

**navamsas** From Hindu astrology, a ninefold division of each sign into 3½° segments, each segment influenced by a sign of the zodiac. The first

navamsa of Aries is sub-ruled by Aries, the next by Taurus, and so on, continuing the natural order of the zodiac through the ninth navamsa of Pisces, sub-ruled by Pisces. These "signs within a sign" create variations in interpretation of different degrees of a particular sign.

**negative signs** Earth and water signs; an alternate term used to describe "feminine" characteristics of receptivity and passivity. *See also* feminine signs.

**new Moon** Lunation; the beginning of a lunation cycle and of the waxing phase. Moon conjunct Sun.

**nocturnal** From the Latin *nocturnus*, of night. Refers to the lower (northern) hemisphere of a horoscope, the "night" section, that part of the heavens that falls below Earth's horizon.

**nocturnal arc** The time expressed in right ascension that it takes a planet or degree of the zodiac to move from its setting point on the horizon to its rising point.

**nocturnal signs** Signs whose natural positions are in the nocturnal or northern hemisphere of a horoscope: Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo and Virgo. Also called northern signs.

**nodal chart** An equal house chart, which places the Moon's South Node at the Ascendant, used primarily by medical astrologers to diagnose health problems. In this context, the South Node and Ascendant represent the head, the North Node and Descendant the feet, the lower hemisphere the right side of the body and the upper hemisphere the left.

**node** The point of intersection of a planet's orbit and the ecliptic.

**nonile** A ninth harmonic aspect based on division of 360° by 9 (40°). A minor aspect, the nonile is seldom used by modern astrologers. It was once given a fatalistic connotation.

**nova** Literally *new star*; applied to stars that suddenly appear with great brilliance then fade; an exploding star.

**oblique ascension** A measurement determined by the angle (ascensional difference) between the point on the celestial equator rising with a planet rising at a point not at the equator.

**oblique descension** The angular complement of oblique ascension; i.e., 180° minus the oblique ascension arc.

**occidental** Literally *western*; said of a planet that rises and sets after the Sun.



**occidental houses** Correctly, houses that lie in the western (occidental) portion of a horoscope, houses four through nine. Sometimes used to describe first and third quadrant houses (one, two, three, seven, eight and nine), those houses that are moving away from the vertical axis toward the horizon (in a clockwise direction in a horoscope).

**occultation** From the Latin *occultatio*, a hiding; an eclipse of a planet. The term eclipse is usually applied to an occultation that hides the Sun or Moon from Earth's view; occultation describes eclipses that obstruct Earth's view of planets other than the Sun or Moon. The eclipsing planet is emphasized over the occulted (hidden) planet in interpreting the accompanying conjunction between the two planets forming an occultation.

**opposition** A second harmonic aspect, separating distance 180°. A major hard aspect, the opposition creates awareness, attraction and antagonism between the planets in polarity.

**orb** The number of degrees by which an aspect may vary from partile (exactness) and remain effective.

**orbit** The path a heavenly body follows as it travels around another stellar body.

**oriental** Literally *eastern*; said of a planet that rises and sets before the Sun. *The* oriental planet, called the leading planet, is the one that will rise immediately before the Sun; i.e., the planet that directly precedes the Sun clockwise (behind the Sun in the natural order of the zodiac).

**oriental houses** Houses that lie in the eastern (oriental) hemisphere of a horoscope, houses one, two, three, ten, eleven and twelve. Sometimes used to describe those houses moving away (clockwise) from the horizon (Ascendant-Decendant axis) and toward the vertical axis (meridian axis, MC-IC axis), the second and fourth quadrant houses, namely houses four, five, six, ten, eleven and twelve.

**outer planets** Those planets whose orbits fall outside the Asteroid Belt; also called major planets because of their larger orbits. *See also* major planets.

**Pallas, Pallas Athena** The second asteroid discovered in the early nineteenth century, named after the

Greek goddess of war, wisdom and handcrafts.

**parallel** The angular relationship between two planets that occupy the same degree (within 1° orb) and direction of declination, both north or both south. Interpretational emphasis is similar to that of a weak conjunction. *See also* declination.

**partile** The degree at which an aspect is precisely exact (0° orb). An aspect that is within 1° orb is said to be exact but not partile.

**Part of Fortune** The Arabian Part most commonly used by western astrologers. Calculated by subtracting the Sun's position from the sum of the Ascendant's and Moon's positions, the degree occupied by the Part of Fortune symbolizes good fortune. Also called Fortuna and Pars Fortunae. *See also* Fortuna, Arabian Parts.

**penumbra** Literally *partial shadow*; the partially lighted area around any completely darkened area (umbra) of full shadow.

**penumbral eclipse** The term applied when the Moon passes through earth's penumbra; the shadow does not obliterate the Moon from Earth's view but causes it to appear orangish or copper-colored.

**peregrine** From the Latin *peregrinus*, foreigner. Said of a planet that does not occupy a sign of essential dignity or debilitation and is not in mutual reception with any other planet. A peregrine planet is said to drift aimlessly and lack standing in the horoscope; its action depends upon planets with which it is aspected.

**perigee** The point of orbit at which a planet is closest to Earth.

**perihelion** The point in a planet's orbit that lies closest to the Sun.

**periodical lunation** Term applied to the transiting Moon's monthly return to the exact position occupied in a natal horoscope. *See also* lunar period.

**phase** Any of the stages of variation in appearance or illumination of a planet; used most commonly to describe the various stages in the Moon's cycle. *See also* lunation cycle, waning phase, waxing phase.

**Placidian** The house system devised by the Spanish monk, Placidus de Tito (seventeenth century). Placidus' system, still widely used today, is based on the trisection of nocturnal and diurnal semi-arcs. The time it takes for each degree of

the ecliptic to rise from the lower meridian to the horizon (nocturnal semi-arc) and to rise from the horizon to the upper meridian (diurnal semi-arc) is adapted to space.

**planet** From the Greek *planetes*, wanderer; used astrologically to describe any heavenly body which when viewed from Earth appears to move, as distinguished from fixed stars.

**planetary hours** A system devised by ancient astrologers that assigned one of the seven planets then known to each hour of the day. The first hour of sunrise was ruled by the planetary day ruler (Sunday, Sun; Monday, Moon; Tuesday, Mars; Wednesday, Mercury; Thursday, Jupiter; Friday, Venus; Saturday, Saturn) and each hour thereafter governed by the next faster moving planet in rotation from Saturn to Jupiter, Mars, Sun, Venus, Mercury, Moon and back to Saturn throughout the twenty-four-hour period. Planetary energy was thought to be focused during the days and hours associated with a planet.

**planetary node** The point at which a planet's path intersects the ecliptic; declination,  $0^\circ$ . The term is usually reserved for nodes other than the Moon's Nodes.

**planetary patterns** Used interchangeably with shaping. Sometimes equated with aspect patterns. *See also* shaping, Bowl, Bucket, Bundle, Locomotive, See-Saw, Splash, Splay.

**platic** Term used to describe any aspect that is not exact (within  $1^\circ$  orb) but within allowable orb.

**Pleiades** A group of fixed stars in the constellation Taurus. They are called the "Weeping Sisters" because, according to Greek mythology, seven sisters, Alcyone, Merope, Celaeno, Taygeta, Maia, Electra and Sterope, daughters of Atlas and the nymph Pleione, killed themselves for grief when Atlas was transformed into a mountain. According to a different version, Jupiter transformed the sisters into stars so they could escape the attentions of Orion. The largest star in the group is Alcyone at about  $29^\circ$  Taurus.

**polarity** The contrasting and complementary qualities shown by signs opposite each other in the zodiac.

**pole** Either end of the axis of any sphere such as the Earth, the celestial sphere, etc.

**Porphyry** Philosopher (233–304 A.D.) of the Neo-

Platonic school who devised a house system based on dividing each quadrant of a horoscope, as determined by the angles, into three houses of equal size.

**Poseidon** The eighth symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.

**positive signs** All air and fire signs; used to describe the outgoing, dynamic qualities characteristic of these signs. Also called masculine signs. *See* masculine signs.

**precession** The circular motion of Earth's axis around the pole of the ecliptic, caused by the gravitational pull of the Sun and Moon on the bulging part of the equator. One complete revolution takes approximately twenty-five thousand years to complete.

**Precession of the Equinoxes** The gradual westward shift (about  $50''$  each year) of the equinoctial points along the ecliptic due to the rotational movement of the poles of Earth's axis. This phenomena creates an increasing difference in the tropical (based upon the ecliptic and the Sun's ingress into the sign Aries) and the sidereal zodiacs (based upon constellations) of about  $50''$  each year. *See also* ayanamsa, equinox, precession, Tropical Zodiac, sidereal zodiac.

**prenatal epoch** The astrological moment of conception. According to Ptolemy, the natal Ascendant or Descendant coincides with the Moon's zodiacal position at the prenatal epoch, ten lunar months prior to birth, more or less; used primarily in chart rectification.

**primary directions** Originally, a mathematically complicated system of progressing a horoscope based upon the diurnal rotation of Earth. The term is now loosely applied to any method of advancing house cusps but usually does not include planetary progressions.

**prime meridian** The great circle that passes through Earth's poles and Greenwich, England ( $0^\circ$  longitude), from which longitude is measured east and west. *See also* longitude, geographical or terrestrial.

**prime vertical** The great circle that rises vertically from the east point of the horizon and passes through Earth's zenith and nadir.

**progressions** The general term applied to any method of advancing the planets and house cusps of a natal horoscope to a particular time after birth.

**promittor** The slower moving of two planets in aspect; the receiver of an aspect.

**Ptolemy, Claudius** A great astrologer, astronomer and geographer of the second century (ca. 100–178 A.D.) who developed the theory that Earth is the motionless center of the universe about which the planets, Sun and Moon revolve. Ptolemy's work, recorded in his *Tetrabiblos*, was based in part upon the earlier works of Hipparchus (ca. 190–120 B.C.), who catalogued the known stars and, through his observations, discovered Precession of the Equinoxes. The Ptolmaic theory was widely accepted until replaced by the Copernican theory, put forth in the sixteenth century, which states that Earth is a moving planet, thus laying the foundation for later discoveries.

**quadrant** One of the four sections of a horoscope, each bounded by two angles not opposite each other.

**quadrante, quartile** Synonymous with square. *See* square.

**quadrupedian signs** Alternate term for bestial signs. *See* bestial signs.

**quadruplicity** One of the three qualitative groups (cardinal, fixed, mutable) in which each of the four member signs share a common mode of expression.

**quincunx** A minor hard aspect, separating distance 150°, the fifth multiple of the twelfth harmonic (30°, semi-sextile). Interpretation focuses on adjustmental needs. Also called an inconjunct.

**quintecile** A minor easy aspect, the fifteenth harmonic, 24°.

**quintile** The fifth harmonic, 72°, a minor easy aspect.

**radical** Having to do with the natal horoscope.

**radical chart** The natal horoscope. In horary astrology, the term radical applies to a chart deemed readable by virtue of the Ascendant being greater than 3° and less than 27° in any sign.

**radical position** The position a planet occupies in a natal horoscope.

**radix** From the Latin, literally *root*. A natal horoscope.

**rapport measurement** From the French, literally *related measurement*: applied to progressions based on advancing a planet's natal position one degree for each year after birth.

**reception** Shortened form of mutual reception. *See* mutual reception.

**rectification** The correcting of an inexact birthtime

or the determining of an unknown birthtime through astrological methods.

**refraction** The failure of an applying aspect to culminate, when the significator turns retrograde before reaching partile.

**Regiomontanus** The German astrologer (fifteenth century) who devised the house system that bears his name. This system is based upon twelve equal divisions along Earth's equator projected upon the ecliptic.

**relative houses** Houses three, seven, and eleven, ruled naturally by air signs. Function focuses on human relationships. As a group, these houses form the Trinity of Association.

**retrograde application** Term used in reference to a retrograde planet which, because of its retrograde motion, applies to an aspect with another planet. If both planets are moving toward each other, the term *mutual application* is used.

**retrograde motion** The apparent backward motion of a planet when it appears, as observed from Earth, to reverse its natural direction of travel and move backward in the zodiac.

**revolution** One complete orbit or cycle. In a natal chart, a planet's return to its natal degree upon completing a circuit of the map.

**right ascension** Measurement along the celestial equator eastward from 0° Aries that describes planetary positions in terms of degrees, minutes and seconds, not zodiacal signs. Sidereal time expressed in unit of arc.

**rising sign** Synonymous with Ascendant. *See* Ascendant.

**ruminant signs** An obsolete term applied to signs symbolized by cud-chewing animals, namely, Aries (ram), Taurus (bull) and Capricorn (goat).

**Sabian symbols** A system developed by Elsie Wheeler (psychically), Marc Edmund Jones and Dane Rudhyar that assigns an occult or esoteric meaning to each degree of the zodiac.

**Saros cycle** The eighteen-year (approximate) cycle, containing an average of forty-one solar eclipses and twenty-nine lunar eclipses, in which an eclipse from each current Saros Series appears.

**satellitium** A little-used term synonymous with stellium. *See also* multiple conjunction, stellium.

**secondary progressions, secondary directions** The method of progressing a natal horoscope in which each day after birth is equated to a corresponding

- number of years after birth; commonly referred to as "day for a year" progressions.
- See-Saw** The shaping arrangement in which, according to Marc Edmund Jones, the planets form two distinct groups roughly opposite each other in a horoscope; symbolizing balance or the need to seek balance as a strong motivating factor.
- semi-decile** The twentieth harmonic, 18°; interpreted as a weak minor easy aspect. Also called a vigintile.
- semi-quintile** *See* decile.
- semi-sextile** One of the more influential minor easy aspects, the twelfth harmonic, 30°.
- semi-square** The eighth harmonic, 45°; an important minor hard aspect in which planetary energies do not merge harmoniously but produce friction.
- separating aspect** One in which the significator (faster moving planet of the two in aspect) is moving away from partile (the degree at which the aspect is exact).
- septile** The seventh harmonic, 51 3/7°. A little-used minor aspect, probably inharmonious, thought to be associated with karma.
- sesquiquadrate, sesqui-square** A multiple of the semi-square, and eighth harmonic aspect. A minor hard aspect, separating distance 135°, its influence is frictional.
- sesquiquintile** *See* tredecile.
- sextile** The sixth harmonic, 60°; a major easy aspect considered beneficial and opportune.
- shaping** Descriptive of the visual arrangement of planets in a horoscope. Marc Edmund Jones identified seven different patterns: the Bowl, Bucket, Bundle, Locomotive, See-Saw, Splash and Splay. Each shaping type is linked to specific astrological conditions and a particular interpretational focus. *See* individual listings. Shaping is also referred to as planetary pictures and planetary patterns. *See also* planetary patterns.
- short ascension** Refers to the six signs that take less time than the other six to rise above the horizon, namely, Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces; the spring and winter signs in the northern hemisphere. *See also* long ascension.
- sidereal astrology** An astrological system based upon the constellations, not the tropical zodiac.
- sidereal day** Twenty-four sidereal hours equal to 23 hours, 56 minutes and 4 seconds of clock time.
- sidereal time** Time measured in relation to fixed stars, as distinguished from clock time, based upon the Sun's position relative to Earth. Astrological time data is listed in sidereal time units.
- sidereal zodiac** Based on the division of the circle of twelve constellations: Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces; the basis for sidereal astrology.
- significator** The faster moving of two planets in aspect; the significator is said to aspect the slower moving planet (promittor). Also used in reference to the planetary ruler of a house, matter, object or person. *See also* promittor.
- singleton** A planet that is the sole occupant of the horoscope hemisphere in which it is placed; said to give balance to a horoscope that has nine planets in the other hemisphere. *See also* Bucket.
- signs** The twelve divisions of the zodiac: Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius and Pisces.
- sinister aspect** From the Latin *sinister*, left or left hand; a term replaced by modern astrologers with *departing* aspect, which refers to aspects in which the direction from significator to promittor is backward in the zodiac, clockwise in a horoscope. *See also* departing aspect.
- slow of course** Term used to describe a planet's motion when its rate of travel is less than its mean daily motion.
- solar** From the Latin *sol*, the Sun; refers to the Sun.
- solar arc** The distance the Sun travels from birth position to its secondary progressed position. A system of progressions adds the solar arc at a given year to the natal positions of house cusps and/or planets. A similar method based on the mean solar arc multiplies 59' 08" (Naibod arc, Sun's mean daily motion) by the individual's age in years to determine the proper increment to add to natal positions.
- solar eclipse** *See* eclipse.
- solar return, solar revolution** A horoscope erected for the exact time in a given year when the transiting Sun reaches the same position it held in the natal horoscope; used to project conditions for the year of interest.
- solstice** Either of two points on the ecliptic at which the Sun reaches its farthest point north (0° Cancer) or south (0° Capricorn) of the equator.

- The longest day of the year occurs at summer solstice (first day of summer) as the Sun moves at its slowest rate; the winter solstice marks the shortest day of the year as the Sun reaches its fastest rate of travel.
- Splash** A planetary arrangement described by Marc Edmund Jones in which the planets are fairly evenly distributed around the horoscope. This dispersion of planets suggest dispersion of interests.
- Splay** A planetary arrangement identified by lack of symmetry and irregularly spaced planets and groups of planets as described by Marc Edmund Jones; symbolic of individualism and nonconformity.
- square** Fourth harmonic, 90°. A major hard aspect, the square generates tension and stirs action. Also called a quadrate, quartile or tetragon.
- station** A planet is said to "make a station" at the degree it occupies when it appears motionless as its direction changes from direct to retrograde or vice versa.
- stationary, stationary motion** Term used to describe apparent lack of motion when a planet's direction of travel changes from direct (forward in the zodiac) to retrograde (backward in the zodiac) or vice versa. Planetary energy, focused at the stationary position, is considered strong in a horoscope when a planet is stationary.
- stellium** A multiple conjunction that occurs within one sign or house, indicating a focal point of energy or interest. Also called a satellitium. The term may include multiple conjunctions that occupy more than one sign. *See also* multiple conjunction.
- succedent houses** From the Latin *succedere*, to follow; houses two, five, eight and eleven, which follow the angular houses. Also called fixed houses, being ruled naturally by the fixed signs: Taurus, Leo, Scorpio and Aquarius. The mode of action associated with these houses reflects fixed qualities of steadiness and reliability.
- superior planets** Planets whose orbits are larger than Earth's. The term is sometimes restricted to the three outermost planets: Uranus, Neptune and Pluto.
- swift in motion** Said of a planet whose rate of travel is greater than its mean daily motion.
- synastry** The astrological technique of comparing natal horoscopes to gain insight into the strengths and weaknesses inherent in the relationship that exists between the individuals involved. *See also* composite chart.
- synodic** Refers to the period between two successive conjunctions formed by the same two planets.
- syzygy** From the Latin, *yoked together*: refers to points at which a planet conjuncts or opposes the Sun; usually used in reference to those Sun/Moon conjunctions and oppositions that are eclipse events.
- Table of Houses** An astrological reference table, correlated with a particular house system, which lists the zodiacal positions of house cusps at various latitudes according to sidereal time.
- T-cross** *See* T-square.
- temporal houses** Houses two, six and ten, ruled by earth signs; symbolic of the material aspects of life. As a group they form the Trinity of Wealth.
- terrestrial** Of the Earth, Earth-related.
- terminal houses** Those houses ruled naturally by water signs: four, eight and twelve. They pertain to endings and results and symbolize occult interests. Collectively, they are known as the Trinity of Psychism.
- Tetrabiblos** Ptolemy's four-volume treatise on astrology (second century). *See also* Ptolemy, Claudius.
- tetragon** An alternate term for the square aspect. *See* square.
- transit** The position and movement of a planet on a given day; used in reference to planets that pass over or aspect a natal planet or cross a natal house.
- translation of light** A term used in horary astrology to describe the activity of a planet that applies in aspect, in turn, to two other planets that are separating from a mutual aspect, thereby translating "light" or energy and symbolically reuniting the planets and the matters they represent.
- tredecile, trecile** A minor easy aspect belonging to the tenth harmonic (decile) group; separating distance 108°. Also called a sesquiquintile.
- trigon** The three member signs of a triplicity. Also used as an alternate term for grand trine. *See also* grand trine, triplicity.
- trine** The third harmonic, 120°: the most influential major easy aspect. The trine blends planetary energies, harmoniously indicating ease of expression.
- triplicity** A group of three signs belonging to the same element: fire (Aries, Leo, Sagittarius)

- earth (Taurus, Virgo, Capricorn), air (Gemini, Libra, Aquarius) and water (Cancer, Scorpio, Pisces). The members of a triplicity lie 120° apart in the zodiac, forming a trigonal and harmonious relationship with each other.
- tri-septile** A seldom-used minor aspect, probably inharmonious, belonging to the septile (seventh harmonic) family; separating distance, 154° 17'.
- tropical signs** Cancer and Capricorn; so-called because they occupy parts of the ecliptic where the Sun reaches its farthest point north (Tropic of Cancer) and south (Tropic of Capricorn). The Sun's ingress into these signs marks the summer and winter solstices respectively. *See also* solstice.
- tropical zodiac** The circle of signs that follows the apparent path of the Sun (ecliptic). Also called the movable zodiac because it shifts slightly each year relative to the constellations of the sidereal zodiac. *See also* Precession of the Equinoxes.
- T-square** The aspect pattern formed when two planets in opposition both square the same third planet, which acts a focal point for planetary energies.
- under the Sunbeams** Said of a planet that is within 17° of the Sun but out of conjunction orb.
- universal time** Greenwich Mean Time.
- Uranian astrology** A school of astrology, founded by Alfred Witte in Hamburg, Germany, which relies heavily upon the interpretational emphasis of midpoints. In addition to traditional astrological elements, it includes as symbolic indicators eight hypothetical planets: Cupido, Hades, Zeus, Kronos, Apollon, Admetos, Vulkanus and Poseidon.
- vernal** From the Latin *vernus*, belonging to spring; of or pertaining to spring. *See also* equinox.
- Vertex** The point found in the western section of a horoscope that indicates the intersection of the ecliptic and prime vertical, called the "third angle of a horoscope." This point and its opposite, the Anti-Vertex, are sensitive degrees in a natal horoscope associated with fate and wish fulfillment.
- Vesta** The fourth asteroid of astrological interest discovered in the early nineteenth century. Named after the virgin fire goddess (Roman), its symbolic influence is protective.
- Via Combusta** Literally *fiery way*; refers to a section of fixed stars that falls between 15° Libra and 15° Scorpio. Used primarily in horary astrology as an indication of unfortunate or ineffectual situations.
- vigintile** Alternate term for semi-decile. *See* semi-decile.
- vocational astrology** That branch of astrology devoted to career counseling in terms of the aptitudes and needs shown in the natal horoscope.
- void of course** A term describing a planet that does not apply to a major aspect until it changes sign, usually confined to reference to the Moon. In horary astrology, a void-of-course Moon indicates lack of action or dynamics.
- Vulcan** A hypothetical planet whose orbit is said to lie between Mercury and the Sun, about twelve million miles from the Sun. Astronomers have no evidence of this planet as yet.
- Vulkanus** The seventh symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.
- waning** That phase of the lunation cycle from full Moon (Sun/Moon opposition) to new Moon (Sun/Moon conjunction) during which the visible portion of the Moon decreases.
- water signs** Cancer, Scorpio and Pisces, members of the water triplicity that symbolize receptivity, sensitivity and emotional depth.
- waxing** The phase of the lunation cycle from new Moon (Sun/Moon conjunction) to full Moon (Sun/Moon opposition) during which the Moon appears to grow larger, increasing in light.
- yod** An aspect configuration in which two planets in sextile both form a quincunx (inconjunct) with the same third planet; it is given a karmic connotation. Sometimes called the Finger of God.
- zenith** The point in the celestial sphere directly overhead; opposite the nadir. The zenith and nadir are the poles of the horizon.
- Zeus** The third symbolic planet used in Uranian astrology. *See also* Uranian astrology.
- zodiac** From the Greek *zodiakos*, literally circle of animals. *See also* tropical zodiac, sidereal zodiac.
- zodiacal aspects** Aspects based upon planets' zodiacal longitude as distinguished from parallels and contraparallels, which depend upon declination.

# BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Bills, Rex E., *The Rulership Book*. Richmond: Macoy Publishing Co., 1971.
- Concise Planetary Ephemeris for 1950 to 2000 A.D. at Noon*. The. Medford, MA: The Hieratic Publishing Co., 1978.
- Cornell, H.L., *Encyclopaedia of Medical Astrology*. St. Paul: Llewellyn Publications and New York: Samuel Weiser, Inc., 1972.
- Dalton, Joseph G., *Spherical Basis of Astrology, Table of Houses for Latitudes 22° to 60°*. Richmond: Macoy Publishing Co., 1911.
- Dernay, Eugene, *Longitudes and Latitudes in the United States*. Washington: American Federation of Astrologers, 1945.
- De Vore, Nicholas. *Encyclopedia of Astrology*. Totowa, NJ: Littlefield, Adams, and Co., 1976.
- Doane, Doris Chase, *Time Changes in the U.S.A.* San Francisco: Quarto Productions, 1966.
- Dobyns, Zipporah Pottinger, *Finding the Reason in the Horoscope*. California: T.I.A. Publications, 1973.
- Donat, Emma Belle, *Asteroids in the Birthchart*. Dayton: Gemini World, 1976.
- Ebertin, Reinhold, *Fixed Stars and Their Interpretation*. Edited by Georg Hoffmann. Translated from the German by Irmgard Banks. Aalen/Wurtt, West Germany: Ebertin-Verlag, 1973.
- Francis, James Jason, *The New English Astrological Thesaurus*. Lakemont, GA: CAS Press, 1977.
- Gauquelin, Michel, *The Scientific Basis of Astrology*. New York: Stein and Day, 1970.
- George, Llewellyn, *A to Z Horoscope Maker and Delineator*. St. Paul: Llewellyn Publications, 1974.
- Hall, Manly P., *Astrological Keywords*. Totowa, NJ: Littlefield, Adams and Co., 1978.
- Hand, Robert, *Planets in Composite*. Gloucester, MA: Para Research, Inc., 1975.
- Harmon, Joan Merrill, *Complete Astro-Medical Index*. Kingman, AZ: Faithist Journal, 1975.
- Hickey, Isabel, M. *Astrology, A Cosmic Science*. Watertown, MA: Isabel M. Hickey, 1970.
- Hone, Margaret E., *The Modern Textbook of Astrology*. London: L.N. Fowler and Co., 1951.
- Jansky, Robert Carl, *Astrology, Nutrition and Health*. Rockport, MA: Para Research, Inc., 1977.
- Jones, Marc Edmund, *The Guide to Horoscope Interpretation*. Wheaton: The Theosophical Publishing House, 1941.
- Kozminsky, Isidore, *Zodiacal Symbology and Its Planetary Power*. Washington: American Federation of Astrologers.
- Lineman, Rose and Jan Popelka, *Wright Correspondence Course in Basic Astrology*. Broadview Heights, OH: Wright Institute of Astrological Studies, 1972.
- , *Wright Correspondence Course in Natal Interpretation*. Wright Institute of Astrological Studies, 1972.
- Mathews, E.C., *Fixed Stars and Degrees of the Zodiac Analyzed*. Albuquerque: Motivation Development Center, 1947.
- McCaffery, Ellen, *Graphic Astrology*. Richmond: Macoy Publishing Co., 1931.
- Robson, Vivian E., *Fixed Stars and Constellations in Astrology*. New York: Samuel Weiser, Inc., 1969.
- Sakoian, Frances and Louis S. Acker, *The Astrologer's Handbook*. New York: Harper and Row, 1973.
- Sargent, Lois Haines, *How to Handle Your Human Relations*. Washington: American Federation of Astrologers, 1970.
- Sepharial, *The Manual of Astrology*. Southampton: W. Foulsham and Co., Ltd., 1979.
- Zolar, *History of Astrology*. New York: Arco Publishing, Inc., 1972.



# INDEX

- A (musical tone) 29, 34, 39  
 Abdomen 32, 45  
 Adjusted Calculation Date 248  
 Affliction 19  
 Agate 33  
 Ages, planetary 255-257  
 Air signs 22  
 Amethyst 39  
 Anareta, anaretic place 73-74  
 Anaretic degrees 58  
 Angles 43, 73  
 Ankles 37, 49  
 Anti-Vertex 72, 145-146  
 Anus 47  
 Aphelion 41  
 Apheta, aphetic places 73, 74  
 Apogee 41  
 Appearance. *See* individual signs  
 Aquamarine 30  
 Aquarius 26, 39, 44-45, 48-50, 76; decans of 53, 56; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 83; in the first house 79; in the fourth house 82; in the ninth house 87; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 88; in the third house, 81; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 37; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 60; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 28; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 37-38; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62  
 Arabian Parts 153, 271-272  
 Aries 25, 39, 44, 46-48, 50, 75; decans of 53, 54; in the eighth house 85; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 82; in the first house 78; in the fourth house 81; in the ninth house 86; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 83; in the tenth house 87; in the third house 80; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 27; Jupiter in 63; Mars in 62; Mercury in 60; Moon in 59; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 28; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 27-28; Uranus in 66; Venus in 61  
 Arms 29, 45  
 Arteries 47  
 Articulate signs 24  
 Ascendant 18, 26, 43, 71, 73, 75; declination of 153; equatorial 72; hidden 72; latitude correction 140-141; time correction 139-140  
 Ascension: right 122-123; signs of long and short 25  
 Aspects 19, 155-161; classifications 155-156; interpretation 171-246; orbs 155-156; progressed 248-249; transiting 249. *See also* names of aspects and individual planets  
 Asteroids 42  
 Astrological eras 260-262  
 Astrology: natal defined 17; specialized branches of 17, 247-253  
 Autumn signs 25  
 Axis 71-72  
 Azure 30  
 B (musical tone) 36, 39  
 Back 31, 44  
 Balsamic Moon 113-114  
 Barren signs 24  
 Belt: asteroid 42; zodiac 17-18  
 Benefics 42  
 Bestial signs 24  
 Bicorporeal signs 24  
 Bi-quintile 155, 159  
 Blood 45-47  
 Bloodstone 35  
 Blue 30, 38  
 Blue-green 31  
 Body: natural functions of 45; parts of, *see* names of parts of the body; systems, *see* systems, body  
 Bones 36, 48  
 Bowl 109  
 Breasts 30, 44  
 Brown 35  
 Bucket 110  
 Bundle 110  
 C (musical tone) 32  
 Calculations 127-128; for aspects 155-157; for East Point 146; for Greenwich Mean Time 120-121, 133-135; for Local Mean Time 129-130; for Local Sidereal Time at birth 130-135; for Part of Fortune 153-154; for Sidereal Time variation 128-129; for Vertex 145-146; to correct declinations 151-153; to correct house cusps 136-144; to correct planets' zodiacal positions 147-150  
 Campanus 122, 145  
 Cancer 25, 39, 45, 47-48, 50, 75; decans of 53, 54; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 82; in the first house 78; in the fourth house 81; in the ninth house 86; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 87; in the third house 80; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 31; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 62; Mercury in 61; Moon in 59; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 31; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 30-31; Uranus in 66; Venus in 61  
 Capricorn 26, 39, 45, 47-48, 50, 76; decans of 53, 55-56; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 83; in the first house 79; in the fourth house 82; in the ninth house 87; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 88; in the third house 81; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 37; Jupiter in

- 64; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 60; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 37; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 36-37; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Carbuncle (gemstone) 36
- Cardinal signs 23-24
- Cazimi 171
- Ceres 42
- Chart ruler 43, 75, 166, 168
- Charting: houses, 144-145; planets 150-151
- Chin 28
- Chiron 13, 42
- Colors. *See* individual color names
- Combust 171
- Common signs 24. *See also* mutable signs
- Comparison chart 250
- Composite chart 251
- Conception 44
- Conjunctions 155-156, 158; of Jupiter 217-218; of Mars 209-210; of Mercury 191-192; of Moon 181-182; of Moon's Nodes 245-246; of Neptune 237-238; of Part of Fortune 245-246; of Pluto 241-242; of Saturn 225-226; of Sun 171-173; of Uranus 231-232; of Venus 199-201
- Constellations 18, 261
- Contraparallels 155, 159; of Jupiter 222; of Mars 215; of Mercury 198; of Moon 188-189; of Neptune 240; of Pluto 243; of Saturn 229; of Sun 179; of Uranus 235; of Venus 207
- Converse directions 250
- Copper 29, 34, 46
- Coral 29
- Corpuscles, red 47
- Counseling 19-20, 170
- Cream (color) 29
- Crescent Moon 113-114
- Crimson 34
- Critical degrees 58
- Crystal 30
- Cusp 18, 78; influence of signs on 78-89
- Cycle: Lunation 113-114; planetary 48; Saros 115; Saturn 48
- D (musical tone) 37-38
- Day, sidereal and solar 121
- Day signs 25
- Debilitation 43
- Decanates 53-56
- Decans. *See* decanates
- Decile 155, 158
- Declination 18, 151-153, 155
- Delineation 165-170
- Descendant 43, 71
- Detriment 43; of Jupiter 47; of Mars 47; of Mercury 45; of Moon 45; of Neptune 50; of Pluto 50; of Saturn 48; of Sun 44; of Uranus 49; of Venus 46
- Diamond 28
- Dignity 42-43; of Jupiter 47; of Mars 47; of Mercury 45; of Moon 45; of Neptune 49; of Pluto 50; of Saturn 48; of Sun 44; of Uranus 49; of Venus 46
- Direct motion 41-42
- Dispositors 105-108. *See also* individual planets
- Disseminating Moon 113, 114
- Double signs 24
- Duads 56-57
- Dwadasamas. *See* duads
- E (musical tone) 30, 33, 38
- Earth 42, 46
- Earth signs 21, 22
- East Point 72-73, 145-146
- Eclipse 114-115. *See also* occultation
- Ecliptic 17
- Eight 37-38, 48
- Eighth house 34, 47, 50, 76; planets in 99-100; signs in 85-86
- Elements 22. *See also* triplicities
- Eleventh house 37, 48-49, 76-77; planets in 102-103; signs in 88
- Emerald 29
- Ephemeris 125-126
- Equator: celestial 18; Earth's 18, 119-120
- Equinoctial points 18, 261
- Equinoctial signs 24
- Equinox 17-18, 24; Precession of 18, 260-261
- Exaltation 43; of Jupiter 47; of Mars 47; of Mercury 45; of Moon 45; of Neptune 50; of Pluto 50; of Saturn 48; of Sun 44; of Uranus 49; of Venus 46
- F (musical tone) 31
- Face 27
- Fall (planetary) 43; of Jupiter 47; of Mars 47; of Mercury 45; of Moon 45; of Neptune 50; of Pluto 50; of Saturn 48; of Sun 44; of Uranus 49; of Venus 46
- Feet 38, 47, 49
- Feminine signs 24
- Fifth house 31, 44, 75-76; planets in 96-97; signs in 82-83
- Fire signs 21-22
- First house 27, 47, 75; planets in 91-92; signs in 78-79
- First quarter Moon 113, 114
- Five 30, 33, 45
- Fixed signs 23-24
- Fixed stars 58, 269-270
- Forehead 27
- Four 38, 49
- Fourth house 30, 45, 75; planets in 94-95; signs in 81-82
- Friday 29, 34, 46
- Fruitful signs 24
- Full Moon 59, 113-115
- G (musical tone) 28, 35
- Garnet 28
- Gemini 25, 39, 45, 47, 75; decans of 53-54; in the eighth house 85; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 82; in the first house 78; in the fourth house 81; in the ninth house 86; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 87; in the third house 80; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 29; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 62; Mercury in 61;

- Moon in 59; Moon's Nodes in 60; Neptune in 67; occupations of 30; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 29-30; Uranus in 66; Venus in 61
- Gemstones. *See* individual gemstones
- George, Llewellyn 39
- Gibbous Moon 113-114
- Glands: adrenal 47; gonad 50; mammary 44; pineal 49; pituitary 49; processes 45; systems 44, 47; thymus 45; thyroid 46
- Glyph 26, 44
- Gold (metal) 32, 44
- Grand cross, grand square 150-160
- Grand trine 160
- Gray 37
- Great Year 260-262
- Green 31, 39
- Hands 29, 45
- Head 27, 47
- Heart 31, 44
- Hemispheres 71-72
- Hemoglobin 47
- Herschel 48
- Hips 35, 47
- Horoscope defined 17
- Houses 18-19, 75-77; classifications of 74-75; cusps of, *see* cusps; planets in 91-104; signs in 78-89; table of 121-125
- Human signs 24
- Hyleg, hylegiacal places 73-74
- Imum Coeli (IC) 43, 71
- Inarticulate signs 24
- Inconjunct 155. *See also* quincunx
- Indigo 33
- Ingress signs 25
- Intercepted signs 75, 124
- Interpretation 165-170. *See also* aspects
- Intestines 32, 45
- Iron 28, 47
- Jasper (gemstone) 33
- Jaw 28
- Jet (gemstone) 37
- Joints (body) 48
- Jones, Marc Edmund 109
- June 42
- Jupiter 17, 35, 38, 41-42, 47, 50, 76-77; as final dispositor 106; aspects of 217-223; in the eighth house 90; in the eleventh house 102; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 92; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 100; in the second house 93; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 63-64; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 101; in the third house 94; in the twelfth house 104
- Kidneys 33, 46
- Knees 36, 48
- Koch, Dr. Walter 122; house system of 122, 145
- Kowal, Charles 42
- Latitude: celestial 18, 265; geographic 119-120
- Lavender (color) 39
- Lead (metal) 37, 48
- Leo 26, 39, 44-45, 48-50, 76; decans of 53, 55; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 82; in the first house 78; in the fourth house 81; in the ninth house 86; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 87; in the third house 80; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 32; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 59; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 32; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 31-32; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Libra 26, 39, 44, 46-48, 76; decans of 53, 55; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 83; in the first house 78; in the ninth house, 86-87; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 87; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 34; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 60; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 34; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 33-34; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Liver 35, 47
- Locomotive 110
- Logarithms, use of 137-139
- Longitude: geographic 119-120; time equivalent of 129; zodiacal 17-18
- Luminary 44
- Lunar mansions 58
- Lunation 59, 113
- Lunation cycle 113-114
- Lungs 29, 45
- Malefics 19, 42
- Maroon 35
- Mars 17, 27, 34, 41-42, 46-47, 50, 75-76; as final dispositor 106; aspects of 209-215; in the eighth house 99; in the eleventh house 102; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 91-92; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 100; in the second house 93; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 62-63; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 101; in the third house 94; in the twelfth house, 103
- Masculine signs 24
- Measurements, geocentric and heliocentric 17
- Medium Coeli (MC). *See* Midheaven
- Mercury 17, 29, 32, 41-42, 45, 50, 75-76; as final dispositor 106; aspects of 191-198; in the eighth house 90; in the

- eleventh house 102; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 91; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 100; in the second house 92; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 60–61; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 101; in the third house 93; in the twelfth house 103
- Mercury (metal) 45. *See also* quicksilver
- Meridian 119–121
- Metal. *See* individual metal names
- Midheaven (MC) 43, 71, 73, 87
- Midpoints 160–161
- Modes 23. *See also* quadruplicities
- Monday 31, 45
- Moon 17, 30, 41–42, 44–45, 50, 75; as final dispositor 106; aspects of 181–190; cycle of 113–114; eclipse of 115; in the eighth house 99; in the eleventh house 102; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 91; in the fourth house 94–95; in the ninth house 100; in the second house 92; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 59–60; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 101; in the third house 93; in the twelfth house 103; nodes of, *see* Moon's Nodes; phases of 113–114; waning 59, 113; waxing 59, 114
- Moon's Nodes 51, 115, 265–266; aspects of 245–246; in the eighth house 100; in the eleventh house 103; in the fifth house 96–97; in the first house 92; in the fourth house 95–96; in the ninth house 101; in the second house 93; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 69; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 102; in the third house 94; in the twelfth house 104
- Motion, planetary 41–42
- Movable signs 24. *See also* cardinal signs
- Multiple conjunction 159
- Mutable signs 23–24
- Mute signs 24
- Mutual reception 43, 105, 107
- Nadir 43
- Navamsa 57–58
- Neck 28, 46
- Negative signs 24
- Neptune 17, 38, 41–42, 49–50, 77; as final dispositor 107; aspects of 237–240; in the eighth house 99; in the eleventh house 103; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 92; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 101; in the second house 93; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 66–67; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 102; in the third house 94; in the twelfth house 104
- Neptunium 39, 49
- New Moon 59, 113–114
- Nine 28, 35, 47
- Ninth house 35, 47, 76; planets in 100–101; signs in 86–87
- Nocturnal signs 25
- Nodal degrees 58
- Nodes: lunar. *See* Moon's Nodes; planetary 51, 265–267
- Northern signs 25
- Numbers. *See* individual numbers
- Occidental houses and planets 73
- Occultation 116
- Occupation. *See* individual signs
- One 32, 44
- Onyx 37
- Opal 34
- Oppositions 155–156, 159; of Jupiter 221–222; of Mars 214–215; of Mercury 196–197; of Moon 186–188; of Moon's Nodes 245–246; of Neptune 239–240; of Part of Fortune 245–246; of Pluto 243; of Saturn 228–229; of Sun 176–177; of Uranus 234–235; of Venus 205–206
- Orange (color) 32
- Orbit, planetary 41–42
- Orbs 155–156
- Oriental houses and planets 73
- Ovaries 46
- Pallas 42
- Parallels 155, 159; of Jupiter 222; of Mars 215; of Mercury 197–198; of Moon 188; of Neptune 240; of Pluto 243; of Saturn 229; of Sun 177–179; of Uranus 235; of Venus 206
- Part of Fortune 153–154, 271; aspects of 245–246
- Partile 155
- Patterns: aspect 159–160; planetary. *See* shaping
- Pearl 31
- Perigee 41
- Perihelion 41
- Period, orbital and zodiacal 41
- Phases, lunar 113–114
- Pisces 26, 45–47, 49, 77; decans of 53, 56; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 83; in the first house 79; in the fourth house 82; in the ninth house 87; in the second house 80; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 88; in the third house 81; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 38; Jupiter in 65; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 60; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 38–39; Pluto in 68–69; Saturn in 65; Sun in 38–39; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Placidus 122
- Planets 17–19, 41–50; in houses 91–104; in signs 59–68. *See also* individual planets
- Planetary patterns. *See* shaping
- Pluto 17, 34, 41–42, 50, 76; as final dispositor 107; aspects of 241–243; in the eighth house 99–100; in the eleventh house

- 103; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 92; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 101; in the second house 93; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 67-69; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 102; in the third house 94; in the twelfth house 104
- Plutonium 35, 50
- Polarity 23
- Porphyry 122, 145
- Positive signs 24
- Precession of the Equinoxes 18, 260-261
- Progressions 247-249
- Promittor 156
- Purple 36
- Quadrant 73, 77, 122
- Quadrupedian signs 24
- Quadruplicities 23-24
- Qualities 23. *See also* quadruplicities
- Quicksilver 30, 33. *See also* mercury, metal
- Quincunx 155, 157, 159
- Quindecile 155, 158
- Quintile 155, 158
- Rectum 34
- Red 28
- Regiomontanus 122, 145
- Retrograde motion 41-42
- Returns, lunar and solar 250
- Right Ascension 122-123
- Sagittarius 26, 39, 45, 47, 76; decans of 53, 55; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 83; in the first house 79; in the fourth house 82; in the ninth house 87; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 88; in the third house 81; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 36; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 60; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 35; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 34-35; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Second house 28, 46, 75; planets in 92-93; signs in 79-80
- See-Saw 110-111
- Semi-sextile 155, 157-158
- Semi-square 155, 157-158
- Septile 155, 158
- Sesquiquadrate 155, 157, 159
- Sesqui-square 155. *See also* sesquiquadrate
- Seven 39, 49
- Seventh house 33, 46, 76; occupations of 36; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 35-36; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Sapphire 38
- Saros cycle 115
- Saturday 37-38, 48
- Saturn 17, 36-37, 41-42, 47-48, 50, 76-77; as final dispositor 106; aspects of 225-229; in the eighth house 99; in the eleventh house 103; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 92; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 100; in the second house 93; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 65; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 102; in the third house 94; in the twelfth house 104
- Scarlet 28
- Scorpio 26, 39, 45-47, 49-50, 76; decans of 53, 55; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 83; in the first house 78-79; in the fourth house 82; in the ninth house 87; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 87; in the third house 80-81; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 35; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 60; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 35; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 34-35; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Second house 28, 46, 75; planets in 92-93; signs in 79-80
- See-Saw 110-111
- Semi-sextile 155, 157-158
- Semi-square 155, 157-158
- Septile 155, 158
- Sesquiquadrate 155, 157, 159
- Sesqui-square 155. *See also* sesquiquadrate
- Seven 39, 49
- Seventh house 33, 46, 76; planets in 98; signs in 84-85
- Sex organs 34, 46-47, 50
- Sextiles 155-156, 158; of Jupiter 218-219; of Mars 210-211; of Mercury 192-194; of Moon 182-184; of Neptune 238; of Pluto 242; of Saturn 226-227; of Sun 173-174; of Uranus 232; of Venus 201-202
- Shaping 109-111
- Shin 37, 49
- Shoulders 45
- Significator 156
- Signs 17-19, 26-30; classifications 21-26; in houses 78-89; intercepted 75, 124; planets in 53-69. *See also* individual signs
- Silver (metal) 31, 45
- Six 29, 34, 46
- Sixth house 32, 45, 76; planets in 97; signs in 83-84
- Skin 36, 48
- Slow of Course 41
- Solar arc 247
- Solar plexus 45
- Solstice 24
- Solstice points 266-267
- Solstice signs 24
- Southern signs 25
- Spinal cord 31, 44
- Spine 44
- Splash 109
- Splay 111
- Spleen 48
- Spring signs 25
- Squares 155, 157, 159; of Jupiter 219-220; of Mars 211-212; of Mercury 194-195; of Moon 184-185; of Neptune 238-239; of Pluto 242; of Saturn 227; of Sun 174-175; of Uranus 233; of Venus 202-203
- Stationary motion 41
- Steel 28, 47
- Stellium 159
- Stomach 30, 44
- Summer signs 25
- Sun 17, 31, 41-42, 44, 50, 76; apparent path of, *see* ecliptic; as final dispositor 106; aspects of 171-179; eclipse of 114-115; in the eighth house 99; in

- the eleventh house 102; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 91; in the fourth house 94; in the ninth house 100; in the second house 92; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 27-39, 59; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 101; in the third house 93; in the twelfth house 106
- Sunday 32, 44
- Symbols 26, 44
- Synastry 250-251
- Systems, body: circulatory 37, 46-47, 49; digestive 30; excretory 50; glandular 44, 47; hepatic 35, 47; lymphatic 38; muscular 47; nervous 29, 45, 49; reproductive 32, 34 (*See also* conception, sex organs, womb); respiratory 45 (*See also* lungs); urinary (*See* kidneys)
- Table of Houses 121-125
- Taurus 25, 39, 45-47, 50, 75; decans of 53-54; in the eighth house 85; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 82; in the first house 78; in the fourth house 81; in the ninth house 86; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 83; in the tenth house 87; in the third house 80; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 29; Jupiter in 63-64; Mars in 62; Mercury in 60; Moon in 59; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 66-67; occupations of 29; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 28-29; Uranus in 66; Venus in 61
- Teeth 48
- Tenth house 36, 48, 76; planets in 101-102; signs in 87-88
- Thighs 35, 47
- Three 36, 39, 47
- Third house 29, 45, 75; planets in 93-94; signs in 80-81
- Throat 28, 46
- Thursday 36, 39, 47
- Tiger eye (gemstone) 32
- Time: types of and zones 120-121; conversion of longitude to 129
- Tin 36, 47
- Topaz 35
- Transits 249
- Tredecile 155, 159
- Trines 155, 157, 159; of Jupiter 220-221; of Mars 213; of Mercury 195-196; of Moon 185-186; of Neptune 239; of Pluto 242-243; of Saturn 227-228; of Sun 175-176; of Uranus 233-234; of Venus 203-205
- Trinities 74-75
- Triplicities 21-22
- T-square 159
- Tropical signs 24
- Tuesday 28, 35, 47
- Turquoise 36
- Twelfth house 38, 47, 49, 77; planets in 103-104; signs in 89
- Two 31, 45
- Uranium 38, 49
- Uranus 17, 37, 41-42, 48-50, 77; as final dispositor 106-107; aspects of 231-235; in the eighth house 99; in the eleventh house 103; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 92; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 100-101; in the second house 93; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 66; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 102; in the third house 94; in the twelfth house 104
- Veins 46
- Venus 17, 28, 33, 41-42, 45-46, 50, 75-76; as final dispositor 106; aspects of 199-207; in the eighth house 99; in the eleventh house 102; in the fifth house 96; in the first house 91; in the fourth house 95; in the ninth house 100; in the second house 92; in the seventh house 98; in the signs 61-62; in the sixth house 97; in the tenth house 101; in the third house 93, 94; in the twelfth house 103
- Vertex 72, 145-146
- Vesta 42
- Vigintile 155, 158
- Virgo 26, 39, 45-47, 50, 76; decans of 53, 55; in the eighth house 86; in the eleventh house 88; in the fifth house 82-83; in the first house 78; in the fourth house 81-82; in the ninth house 86; in the second house 79; in the seventh house 85; in the sixth house 84; in the tenth house 87; in the third house 80; in the twelfth house 89; influence on appearance 32-33; Jupiter in 64; Mars in 63; Mercury in 61; Moon in 60; Moon's Nodes in 69; Neptune in 67; occupations of 33; Pluto in 68; Saturn in 65; Sun in 32-33; Uranus in 66; Venus in 62
- Water signs 22
- Wednesday 30, 33, 45
- Weekdays. *See* names of weekdays
- Winter signs 25
- Womb 44
- Yellow 29
- Yod 160
- Zenith 43
- Zero 35, 50
- Zodiac 17-18